

Operation & Maintenance Manual

VEAM400102

PW180-7E0

WHEELED EXCAVATOR

SERIAL NUMBER

PW180-7E0 – H55051 and up



WARNING

Unsafe use of this machine may cause serious injury or death. Operators and maintenance personnel must read this manual before operating or maintaining this machine. This manual should be kept inside the cab for reference and periodically reviewed by all personnel who will come into contact with the machine.

KOMATSU

1. Foreword

1.1 Foreword

This manual provides rules and guidelines which will help you use this machine safely and effectively. Keep this manual handy and have all personnel read it periodically. If this manual has been lost or has become dirty and can not be read, request a replacement manual from KOMATSU or your KOMATSU distributor.

If you sell the machine, be sure to give this manual to the new owners.

Continuing improvements in the design of this machine can lead to changes in detail which may not be reflected in this manual. Consult KOMATSU or your KOMATSU distributor for the latest available information for your machine or for questions regarding information in this manual.



WARNING

- This Operation and Maintenance Manual may contain attachments and optional equipment that are not available in your area. Please consult your local KOMATSU distributor for those items you require.
- This machine complies with EC directive (89/392/EEC).
- Machines complying with this directive display the CE mark
- Improper operation and maintenance of this machine can be hazardous and could result in serious injury or death.
- Operators and maintenance personnel should read this manual thoroughly before beginning operation or maintenance.
- Some actions involved in operation and maintenance of the machine can cause a serious accident, if they are not done in a manner described in this manual.
- The procedures and precautions given in this manual apply only to intended uses of the machine. If you use your machine for any unintended uses that are not specifically prohibited, you must be sure that it is safe for you and others. In no event should you or others engage in prohibited uses or actions as described in this manual.
- KOMATSU delivers machines that comply with all applicable regulations and standards of the country to which it has been shipped. If this machine has been purchased in another country or purchased from someone in another country, it may lack certain safety devices and specifications that are necessary for use in your country. If there is any question about whether your product complies with the applicable standards and regulations of your country, consult KOMATSU or your KOMATSU distributor before operating the machine.
- For further information, see "Safety information (1-3)" and "Safety (2-1)".

1.2 Safety information

1.2.1 Safety messages

Most accidents are caused by the failure to follow fundamental safety rules for the operation and maintenance of machines.

To avoid accidents, read, understand and follow all precautions and warnings in this manual and on the machine before performing operation and maintenance.

To identify hazards on the machine pictorial decals are used, see "Position for attaching safety labels (2-36)".



Red warning triangle

This is used on safety labels where there is a high probability of serious injury or death if the hazard is not avoided. These safety messages or labels usually describe precautions that must be taken to avoid the hazard. Failure to avoid this hazard may also result in serious damage to the machine.



Orange warning triangle

This is used on safety labels where there is a potentially dangerous situation which could result in serious injury or death if the hazard is not avoided. These safety messages or labels usually describe precautions that must be taken to avoid the hazard. Failure to avoid this hazard may also result in serious damage of the machine.



Yellow safety triangle

This is used on safety labels for hazards which could result in minor or moderate injury if the hazard is not avoided. This word might also be used for a hazard where the only result could be damage to the machine.

NOTE

This word is used for precautions that must be taken to avoid actions which could shorten the life of the machine.

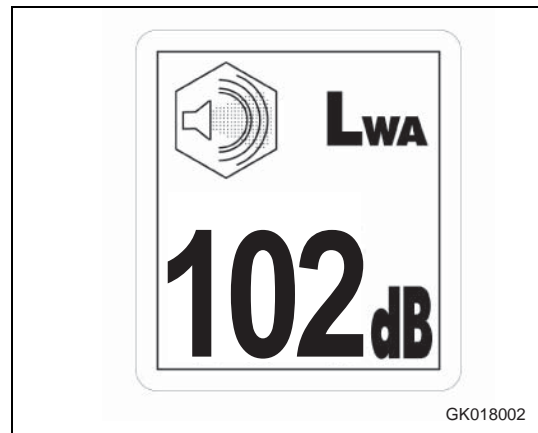
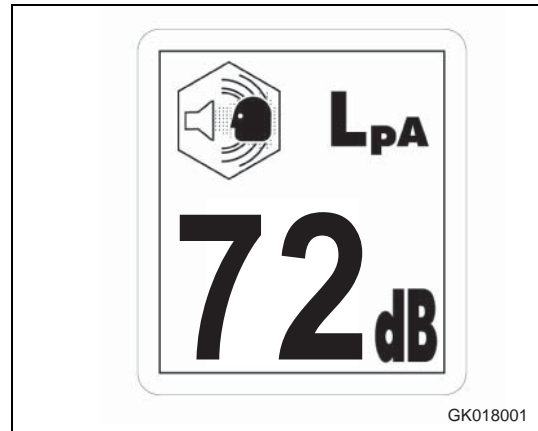
Safety precautions are described in "Safety (2-1)".

KOMATSU cannot predict every circumstance that might involve a potential hazard in operation and maintenance. Therefore the safety message in this manual and on the machine may not include all possible safety precautions. If any procedures or actions not specifically recommended or allowed in this manual are used, you must be sure that you and others can do such procedures and actions safely and without damaging the machine. If you are unsure about the safety of some procedures, contact KOMATSU or your KOMATSU distributor.

1.3 Noise emission levels

Two labels indicating the machine noise level are affixed on the machine.

- Sound pressure level at the operator's station, measured according to ISO6396 (Dynamic test method, simulated working cycle).
- Sound power level emitted by the machine, measured according to ISO 6395 (Dynamic test method, simulated working cycle). This is the guaranteed value as specified in European directive 2000/14/EC.



1.4 Vibration levels

When used for its intended purpose, levels of vibration for the earth-moving machine transmitted from the operator's seat are lower than or equal to the tested vibrations for the relative machinery class in compliance with ISO 7096.

The actual acceleration value for the hands and arms is less than or equal to 2.5 m/s². The actual acceleration value for the body is less than or equal to 0.5 m/s².

These values were determined using a representative machine and measured during the typical operating condition indicated below according to the measurement procedures that are defined in the standards ISO 2631/1 and ISO 5349.

Operating condition:

Excavating (Digging-loading-rotating-unloading-rotating)

1.4.1 Guide to reduce vibration levels on machine

The following guides can help an operator of this machine to reduce the whole body vibration levels:

1. Use the correct equipment and attachments.
2. Maintain the machine according to this manual
 - Tire pressures (for wheeled machines), tension of crawler (for crawler machines)
 - Brake and steering systems
 - Controls, hydraulic system and linkages
3. Keep the terrain where the machine is working and traveling in good condition
 - Remove any large rocks or obstacles
 - Fill any ditches and holes
 - Site manager should provide machine operators with machine and schedule time to maintain terrain conditions
4. Use a seat that meets ISO 7096 and keep the seat maintained and adjusted
 - Adjust the seat and suspension for the weight and size of the operator
 - Wear seat belt
 - Inspect and maintain the seat suspension and adjustment mechanisms

5. Steer, brake, accelerate, shift gears (for wheeled machines), and move the attachment levers and pedals slowly so that the machine moves smoothly
6. Adjust the machine speed and travel path to minimize the vibration level
 - When pushing with bucket or blade, avoid sudden loading; load gradually
 - Drive around obstacles and rough terrain conditions
 - Slow down when it is necessary to go over rough terrain
 - Make the curve radius of traveling path as large as possible
 - Travel at low speed when traveling around sharp curves
7. Minimize vibrations for long work cycle or long distance traveling
 - Reduce speed to prevent bounce
 - Transport machines long distances between worksites
8. The following guidelines can be effective to minimize risks of low back pain
 - Operate the machine only when you are in good health.
 - Provide breaks to reduce long periods of sitting in the same posture
 - Do not jump down from the cab or machine
 - Do not repeatedly handle and lift loads

1.5 Emergency steering

This machine is equipped with an emergency steering system and complies to ISO 5010 (BSEN 12643). In the event of failure of the source of power for the steering system (engine failure) whilst travelling, the machine can be steered allowing the machine to be safely stopped.

In such a case, the effort required at the steering wheel and the number of turns to steer the machine will increase. To confirm function of emergency steering system, raise the front wheels off the ground (using the work equipment) and with the engine off, turn the steering wheel and check movement of the wheels.

1.6 Emergency braking

This machine is equipped with an emergency braking system and complies to ISO 3450. In the event of failure of the source of power for the braking system (engine failure) whilst travelling, the brakes can be actuated from stored energy in the accumulators to bring the machine safely to a stop.

In such a case, five brake applications can be made before exhausting the energy in the accumulators. In the event of service brake failure, the park brake can be used as an emergency brake to bring the machine to a stop.

1.7 Introduction

1.7.1 Intended use

This KOMATSU HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR is designed to be used mainly for the following work:

- Digging
- Smoothing work
- Ditching work
- Loading work

See the section "Work possible using hydraulic excavator (3-141)" for further details.

1.7.2 Features

- This KOMATSU HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR is equipped with various controls based on an advanced electronics system.
- The monitor panel greatly facilitates daily maintenance and self-diagnosis.
- Working mode and travel speed are selectable.
- Digging and lifting force can be increased by light-touch control. (For details, see operation section.)
- Adjustable wrist control levers make operations smooth and easy.
- Fresh filtered air conditioner assures comfortable operation.
- Low noise level and smart urban style design and coloring.
- Superb operation performance provided by powerful engine (to European stage 3a regulations and EPA tier 3) and high-performance hydraulic pump.
- Low fuel consumption controlled by an electronic control system provides an environment-friendly machine.
- Sophisticated drive train provides fast and smooth travelling on the highway and off road.
- Proportional control HCU circuits.
- Quick coupler facility.

1.7.3 Running in your new machine

Your KOMATSU machine has been thoroughly adjusted and tested before shipment.

However, operating the machine under severe conditions at the beginning can adversely affect the performance and shorten the machine life.

Be sure to run in the machine for the initial 100 hours (as indicated by the hour meter).

During running in:

- Idle the engine for 5 minutes after starting it up.
- Avoid operation with heavy loads or at high speeds.
- Sudden starting or acceleration, unnecessarily abrupt braking and sharp turning should be avoided except in cases of emergency.

Additionally for the first 20 hours:

- Avoid operating engine for prolonged periods at constant speed (including idle).
- Avoid high speed travelling for periods of more than 5 minutes.

Pay particular attention to oil pressure and temperature indicators and check coolant and oil levels frequently during breaking in.

The precautions given in this manual for operating, maintenance, and safety procedures are only those that apply when this product is used for the specified purpose. If the machine is used for a purpose that is not listed in this manual, KOMATSU cannot bear any responsibility for safety. All consideration of safety in such operations is the responsibility of the user.

Operations that are prohibited in this manual must never be carried out under any circumstances.

1.8 Locations of plates, table to enter serial no. and distributor

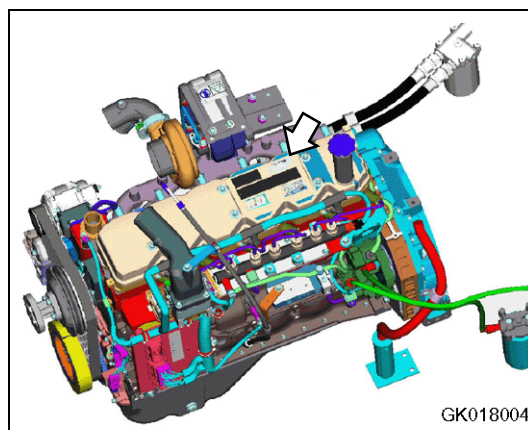
1.8.1 Machine serial no. plate position

On the front right of the undercarriage.



1.8.2 Engine serial no. plate position

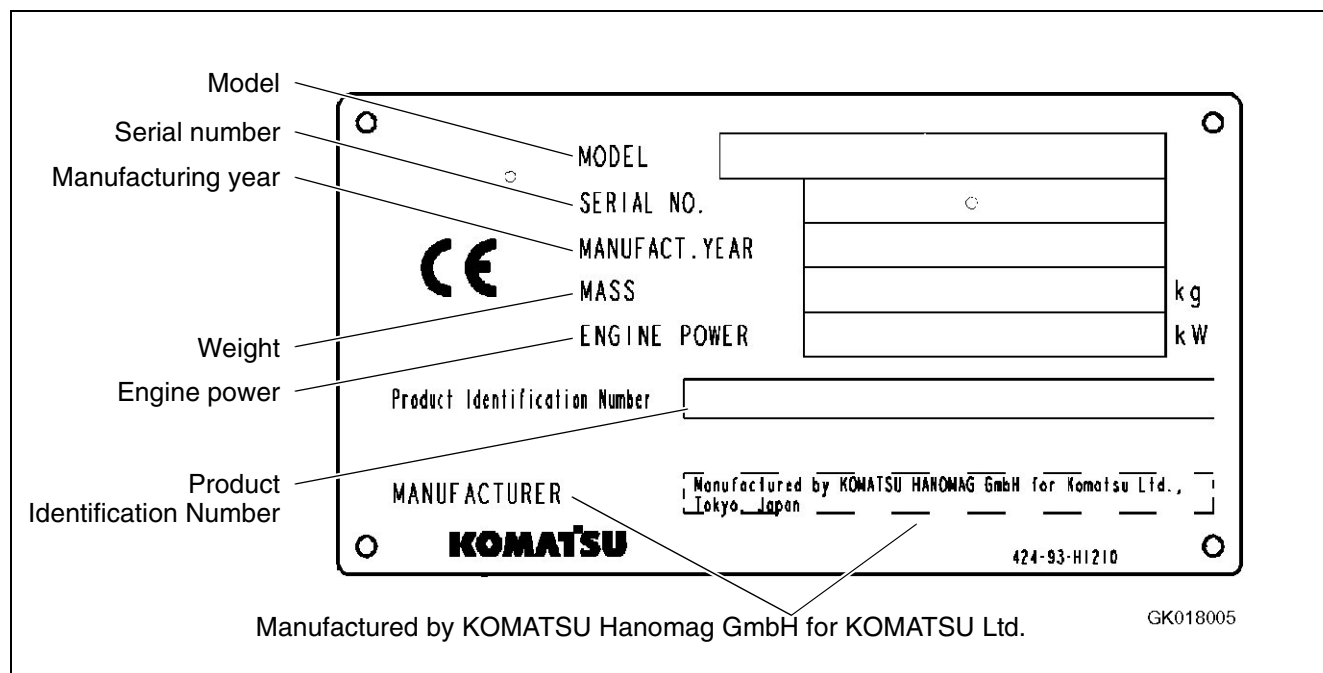
On the top of the engine.



1.8.3 Table to enter serial no. and distributor

Machine serial No.	
Engine serial No.	
Product identification number	
Manufacturer's name Address	KOMATSU Hanomag GmbH Hanomagstr. 9 D-30449 Hannover Germany
Distributor	
Address	
Phone	

1.8.4 Machine serial plates



1.9 Contents

1.	Foreword.....	1-1
1.1	Foreword	1-2
1.2	Safety information	1-3
1.2.1	Safety messages.....	1-3
1.3	Noise emission levels	1-4
1.4	Vibration levels	1-5
1.4.1	Guide to reduce vibration levels on machine.....	1-5
1.5	Emergency steering	1-7
1.6	Emergency braking	1-7
1.7	Introduction.....	1-8
1.7.1	Intended use	1-8
1.7.2	Features	1-8
1.7.3	Running in your new machine	1-9
1.8	Locations of plates, table to enter serial no. and distributor	1-10
1.8.1	Machine serial no. plate position	1-10
1.8.2	Engine serial no. plate position	1-10
1.8.3	Table to enter serial no. and distributor.....	1-10
1.8.4	Machine serial plates.....	1-11
1.9	Contents	1-12
2.	Safety	2-1
2.1	General precautions	2-2
	Safety rules	2-2
	Safety features	2-2
	Clothing and personal protective items	2-2
	Unauthorised modification.....	2-3
	Always apply (raise) safety lock lever when leaving operator's seat.....	2-3
	Always chock the wheels before going under the machine.....	2-4
	Mounting and dismounting	2-4
	Fire prevention for fuel and oil.....	2-5
	Precautions when handling at high temperatures	2-6
	Machines fitted with wheels.....	2-6
	Asbestos dust hazard prevention	2-6
	Crushing or cutting prevention.....	2-7
	Fire extinguisher and first aid kit	2-7
	Protection against falling or flying objects	2-8
	Precautions for attachments	2-9
	Precautions for accumulators	2-9
	Emergency exit	2-10
	Rotating beacon (option)	2-10
	Electromagnetic interference.....	2-10

2.2	Precaution during operation	2-11
2.2.1	Before starting engine	2-11
	Safety at worksite	2-11
	Fire prevention	2-11
	In operator's cab	2-12
	Ventilation for enclosed areas	2-12
	Precautions for mirrors, windows and lights	2-12
2.2.2	Operating machine	2-13
	When starting the engine	2-13
	Check direction before starting machine	2-13
	Check that no one is in the area before swinging or travelling in reverse	2-14
	Precautions when travelling	2-15
	Travelling on slopes	2-16
	Prohibited operations	2-17
	Do not go close to high-voltage cables	2-18
	Do not hit work equipment	2-18
	Ensure good visibility	2-18
	Operate carefully on snow	2-19
	Working on loose ground	2-19
	Do not hit the operator cab (for two piece boom only)	2-19
	Operations on slopes	2-20
	Parking the machine	2-20
2.2.3	Transportation	2-21
	Loading and unloading	2-21
	Shipping	2-21
2.2.4	Battery	2-22
	Battery hazard prevention	2-22
	Starting with booster cables	2-23
2.2.5	Towing	2-24
	When towing, attach wire to frame	2-24
	View on transmission	2-24
2.2.6	Bucket with hook or bucket link with lifting eye	2-25
	General precautions	2-25
	Precautions for lifting operation	2-28
2.2.7	Handling of fluids	2-29
	Handling of used engine oils	2-29
	Handling of oils	2-29
	Handling of fluids	2-29
2.3	Precautions for maintenance	2-30
2.3.1	Before carrying out maintenance	2-30
	Warning tag	2-30
	Proper tools	2-30
	Periodic replacement of safety critical parts	2-30
	Stop the engine before carrying out inspection and maintenance	2-31
	Rules to follow when adding fuel or oil	2-31
	Radiator water level	2-32
	Use of lighting	2-32

2.3.2	During maintenance	2-33
	Personnel	2-33
	Attachments	2-33
	Work under the machine	2-33
	Keep the machine clean	2-33
	Precautions with battery	2-34
	Handling high-pressure hoses	2-34
	Precautions with high pressure oil	2-34
	Precautions when carrying out maintenance at high temperature or high pressure	2-35
	Rotating fan and belt	2-35
	Waste materials	2-35
2.4	Position for attaching safety labels	2-36
2.4.1	Position for attaching safety labels	2-36
2.5	Lifting capacity chart PW180-7E0	2-44
2.5.1	One piece boom – Lift capacity tables for 2.5 metre undercarriage	2-44
2.5.2	One piece boom – Lift capacity tables for 2.75 metre undercarriage	2-50
2.5.3	Two piece boom – Lift capacity tables for 2.5 metre undercarriage	2-56
2.5.4	Two piece boom – Lift capacity tables for 2.75 metre undercarriage	2-62
2.6	Overload caution	2-68
2.6.1	Monoboom – Overload caution	2-69
2.6.2	Two piece boom – Overload caution	2-69
3.	Operation	3-1
3.1	General view	3-2
3.1.1	General view of machine	3-2
3.1.2	General view of controls and gauges	3-4
3.2	Explanation of components	3-6
3.2.1	Machine monitor	3-6
3.2.2	Basic operation of machine monitor	3-7
	If there is abnormality when starting engine	3-7
	If any abnormality occurs during operation	3-8
3.3	Basic check items	3-9
3.3.1	Caution items	3-11
3.3.2	Emergency stop items	3-15
3.3.3	Meter display portion	3-18
	Meters	3-21
	Monitor switches	3-25
	Adjustment screens	3-39
3.4	Switches	3-42
3.5	Control levers, pedals	3-54

3.6	Front window	3-61
	When opening	3-61
	When closing	3-64
	Removing front bottom window	3-65
3.7	Emergency exit from operator's cab	3-66
	Ceiling window	3-66
	Clear rain visor	3-66
	Pull down sun visor	3-67
	Door lock	3-67
3.8	Cap, cover with lock	3-68
3.8.1	Method of opening and closing cap with lock (for the fuel tank filler port)	3-68
3.8.2	Method of opening and closing cover with lock (cover with lock).	3-69
3.9	Fuse	3-70
3.9.1	Fuse box 1	3-70
3.9.2	Fuse Box 2	3-71
3.10	Luggage tray	3-72
3.11	Ashtray	3-72
3.12	Cup holder	3-72
3.13	Hot and cool box	3-73
3.14	Cab radio	3-73
3.15	Power pick-up port	3-74
3.16	Handling air conditioner	3-75
3.16.1	General locations of control panel	3-75
3.16.2	Method of operation	3-80
	Automatic operation	3-80
	Stopping automatic operation.	3-81
	Manual operation	3-82
	Stopping manual operation	3-83
	Operation with cold air to face and warm air to feet.	3-84
	Defroster operation.	3-85
3.16.3	Precautions when using air conditioner	3-87
3.16.4	Check, maintain machine equipped with air conditioner	3-88
3.16.5	Other functions.	3-88
	Self-diagnostic function	3-88
	Switch set temperature display between °F and °C.	3-89
3.17	Fusible link	3-90
3.18	Controller	3-90
3.19	Tool box (chassis)	3-90

3.20 Refuelling pump	3-91
3.20.1 Safety	3-91
3.20.2 Procedure	3-91
3.20.3 Maintenance	3-92
3.21 Warning lamps	3-93
3.22 Handling accumulators	3-94
3.22.1 Control circuit accumulator (A)	3-94
3.22.2 Clutch control accumulator (B)	3-95
3.22.3 Brake circuit accumulators (C) × 3	3-95
3.23 Operation	3-96
3.23.1 Check before starting engine	3-96
Walk-around check	3-96
3.23.2 Check before starting	3-98
Check coolant level, add water	3-98
Check oil level in engine oil pan, add oil	3-99
Check fuel level, add fuel	3-100
Check oil level in hydraulic tank, add oil	3-101
Check air cleaner for clogging	3-102
Check electric wiring	3-102
Check function of horn	3-103
Check for water and sediment in water separator, drain water	3-103
3.23.3 Adjustment of operator's seat (air suspension seat)	3-105
3.23.4 Rearview mirrors	3-107
3.23.5 Seat belt	3-108
Fastening and removing seat belt	3-108
3.23.6 Adjustment of operator's seat (mechanical seat)	3-109
Seat belt	3-109
3.23.7 Operations and checks before starting engine	3-110
3.23.8 Starting engine	3-112
Starting in cold weather	3-113
Operations and checks after starting engine	3-114
Warming up operation	3-115
In cold areas (automatic warming-up operation)	3-118
3.23.9 Moving machine off	3-122
Moving machine forward	3-122
3.23.10 Steering	3-125
3.23.11 Travelling on public highway	3-126
3.23.12 Stopping and parking	3-127
Stopping machine (emergency)	3-128
3.23.13 Swinging (slewing the upper carriage)	3-129
3.23.14 Operation of work equipment	3-130
Operation of dozer and outriggers	3-132
Precautions for using the dozer	3-133
3.23.15 Working mode selection	3-134
Working mode	3-134
One touch power max switch	3-134

3.23.16	Prohibitions for operation	3-135
3.23.17	Precautions for operation	3-137
3.23.18	Recommendations for travelling	3-138
3.23.19	Precautions when travelling up or down hills	3-139
3.23.20	How to escape from mud	3-140
	When one side is stuck	3-140
	When both sides are stuck	3-140
3.23.21	Work possible using hydraulic excavator	3-141
	Backhoe work	3-141
	Shovel work	3-141
	Ditching work	3-141
	Loading work	3-142
	Levelling work	3-142
3.23.22	Replacement and inversion of bucket	3-143
	Replacement	3-143
	Inversion	3-144
3.23.23	Stopping engine	3-145
	Check after finishing work	3-145
3.23.24	Check after stopping engine	3-146
	Locking	3-146
	Handling the wheels	3-146
3.24	Transportation	3-151
3.24.1	Transportation procedure	3-151
3.24.2	Loading, unloading work	3-151
3.24.3	Securing machine	3-154
3.24.4	Unloading	3-155
3.24.5	How to lift the machine	3-157
3.24.6	Precautions for transportation	3-159
3.24.7	Travelling posture	3-161
3.25	Cold weather operation	3-163
3.25.1	Precautions for low temperature	3-163
	Fuel and lubricants	3-163
	Battery	3-164
3.25.2	Precautions after completion of work	3-165
3.25.3	After cold weather	3-165
3.26	Long-term storage	3-166
3.26.1	Before storage	3-166
3.26.2	During storage	3-166
3.26.3	After storage	3-167
3.26.4	Starting machine after long-term storage	3-167
3.27	Troubleshooting	3-168
3.27.1	Phenomena that are not failures	3-168
3.28	Method of towing machine	3-169
3.29	Precautions on particular jobsites	3-170

3.30 Discharged battery	3-171
3.30.1 Removal and installation of battery	3-172
3.30.2 Battery charges	3-172
3.30.3 Starting engine with booster cables	3-173
Connecting and disconnecting booster cables	3-173
Booster cable connection	3-174
Starting the engine	3-174
Booster cable disconnection	3-175
3.31 Other trouble	3-176
3.31.1 Electrical system	3-176
3.31.2 Chassis	3-177
3.31.3 Engine	3-178
3.31.4 Electronic control system	3-180

4. Maintenance **4-1**

4.1 Guides to maintenance	4-2
4.2 Outline of service	4-6
4.2.1 Outline of oil, fuel, coolant	4-7
Oil	4-7
Fuel	4-8
Coolant	4-9
Grease	4-10
Carrying out KOWA (KOMATSU Oil Wear Analysis)	4-10
KOWA analysis items	4-11
Oil sampling	4-11
Storing oil and fuel	4-12
Filters	4-12
4.2.2 Outline of electric system	4-13
4.2.3 Outline of hydraulic system	4-14
4.3 Wear parts list	4-15
4.4 Use fuel, coolant and lubricants according to ambient temperature	4-16
4.4.1 Proper selection of fuel, coolant and lubricants	4-17
4.5 Recommended brands, recommended quality for products other than KOMATSU genuine oil	4-19
4.6 Standard tightening torques for bolts and nuts	4-20
4.6.1 Introduction of necessary tools	4-20
4.6.2 Tightening torque specifications	4-21
Tightening torque list	4-21
4.7 Periodic replacement of safety critical parts	4-22
4.7.1 Safety critical parts	4-23
4.8 Maintenance schedule chart	4-24
4.9 Key to lubrication points	4-28
4.10 Maintenance interval for hydraulic breaker	4-30

4.11	Maintenance procedure	4-31
4.11.1	Initial 50 hours maintenance (only after the first 50 hours)	4-31
	Check and tighten wheel nuts	4-31
4.11.2	Initial 250 hours maintenance (only after the first 250 hours)	4-31
	Replace fuel pre-filter cartridge	4-31
	Change oil in transmission, hubs and axles	4-31
4.11.3	Initial 500 hours maintenance (only after the first 500 hours)	4-32
	Replace fuel main filter cartridge	4-32
4.11.4	When required	4-33
	Check, clean and replace air cleaner element	4-33
	Clean inside of cooling system	4-39
	Clean inside of cooling system	4-40
	Checking coolant level	4-43
	Check the fan	4-46
	Check and tighten wheel nuts	4-46
	Check electrical intake air heater	4-47
	Check alternator	4-47
	Check start motor	4-48
	Replace bucket side cutters	4-48
	Replace bucket teeth	4-49
	Adjust bucket clearance	4-53
	Check window washer fluid level, add fluid	4-54
	Check and adjust air conditioner	4-55
	Drain engine breather oil catcher	4-56
4.11.5	Check before starting	4-57
	Check coolant level, add water	4-57
	Check oil level in engine oil pan, add oil	4-57
	Check fuel level, add fuel	4-58
	Check oil level in hydraulic tank, add oil	4-59
	Check air cleaner for clogging	4-60
	Check electric wiring	4-60
	Check for water and sediment in sedimentor. drain water and sediment	4-60
4.11.6	Every 50 hours service	4-61
	Drain water and sediment from fuel tank	4-61
4.11.7	Every 100 hours service	4-62
	Lubricating	4-62
	Cleaning fresh air filter	4-67
4.11.8	Every 250 hours service	4-68
	Check oil level in swing machinery case, add oil	4-68
	Check oil level in wheel hubs, add oil (front axle)	4-69
	Check oil level in wheel hubs, add oil (rear axle)	4-69
	Check oil level in axles, add oil	4-70
	Check oil level in transmission, add oil	4-70
	Check level of battery electrolyte	4-71
	Belts, general	4-72
	Check fan belt tension, adjust tension	4-73
	Check, adjust tension of air conditioner compressor belt	4-74

4.11.9	Every 500 hours service	4-75
	Replace fuel pre-filter cartridge	4-75
	Check swing pinion grease level, add grease	4-78
	Change oil in engine oil pan, replace engine oil filter cartridge	4-78
	Clean and inspect radiator fins, oil cooler fins and condenser fins	4-80
	Clean internal and external air filters of air conditioner system	4-81
	Cleaning recirculated air filter	4-81
	Replace hydraulic tank breather element	4-82
	Check condition of main valve rubber mounts	4-82
4.11.10	Every 1000 hours service	4-83
	Replace hydraulic filter element	4-83
	Change oil in swing machinery case	4-85
	Replace fuel main filter cartridge	4-86
	Check all tightening points of engine exhaust pipe clamps	4-87
	Check oil level in damper case, add oil	4-88
	Check all tightening parts of turbocharger	4-89
	Check play of turbocharger rotor	4-89
	Check and adjust valve clearance	4-89
	Check fan belt tensioner bearing belt and fan hub	4-89
	Check fan belt tension and replace fan belt	4-89
	Change oil in axles	4-90
	Change oil in hubs	4-91
	Change oil in transmission assembly	4-92
	Change oil in damper	4-92
4.11.11	Every 2000 hours service	4-93
	Clean hydraulic tank strainer	4-93
	Cleaning the strainer of the brake filter	4-94
	Checking charge pressure of nitrogen gas in accumulator (for control circuit)	4-95
	Checking function of accumulator	4-96
	Method of releasing pressure in hydraulic circuit	4-97
	Clean, check turbocharger	4-98
	Check alternator, starting motor	4-98
	Change antifreeze	4-98
	Check and adjust valve clearance	4-98
4.11.12	Every 4000 hours service	4-99
	Check water pump	4-99
	Check vibration damper	4-99
	Replace accumulator (for control circuit)	4-100
	Check for looseness of high-pressure piping clamp, hardening of rubber	4-101
	Check for missing fuel spray prevention cap, hardening of rubber	4-101
	Check operating condition of compressor	4-102
4.11.13	Every 5000 hours service	4-103
	Change oil in hydraulic tank and replace steer/brake circuit strainer	4-103
	Procedure for bleeding air	4-105

5.	Technical Data	5-1
5.1	Specifications	5-2
5.1.1	One piece boom	5-3
5.1.2	Two piece boom	5-4
5.1.3	Working range – One piece boom	5-5
5.1.4	Working range – Two piece boom	5-6
6.	Attachments, Options	6-1
6.1	General precautions	6-2
6.1.1	Precautions related to safety	6-2
6.2	Precautions when installing attachments	6-3
6.3	Hydraulic quick coupler piping	6-5
6.3.1	Locations	6-6
6.3.2	Operation	6-7
	To release a bucket or attachment	6-7
	To pick up a new bucket or attachment	6-8
6.4	Handling bucket with hook	6-10
6.4.1	Checking for damage to bucket with hook	6-10
6.4.2	Prohibited operations	6-10
6.4.3	Precautions during operations	6-10
6.5	Machines ready for attachments	6-11
6.5.1	Clamshell operation selector valves	6-11
	Selector valve in normal position for bucket cylinder operation	6-11
6.5.2	Handling the clamshell bucket	6-13
	How to install clamshell bucket	6-13
	How to operate	6-13
6.5.3	Hydraulic circuit	6-15
	Switching hydraulic circuit	6-15
6.5.4	Operation	6-16
	When using crusher or other general attachment	6-18
	When using breaker	6-19
6.5.5	Method for releasing pressure in control circuit of machines equipped with accumulator	6-20
6.5.6	Long-term storage	6-20
6.5.7	Specifications	6-20
6.6	Introduction of attachments and extending machine service life	6-21
6.6.1	Hydraulic breaker	6-21
6.6.2	Power ripper	6-25
6.6.3	Fork grab	6-27
6.6.4	Grapple bucket	6-29
6.6.5	Scrap grapple	6-31
6.6.6	Crusher and smasher	6-33
6.6.7	Hydraulic pile driver	6-35
6.6.8	Hydraulic excavator with multipurpose crane	6-37

6.7	Rotating arm	6-39
6.7.1	General location and specifications.	6-39
6.7.2	Maintenance requirement	6-40
	Every 100 hours service	6-40
	Every 250 hours service	6-41
	Every 500 hours service	6-42
	Every 1000 hours service	6-42
6.7.3	General view of controls	6-43
	Left control lever (with auto-deceleration device)	6-44
	Right control lever (with auto-deceleration device)	6-44
	Upper boom control pedal (two piece boom).	6-45
6.7.4	Excavator's work	6-46
6.7.5	Replacement of bucket	6-48
	Handling the trapezoidal bucket (option)	6-49
	How to perform excavation	6-50
7.	Index	7-1
7.1	Index	7-2
8.	Notes	8-1



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

2. Safety



WARNING

Read and follow all safety precautions. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death.

This safety section also contains precautions for optional equipment and attachments.



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

2.1 General precautions

Safety rules

- ONLY trained and authorised personnel can operate and maintain the machine.
- Follow all safety rules, precautions and instructions when operating or performing maintenance on the machine.
- When working with another operator or a person on work site traffic duty, be sure all personnel understand all hand signals that are to be used.

Safety features

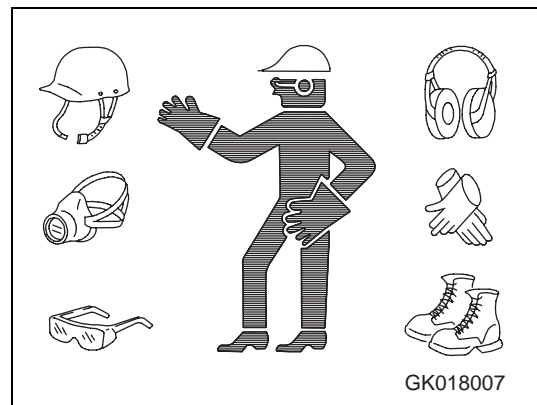
- Be sure all guards and covers are in their proper position. Have guards and covers repaired if damaged.
- Use safety features such as safety lock lever at all times.
- NEVER remove any safety features. ALWAYS keep them in good operating condition.
- Always wear safety belt when operating machine.
- Improper use of safety features could result in serious bodily injury or death.

Clothing and personal protective items

- Avoid loose clothing, jewelry, and loose long hair. They can catch on controls or in moving parts and cause serious injury or death. Also, do not wear oily clothes because they are flammable.
- Wear a hard hat, safety glasses, safety shoes, mask or gloves when operating or maintaining the machine. Always wear safety goggles, hard hat and heavy gloves if your job involves scattering metal chips or minute materials, this is so particularly when driving pins with a hammer and when cleaning the air cleaner element with compressed air. Check also that there is no one near the machine.

Driving in pins, see "Replacement and inversion of bucket (3-143)".

Cleaning of air cleaner element, see "When required (4-33)" in service procedure.





WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Unauthorised modification

- Any modification made without authorisation from KOMATSU can create hazards.
- Before making a modification, consult your KOMATSU distributor. KOMATSU will not be responsible for any injury or damage caused by any unauthorised modification.

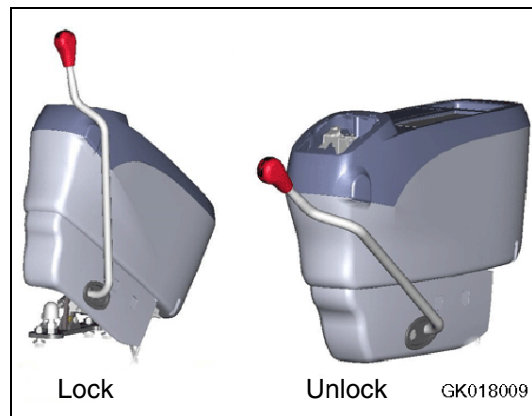
Always apply (raise) safety lock lever when leaving operator's seat

- When standing up from the operator's seat, always raise the safety lock lever to the LOCK position. If you accidentally touch the travel or swing lever when they are not locked, the machine may suddenly move and cause serious injury or damage.

REMARK

In certain conditions it may be possible for the safety lock lever to contact the left hand arm rest on the operator seat. To avoid this, always ensure that the left hand arm rest is stowed in the fully up position before operating the safety lock lever.

- When leaving the machine, lower the work equipment completely to the ground, set the safety lock lever to the LOCK position, then stop the engine and use the key to lock the machine. Always take the key with you.



WARNING

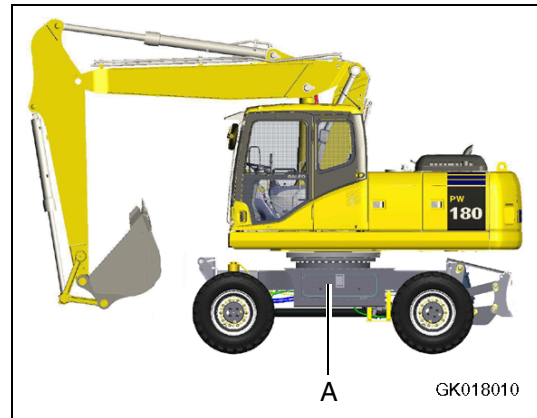
If the control lever is touched by accident, the work equipment or the machine may move suddenly, and this may lead to a serious accident. Before leaving the operator's compartment, always raise the safety lock lever to lock the work equipment controls.



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

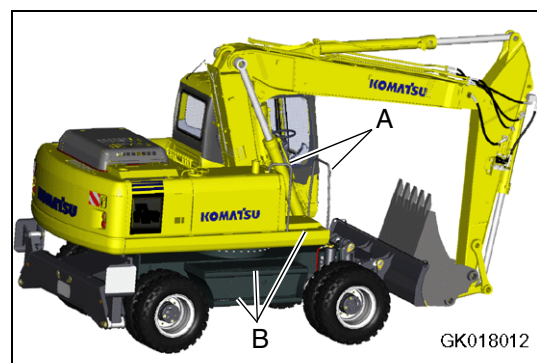
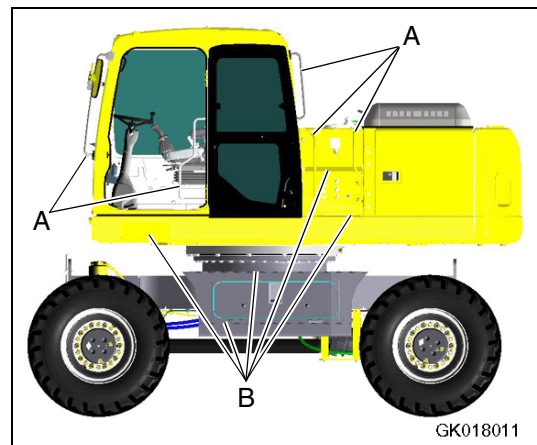
Always chock the wheels before going under the machine

- The chocks are located in the left hand toolbox (A) on the machine.



Mounting and dismounting

- NEVER jump on or off the machine. NEVER get on or off a moving machine.
- When mounting or dismounting, always face the machine and use the handrails (A), machine or chassis steps (B).
- Do not hold any control levers when getting on or off the machine.
- Ensure safety by always maintaining at least three-point contact of hands and feet with the handrails or steps.
- Always remove any oil or mud from the handrails and steps. If they are damaged, repair them and tighten any loose bolts.
- If grasping the door handrail when mounting or dismounting or moving on the chassis steps, open and lock the door securely in the open position. Otherwise, the door may move suddenly, causing you to lose balance and fall.



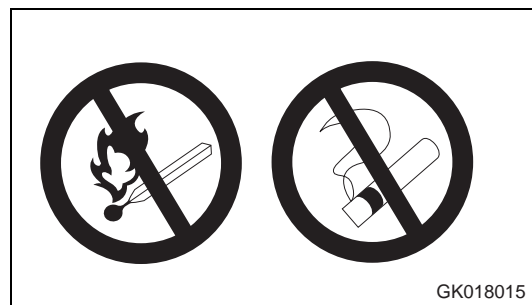
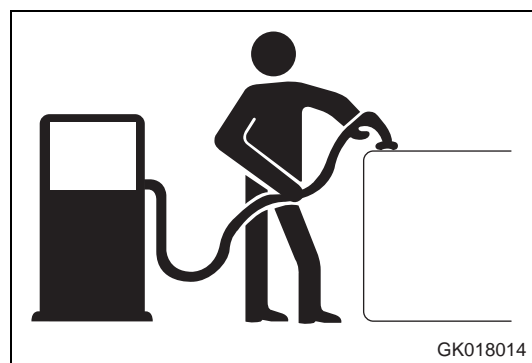
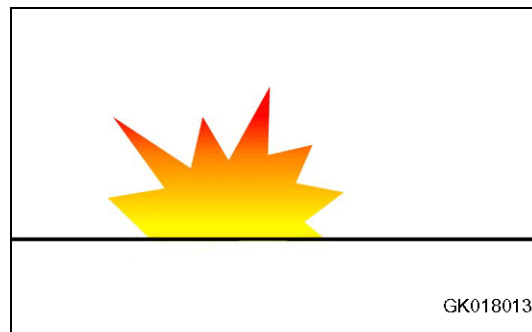


WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Fire prevention for fuel and oil

Fuel, oil, and antifreeze can be ignited by a flame. Fuel is particularly **FLAMMABLE** and can be **HAZARDOUS**.

- Keep flames away from flammable fluids.
 - Stop the engine and do not smoke when refuelling.
 - Tighten all fuel and oil caps securely.
-
- Refuelling and oiling should be carried out in well ventilated areas.
-
- Keep oil and fuel in a secure place and do not allow unauthorised persons to enter.





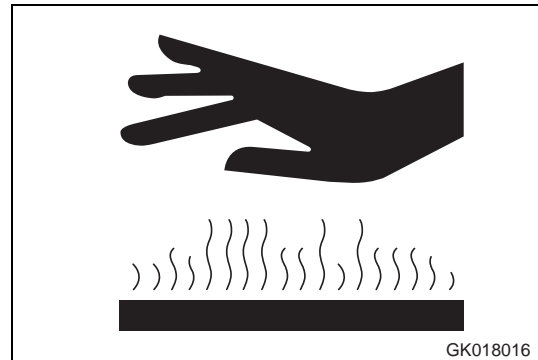
WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Precautions when handling at high temperatures

Immediately after operations are stopped, the engine coolant, engine oil, and hydraulic oil are at high temperatures, and are still under pressure. Attempting to remove the cap, drain the oil or water, or replace the filters may lead to serious burns. Always wait for the temperature to go down, and follow the specified procedures when carrying out these operations.

To prevent hot water from spurting out:

1. Turn engine off.
2. Allow water to cool.
3. Slowly loosen cap to relieve pressure before removing.



To prevent hot oil from spurting out:

1. Turn engine off.
2. Allow oil to cool.
3. Slowly loosen cap to relieve pressure before removing.

Machines fitted with wheels

Never perform any repair work or modifications to wheel rims while the tyres are fitted, and never apply heat in the vicinity of the tyres.

Asbestos dust hazard prevention

Asbestos dust in the air can cause lung cancer if it is inhaled. There is danger of inhaling asbestos when working on jobsites handling demolition work or work handling industrial waste. Always observe the following.

- Spray water to keep down the dust when cleaning. Do not use compressed air for cleaning.
- If there is danger that there may be asbestos dust in the air, always operate the machine from an upwind position. All workers should use an approved respirator.
- Do not allow other persons to approach during the operation.
- Always observe the rules and regulations for the work site and environmental standards.

This machine does not use asbestos, but there is a danger that imitation parts may contain asbestos, so always use genuine KOMATSU parts.





WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Crushing or cutting prevention

Do not enter, or put your hand or arm or any other part of your body between movable parts such as between the work equipment and cylinders, or between the machine and work equipment.

If the work equipment is operated, the clearance will change and this may lead to serious damage, personal injury or death.

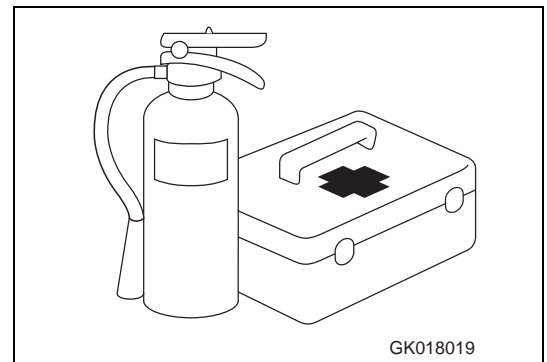
If any of the windows of the operators cabin is broken replace it immediately to prevent the risk of accidental contact with moving parts.



GK018018

Fire extinguisher and first aid kit

- Know how to use fire extinguisher (if installed).
- Provide a first aid kit at the storage point.
- Know what to do in the event of a fire.
- Be sure you know the phone numbers of persons you should contact in case of an emergency.



GK018019



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Protection against falling or flying objects

If there is any danger of falling or flying objects hitting the operator, install protective guards to protect the operator as required for each particular situation.

- For work with breakers, install a front guard on the windshield. Also, place a laminate coating sheet over the windshield.
- For demolition or shear work, install a front guard on the windshield and a top guard on the cab. Also, place a laminate coating sheet over the windshield.
- For work in mines, quarries, demolition, tunnels or other places where there is danger of falling rocks, put FOPS (falling object protective structure) in place. Also, place a laminate coating sheet over the windshield.

The above comments are made with regards to typical working conditions. By all means you should put on other guards if required by conditions at your particular site.

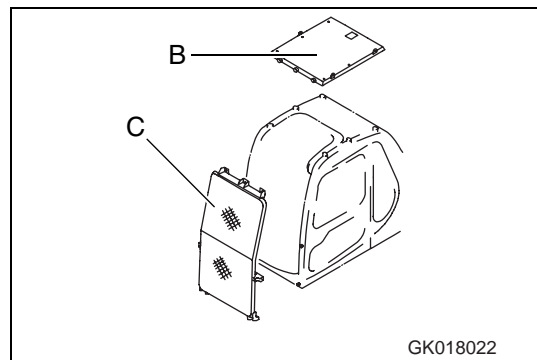
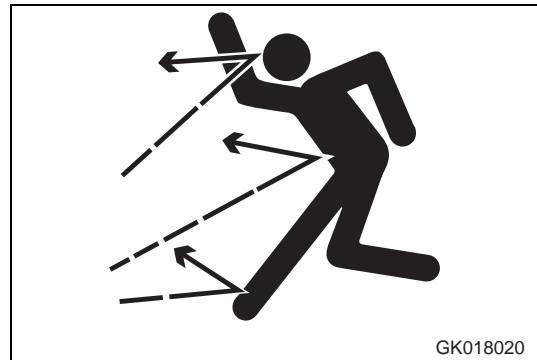
For details of safety guards, please contact your KOMATSU distributor.

Also, even for other types of work, if there is any danger of being hit by falling or flying objects or of objects entering the operator's cab, select and install a guard that matches the working conditions.

Be sure to close the front window before commencing work.

- B. Top guard
- C. Front guard

When carrying out the above operations, make sure to keep all persons other than the operator outside the range of falling or flying objects. Be particularly sure to maintain a proper distance when carrying out shear operations.





WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Precautions for attachments

- When installing and using an optional attachment, read the instruction manual for the attachment and the information related to attachments in this manual.
- Do not use attachments that are not authorised by KOMATSU or your KOMATSU distributor. Use of unauthorised attachments could create a safety problem and adversely affect the proper operation and useful life of the machine.
- Any injuries, accidents, product failures resulting from the use of unauthorised attachments will not be the responsibility of KOMATSU.

Precautions for accumulators

This machine is equipped with an accumulator in the control circuit. For a short time after the engine is stopped, if the key is in the "ON" position, the work equipment will lower under its own weight when the work equipment control lever is shifted to LOWER. After the engine is stopped, raise safety lock lever to the LOCK position.

When releasing the pressure inside the work equipment circuit on machines equipped with an accumulator, follow the procedure given in the inspection and maintenance section.

Method of releasing pressure, see "Handling accumulators (3-94)".

The accumulator is filled with high-pressure nitrogen gas, and it is extremely dangerous if it is handled in the wrong way. Always observe the following precautions.

- Never make any hole in the accumulator or expose it to flame or fire.
- Do not weld anything to the accumulator.
- When carrying out disassembly or maintenance of the accumulator, or when disposing of the accumulator, it is necessary to release the gas from the accumulator. A special bleed valve is necessary for this operation, so please contact your KOMATSU distributor.

Gas in accumulator, see "Handling accumulators (3-94)".

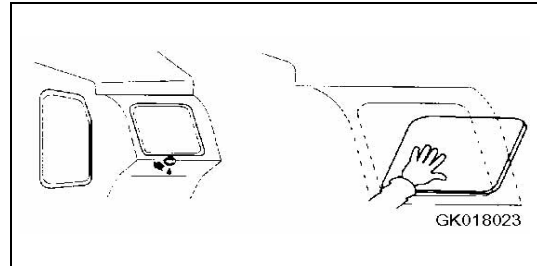


WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Emergency exit

When exit by normal means is prevented in an emergency you can get out through the emergency exit (rear window).

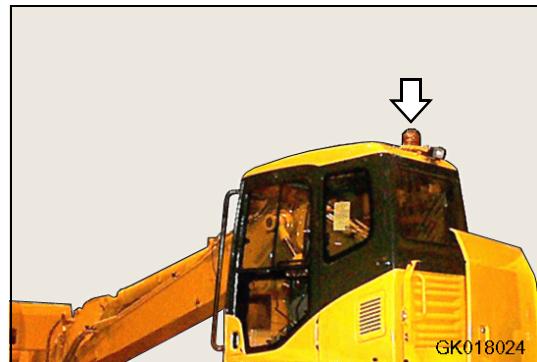
Pull the ring at the bottom of the window and remove strip. This will allow you to push out glass.



Rotating beacon (option)

When the machine is operated on or beside a road, a rotating beacon is required to avoid a traffic accident.

Contact your KOMATSU distributor to install beacon lamp.



Electromagnetic interference

When this machine is operating close to a source of high electromagnetic interference, such as a radar station, some abnormal phenomena may be observed.

- The display on the monitor panel may behave erratically.
- The warning buzzer may sound.
- There may be a temporary reduction in machine travel speed.

These effects do not signify a malfunction and the machine will return to normal as soon as the source of interference is removed.



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

2.2 Precaution during operation

2.2.1 Before starting engine

Safety at worksite

- Before starting the engine, thoroughly check the area for any unusual conditions that could be dangerous.
- Before starting the engine, examine the terrain and soil conditions of the work site. Determine the best and safest method of operation.
- Make the slope as horizontal as possible before continuing operations.
- If you need to operate on a street, protect pedestrians and cars by designating a person for work site traffic duty or by installing fences around the work site.
- If water lines, gas lines, and high-voltage electrical lines may be buried under the work site, contact each utility and identify their locations. Be careful not to sever or cut any of these lines.
- Check the depth and flow of water before operating in water or crossing a river. NEVER be in water which is in excess of the permissible water depth.

Permissible water depth, see "Precautions for operation (3-137)".

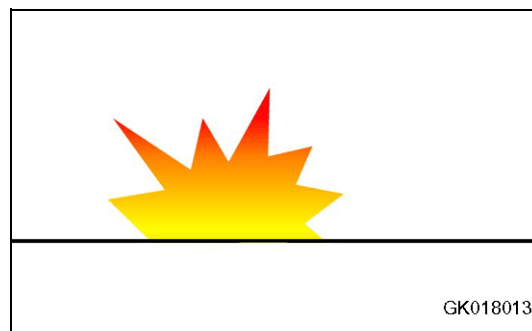


Fire prevention

- Thoroughly remove wood chips, leaves, paper and other flammable things accumulated in the engine compartment. They could cause a fire.
- Check fuel, lubrication, and hydraulic systems for leaks. Have any leaks repaired. Wipe up any excess oil, fuel or other flammable fluids.

Check point, see "Walk-around check (3-96)".

- Be sure a fire extinguisher is present and working.





WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

In operator's cab

- Do not leave tools or spare parts lying around in the operator's compartment. They may damage or break the control levers or switches. Always put them in the tool box on the undercarriage.
- Keep the cab floor, controls, steps and handrails free of oil, grease, snow, and excess dirt.

Ventilation for enclosed areas

If it is necessary to start the engine within an enclosed area, provide adequate ventilation. Exhaust fumes from the engine can KILL.



Precautions for mirrors, windows and lights

- Remove all dirt from the surface of the windows and lights to ensure that you can see well.
- Adjust the rear view mirrors so that you can see clearly from the operator's seat, and always keep the surface of the mirrors clean. If any glass is broken, replace it with a new part.
- Check that the head lamps and working lamps are installed to match the operating conditions. Check also that they light up properly.



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

2.2.2 Operating machine

When starting the engine

- Walk around for machine again just before mounting it, to check for people and objects that might be in the way.
- NEVER start the engine if a warning tag has been attached to the wrist control.
- Check that the mirrors are installed and adjusted correctly, see "Rearview mirrors (3-107)".
- Before starting the engine, sound the horn as an alert.
- Start and operate the machine only while seated.
- Do not allow anyone other than the operator to ride in the cab or on the machine body.
- For machines equipped with a reverse alarm buzzer, check that the warning device operates correctly.

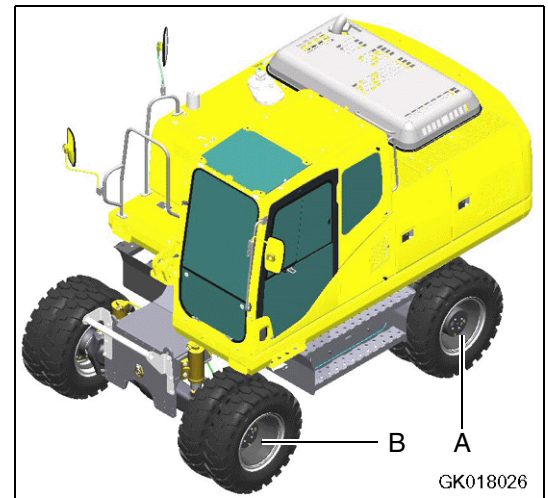
Check direction before starting machine

Before operating the travel pedal, check the direction of the under carriage.

If the fixed axle is at the front, the forward/neutral/reverse lever and steering will function in the opposite direction.

- A. Fixed axle
- B. Oscillating axle

Travel operations, see "Walk-around check (3-96)".

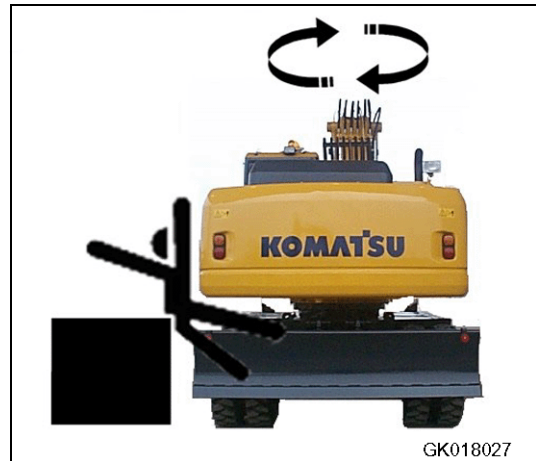




WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Check that no one is in the area before swinging or travelling in reverse

- Always position a signalman when operating in dangerous places or places where the view is not clear.
- Make sure that no one comes inside the swing radius or direction of travel.
- Before starting to move, sound the horn or give a signal to warn people not to come close to the machine.
- Make use of all mirrors to ensure that the area around the machine is clear.



- There are blind spots behind the machine, so if necessary, swing the upper structure to check that there is no one behind the machine before travelling in reverse.





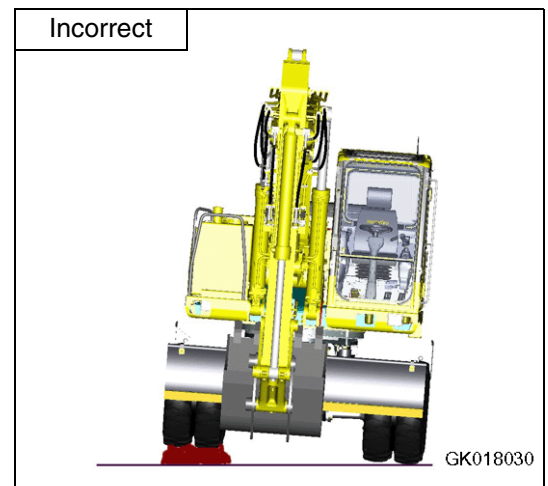
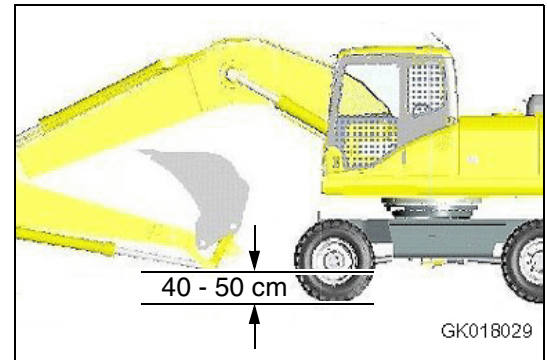
WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Precautions when travelling

- Fold in the work equipment as shown in the diagram, and keep it at a height of 40 - 50 cm from the ground level before starting to travel.
- Before travelling on public roads, fully raise dozer blade and outriggers, lock the outriggers in position with the safety pin, lock the arm cylinder with isolation valve if installed, centralise the upper structure and activate the swing lock.

For details, see "Travelling on public highway (3-126)".

- When travelling on public roads the safety lock lever should be down (UNLOCKED) and lock lever switch engaged. This prevents operation of the control levers.
- When travelling on rough ground, travel at low speed, and avoid sudden changes in direction.
- Avoid travelling over obstacles as far as possible. If the machine has to travel over an obstacle, keep the work equipment as close to the ground as possible and travel at low speed. Never travel over obstacles which make the machine tilt strongly (10° or more).





WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Travelling on slopes

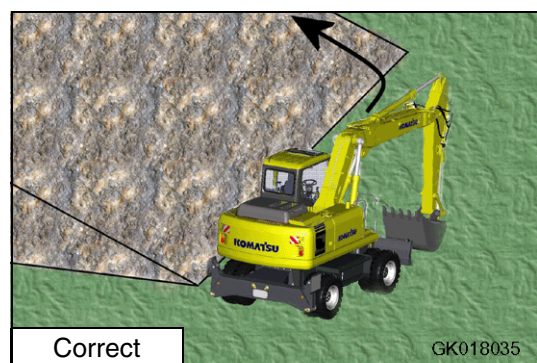
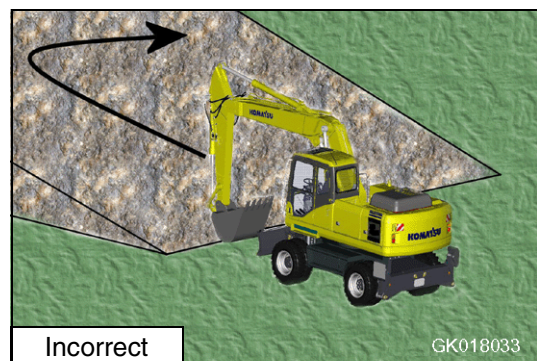
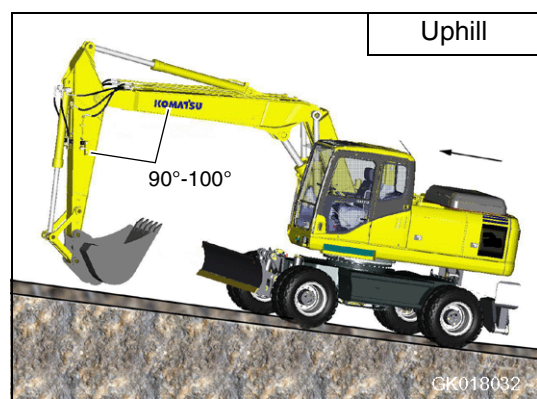
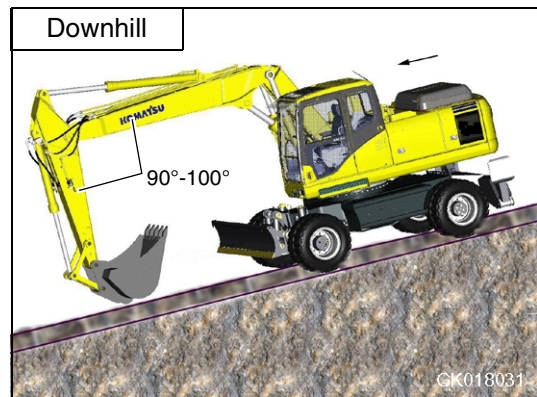
Travelling on hills, banks or slopes that are steep could result in the machine tipping over or slipping.

On hills, banks or slopes, carry the bucket closer to the ground, approximately 20 to 30 cm above the ground. In case of emergency, quickly lower the bucket to the ground to help the machine stop and prevent it from tipping over.

Do not turn on slopes or travel across slopes. Always go down to a flat place to perform these operations.

Method of travelling on slopes, see "Precautions when travelling up or down hills (3-139)".

Do not travel up and down on grass, fallen leaves, or wet steel plates. These materials may allow the machine to slip. Keep travel speed very low on such materials, even on flat ground.

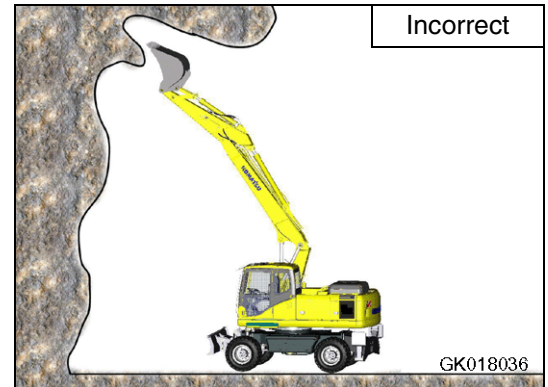




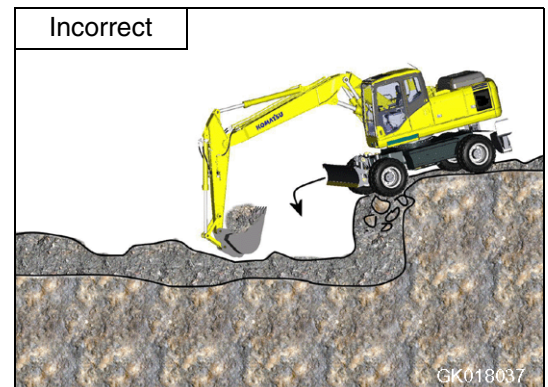
WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Prohibited operations

Do not dig the work face under an overhang. This may cause the overhang to collapse and fall on top of the machine.



Do not carry out deep digging under the front of the machine. The ground under the machine may collapse and cause the machine to fall.





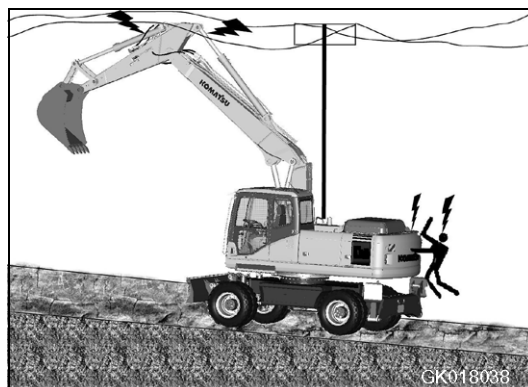
WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Do not go close to high-voltage cables

Do not travel or operate the machine near electric cables. There is a hazard of electric shock, which may cause serious injury or property damage. On jobsites where the machine may go close to electric cables, always do as follows.

- Even going close to high-voltage cables can cause electric shock, which may cause serious burns or even death. Always maintain a safe distance (see the table on the right) between the machine and the electric cable. Check with the local power company about safe operating procedure before starting operations.
- To prepare for any possible emergencies, wear rubber shoes and gloves. Lay a rubber sheet on top of the seat, and be careful not to touch the chassis with any exposed part of your body.
- Use a signalman to give warning if the machine approaches too close to the electric cables.
- When carrying out operations near high voltage cables, do not let anyone near the machine.
- If the machine should come too close or touch the electric cable, to prevent electric shock, the operator should not leave the operator's compartment until it has been confirmed that the electricity has been shut off.

Also, do not let anyone near the machine.



Voltage	Min. safety distance
6.6 kV	3 m
33.0 kV	4 m
66.0 kV	5 m
154.0 kV	8 m
275.0 kV	10 m

Do not hit work equipment

When working in places where there are height limits, such as in tunnels, under bridges, under electric cables, or in garages, be extremely careful not to hit the boom or arm.

Ensure good visibility

- When working in dark places, install working lamps, and set up lighting in the work area if necessary.
- Stop operations if the visibility is poor, such as in mist, snow, or rain, and wait for the weather to improve to a condition that allows the operation to be carried out safely.



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Operate carefully on snow

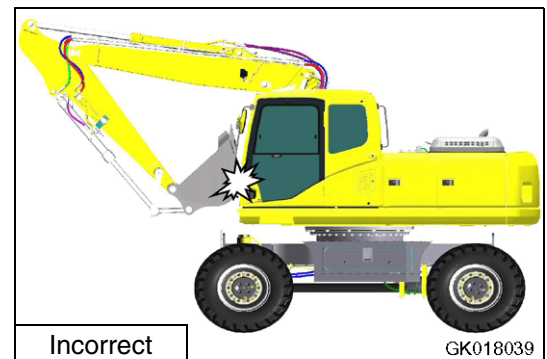
- When working on snow or icy roads, even a slight slope may cause the machine to slip to the side, so always travel at low speed and avoid sudden starting, stopping, or turning.
- When there has been heavy snow, the road shoulder and objects placed beside the road are buried in the snow and cannot be seen, so always carry out snow-clearing operations carefully.

Working on loose ground

- Avoid operating your machine too close to the edge of cliffs, overhangs, and deep ditches. If these areas collapse, your machine could fall or tip over and result in serious injury or death. Remember that the soil after heavy rain or blasting is weakened in these areas.
- Earth laid on the ground and the soil near ditches are loose. They can collapse under the weight or vibration of your machine.
- Install the HEAD GUARD (FOPS) if working in areas where there is danger of falling rocks and dirt.

Do not hit the operator cab (for two piece boom only)

- When the second boom cylinder is retracted, the bucket or the attachment can hit the operator cab or chassis.
- Operate work equipment slowly and carefully to avoid any injury and damage.

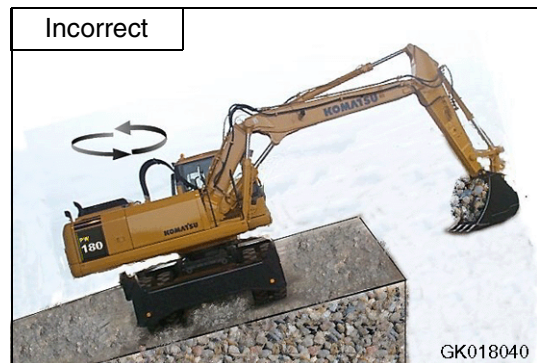




WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

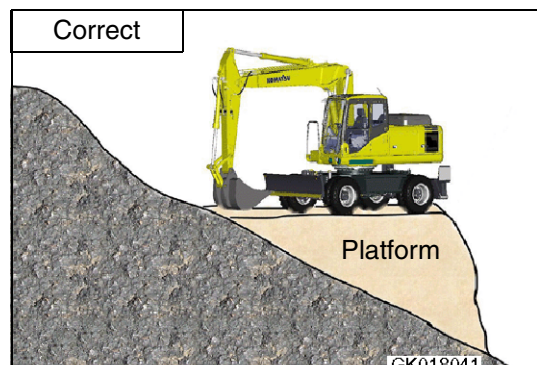
Operations on slopes

- When working on slopes, there is danger that the machine may lose its balance and turn over when the swing or work equipment are operated. Always carry out these operations carefully.
- Do not swing the work equipment from the uphill side to the downhill side when the bucket is loaded. This operation is dangerous.
(See the upper diagram on the right.)



- If the machine has to be used on a slope, pile the soil to make a platform that will keep the machine as horizontal as possible.
(See the lower diagram on the right.)

Piled soil on slope, see "Precautions when travelling up or down hills (3-139)".



Parking the machine

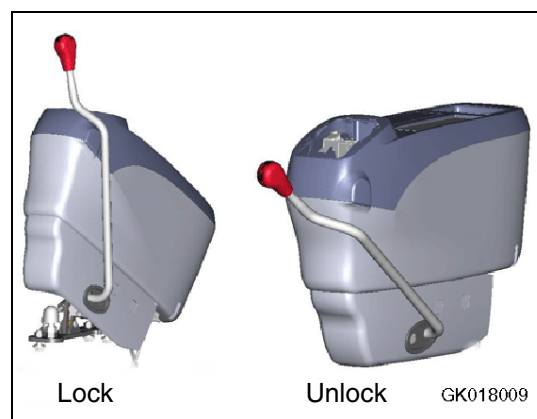
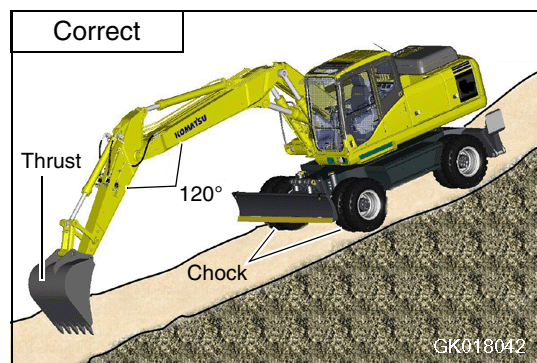
Park on level ground whenever possible. If not possible, chock the wheels, lower the bucket to the ground and thrust the bucket in the ground.

- When parking on public roads, provide fences and signs, such as flags or lights, on the machine to warn passers by to be careful. Be sure that the machine, flags or lights do not obstruct traffic.

REMARK

In certain conditions it may be possible for the safety lock lever to contact the left hand arm rest on the operator seat. To avoid this, always ensure that the left hand arm rest is stowed in the fully up position before operating the safety lock lever.

- When leaving the machine, lower the work equipment completely to the ground, raise the safety lock lever to the LOCK position, then stop the engine and use the key to lock the machine. Always take the key with you.



WARNING

if the control lever is touched by accident, the work equipment or the machine may move suddenly, and this may lead to a serious accident. Before leaving the operator's compartment, always raise the safety lock lever to lock the work equipment controls.

Places to lock, see "Locking (3-146)".



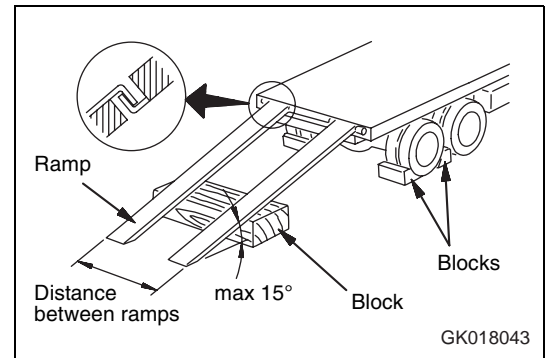
WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

2.2.3 Transportation

Loading and unloading

- Loading and unloading the machine always involves potential hazards. **EXTREME CAUTION SHOULD BE USED.** When loading or unloading the machine, run the engine at low idling and travel at low speed.
- Perform loading and unloading on firm, level ground only. Maintain a safe distance from the edge of a road.
- **ALWAYS** block the wheels of the hauling vehicle and place blocks under both ramps before loading and unloading.
- **ALWAYS** use ramps of adequate strength. Be sure the ramps are wide and long enough to provide a safe loading slope.
- Be sure that the ramps are securely positioned and fastened, and that the two sides are at the same level as one another.
- Be sure the ramp surface is clean and free of grease, oil, ice and loose materials. Remove dirt from the machine wheels.
- **NEVER** correct your steering on the ramps. If necessary, drive away from the ramps and climb again.
- Swing the upper structure with extreme care on the trailer to avoid a possible accident caused by body instability.
- After loading, block the machine wheels and secure the machine with tie-downs.
- Do not slew the machine when the work equipment has been removed or the machine has been supplied without work equipment.
- The machine may tip if the machine slewed when no work equipment is fitted.

Loading and unloading, see "Transportation (3-151)".



Shipping

- When shipping the machine on a hauling vehicle, obey all state and local laws governing the weight, width, and length of a load. Also obey all applicable traffic regulations.
- Determine the shipping route while taking into account the width, height and weight of the load.



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

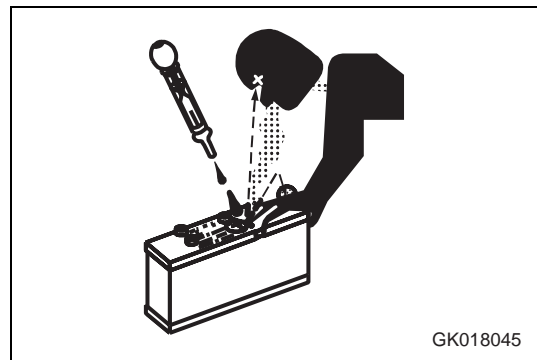
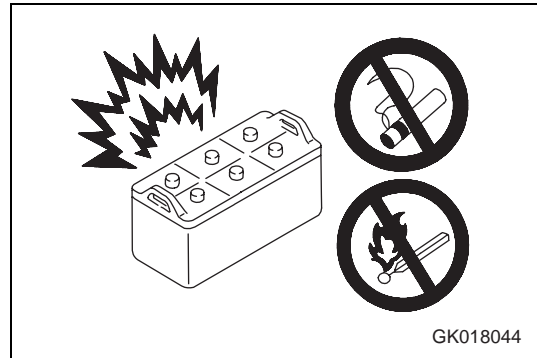
2.2.4 Battery

Battery hazard prevention

Battery electrolyte contains sulfuric acid, and batteries generate flammable hydrogen gas, which may explode.

Mistaken handling can lead to serious injury or fire. For this reason, always observe the following precautions.

- Do not use or charge the battery if the battery electrolyte level is below the LOWER LEVEL line. This may cause an explosion. Check the battery electrolyte level periodically and add distilled water to bring the electrolyte level to the UPPER LEVEL line.
- When working with batteries, wear safety glasses and rubber gloves.
- Never smoke or use any flame near the battery.
- If you spill acid on your clothes or skin, immediately flush the area with large amounts of water.
- If acid gets into your eyes, flush them immediately with large quantities of water and seek medical attention.
- Before working with batteries, turn the starting switch to the OFF position.



Because there is a danger that sparks will be generated, always do as follows.

- Do not let tools or other metal objects make any contact between the battery terminals. Do not leave tools or other metal objects lying around near the battery.
- Always disconnect the negative (-) terminal (ground side) first when removing the battery; when installing the battery, connect the positive (+) terminal first, and connect the ground last. Tighten the battery terminals securely.
- Flammable hydrogen gas is generated when the battery is charged, so remove the battery from the chassis, take it to a well-ventilated place, and remove the battery caps before charging it.
- Tighten the battery caps securely.
- Install the battery securely to the determined place.

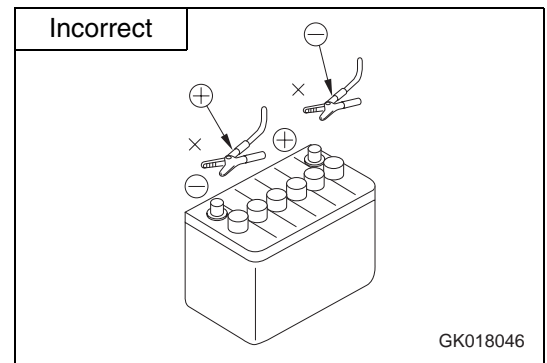


WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Starting with booster cables

- ALWAYS wear safety glasses or goggles when starting the machine with booster cables.
- When starting from another machine, do not allow the two machines to touch.
- Be sure to connect the positive (+) cable first when installing the booster cables. Disconnect the ground or negative (-) cable first when removing them.
- If any tool touches between the positive (+) terminal and the chassis, it will cause sparks. This is dangerous, so be sure to work carefully.
- Connect the batteries in parallel between the two machines: positive to positive and negative to negative.
- When connecting the ground cable to the frame of the machine to be started, be sure to connect it as far away as possible from the battery.

Starting with booster cables, see "Discharged battery (3-171)".





WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

2.2.5 Towing

When towing, attach wire to frame

- Injury or death could result if a disabled machine is towed incorrectly.
- If your machine is towed by another machine, ALWAYS use a wire rope with a sufficient towing capacity.
- NEVER allow a disabled machine to be towed on a slope.
- Do not use a kinked or frayed wire rope.
- If towing on the highway, a rigid tow bar should be used and not a tow rope of any kind.
- Do not straddle the towing cable or wire rope.
- When connecting up a towing machine, do not let anyone enter the area between the towing machine and the equipment being towed.
- Set the towing machine and the towing connection of the equipment being towed in a straight line when connecting it.
- Place pieces of wood between the wire ropes and chassis body to protect them from wear or damage.

When towing the machine without the engine running or in the advent of loss of hydraulic pressure, it is necessary to manually release the park brake, as follows.

View on transmission

Releasing the park brake before towing:

Turn park brake release bolt (B) 180 degrees, the indicator mark located at the top, moves to the bottom, which will disengage the park brake.

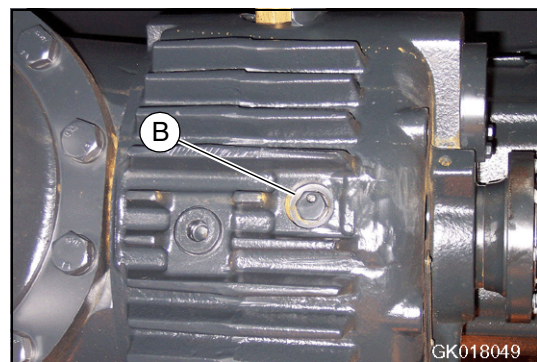
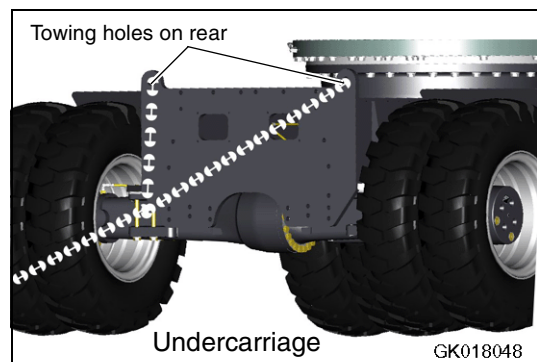
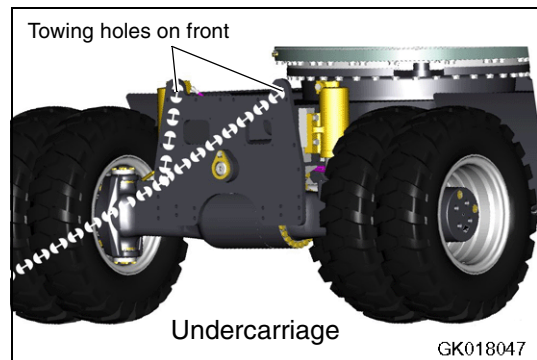
To reset the park brake:

Turn park brake release bolt (B) 180 degrees so that indicator mark is located at the top position.



WARNING

Operator must not operate the travel system (i.e rotate the travel motor) when the transmission disengagement pin is rotated to towing position.





WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

2.2.6 Bucket with hook or bucket link with lifting eye

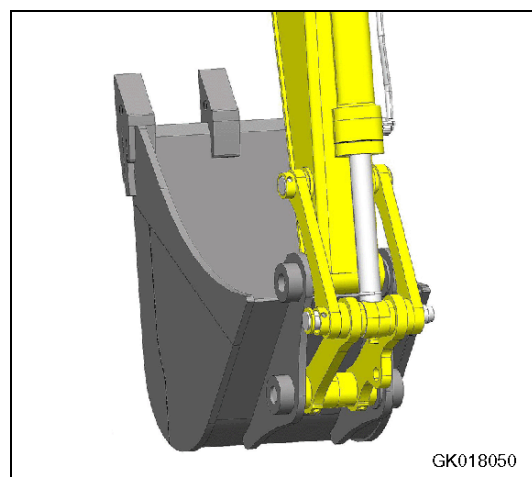
General precautions

Lifting capacity

- Never attempt to lift a load which would exceed the lift capacity of the machine shown in the appropriate lift capacity chart. Exceeding the lift capacity of the machine could cause the machine to tip over or cause the load to fall. The lift capacity charts are shown in pages 60 to 83, and are affixed inside the operators cabin.
- Be careful to use the correct lift capacity chart for your machine considering the boom type, the arm length, and the undercarriage attachments installed.
- Lifting operations should always be conducted on firm flat ground. Do not attempt lifting operations on slopes or on unstable ground.
- Always select L mode for lifting operations.
- If the overload warning sounds during a lifting operation stop the movement of the load immediately and return it to its previous position until the caution is cancelled (see page 2-68). Reconsider the planned lifting operation to prevent the overload caution from sounding. If it is essential to lift to the maximum capacity of the machine consult your KOMATSU dealer for advice

Special hook

- When carrying out lifting work, a special lifting hook or lifting eye is necessary.
- The lifting hook must be fitted with a safety latch to prevent accidental unhooking of the load.
- Check safe working load of lifting equipment.

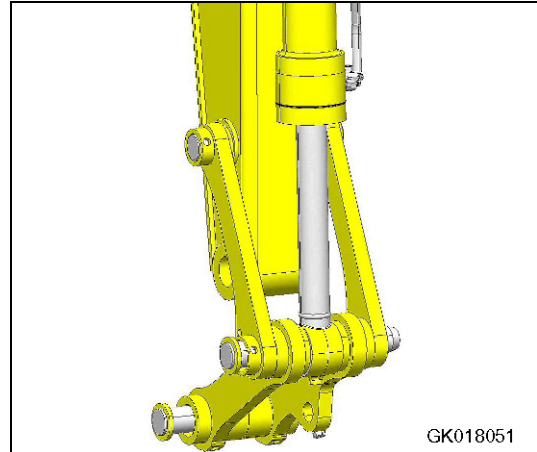




WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

The following operations are prohibited.

- Lifting loads with a wire rope fitted around the bucket teeth.
- Lifting loads with the wire rope wrapped directly around the boom or arm.



Checking hook

When lifting a load, carry out the following checks to confirm that there is no abnormality before starting operations.

- Check that there are no cracks or deformation in the lifting equipment.
- Check that there is no abnormality in the safety latch of the hook.

Hooking wire rope securely to hook

When performing lifting operation, securely hook the wire rope onto the special lifting hook or lifting eye.

Precautions for machine installation

After carrying out a preliminary inspection of ground conditions, select a flat, solid location. Confirm that the machine can be safely operated without toppling or rolling.

Prohibited operations other than main applications

When performing lifting operation, never raise or lower a person.

No persons shall be permitted to enter the working area

Due to the possible danger of the load falling or of collision with the load, no persons shall be allowed in the working area.



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Operation supervisor

Before performing lifting operation, designate an operation supervisor.

Always execute operation according to his instructions.

- Execute operating methods and procedures under his direction.
- Select a person responsible for signalling. Operate only on signals given by such person.

Handling of wire ropes etc.

Wear leather gloves when handling wire ropes.

Protecting eyes

Some oils and fluids can damage eyes. Refer to manufactured data sheet for handling and storage instructions.



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Precautions for lifting operation

Overload warning device

Excavators are provided with this device to warn the operator about tipping over while lifting loads. A buzzer will sound when the machine is in L mode and the machine nears its lifting capacity.

REMARK

Only conduct lifting operations in L mode as the overload warning system is only active in this mode.

Gradual lifting operation

- When carrying out lifting operations, run the engine at low idling and use the L (lifting operation mode).
- Avoid sudden lever shifting and acceleration.
- Swing speed is three to four times that of mobile cranes. Therefore, be especially careful when performing swing operation.

Never leave the operator's seat

Never leave the operator's seat while lifting a load.

Never carry out excessive operations

- Operation exceeding machine performance may result in accident or failure.
- Carry out lifting operation within specified load limit of machine and lifting equipment.
- Never carry out operations which may damage the machine such as overload or over-impact-load.
- Never drag a load laterally or longitudinally, nor retract the arm, otherwise, a dangerous situation may result.

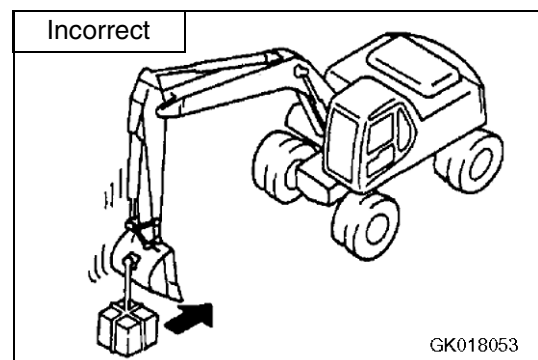
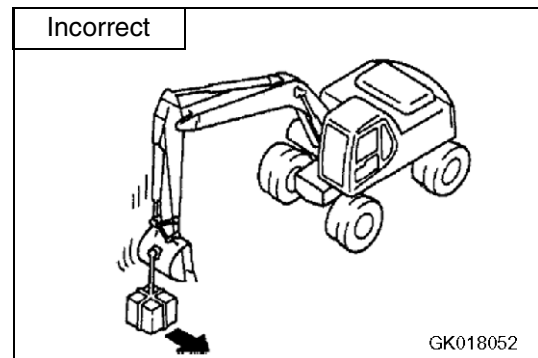
Never travel while lifting a load

- Never travel while carrying a load.
- Apply the service brakes or park brake.

Never lift a person.

Operating posture

If the machine posture is not correct, the wire ropes or ring may detach from the hook. Confirm that the hook angle is correct to avoid this.





WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

2.2.7 Handling of fluids

Some oils and other fluids, such as Antifreeze, can be harmful to you and the environment, you should therefore always follow the manufacturers instructions regarding storage, handling and disposal.

Handling of used engine oils

- Avoid contact with used engine oils.
- Refer to engine oils data sheet for handling and storage precautions.

Handling of oils

- For diesel oils, hydraulic oils and oils used in the swing machinery, PTO, transmission axles and hubs avoid prolonged or frequent contact with skin.
- Refer to manufacturers data sheet for handling and storage precautions.

Handling of fluids

For antifreeze and grease refer to manufacturers data sheet for handling and storage precautions.



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

2.3 Precautions for maintenance

2.3.1 Before carrying out maintenance

Warning tag

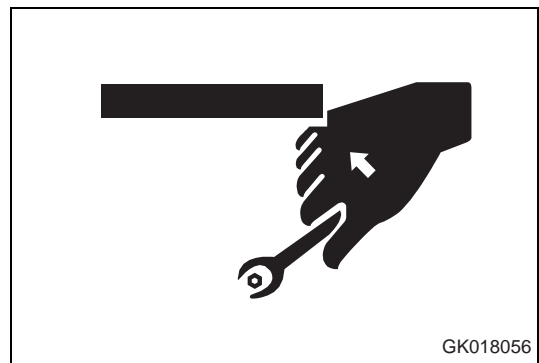
- If others start the engine or operate the controls while you are performing service or lubrication, you could suffer serious injury or death.
- ALWAYS attach the WARNING TAG to the control lever in the operator's cab to alert others that you are working on the machine. Attach additional warning tags around the machine, if necessary.
- These tags are available from your KOMATSU distributor. (Part no. 20E-00-K1340)



Proper tools

Use only tools suited to the task. Using damaged, low quality, faulty, or makeshift tools could cause personal injury.

Tools, see "Introduction of necessary tools (4-20)".



Periodic replacement of safety critical parts

- Replace the following fire-related components periodically:
Fuel system: Fuel hose, spilling hose, and fuel tube cap.
Hydraulic system: Pump outlet hose.
- Replace these components periodically with new ones, regardless of whether or not they appear to be defective. These components deteriorate over time.
- Replace or repair any such components if any defect is found, even though they have not reached the time specified.

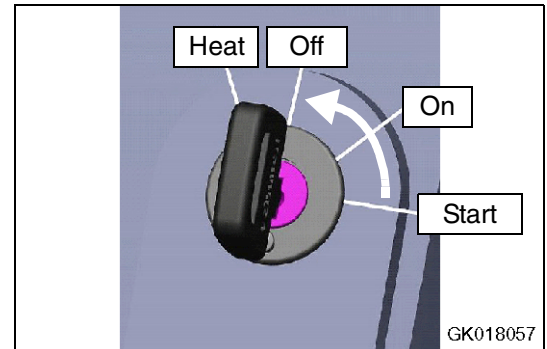
Replacement of safety critical components, see "Periodic replacement of safety critical parts (4-22)".



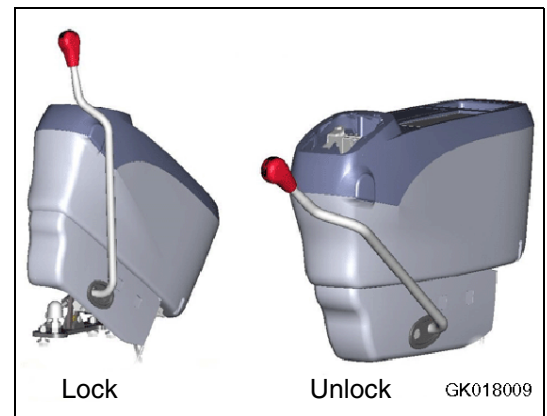
WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Stop the engine before carrying out inspection and maintenance

- Always stop the machine on firm flat ground and stop the engine before carrying out inspection and maintenance.
- If it is necessary to run the engine when carrying out maintenance, such as when cleaning the inside of the radiator, Raise the safety lock lever to the LOCK position and carry out the operation with two workers.

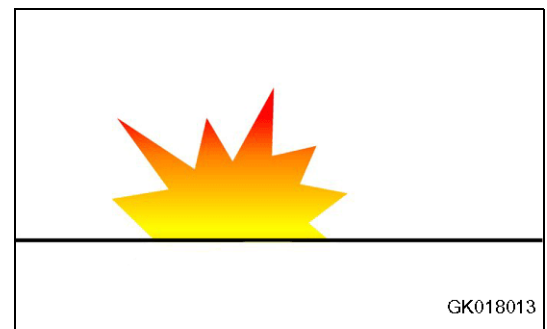


- One worker should sit in the operator's seat so that he can stop the engine immediately if necessary. He should also be extremely careful not to touch any lever by mistake. Touch the levers only when they have to be operated.
- The worker carrying out the maintenance should be extremely careful not to touch or get caught in the moving parts.

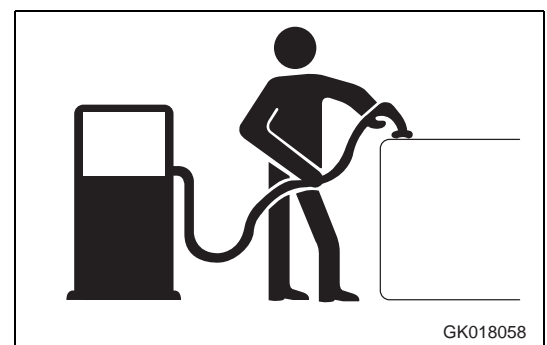


Rules to follow when adding fuel or oil

- Spilt fuel and oil may cause you to slip, so always wipe it up immediately.
- Always tighten the cap of the fuel and oil fillers securely.



- Never use fuel for washing any parts.





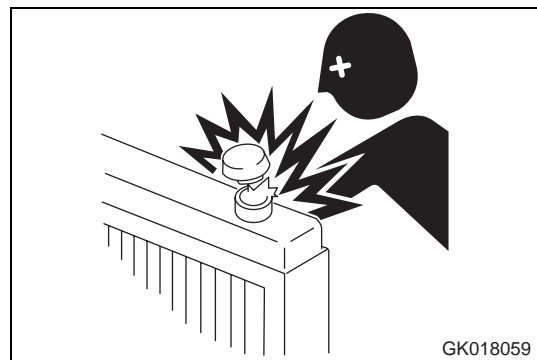
WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

- Always add fuel and oil in a well-ventilated place.

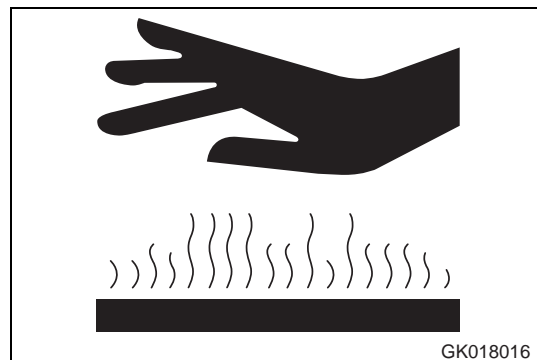


Radiator water level

- If it is necessary to add water to the radiator, stop the engine and allow the engine and radiator to cool down before adding the water.

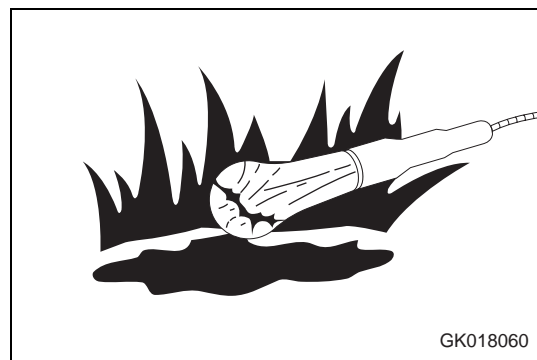


- Slowly loosen the caps to relieve pressure before removing the caps.



Use of lighting

When checking fuel, oil, coolant, or battery electrolyte, always use lighting with anti-explosion specifications. If such lighting equipment is not used, there is danger of explosion.





WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

2.3.2 During maintenance

Personnel

Only authorised personnel can service and repair the machine. Extra precaution should be used when grinding, welding, and using a sledge-hammer.

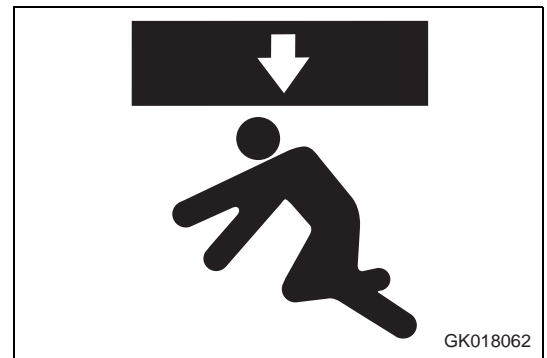
Attachments

Place attachments that have been removed from the machine in a safe place so that they do not fall. If they fall on you or others, serious injury could result.



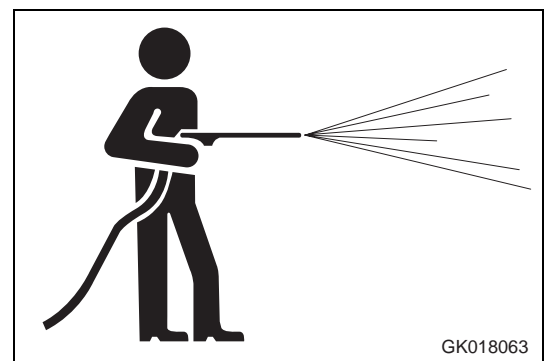
Work under the machine

- Always lower all movable work equipment to the ground or to their lowest position before performing service or repairs under the machine.
- Always chock the wheels of the machine securely.
- Never work under the machine if the machine is poorly supported.



Keep the machine clean

- Spilt oil or grease, or scattered tools or broken pieces are dangerous because they may cause you to slip or trip. Always keep your machine clean and tidy.
- If water gets into the electrical system, there is danger that the machine may not move or may move unexpectedly. Do not use water or steam to clean the sensors, connectors, or the inside of the operator's compartment.

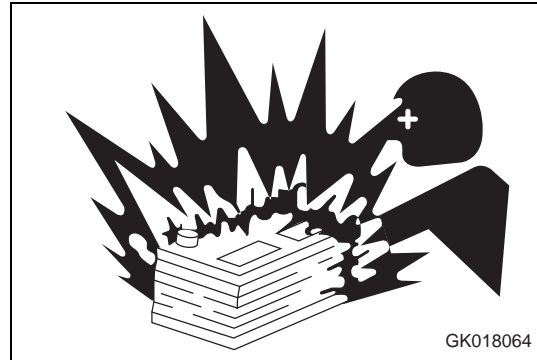




WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Precautions with battery

When repairing the electrical system or when carrying out electrical welding, remove the negative (-) terminal of the battery to stop the flow of current.

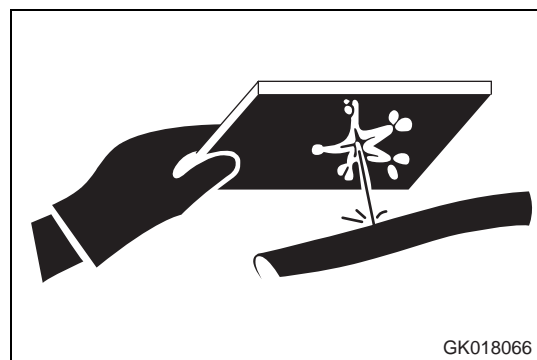


Handling high-pressure hoses

- Do not bend high-pressure hoses or hit them with hard objects. Do not use any bent or cracked piping, tubes or hoses. They may burst during use.
- Always repair any loose or broken fuel hoses or oil hoses. If fuel or oil leaks, it may cause a fire.

Precautions with high pressure oil

- Do not forget that the work equipment circuits are always under pressure.
- Do not add oil, drain oil, or carry out maintenance or inspection before completely releasing the internal pressure.
- If oil is leaking under high pressure from small holes, it is dangerous if the jet of high-pressure oil hits your skin or enters your eyes. Always wear safety glasses and thick gloves, and use a piece of cardboard or a sheet of wood to check for oil leakage.
- If you are hit by a jet of high-pressure oil, consult a doctor immediately for medical attention.





WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Precautions when carrying out maintenance at high temperature or high pressure

Immediately after stopping operations, the engine cooling water and oil at all parts is at high temperature and under high pressure.

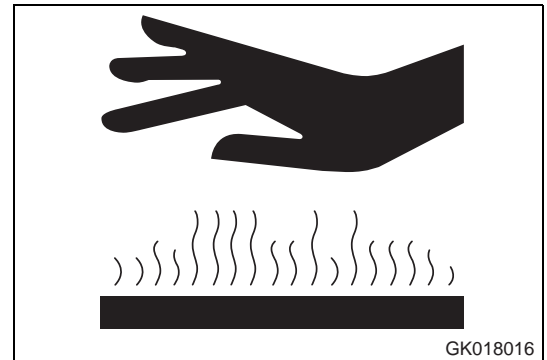
In this condition, if the cap is removed, or the oil or water are drained, or the filters are replaced, this may result in burns or other injury. Wait for the temperature to go down, then carry out the inspection and maintenance in accordance with the procedures given in this manual.

Cleaning inside or cooling system, see "When required (4-33)".

Checking cooling water level, hydraulic oil level, see "Check coolant level, add water (4-57)".

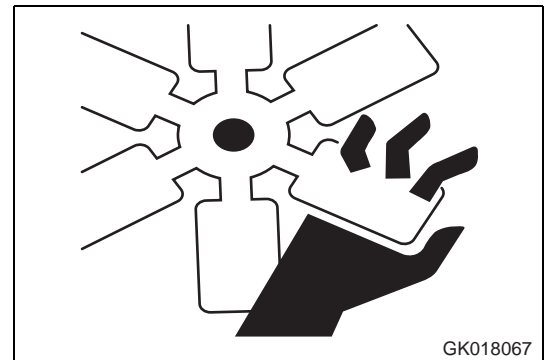
Checking lubricating oil level, adding oil, see "Maintenance schedule chart (4-24)".

Changing oil, replacing filters, see "Maintenance schedule chart (4-24)".



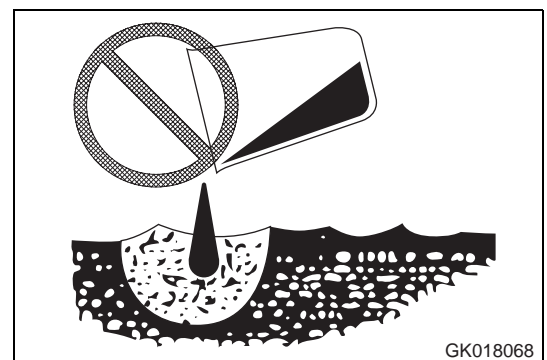
Rotating fan and belt

- Keep away from rotating parts and be careful not to let anything get caught in them.
- If your body or tools touch the fan blades or fan belt, they may be cut off or sent flying, so never touch any rotating parts.



Waste materials

- Never dump waste oil in a sewer system, rivers, etc.
- Always put oil drained from your machine in containers. Never drain oil directly on the ground.
- Obey appropriate laws and regulations when disposing of harmful materials such as oil, fuel, coolant, solvent, filters, batteries, and others.





WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

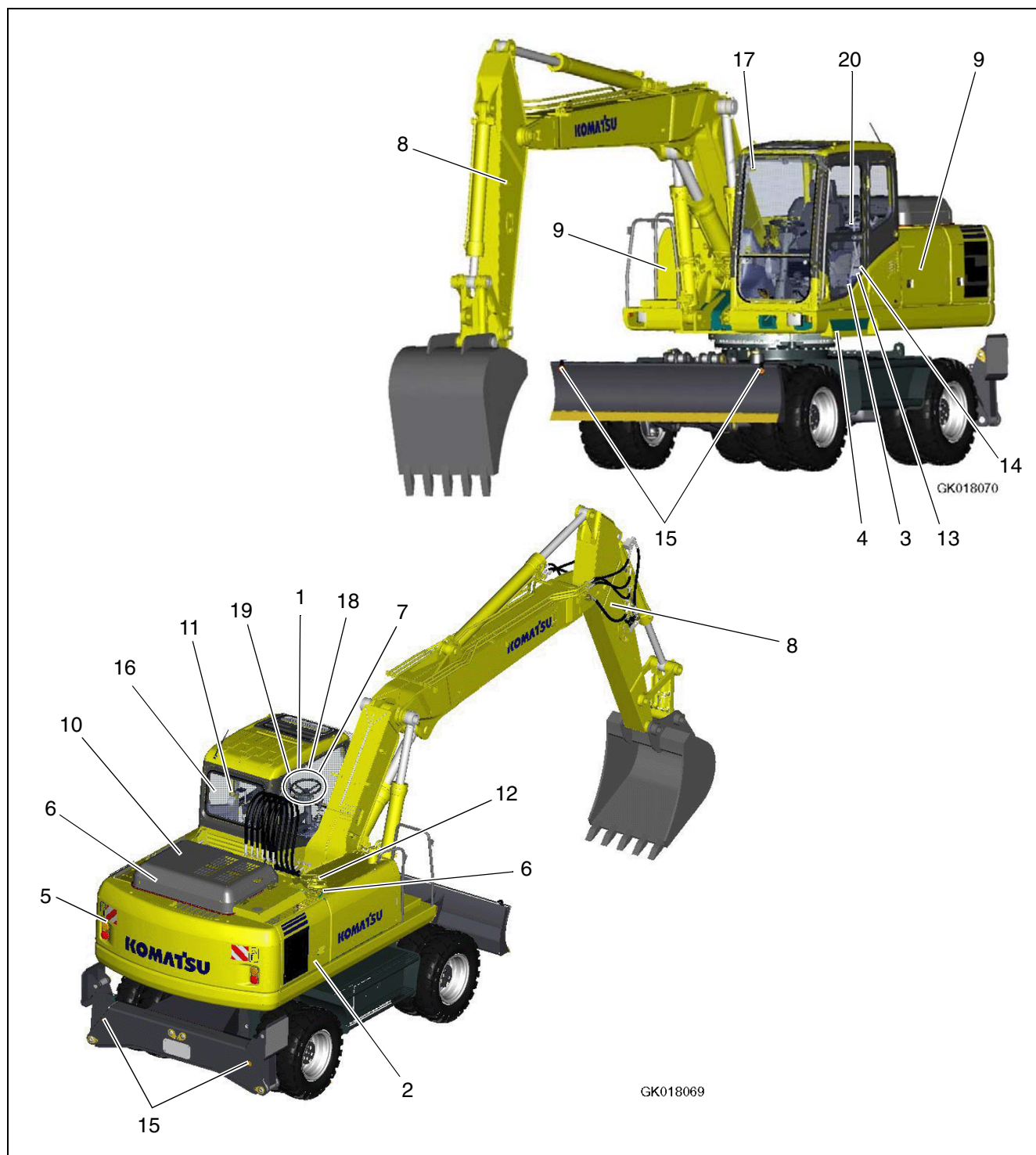
2.4 Position for attaching safety labels

Always keep these labels clean. If they are lost or damaged, attach them again or replace them with a new label

There are other labels in addition to the safety labels listed as follows, so handle them in the same way.

Safety labels are available from your KOMATSU distributor.

2.4.1 Position for attaching safety labels



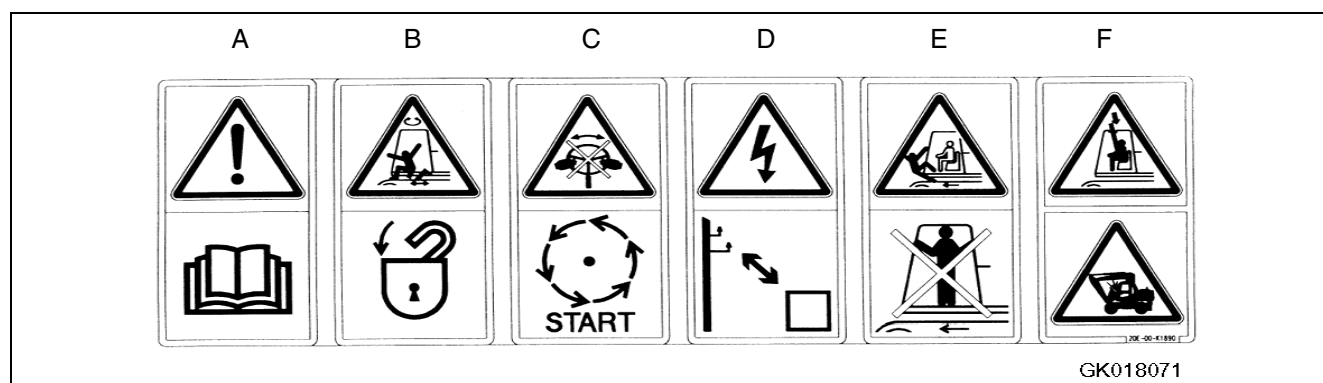


WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

1. Warnings for:

- A. Read the manuals
- B. Safety lock
- C. Emergency steering
- D. Power lines
- E. Do not ride on machine
- F. Falling objects and bucket hitting cab

This is located on the right hand window inside the cab
(20E-00-K1890)

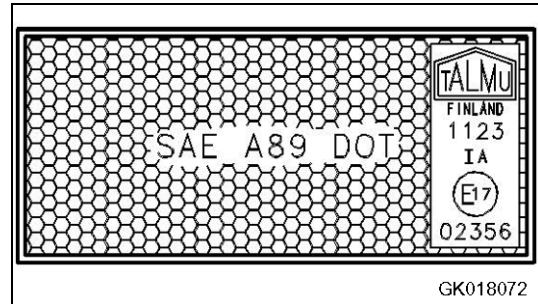


- Improper operation and maintenance can cause serious injury or death.
- Read the manuals before operation.
- Follow instructions and warnings in the manuals and labels on the machine.
- Keep this manual in the machine cab, near operator.
- If this manual is lost, please contact KOMATSU distributor for replacement.
- Always raise safety lock lever when leaving operators seat.
- Normal steering can only be operated when the engine is running.
- Emergency steering is only to be used when stopping the machine safely.
- Serious injury or death can occur if the machine or attachments are not kept a safe distance away from electric lines.
- No passengers allowed to ride on machine while it is moving.
- Do not operate where a danger of falling objects exists. Consult your dealer for fitting of FOPS protection.
- Bucket hits operator cab. Read manual before operation.



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

2. There are 6 amber reflectors located on the revolving frame and arm of the machine (20G-46-K1681)



3. Warning for unsafe machine. Located on the left or right hand levers (20E-00-K1340)

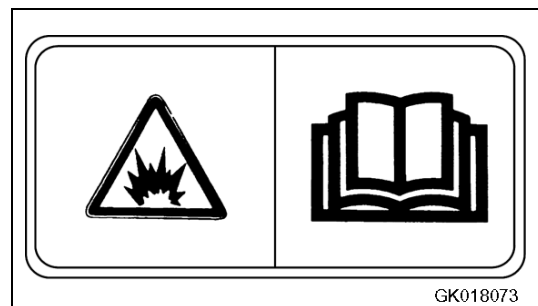
Do not start the engine.



4. Warning for accumulator is located below operator cab (20E-00-K1210)

Warnings for handling accumulator.
Explosion hazard

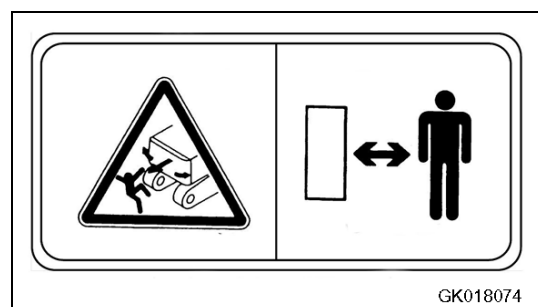
- Keep away from flame.
- Do not weld or drill.
- Read operation manual before operation.



5. Warning for staying clear (20K-00-31280)

Keeping out of moving area.
To prevent SEVERE INJURY or DEATH.
Do the following before moving the machine or its attachments:

- Sound horn to alert people nearby.
- Be sure no one is on or near machine or in the swing area.
- Rotate cab for full view of travel path if it can be done safely.
- Use spotter if view is obstructed. Follow above even if machine equipped with travel alarm and mirrors.





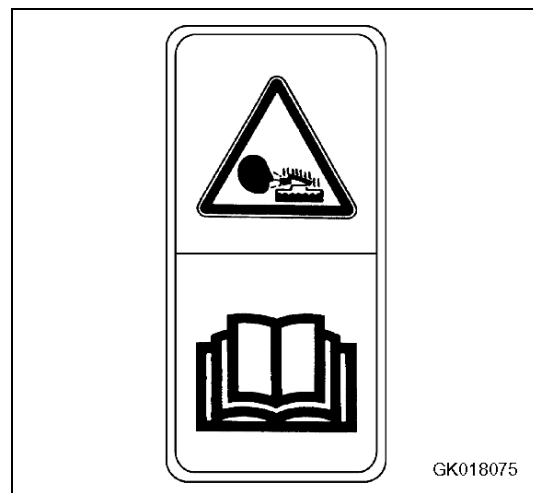
WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

6. Warning for hot objects (20E-00-K1190)

Warning for high temperature coolant and oil, hot water and oil hazard.

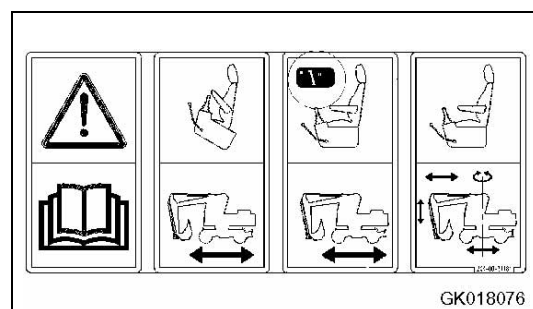
To prevent hot water and oil from spurting out:

- Turn engine off.
- Allow water to cool.
- Slowly loosen cap to relieve pressure before removing.
- Read operation manual before operation.



7. Safety lock. This is located on the right hand window of the machine. (20K-00-31181)

- Read operation manual before operation.
- With safety lock lever raised the control levers and pedals are disabled.
- With safety lock lever lowered and control lever lock switch on the machine can travel.
- With safety lock lever lowered and control lever lock switch off work equipment and travel can be operated.



REMARK

In certain conditions it may be possible for the safety lock lever to contact the left hand arm rest on the operator seat. To avoid this, always ensure that the left hand arm rest is stowed in the fully up position before operating the safety lock lever.

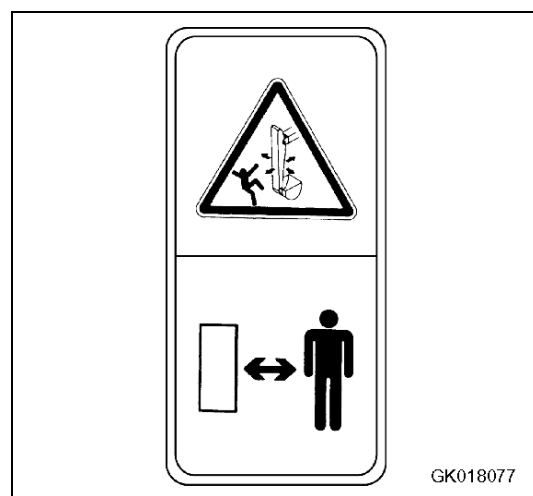
8. Warning for staying clear. This is fitted on both sides of arm. (20E-00-K1140)

Keeping out of moving area.

To prevent SEVERE INJURY or DEATH.

Do the following before moving the machine or its attachments:

- Sound horn to alert people nearby.
- Be sure no one is on or near machine or in the swing area.
- Rotate cab for full view of travel path if it can be done safely.
- Use spotter if view is obstructed. Follow above even if machine equipped with travel alarm and mirrors.

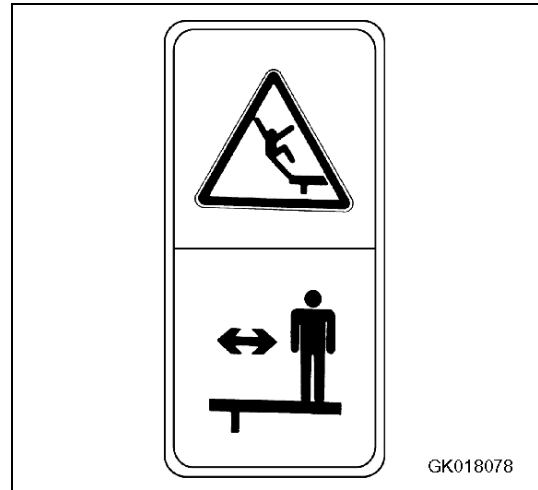




WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

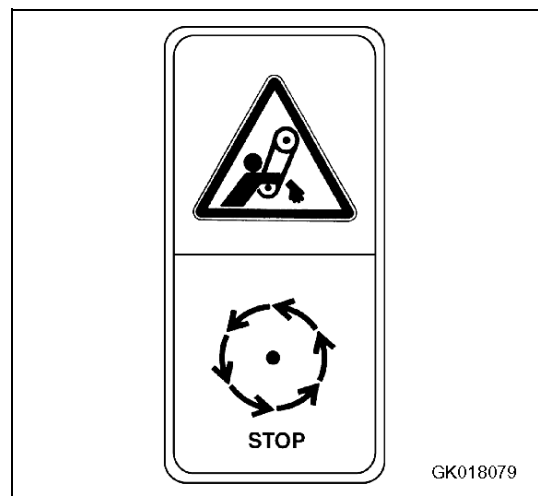
9. Falling from upper structure warning. This is located on the front of the fuel tank, on inside of walkway door, top of the counterweight. (20E-00-K1110)

- WARNING falling from upper structure.
- Keep away from sides of machine.
- Keep off counterweight.
- Do not ride on machine when it is moving.



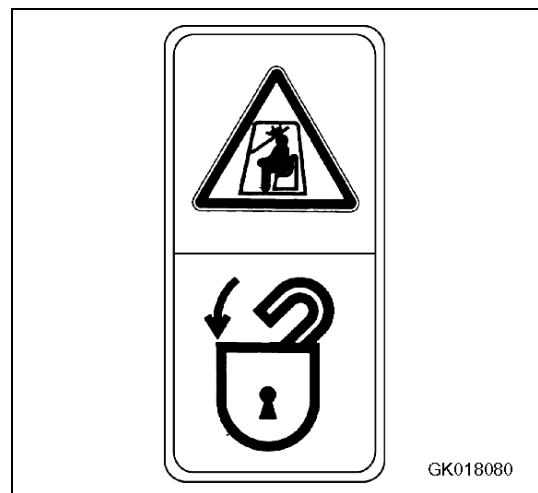
10. Stop engine warning. (20E-00-K1310)

Do not open cover while engine is running.



11. Front window lock warning. This is located on the rear window. (09803-A0481)

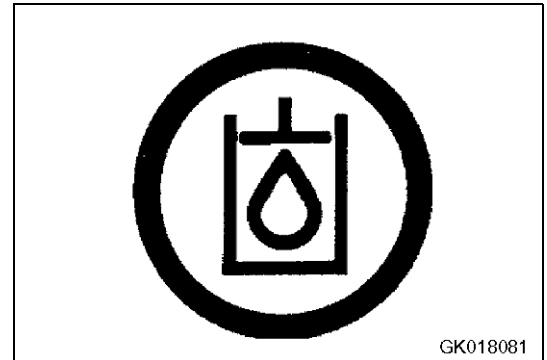
Always lock window in raised or lowered position.





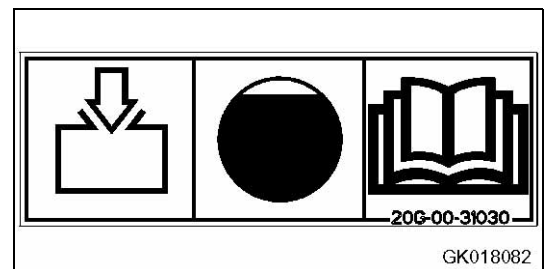
WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

12. High pressure oil warning. (20E-00-K1270)



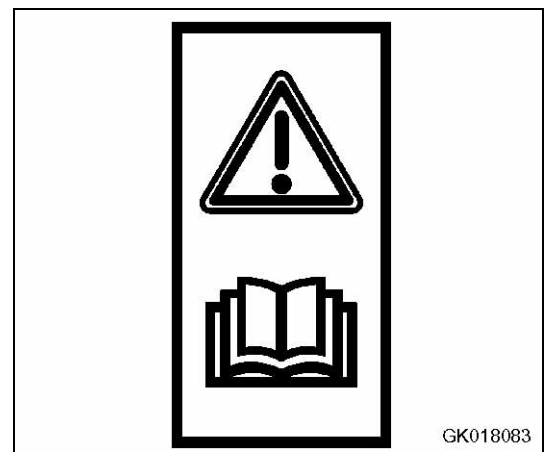
13. (20G-00-31030)

Radiator fill volume warning. This is located on top of the radiator unit.



14. (20K-00-31360)

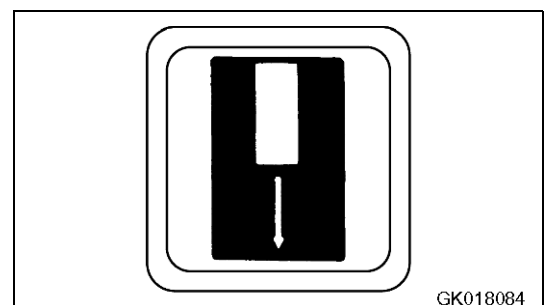
Read operation manual before operation. This is located inside the cab.



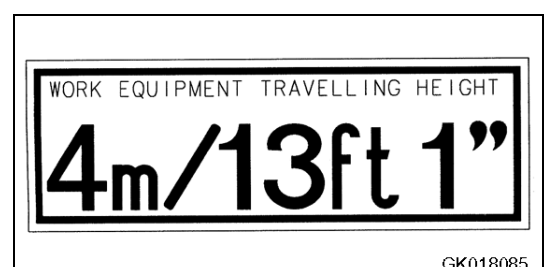
15. Red reflector (20G-47-K1690)

16. (20Y-00-K2220)

- Emergency exit
- Read operation manual before operation



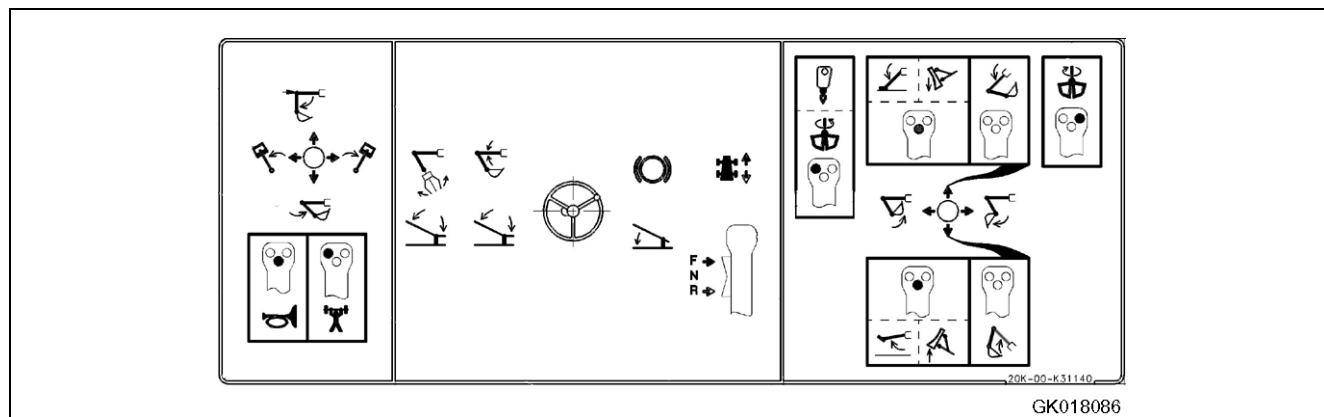
17. Travel Height -UK spec only. This is fitted to the top right hand corner of the front window. (20E-00-K1720)





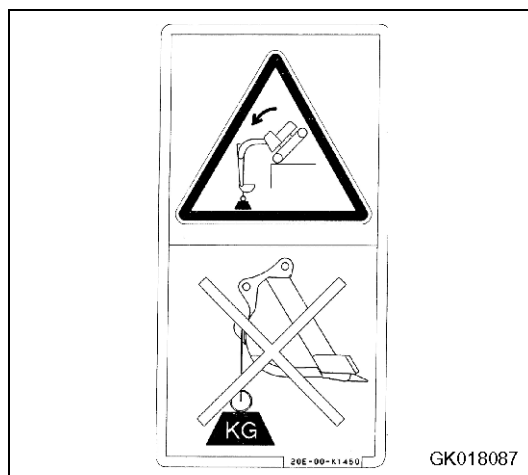
WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

18. Operation of attachments is located on the right hand window. (20K-00-31140)



19. Lift warning plate. This is located on the right hand window. (20E-00-K1450)

Do not lift more than the specified load of the machine.



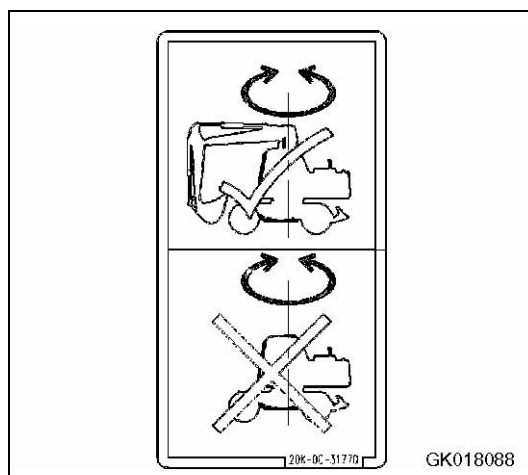
20. Warning for machine tipping over. (20K-00-31770)


- Do not slew the machine when the work equipment has been removed or the machine has been supplied without work equipment.
- The machine may tip if the machine slewed when no work equipment is fitted.



WARNING

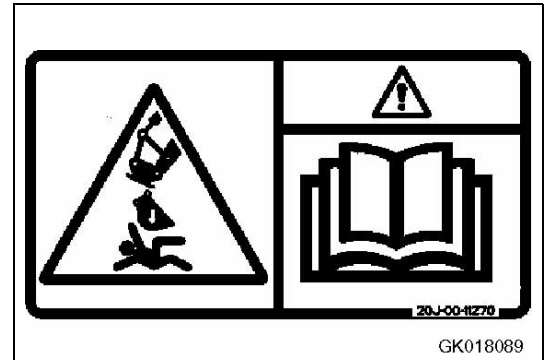
Failure to follow these safety precautions may lead to a serious accident.



_____  **WARNING:** For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions _____

21. Caution for use of hydraulic quick coupler piping system.
(20J-00-11270)

- There is a danger of an exposed person being killed by a falling attachment
- Read the manual for safe operation.





WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

2.5 Lifting capacity chart PW180-7E0

2.5.1 One piece boom – Lift capacity tables for 2.5 metre undercarriage

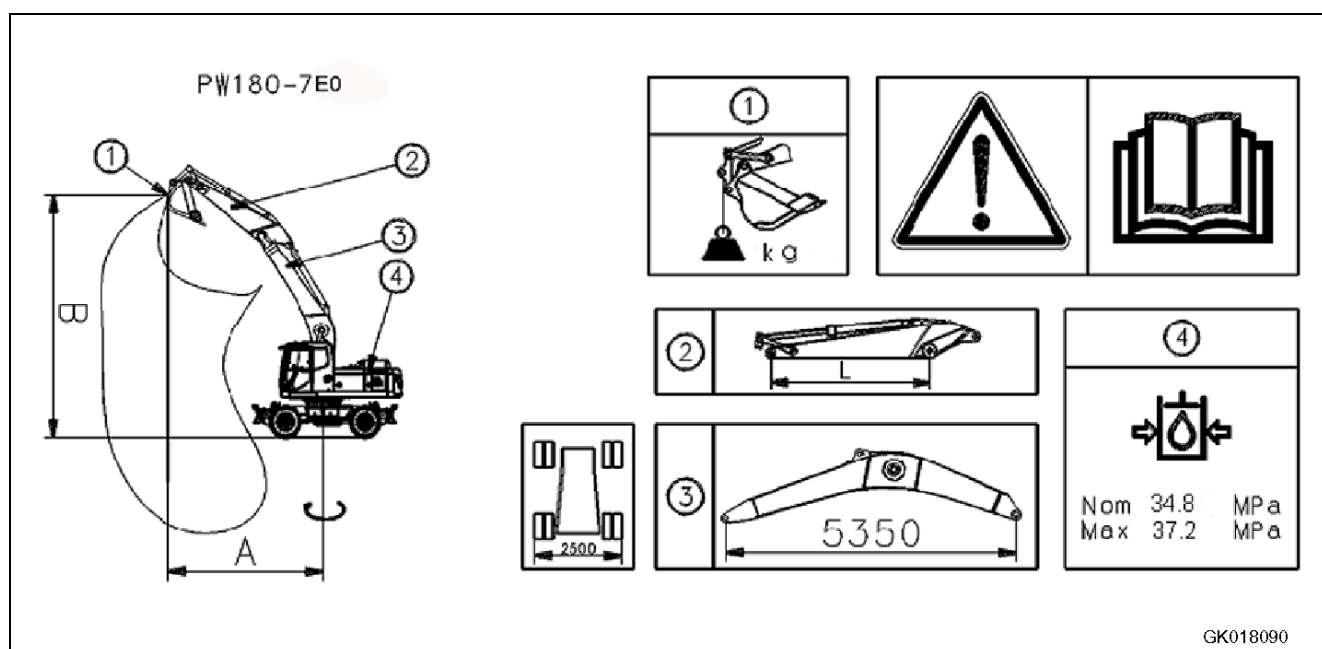
When removing bucket, linkage or cylinder, lifting capacities can be increased by their respective weights.

- A. Reach from swing center
- B. Bucket hook height
- C. Lifting capacities, including bucket (550 kg), linkage (122 kg) and bucket cylinder (109 kg)

OF: Lifting capacity (Rating over front)

OS: Lifting capacity (Rating over side)

MAX: Rating at maximum reach





WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
No attachments	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2700	*2700										
		6.0 m	*2450	1900			3500	2500						
		4.5 m	2200	1450	2200	1500	3400	2400	5650	3950				
		3.0 m	1950	1250	2150	1450	3200	2200	5150	3550				
		1.5 m	1850	1200	2100	1350	3000	2000	4700	3100				
		0.0 m	1900	1200	2000	1300	2850	1900	4450	2900	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	2100	1350			2800	1850	4400	2850	*8600	5350		
		-3.0 m	2650	1750			2900	1900	4450	2900	*7700	5550		
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2200	*2200										
		6.0 m	*2000	1750			3550	2550						
		4.5 m	*2000	1350	2250	1550	3450	2450	*5500	4050				
		3.0 m	1800	1200	2200	1450	3250	2250	5250	3600	10450	6700		
		1.5 m	1700	1100	2100	1350	3050	2050	4750	3200				
		0.0 m	1750	1100	2000	1300	2900	1900	4450	2900	*5300	5300		
		-1.5 m	1950	1250	2000	1250	2800	1800	4350	2800	*8350	5300	*5150	*5150
		-3.0 m	2400	1550			2850	1850	4400	2850	*8750	5500		
		-4.5 m	*2700	2450					*3600	3000				
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*1900	*1900			*2550	2500						
		6.0 m	*1750	1550			3600	2550						
		4.5 m	*1700	1250	2250	1500	3450	2450						
		3.0 m	1650	1050	2150	1450	3250	2250	5300	3650	10700	6950		
		1.5 m	1600	1000	2050	1350	3000	2000	4800	3200				
		0.0 m	1600	1000	1950	1250	2850	1850	4450	2850	*5500	5250		
		-1.5 m	1750	1100	1900	1200	2750	1750	4300	2750	*8000	5200	*4800	*4800
		-3.0 m	2150	1350			2750	1750	4300	2750	8800	5350	*7650	*7650
		-4.5 m	*2850	2050					*4300	2950	*5700	5650		



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
Front/rear dozer blade only	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2700	*2700										
		6.0 m	*2450	2250			*4400	2900						
		4.5 m	*2400	1750	*2600	1800	*5450	2800	*6650	4600				
		3.0 m	*2450	1550	4250	1750	*5950	2600	*7850	4050				
		1.5 m	*2700	1450	4150	1650	6100	2450	*8600	3650				
		0.0 m	*3050	1500	4100	1600	5900	2300	*8650	3300	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	*3800	1650			*5750	2250	*7700	3250	*8600	6550		
		-3.0 m	*3600	2100			*4200	2300	*6000	3500	*7700	6750		
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2200	*2200										
		6.0 m	*2000	*2000			*3950	2950						
		4.5 m	*2000	1650	*3150	1850	*5000	2850	*5450	4700				
		3.0 m	*2050	1450	4300	1750	*5800	2650	*7500	4150	*12100	8000		
		1.5 m	*2250	1350	4200	1650	6150	2450	*8500	3700				
		0.0 m	*2600	1400	4100	1600	5950	2300	*8700	3300	*5300	*5300		
		-1.5 m	*3200	1550	4050	1550	5850	2200	*8000	3300	*8350	6500	*5150	*5150
		-3.0 m	*3700	1900			*4700	2250	*6550	3450	*8750	6700		
		-4.5 m	*2700	*2700					*3600	*3600				
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*1900	*1900			*2550	*2550						
		6.0 m	*1750	*1750			*3650	2950						
		4.5 m	*1700	1500	*3250	1850	*4450	2850						
		3.0 m	*1800	1300	4300	1750	*5550	2650	*7150	4200	*11250	8250		
		1.5 m	*1950	1250	4150	1650	*6100	2450	*8200	3700				
		0.0 m	*2200	1250	4050	1550	5900	2250	*8650	3300	*5550	*5550		
		-1.5 m	*2700	1400	4000	1500	5800	2150	*8150	3200	*8000	6400	*4800	*4800
		-3.0 m	*3600	1700			*4950	2150	*6850	3400	*9450	6550	*7650	*7650
		-4.5 m	*2850	2500					*4300	3550	*5700	*5700		



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
Rear outrigger only	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2700	*2700										
		6.0 m	*2450	*2450			*4400	3400						
		4.5 m	*2400	2100	*2600	2150	*5450	3300	*6700	5400				
		3.0 m	*2450	1850	4400	2100	*5950	3100	*7850	4900				
		1.5 m	*2700	1750	4300	2000	6350	2900	*8700	4350				
		0.0 m	*3050	1800	4250	1950	6150	2750	*8600	4100	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	*3800	2000			*5750	2700	*7700	3950	*8600	8150		
		-3.0 m	*3600	2550			*4200	2750	*6000	4050	*7700	*7700		
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2200	*2200										
		6.0 m	*2000	*2000			*3950	3450						
		4.5 m	*2000	2000	*3150	2200	*5000	3350	*5450	5500				
		3.0 m	*2050	1750	*4450	2100	*5800	3150	*7500	4900	*12100	9700		
		1.5 m	*2250	1650	4300	2000	*6250	2950	*8500	4450				
		0.0 m	*2600	1700	4250	1950	6150	2750	*8700	4050	*5300	*5300		
		-1.5 m	*3200	1850	*4050	1900	*5900	2700	*8000	3950	*8350	8100	*5150	*5150
		-3.0 m	*3700	2300			*4700	2700	*6550	4200	*8750	8300		
		-4.5 m	*2700	*2700					*3600	*3600				
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*1900	*1900			*2550	*2550						
		6.0 m	*1750	*1750			*3650	3450						
		4.5 m	*1700	*1700	*3250	2200	*4450	3350						
		3.0 m	*1800	1600	*4300	2100	*5500	3150	*7200	4950	*11250	9950		
		1.5 m	*1950	1550	4300	2000	*6100	2900	*8250	4450				
		0.0 m	*2200	1550	4200	1900	6150	2700	*8650	4000	*5550	*5550		
		-1.5 m	*2700	1700	4150	1850	*6000	2650	*8150	3900	*8000	7950	*4800	*4800
		-3.0 m	*3600	2050			*4950	2650	*6850	4100	*9450	8100	*7650	*7650
		-4.5 m	*2850	*2850					*4300	4300	*5700	*5700		



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
Dozer and outrigger	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2700	*2700										
		6.0 m	*2450	*2450			*4400	4400						
		4.5 m	*2400	*2400	*2600	*2600	*5450	4300	*6700	*6700				
		3.0 m	*2450	*2450	*4500	2800	*5900	4100	*7850	6500				
		1.5 m	*2700	2400	4750	2700	*6350	3850	*8800	6050				
		0.0 m	*3050	2500	4700	2650	*6300	3500	*8600	5350	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	*3800	2750			*5750	3600	*7800	5350	*8600	*8600		
		-3.0 m	*3600	3450			*4200	3750	*6000	5800	*7700	*7700		
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2200	*2200										
		6.0 m	*2000	*2000			*3950	*3950						
		4.5 m	*2000	*2000	*3150	2900	*5000	4350	*5500	*5500				
		3.0 m	*2050	*2050	*4450	2800	*5750	4150	*7500	6650	*12100	*12100		
		1.5 m	*2250	*2250	4800	2700	*6250	3900	*8650	6100				
		0.0 m	*2600	2300	4700	2650	*6350	3650	*8600	5400	*5300	*5300		
		-1.5 m	*3200	2550	*4050	2600	*5900	3600	*8100	5350	*8350	*8350	*5150	*5150
		-3.0 m	*3700	3100			*4700	3700	*6550	5750	*8750	*8750		
		-4.5 m	*2700	*2700					*3600	*3600				
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*1900	*1900			*2550	*2550						
		6.0 m	*1750	*1750			*3650	*3650						
		4.5 m	*1700	*1700	*3250	2900	*4450	4350						
		3.0 m	*1800	*1800	4300	2800	*5500	4150	*7200	6700	*11250	*11250		
		1.5 m	*1950	*1950	4750	2700	*6100	3900	*8400	6150				
		0.0 m	*2200	2150	4650	2600	*6300	3500	*8550	5350	*5550	*5550		
		-1.5 m	*2700	2350	*4350	2550	*6000	3550	*8250	5300	*8000	*8000	*4800	*4800
		-3.0 m	*3600	2850			*4950	3600	*6850	5650	*9450	*9450	*7650	*7650
		-4.5 m	*2850	*2850					*4300	*4300	*5700	*5700		



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
Dozer and outrigger	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2700	*2700										
		6.0 m	*2450	*2450			*4400	4400						
		4.5 m	*2400	*2400	*2600	*2600	*5450	4300	*6700	*6700				
		3.0 m	*2450	*2450	*4500	2800	*5900	4100	*7850	6500				
		1.5 m	*2700	2400	4750	2700	*6350	3850	*8800	6050				
		0.0 m	*3050	2500	4700	2650	*6300	3500	*8600	5350	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	*3800	2750			*5750	3600	*7800	5350	*8600	*8600		
		-3.0 m	*3600	3450			*4200	3750	*6000	5800	*7700	*7700		
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2200	*2200										
		6.0 m	*2000	*2000			*3950	*3950						
		4.5 m	*2000	*2000	*3150	2900	*5000	4350	*5500	*5500				
		3.0 m	*2050	*2050	*4450	2800	*5750	4150	*7500	6650	*12100	*12100		
		1.5 m	*2250	*2250	4800	2700	*6250	3900	*8650	6100				
		0.0 m	*2600	2300	4700	2650	*6350	3650	*8600	5400	*5300	*5300		
		-1.5 m	*3200	2550	*4050	2600	*5900	3600	*8100	5350	*8350	*8350	*5150	*5150
		-3.0 m	*3700	3100			*4700	3700	*6550	5750	*8750	*8750		
		-4.5 m	*2700	*2700					*3600	*3600				
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*1900	*1900			*2550	*2550						
		6.0 m	*1750	*1750			*3650	*3650						
		4.5 m	*1700	*1700	*3250	2900	*4450	4350						
		3.0 m	*1800	*1800	4300	2800	*5500	4150	*7200	6700	*11250	*11250		
		1.5 m	*1950	*1950	4750	2700	*6100	3900	*8400	6150				
		0.0 m	*2200	2150	4650	2600	*6300	3500	*8550	5350	*5550	*5550		
		-1.5 m	*2700	2350	*4350	2550	*6000	3550	*8250	5300	*8000	*8000	*4800	*4800
		-3.0 m	*3600	2850			*4950	3600	*6850	5650	*9450	*9450	*7650	*7650
		-4.5 m	*2850	*2850					*4300	*4300	*5700	*5700		

Note for lift capacity tables:

- Ratings are based on ISO 10567
- Lifting capacities are given for:
 - 75% of tipping load
 - rated hydraulic lift capacity 87% of max.
- Capacities marked with an asterisk (*) are limited by hydraulic capacities



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

2.5.2 One piece boom – Lift capacity tables for 2.75 metre undercarriage

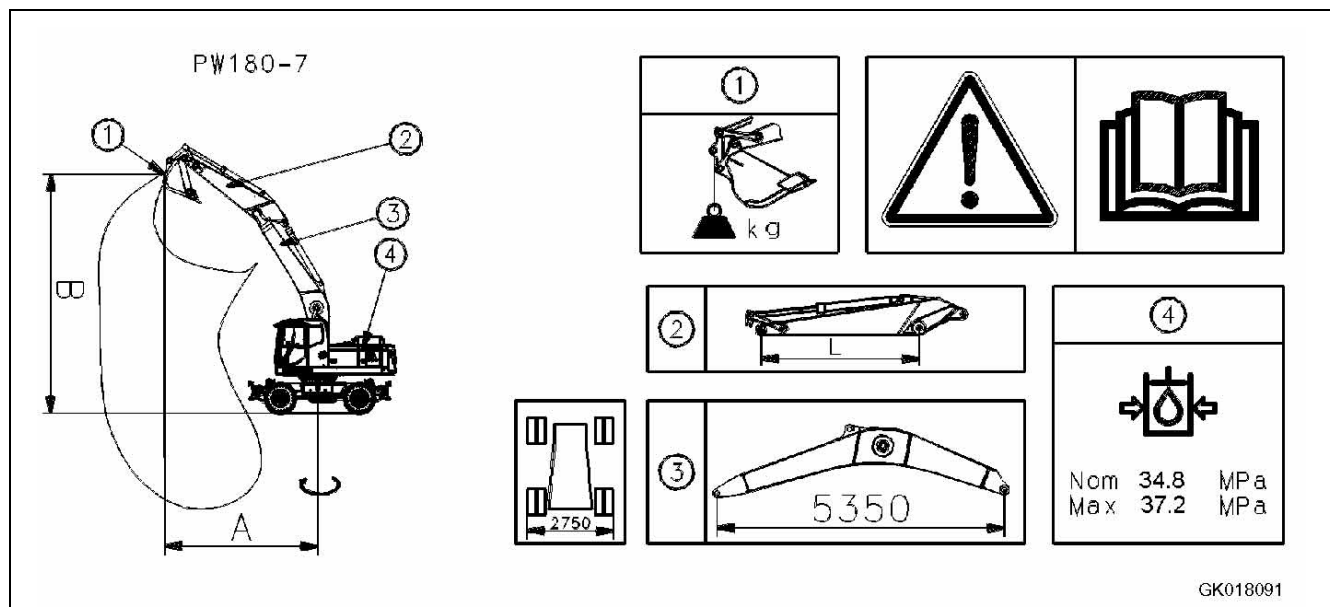
When removing bucket, linkage or cylinder, lifting capacities can be increased by their respective weights.

- A. Reach from swing center
- B. Bucket hook height
- C. Lifting capacities, including bucket (550 kg), linkage (122 kg) and bucket cylinder (109 kg)

OF: Lifting capacity (Rating over front)

OS: Lifting capacity (Rating over side)

MAX: Rating at maximum reach





WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX reach		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
No attachments	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2700	*2700										
		6.0 m	*2450	2150			3500	2800						
		4.5 m	2200	1700	2200	1750	3400	2700	5650	4500				
		3.0 m	1950	1500	2150	1700	3250	2550	5150	4050				
		1.5 m	1850	1400	2100	1600	3000	2350	4700	3600				
		0.0 m	1900	1450	2000	1550	2850	2200	4450	3400	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	2100	1600			2800	2150	4400	3300	*8600	6350		
		-3.0 m	2650	2050			2900	2200	4450	3400	*7700	6600		
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2200	*2200										
		6.0 m	*2000	2000			3550	2850						
		4.5 m	*2000	1600	2250	1750	3450	2750	*5500	4600				
		3.0 m	1800	1400	2200	1700	3250	2600	5250	4150	10450	7800		
		1.5 m	1750	1300	2100	1600	3050	2350	4800	3700				
		0.0 m	1750	1350	2000	1550	2900	2200	4500	3400	*5300	*5300		
		-1.5 m	1950	1450	2000	1500	2800	2150	4400	3300	*8350	6350	*5150	*5150
		-3.0 m	2400	1850			2850	2150	4450	3350	*8750	6500		
		-4.5 m	*2700	*2700					*3600	3500				
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*1900	*1900			*2550	*2550						
		6.0 m	*1750	*1750			3600	2900						
		4.5 m	*1700	1450	2250	1750	3450	2750						
		3.0 m	1650	1250	2150	1700	3250	2550	5300	4200	10700	8050		
		1.5 m	1600	1200	2050	1550	3050	2350	4800	3700				
		0.0 m	1600	1200	1950	1500	2850	2150	4450	3350	*5550	*5550		
		-1.5 m	1750	1300	1900	1450	2750	2100	4300	3250	*8000	6200	*4800	*4800
		-3.0 m	2150	1650			2750	2100	4350	3250	8800	6350	*7650	*7650
		-4.5 m	*2850	2400					*4300	3400	*5700	*5700		



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX reach		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
Front/rear dozer blade only	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2700	*2700										
		6.0 m	*2450	*2450			*4400	3250						
		4.5 m	*2400	2050	*2600	2050	*5450	3150	*6650	5150				
		3.0 m	*2450	1800	4250	2000	*5950	2950	*7850	4050				
		1.5 m	*2700	1700	4150	1900	6100	2750	*8600	4150				
		0.0 m	*3050	1750	4100	1850	5900	2650	*8650	3800	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	*3800	1950			*5750	2600	*7700	3750	*8600	7700		
		-3.0 m	*3600	2450			*4200	2650	*6000	4050	*7700	*7700		
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2200	*2200										
		6.0 m	*2000	*2000			*3950	3300						
		4.5 m	*2000	1900	*3150	2100	*5000	3200	*5500	5250				
		3.0 m	*2050	1650	4300	2000	*5800	3000	*7524	4700	*12100	9200		
		1.5 m	*2250	1600	4200	1900	6100	2800	*8471	4263				
		0.0 m	*2600	1600	4100	1850	5900	2650	*8712	3848	*5300	*5300		
		-1.5 m	*3200	1800	4050	1800	5850	2550	*8020	3753	*8350	7650	*5150	*5150
		-3.0 m	*3700	2200			*4700	2600	*6550	4000	*8750	7850		
		-4.5 m	*2700	*2700					*3600	*3600				
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*1900	*1900			*2550	*2550						
		6.0 m	*1750	*1750			*3650	3300						
		4.5 m	*1700	*1700	*3250	2100	*4450	3200						
		3.0 m	*1800	1550	*4300	2000	*5550	3000	*7178	4753	*11250	9450		
		1.5 m	*1950	1450	4150	1900	*6100	2800	*8232	4263				
		0.0 m	*2200	1500	4050	1800	5900	2600	*8663	3800	*5550	*5550		
		-1.5 m	*2700	1600	4000	1750	5750	2500	*8168	3705	*8000	7500	*4800	*4800
		-3.0 m	*3600	1950			*4950	2500	*6850	3900	*9450	7650	*7650	*7650
		-4.5 m	*2850	*2850					*4300	4100	*5700	*5700		



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX reach		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
Rear outrigger only	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2700	*2700										
		6.0 m	*2450	*2450			*4400	3750						
		4.5 m	*2400	2400	*2600	2400	*5450	3650	*6633	6000				
		3.0 m	*2450	2100	*4500	2350	*5950	3500	*7871	5440				
		1.5 m	*2700	2000	4700	2300	*6350	3300	*8624	4949				
		0.0 m	*3050	2050	4600	2200	*6300	3087	*8663	4560	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	*3800	2300			*5750	3038	*7722	4513	*8600	*8600		
		-3.0 m	*3600	2900			*4200	3150	*6000	4850	*7700	*7700		
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2200	*2200										
		6.0 m	*2000	*2000			*3950	3800						
		4.5 m	*2000	*2000	*3150	2450	*5000	3700	*5445	*5500				
		3.0 m	*2050	2000	*4450	2400	*5800	3500	*7524	5537	*12100	11100		
		1.5 m	*2250	1900	4700	2300	*6250	3300	*8477	5047				
		0.0 m	*2600	1950	4600	2200	*6350	3007	*8712	4608	*5300	*5300		
		-1.5 m	*3200	2150	*4050	2200	*5900	2989	*8019	4513	*8350	*8350	*5150	*5150
		-3.0 m	*3700	2600			*4700	3100	*6550	4800	*8750	*8750		
		-4.5 m	*2700	*2700					*3600	*3600				
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*1900	*1900			*2550	*2550						
		6.0 m	*1750	*1750			*3650	*3650						
		4.5 m	*1700	*1700	*3250	2450	*4450	3750						
		3.0 m	*1800	*1800	*4300	2350	*5550	3500	*7178	5586	*11250	*11250		
		1.5 m	*1950	1750	4650	2250	*6100	3300	*8232	5047				
		0.0 m	*2200	1800	4550	2150	*6300	3038	*8663	4560	*5550	*5550		
		-1.5 m	*2700	1950	*4350	2100	*6000	2940	*8168	4465	*8000	*8000	*4800	*4800
		-3.0 m	*3600	2350			*4950	3000	*6850	4700	*9450	*9450	*7650	*7650
		-4.5 m	*2850	*2850					*4300	*4300	*5700	*5700		



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX reach		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
Dozer and outrigger	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2700	*2700										
		6.0 m	*2450	*2450			*4400	*4400						
		4.5 m	*2400	*2400	*2600	*2600	*5450	4650	*6700	*6700				
		3.0 m	*2450	*2450	*4500	3050	*5891	4450	*7871	7150				
		1.5 m	*2700	2650	*4950	2950	*6350	4250	*8800	6650				
		0.0 m	*3050	2700	*4700	2842	*6300	3895	*8575	5842	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	*3800	3000			*5750	4050	*7800	5796	*8600	*8600		
		-3.0 m	*3600	*3600			*4200	4100	*6000	*6000	*7700	*7700		
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2200	*2200										
		6.0 m	*2000	*2000			*3950	*3950						
		4.5 m	*2000	*2000	*3150	*3150	*5000	4700	*5500	*5500				
		3.0 m	*2050	*2050	*4450	3100	*5742	4500	*7524	7250	*12100	*12100		
		1.5 m	*2250	*2250	*4900	3000	*6250	4250	*8650	6700				
		0.0 m	*2600	2550	*4800	2842	*6350	3895	*8624	5888	*5300	*5300		
		-1.5 m	*3200	2800	*4050	2850	*5900	4000	*8100	5796	*8350	*8350	*5150	*5150
		-3.0 m	*3700	3450			*4700	4050	*6550	6350	*8750	*8750		
		-4.5 m	*2700	*2700					*3600	*3600				
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*1900	*1900			*2550	*2550						
		6.0 m	*1750	*1750			*3650	*3650						
		4.5 m	*1700	*1700	*3250	3150	*4450	*4450						
		3.0 m	*1800	*1800	*4300	3050	*5550	4500	*7178	*7250	*11250	*11250		
		1.5 m	*1950	*1950	*4800	2950	*6100	4250	*8400	6750				
		0.0 m	*2200	*2200	*4800	2793	*6300	3848	*8575	5842	*5550	*5550		
		-1.5 m	*2700	2600	*4350	2800	*6000	3950	*8250	5750	*8000	*8000	*4800	*4800
		-3.0 m	*3600	3100			*4950	3950	*6850	6250	*9450	*9450	*7650	*7650
		-4.5 m	*2850	*2850					*4300	*4300	*5700	*5700		



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX reach		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
4 x outrigger	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2700	*2700										
		6.0 m	*2450	*2450			*4400	*4400						
		4.5 m	*2400	*2400	*2600	*2600	*5450	*5450	*6700	*6700				
		3.0 m	*2450	*2450	*4500	3750	*5891	5500	*7871	*7950				
		1.5 m	*2700	*2700	*4950	3650	*6350	5250	*8800	8400				
		0.0 m	*3050	*3050	*4700	3528	*6300	4845	*8575	7452	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	*3800	3750			*5750	5050	*7800	*7176	*8600	*8600		
		-3.0 m	*3600	*3600			*4200	*4200	*6000	*6000	*7700	*7700		
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2200	*2200										
		6.0 m	*2000	*2000			*3950	*3950						
		4.5 m	*2000	*2000	*3150	*3150	*5000	*5000	*5500	*5500				
		3.0 m	*2050	*2050	*4450	3800	*5742	5550	*7524	*7600	*12100	*12100		
		1.5 m	*2250	*2250	*4900	3700	*6250	5300	*8650	8500				
		0.0 m	*2600	*2600	*4800	3528	*6350	4845	*8624	7498	*5300	*5300		
		-1.5 m	*3200	*3200	*4050	3550	*5900	5050	*8100	7406	*8350	*8350	*5150	*5150
		-3.0 m	*3700	*3700			*4700	*4700	*6550	*6550	*8750	*8750		
		-4.5 m	*2700	*2700					*3600	*3600				
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*1900	*1900			*2550	*2550						
		6.0 m	*1750	*1750			*3650	*3650						
		4.5 m	*1700	*1700	*3250	*3250	*4450	*4450						
		3.0 m	*1800	*1800	*4300	3750	*5550	5550	*7178	*7250	*11250	*11250		
		1.5 m	*1950	*1950	*4800	3650	*6100	5300	*8400	*8400				
		0.0 m	*2200	*2200	*4800	3480	*6300	4798	*8575	7452	*5550	*5550		
		-1.5 m	*2700	*2700	*4350	3500	*6000	4950	*8250	7314	*8000	*8000	*4800	*4800
		-3.0 m	*3600	*3600			*4950	*4950	*6850	*6850	*9450	*9450	*7650	*7650
		-4.5 m	*2850	*2850					*4300	*4300	*5700	*5700		

Note for lift capacity tables:

- Ratings are based on ISO 10567
- Lifting capacities are given for:
 - 75% of tipping load
 - rated hydraulic lift capacity 87% of max.
- Capacities marked with an asterisk (*) are limited by hydraulic capacities



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

2.5.3 Two piece boom – Lift capacity tables for 2.5 metre undercarriage

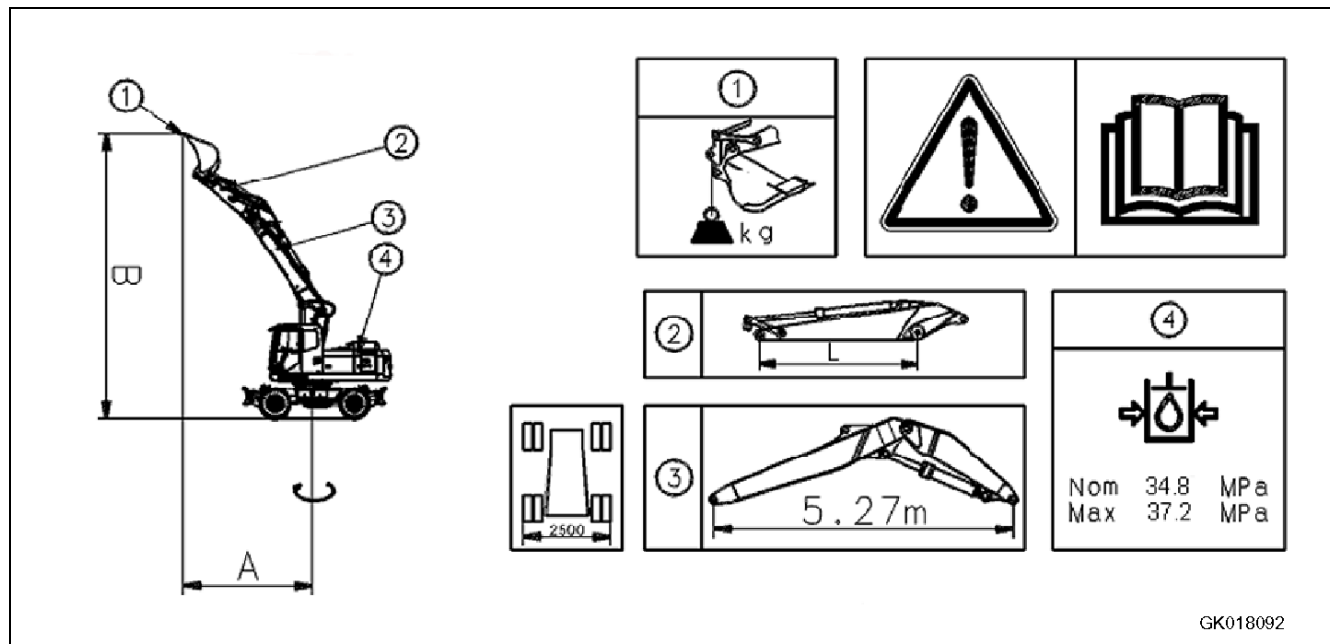
When removing bucket, linkage or cylinder, lifting capacities can be increased by their respective weights.

- A. Reach from swing center
- B. Bucket hook height
- C. Lifting capacities, including bucket (550 kg), linkage (122 kg) and bucket cylinder (109 kg)

OF: Lifting capacity (Rating over front)

OS: Lifting capacity (Rating over side)

MAX: Rating at maximum reach





WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
No attachments	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2950	2700					*4800	4200				
		6.0 m	*2550	1800			3500	2450	*4800	4200				
		4.5 m	2150	1450	2200	1500	3400	2400	5650	3950				
		3.0 m	1900	1250	2200	1450	3250	2200	5200	3550				
		1.5 m	1850	1200	2100	1350	3050	2050	4750	3150				
		0.0 m	1900	1200	2050	1300	2900	1900	4500	2900				
		-1.5 m	2150	1400			2850	1850	4450	2900	*7700	5450		
		-3.0 m												
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2400	2400			*2550	2400						
		6.0 m	*2100	1650			3550	2500						
		4.5 m	2000	1300	2250	1500	3450	2400	*4900	4050				
		3.0 m	1800	1150	2200	1450	3300	2250	5300	3650				
		1.5 m	1700	1100	2100	1400	3050	2050	4800	3200				
		0.0 m	1750	1100	2050	1300	2900	1900	4550	2950				
		-1.5 m	1950	1250	2000	1300	2850	1850	4450	2850	*7550	5400		
		-3.0 m					2900	1900	4500	2950				
		-4.5 m												
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*2050	*2050			*3050	2550						
		6.0 m	*1800	1500	*2000	1500	3600	2550						
		4.5 m	*1750	1200	2250	1500	3450	2450	*4100	*4100				
		3.0 m	1650	1050	2200	1450	3250	2250	5350	3650				
		1.5 m	1550	950	2100	1350	3050	2050	4850	3200				
		0.0 m	1600	1000	2000	1250	2850	1850	4500	2900	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	1800	1100	1950	1250	2800	1800	4350	2800	*7200	5300		
		-3.0 m					2800	1800	4400	2850				
		-4.5 m												



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
Front/rear dozer blade only	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2950	*2950					*4800	*4800				
		6.0 m	*2550	2150			*4650	2900	*4800	*4800				
		4.5 m	*2450	1750	*3100	1800	*5350	2800	*5900	4600				
		3.0 m	*2450	1550	4200	1750	*5733	2650	*7518	4200				
		1.5 m	*2600	1450	4100	1700	5940	2450	*8526	3750				
		0.0 m	*2850	1500	3524	1650	5850	2300	*8536	3550				
		-1.5 m	*3400	1700			5800	2300	*8000	3500	*7700	6700		
		-3.0 m												
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2400	*2400			*2550	*2550						
		6.0 m	*2100	2000			*4100	2950						
		4.5 m	*2050	1600	*3500	1850	*4800	2850	*4900	4700				
		3.0 m	*2050	1400	4250	1750	*5537	2650	*7178	4250				
		1.5 m	*2200	1350	4150	1700	5990	2450	*8330	3850				
		0.0 m	*2450	1400	3524	1600	5850	2300	*8585	3550				
		-1.5 m	*2900	1550	4050	1600	5800	2250	*8250	3500	*7550	6650		
		-3.0 m					*4800	2300	*6750	3550				
		-4.5 m												
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*2050	*2050			*3050	2900						
		6.0 m	*1800	1800	*2000	1800	*3700	2950						
		4.5 m	*1750	1450	*3500	1850	*4250	2850	*4100	*4100				
		3.0 m	*1750	1300	4200	1750	5341	2650	*6839	4300				
		1.5 m	*1850	1250	4100	1650	*5940	2450	*8085	3850				
		0.0 m	*2100	1250	3480	1550	5850	2300	*8488	3550	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	*2450	1400	4000	1550	5750	2200	*8350	3400	*7200	6500		
		-3.0 m					*5050	2200	*7050	3450				
		-4.5 m												



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
Rear outrigger only	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2950	*2950					*4800	*4800				
		6.0 m	*2550	2550			*4650	3350	*4800	*4800				
		4.5 m	*2450	2050	*3100	2150	*5297	3300	*5900	5400				
		3.0 m	*2450	1850	4450	2100	*5733	3100	*7518	4950				
		1.5 m	*2600	1750	4350	2000	*6188	2900	*8526	4500				
		0.0 m	*2850	1800	3741	1950	6250	2800	*8536	4300				
		-1.5 m	*3400	2050			*5850	2750	*8000	4250	*7700	*7700		
		-3.0 m												
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2400	*2400			*2550	*2550						
		6.0 m	*2100	*2100			*4100	3450						
		4.5 m	*2050	1950	*3500	2200	*4800	3350	*4900	*4900				
		3.0 m	*2050	1700	4500	2100	*5537	3150	*7178	5050				
		1.5 m	*2200	1650	4400	2050	*6089	2950	*8330	4600				
		0.0 m	*2450	1700	3741	1950	6250	2800	*8585	4300				
		-1.5 m	*2900	1900	4250	1950	*6000	2750	*8250	4200	*7550	*7550		
		-3.0 m					*4800	2750	*6750	4300				
		-4.5 m												
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*2050	*2050			*3050	*3050						
		6.0 m	*1800	*1800	*2000	*2000	*3700	3450						
		4.5 m	*1750	*1750	*3500	2200	*4250	3350	*4100	*4100				
		3.0 m	*1750	1600	*4350	2100	*5341	3150	*6839	5100				
		1.5 m	*1850	1500	4350	2000	*5940	2900	*8085	4600				
		0.0 m	*2100	1550	3698	1900	6200	2750	*8488	4250	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	*2450	1700	4200	1900	*6050	2650	*8350	4150	*7200	*7200		
		-3.0 m					*5050	2700	*7050	4200				
		-4.5 m												



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
Dozer and outrigger	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2950	*2950					*4800	*4800				
		6.0 m	*2550	*2550			*4650	4400	*4800	*4800				
		4.5 m	*2450	*2450	*3100	2850	*5350	4300	*5900	*5900				
		3.0 m	*2450	*2450	*4800	2800	*5850	4100	*7673	6550				
		1.5 m	*2600	2400	4800	2750	*6250	3900	8700	6100				
		0.0 m	*2850	2500	*4750	2700	*6350	3563	*8624	5382				
		-1.5 m	*3400	2750			*5850	3750	*8000	5394	*7700	*7700		
		-3.0 m												
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2400	*2400			*2550	*2550						
		6.0 m	*2100	*2100			*4100	*4100						
		4.5 m	*2050	*2050	*3500	2900	*4800	4350	*4900	*4900				
		3.0 m	*2050	*2050	*4600	2850	*5650	4150	*7326	6650				
		1.5 m	*2200	*2200	4850	2750	*6150	3950	8500	6150				
		0.0 m	*2450	2300	4750	2650	*6350	3610	*8673	5428				
		-1.5 m	*2900	2550	*4250	2650	*6000	3700	*8250	5394	*7550	*7550		
		-3.0 m												
		-4.5 m												
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*2050	*2050			*3050	*3050						
		6.0 m	*1800	*1800	*2000	*2000	*3700	*3700						
		4.5 m	*1750	*1750	*3500	2900	*4250	*4250	*4100	*4100				
		3.0 m	*1750	*1750	*4350	2800	*5396	4150	*6980	*6700				
		1.5 m	*1850	*1850	*4750	2700	*6000	3900	*8250	6200				
		0.0 m	*2100	*2100	*4700	2548	*6250	3563	*8575	5382	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	*2450	2350	*4400	2600	*6050	3614	*8350	5301	*7200	*7200		
		-3.0 m					*5050	3650	*7050	5750				
		-4.5 m												



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
4 x outrigger	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2950	*2950					*4800	*4800				
		6.0 m	*2550	*2550			*4650	*4650	*4800	*4800				
		4.5 m	*2450	*2450	*3100	*3100	*5350	5300	*5900	*5900				
		3.0 m	*2450	*2450	*4800	3500	*5792	5100	*7673	*7750				
		1.5 m	*2600	*2600	*4900	3400	*6250	4900	*8700	7750				
		0.0 m	*2850	*2850	*4750	3283	*6350	4513	*8624	6900				
		-1.5 m	*3400	*3400			*5850	4700	*8000	6929	*7700	*7700		
		-3.0 m												
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2400	*2400			*2550	*2550						
		6.0 m	*2100	*2100			*4100	*4100						
		4.5 m	*2050	*2050	*3500	*3500	*4800	*4800	*4900	*4900				
		3.0 m	*2050	*2050	*4600	3500	*5594	5150	*7326	*7400				
		1.5 m	*2200	*2200	*4850	3400	*6150	4900	*8500	7850				
		0.0 m	*2450	*2450	*4800	3283	*6350	4513	*8673	6946				
		-1.5 m	*2900	*2900	*4250	3350	*6000	4700	*8250	6929	*7550	*7550		
		-3.0 m					*4800	4700	*6750	*6750				
		-4.5 m												
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*2050	*2050			*3050	*3050						
		6.0 m	*1800	*1800	*2000	*2000	*3700	*3700						
		4.5 m	*1750	*1750	*3500	*3500	*4250	*4250	*4100	*4100				
		3.0 m	*1750	*1750	*4350	3500	*5450	5150	*6980	*7050				
		1.5 m	*1850	*1850	*4750	3400	*6000	4900	*8250	7850				
		0.0 m	*2100	*2100	*4800	3234	*6250	4465	*8575	6900	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	*2450	*2450	*4400	3250	*6050	4554	*8350	6836	*7200	*7200		
		-3.0 m					*5050	4650	*7050	*7050				
		-4.5 m												

Note for lift capacity tables:

- Ratings are based on ISO 10567
- Lifting capacities are given for:
 - 75% of tipping load
 - rated hydraulic lift capacity 87% of max.
- Capacities marked with an asterisk (*) are limited by hydraulic capacities



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

2.5.4 Two piece boom – Lift capacity tables for 2.75 metre undercarriage

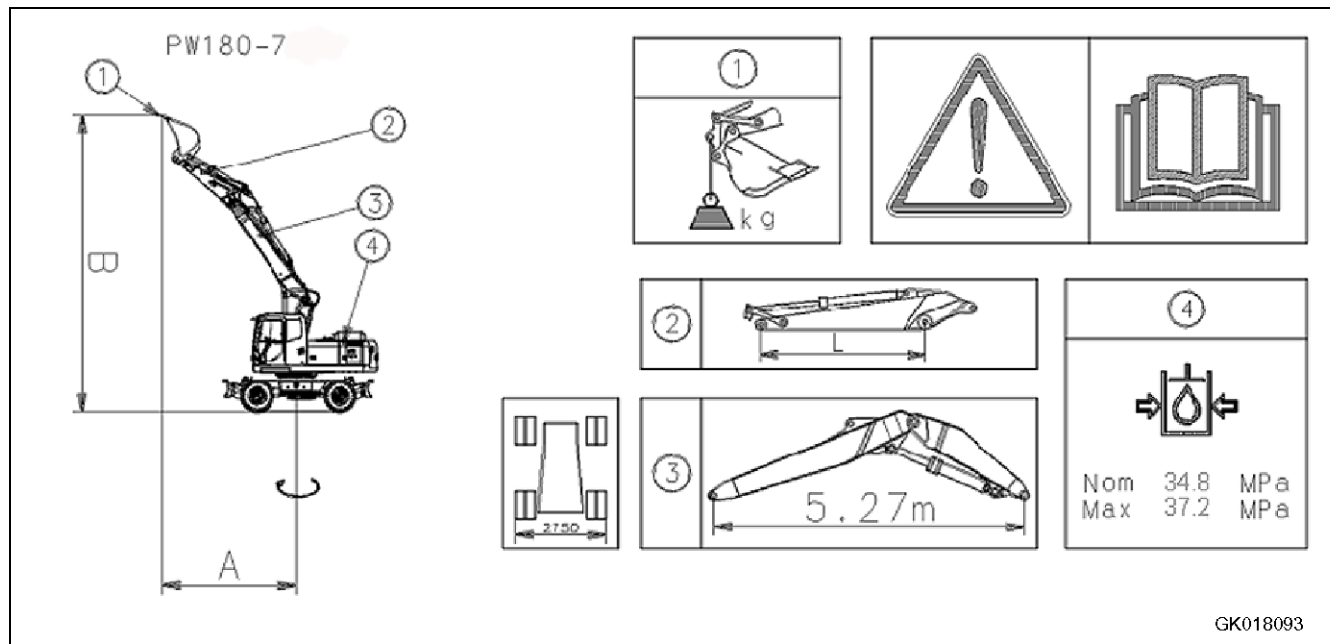
When removing bucket, linkage or cylinder, lifting capacities can be increased by their respective weights.

- A. Reach from swing center
- B. Bucket hook height
- C. Lifting capacities, including bucket (550 kg), linkage (122 kg) and bucket cylinder (109 kg)

OF: Lifting capacity (Rating over front)

OS: Lifting capacity (Rating over side)

MAX: Rating at maximum reach





WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX reach		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
No attachments	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2950	*2950					*4800	4750				
		6.0 m	*2550	2100			3500	2800	*4800	4750				
		4.5 m	2150	1650	2200	1750	3400	2700	5650	4500				
		3.0 m	1900	1450	2200	1700	3250	2550	5200	4050				
		1.5 m	1850	1400	2100	1600	3050	2350	4750	3650				
		0.0 m	1900	1450	2050	1550	2900	2250	4500	3400				
		-1.5 m	2150	1650			2850	2200	4450	3400	*7700	6500		
		-3.0 m												
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2400	*2400			*2550	*2550						
		6.0 m	*2100	1900			3550	2850						
		4.5 m	2000	1550	2250	1750	3450	2750	*4900	4600				
		3.0 m	1800	1350	2200	1700	3300	2600	5300	4150				
		1.5 m	1700	1300	2100	1600	3050	2400	4800	3700				
		0.0 m	1750	1350	2050	1550	2900	2250	4550	3450				
		-1.5 m	1950	1500	2050	1550	2850	2200	4450	3350	*7550	6450		
		-3.0 m					2900	2200	4500	3450				
		-4.5 m												
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*2050	*2050			*3050	2800						
		6.0 m	*1800	1750	*2000	1750	3600	2850						
		4.5 m	*1750	1400	2250	1750	3500	2750	*4100	*4100				
		3.0 m	1650	1250	2200	1700	3300	2600	5350	4200				
		1.5 m	1550	1150	2100	1600	3050	2350	4850	3700				
		0.0 m	1600	1200	2000	1500	2900	2200	4500	3400	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	1800	1350	1950	1450	2800	2100	4400	3300	*7200	6300		
		-3.0 m					2800	2150	4400	3350				
		-4.5 m												



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX reach		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
Front/rear dozer blade only	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2950	*2950					*4800	*4800				
		6.0 m	*2550	2450			*4650	3250	*4800	*4800				
		4.5 m	*2450	2000	*3100	2050	*5350	3150	*5900	5150				
		3.0 m	*2450	1750	4350	2000	*5733	3000	*7518	4700				
		1.5 m	*2600	1700	4250	1950	6138	2800	*8526	4300				
		0.0 m	*2850	1750	3654	1900	6050	2650	*8536	4050				
		-1.5 m	*3400	1950			*5850	2600	*8000	4050	*7700	*7700		
		-3.0 m												
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2400	*2400			*2550	*2550						
		6.0 m	*2100	*2100			*4100	3300						
		4.5 m	*2050	1850	*3500	2100	*4800	3200	*4900	*4900				
		3.0 m	*2050	1650	4350	2000	*5537	3000	*7178	4800				
		1.5 m	*2200	1550	4250	1950	*6089	2800	*8330	4350				
		0.0 m	*2450	1600	3611	1850	6050	2650	*8585	4100				
		-1.5 m	*2900	1800	4150	1850	5950	2600	*8250	4000	*7550	*7550		
		-3.0 m					*4800	2650	*6750	4100				
		-4.5 m												
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*2050	*2050			*3050	*3050						
		6.0 m	*1800	*1800	*2000	*2000	*3700	3300						
		4.5 m	*1750	1700	*3500	2100	*4250	3200	*4100	*4100				
		3.0 m	*1750	1500	4350	2000	*5341	3000	*6839	4850				
		1.5 m	*1850	1450	4200	1900	*5940	2800	*8085	4400				
		0.0 m	*2100	1450	3611	1800	6000	2600	*8488	4050	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	*2450	1600	4100	1800	5900	2550	*8350	3950	*7200	*7200		
		-3.0 m					*5050	2550	*7050	4000				
		-4.5 m												



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX reach		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
Rear outrigger only	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2950	*2950					*4800	*4800				
		6.0 m	*2550	*2550			*4650	3750	*4800	*4800				
		4.5 m	*2450	2350	*3100	2400	*5350	3700	*5900	*5900				
		3.0 m	*2450	2100	*4800	2400	*5733	3500	*7518	5550				
		1.5 m	*2600	2000	4750	2300	*6188	3300	*8526	5100				
		0.0 m	*2850	2100	4046	2250	*6350	3150	*8536	4900				
		-1.5 m	*3400	2350			*5850	3150	*8000	4850	*7700	*7700		
		-3.0 m												
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2400	*2400			*2550	*2550						
		6.0 m	*2100	*2100			*4100	3800						
		4.5 m	*2050	*2050	*3500	2450	*4800	3700	*4900	*4900				
		3.0 m	*2050	1950	*4600	2400	*5537	3550	*7178	5650				
		1.5 m	*2200	1900	4750	2300	*6089	3350	*8330	5200				
		0.0 m	*2450	1950	4046	2250	*6350	3150	*8585	4900				
		-1.5 m	*2900	2150	*4250	2200	*6000	3100	*8250	4800	*7550	*7550		
		-3.0 m					*4800	3150	*6750	4900				
		-4.5 m												
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*2050	*2050			*3050	*3050						
		6.0 m	*1800	*1800	*2000	*2000	*3700	*3700						
		4.5 m	*1750	*1750	*3500	2450	*4250	3750	*4100	*4100				
		3.0 m	*1750	*1750	*4350	2400	*5341	3550	*6839	5700				
		1.5 m	*1850	1750	4700	2250	*6000	3300	*8085	5200				
		0.0 m	*2100	1800	4002	2200	*6250	3150	*8488	4850	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	*2450	1950	*4400	2150	*6050	3050	*8350	4750	*7200	*7200		
		-3.0 m					*5050	3050	*7050	4800				
		-4.5 m												



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX reach		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
Dozer and outrigger	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2950	*2950					*4800	*4800				
		6.0 m	*2550	*2550			*4650	*4650	*4800	*4800				
		4.5 m	*2450	*2450	*3100	*3100	*5350	4700	*5900	*5900				
		3.0 m	*2450	*2450	4650	3100	*5792	4500	*7673	7200				
		1.5 m	*2600	*2600	4550	3000	*6250	4300	*8700	6700				
		0.0 m	*2850	2750	4500	2891	*6350	3943	*8624	5934				
		-1.5 m	*3400	3050			*5850	4100	*8000	5952	*7700	*7700		
		-3.0 m												
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2400	*2400			*2550	*2550						
		6.0 m	*2100	*2100			*4100	*4100						
		4.5 m	*2050	*2050	*3500	3150	*4800	4750	*4900	*4900				
		3.0 m	*2050	*2050	*4600	3100	*5594	4550	*7326	7300				
		1.5 m	*2200	*2200	4600	3000	*6150	4300	*8500	6800				
		0.0 m	*2450	*2450	4500	2891	*6350	3943	*8673	5980				
		-1.5 m	*2900	2800	*4250	2950	*6000	4100	*8250	5952	*7550	*7550		
		-3.0 m					*4800	4150	*6750	6500				
		-4.5 m												
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*2050	*2050			*3050	*3050						
		6.0 m	*1800	*1800	*2000	*2000	*3700	*3700						
		4.5 m	*1750	*1750	*3500	3150	*4250	*4250	*4100	*4100				
		3.0 m	*1750	*1750	*4350	3100	*5450	4550	*6978	*7050				
		1.5 m	*1850	*1850	4550	3000	*6000	4300	*8250	6800				
		0.0 m	*2100	*2100	4450	2842	*6250	3895	*8575	5934	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	*2450	*2450	*4400	2850	*6050	4050	*8350	5906	*7200	*7200		
		-3.0 m					*5050	4050	*7050	6400				
		-4.5 m												



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

Model	Arm length	Height (B)	Reach (A)											
			MAX reach		7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m		1.5 m	
			OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS	OF	OS
4 x outrigger	2.25 m	7.5 m	*2950	*2950					*4800	*4800				
		6.0 m	*2550	*2550			*4650	*4650	*4800	*4800				
		4.5 m	*2450	*2450	*3100	*3100	*5350	*5350	*5900	*5900				
		3.0 m	*2450	*2450	*4800	3800	*5792	5500	*7673	*7750				
		1.5 m	*2600	*2600	*4900	3700	*6250	5300	*8700	8500				
		0.0 m	*2850	*2850	*4750	3577	*6350	4893	*8624	7544				
		-1.5 m	*3400	*3400			*5850	5049	*8000	*7440	*7700	*7700		
		-3.0 m												
		-4.5 m												
	2.6 m	7.5 m	*2400	*2400			*2550	*2550						
		6.0 m	*2100	*2100			*4100	*4100						
		4.5 m	*2050	*2050	*3500	*3500	*4800	*4800	*4900	*4900				
		3.0 m	*2050	*2050	*4600	3800	*5594	5550	*7326	*7400				
		1.5 m	*2200	*2200	*4850	3700	*6150	5350	*8500	*8500				
		0.0 m	*2450	*2450	*4800	3577	*6350	4893	*8673	7590				
		-1.5 m	*2900	*2900	*4250	3650	*6000	5100	*8250	7580	*7550	*7550		
		-3.0 m					*4800	*4800	*6750	*6750				
		-4.5 m												
	2.9 m	7.5 m	*2050	*2050			*3050	*3050						
		6.0 m	*1800	*1800	*2000	*2000	*3700	*3700						
		4.5 m	*1750	*1750	*3500	*3500	*4250	*4250	*4100	*4100				
		3.0 m	*1750	*1750	*4350	3800	*5450	*5450	*6980	*7050				
		1.5 m	*1850	*1850	*4750	3700	*6000	5300	*8250	*8250				
		0.0 m	*2100	*2100	*4800	3528	*6250	4893	*8575	7544	*4600	*4600		
		-1.5 m	*2450	*2450	*4400	3550	*6050	5050	*8350	7533	*7200	*7200		
		-3.0 m					*5050	*5050	*7050	*7050				
		-4.5 m												

Note for lift capacity tables:

- Ratings are based on ISO 10567
- Lifting capacities are given for:
 - 75% of tipping load
 - rated hydraulic lift capacity 87% of max.
- Capacities marked with an asterisk (*) are limited by hydraulic capacities



WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

2.6 Overload caution

This machine is equipped with an overload caution system which gives a visual warning (on monitor) and an audible warning when lifting a load close to the lift capacity of the machine (active in L mode only).

A decal inside the operators cab shows the loads at which the caution warning is given for various work equipment positions.

Due to the simple nature of the system the overload warning is given at a lower load than actually allowable (see full lift capacity charts)

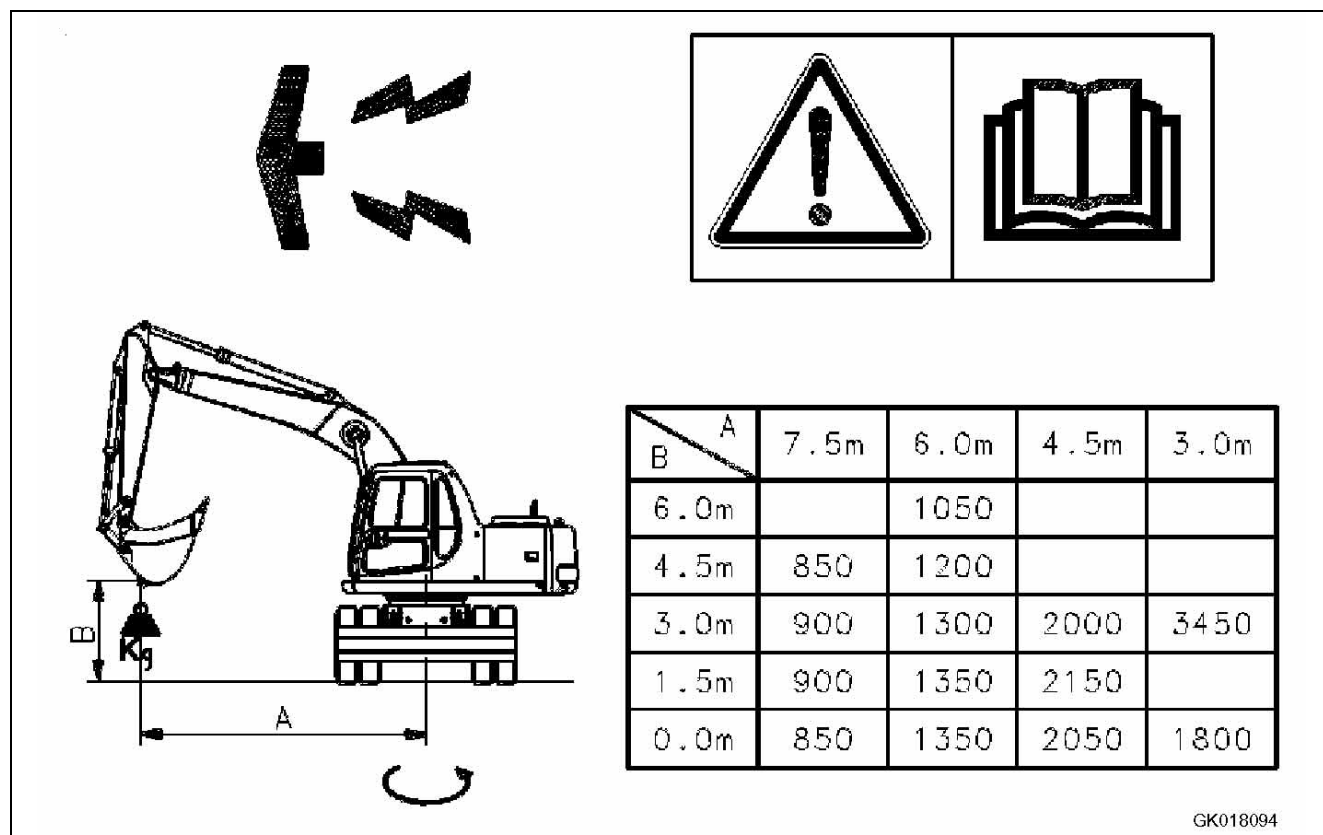
If lifting to the full capacity of the machine is required it is necessary to fit a full overload caution system (with work equipment position sensing to the machine.)

Decal showing lifting loads (in kg) at overload warning.

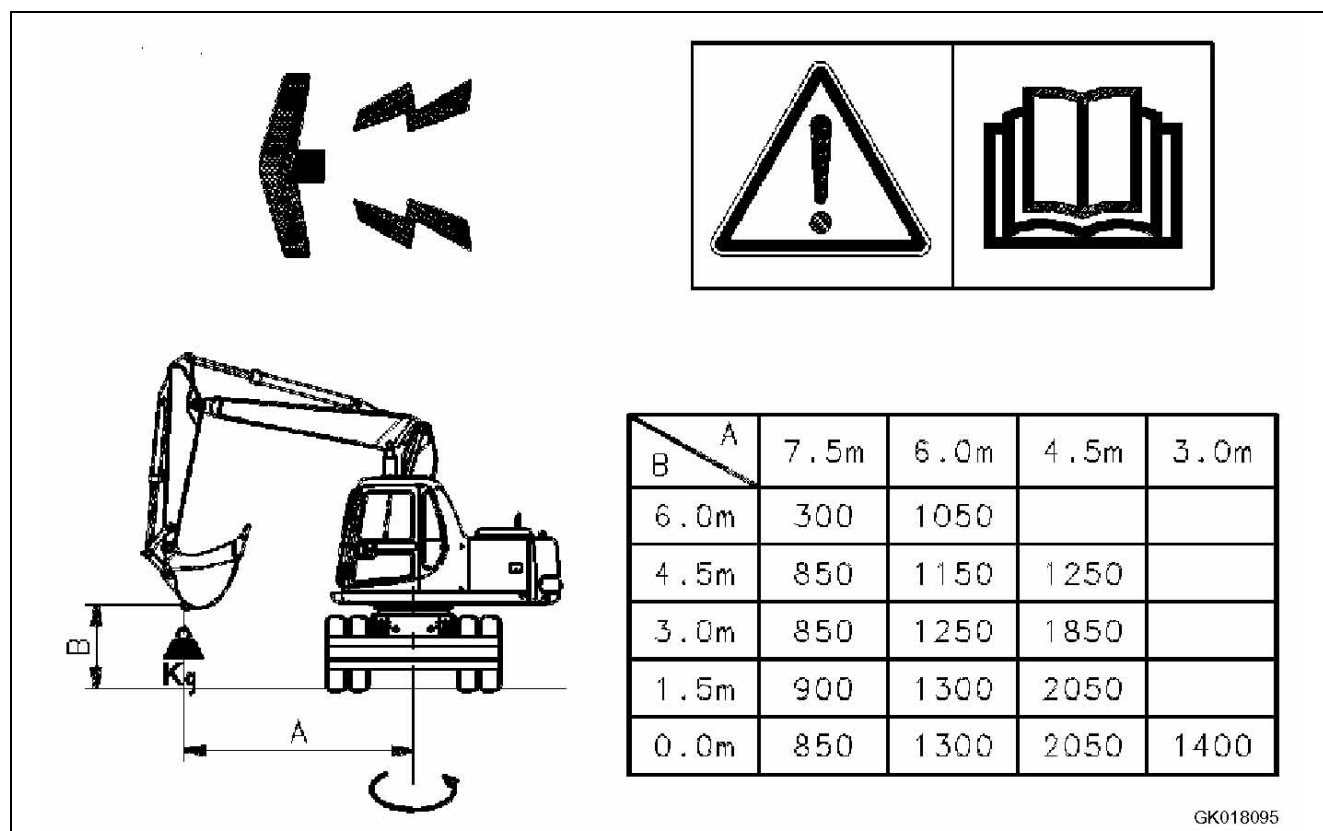


WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

2.6.1 Monoboom – Overload caution



2.6.2 Two piece boom – Overload caution





WARNING: For reasons of safety, always follow these safety precautions

3. Operation



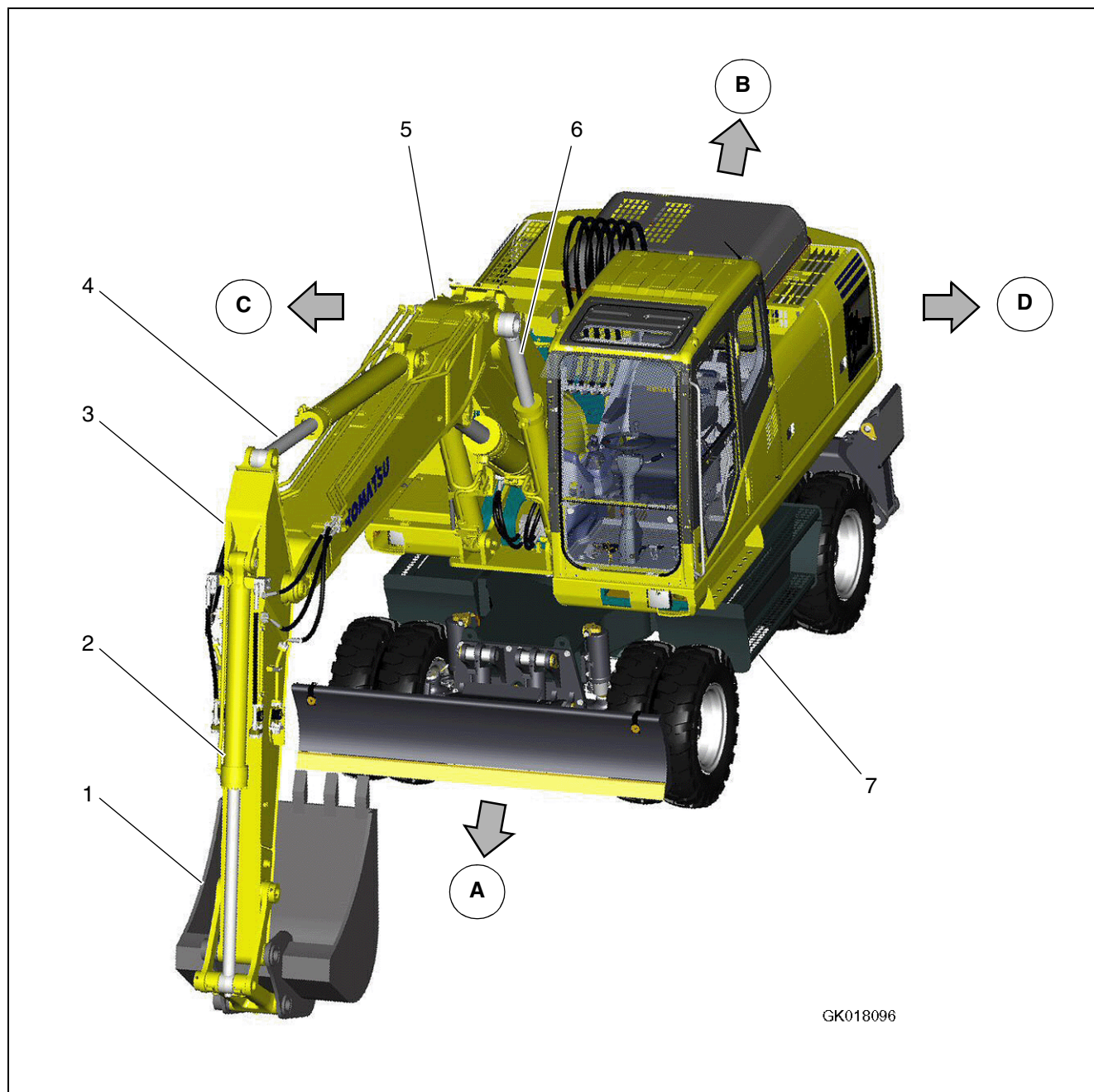
WARNING

Please read and make sure that you understand the safety volume before reading this section.

3.1 General view

3.1.1 General view of machine

If directions are indicated in this section, they refer to the directions shown by in the arrows in the diagram below.



A: Front

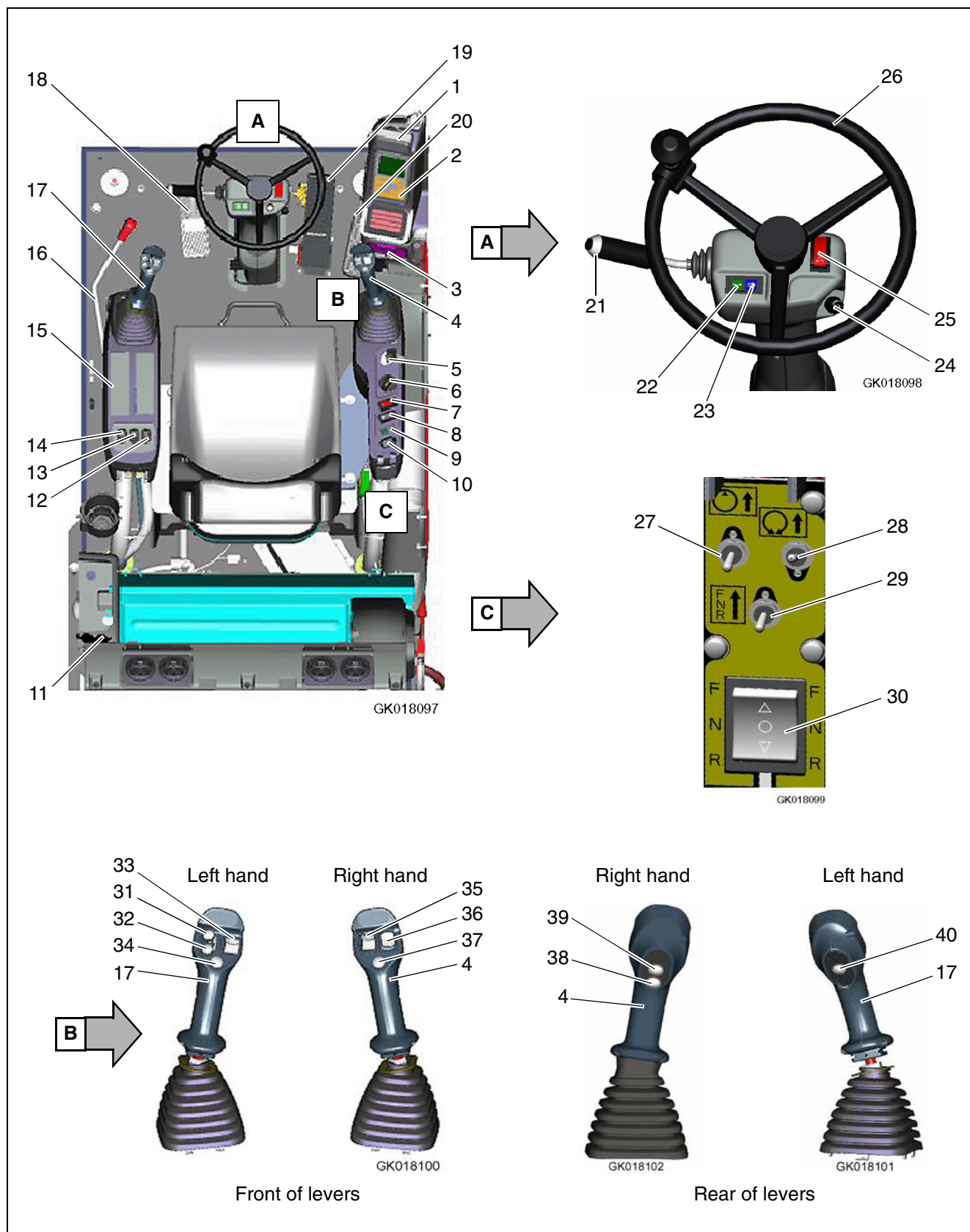
B: Rear

C: Right

D: Left

1.	Bucket
2.	Bucket cylinder
3.	Arm
4.	Arm cylinder
5.	Boom
5.	Boom cylinder
7.	Undercarriage

3.1.2 General view of controls and gauges



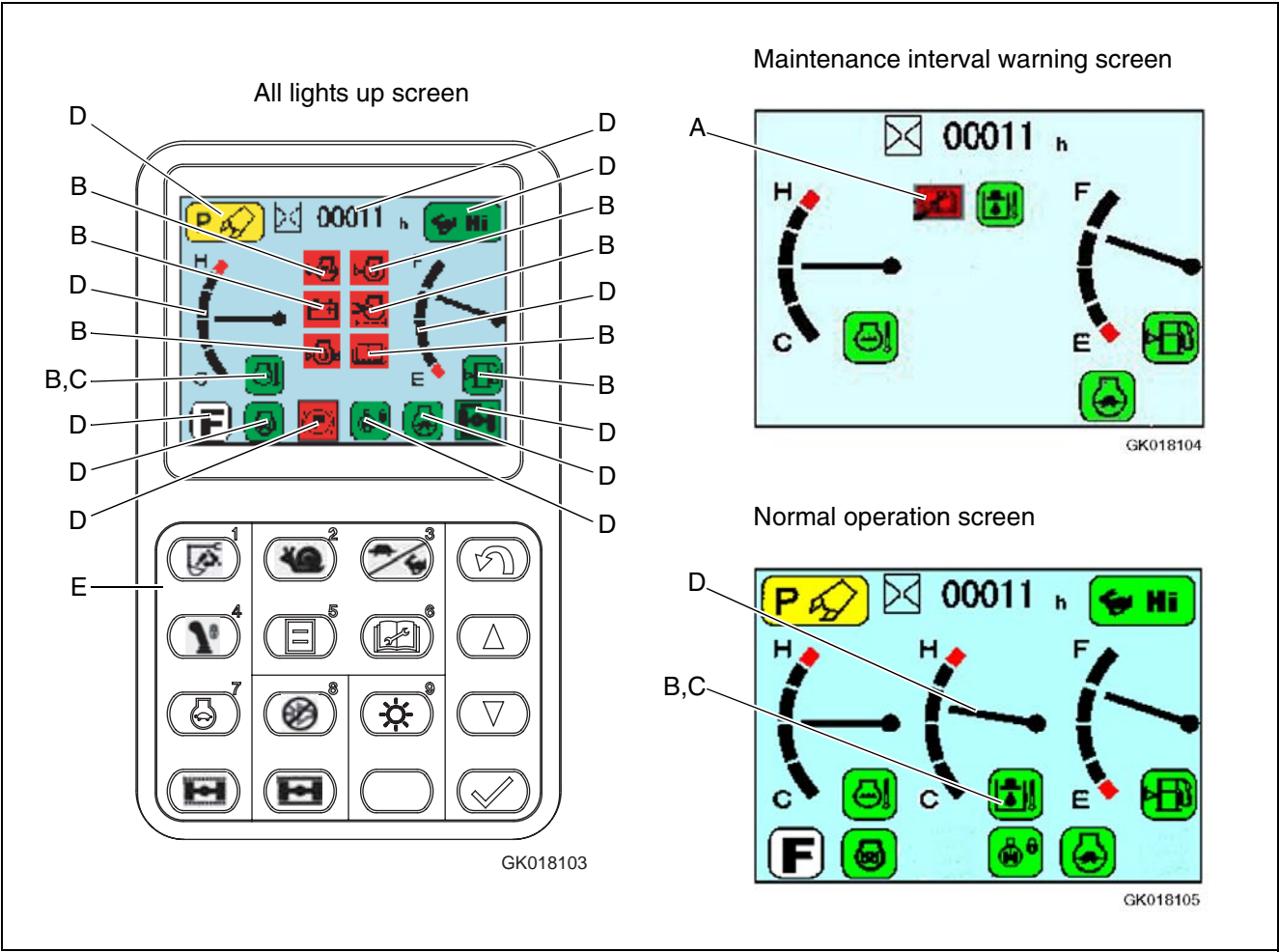
1.	Undercarriage attachment select	
2.	Machine monitor	see page 3-6
3.	Cigarette lighter	see page 3-45
4.	Right work equipment control lever	see page 3-57
5.	Starter switch	see page 3-44
6.	Fuel control dial (with auto-deceleration mechanism)	see page 3-44
7.	Park brake switch	see page 3-48
8.	Work light switch	see page 3-52
9.	Quick coupler	see page 6-7
10.	Swing lock switch	see page 3-45
11.	12V power supply	see page 3-52
12.	Heated seat switch (option)	see page 3-52
13.	Beacon light switch (option)	see page 3-53
14.	Lower wiper switch (option)	see page 3-53
15.	Air conditioner controls	see page 3-75
16.	Safety lock lever	see page 3-56
17.	Left work equipment control lever	see page 3-57
18.	Hydraulic adjust boom pedal	see page 3-60
19.	Brake pedal	see page 3-59
20.	Travel pedal	see page 3-58
21.	Direction indicator switch	see page 3-51
21.	Horn switch	see page 3-51
21.	Windscreen wash switch	see page 3-51
21.	Roadlights dip/main beam/flash switch	see page 3-51
21.	Main windscreen wiper switch	see page 3-52
22.	Turn Indicator warning lamps	see page 3-93
23.	Full beam indicator	see page 3-51
24.	Driving light switch	see page 3-49
25.	Hazard warning switch	see page 3-53
26.	Steering wheel	see page 3-59
27.	Pump control override switch	see page 3-47
28.	Swing lock override switch	see page 3-47
29.	Travel override switch	see page 3-48
30.	F/N/R override switch	see page 3-48
31.	Spare	—
32.	Rototilt bucket	see page 6-43
33.	HCU switch (option)	see page 3-50
34.	Horn button	see page 3-46
35.	Clamshell rotation switch	see page 3-50
36.	F/N/R switch	see page 3-49
37.	Boom/undercarriage attachment switch	see page 3-49
38.	Breaker switch	see page 3-50
39.	Spare	—
40.	Power max button	see page 3-46

3.2 Explanation of components

The following is an explanation of the devices needed for operating the machine.

To carry out suitable operations correctly and safely, it is important to understand fully the methods of operating the equipment and the meanings of the displays.

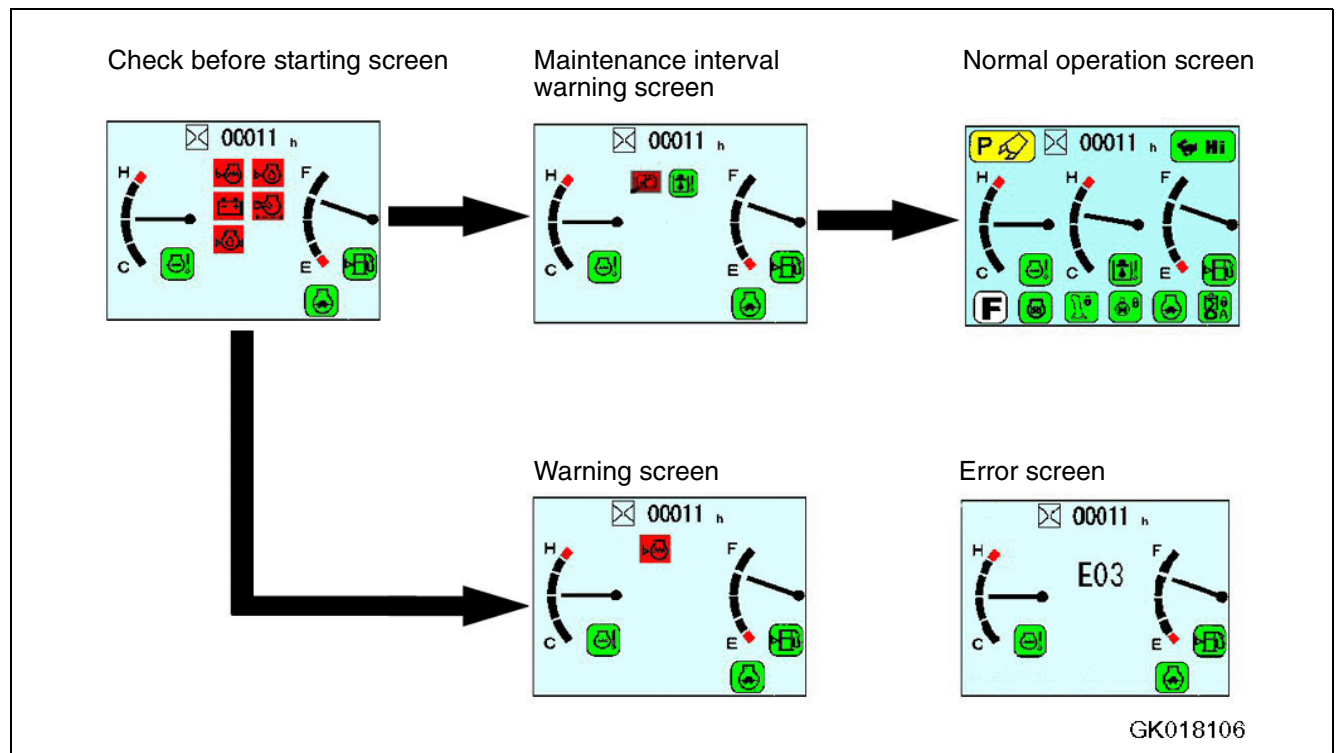
3.2.1 Machine monitor



A.	Basic check items
B.	Caution items
C.	Emergency stop items
D.	Meter display portion, pilot display portion
E.	Monitor switches

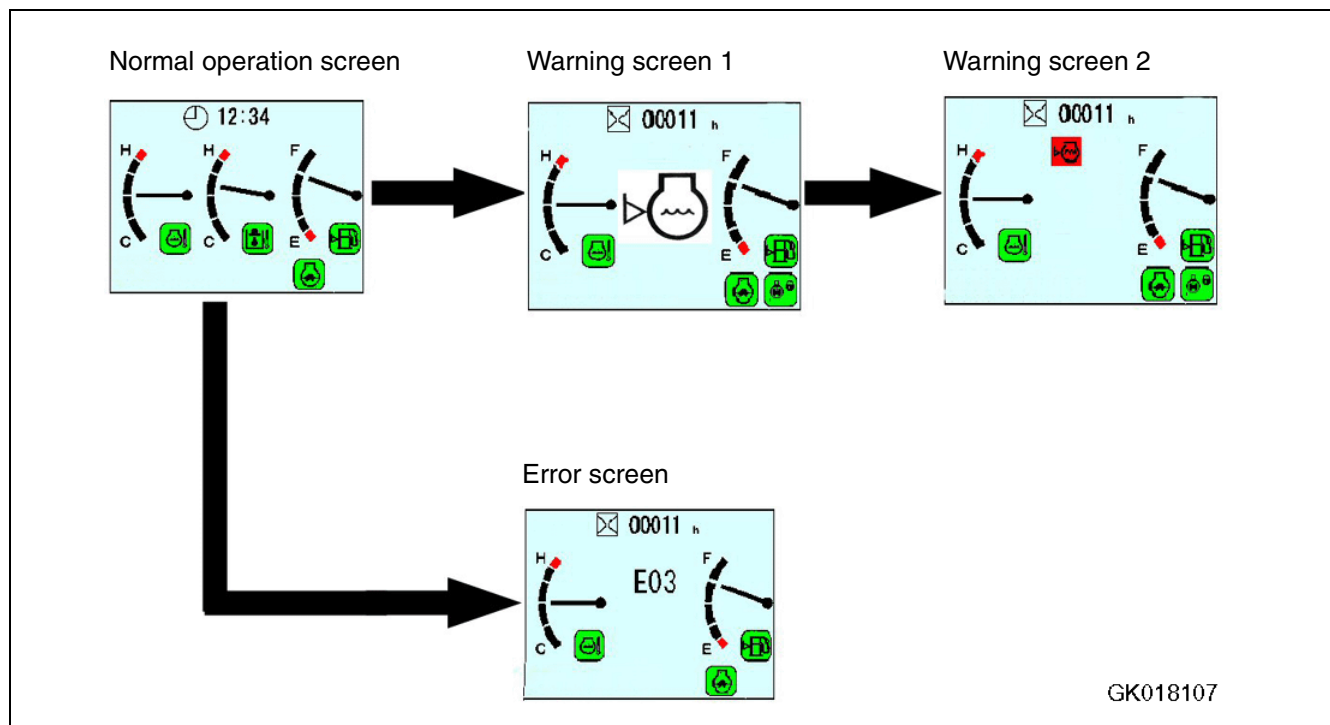
3.2.2 Basic operation of machine monitor

If there is abnormality when starting engine



- If there is any abnormality when starting the engine, the check before starting screen changes to the maintenance interval warning screen, warning screen, or error screen.
- After displaying the check before starting screen for 2 seconds, the screen changes to the maintenance interval warning screen.
- After displaying the maintenance interval warning screen for 30 seconds, the screen returns to the normal screen.
- After displaying the check before starting screen for 2 seconds, the screen changes to the warning screen or error screen.

If any abnormality occurs during operation



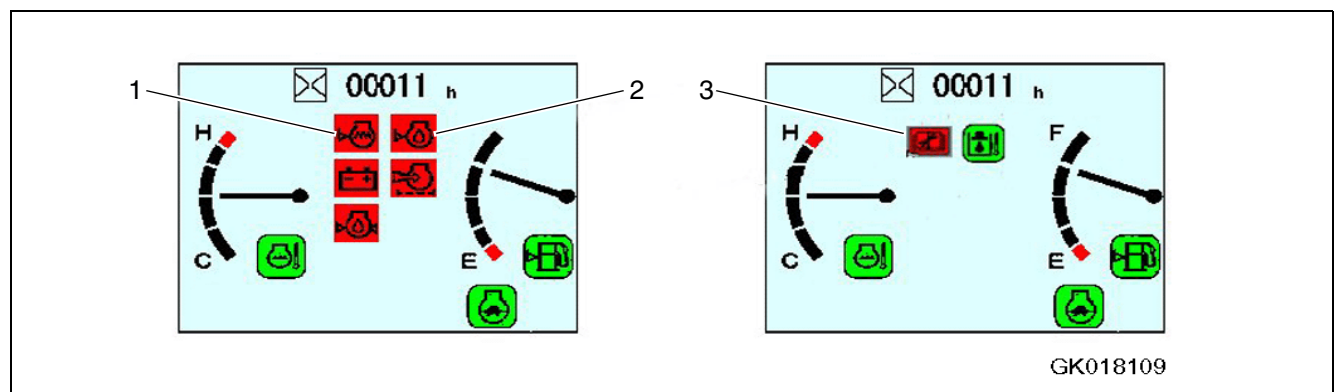
- If any abnormality occurs during operation, the normal operation screen changes to warning screen (1) or the error screen.
- After displaying warning screen (1) for 2 seconds, the screen automatically changes to warning screen (2), with exception of low brake pressure when warning screen (1) remains permanently active.

3.3 Basic check items

WARNING

These monitors are not a guarantee of the condition of the machine. Do not simply rely on the monitors when carrying out checks before starting (daily checks). Always get off the machine and check each item directly.

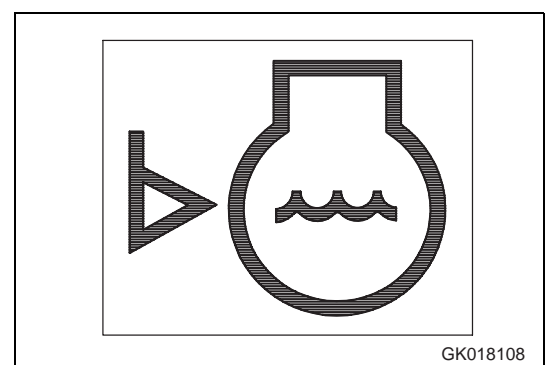
This displays the basic items that must be checked before starting the engine. If there is any abnormality, the monitor for the location of the abnormality will light up.



1.	Radiator water level monitor
2.	Engine oil level monitor
3.	Maintenance interval monitor

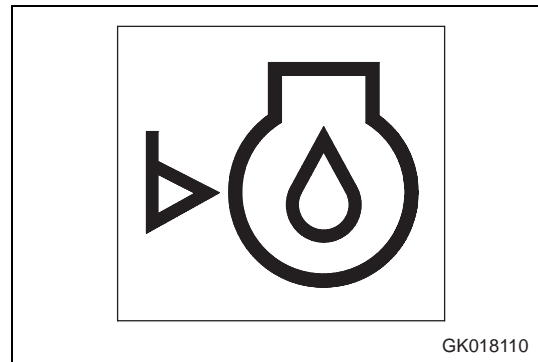
1. Radiator water level monitor

This monitor (1) warns the operator that there has been a drop in the radiator water level. If the radiator water level is low, the lamp lights up red, so check the water level in the radiator and the sub-tank, and add water.



2. Engine oil level monitor

This monitor (2) warns the operator that there has been a drop in the oil level in the engine oil pan. If the oil level in the engine oil pan is low, the lamp lights up red, so check the oil level in the engine oil pan, and add oil.



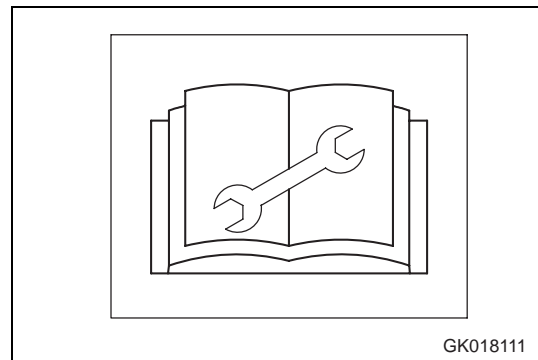
3. Maintenance interval monitor

This monitor (3) lights up to warn the operator that the set time has passed since the maintenance was last carried out.

This monitor screen goes out after 30 seconds and returns to the normal operation screen.

For details of the method of checking the maintenance interval, see "Service menu switch (3-32)".

If it is desired to change the setting of the maintenance interval, please consult your KOMATSU distributor.



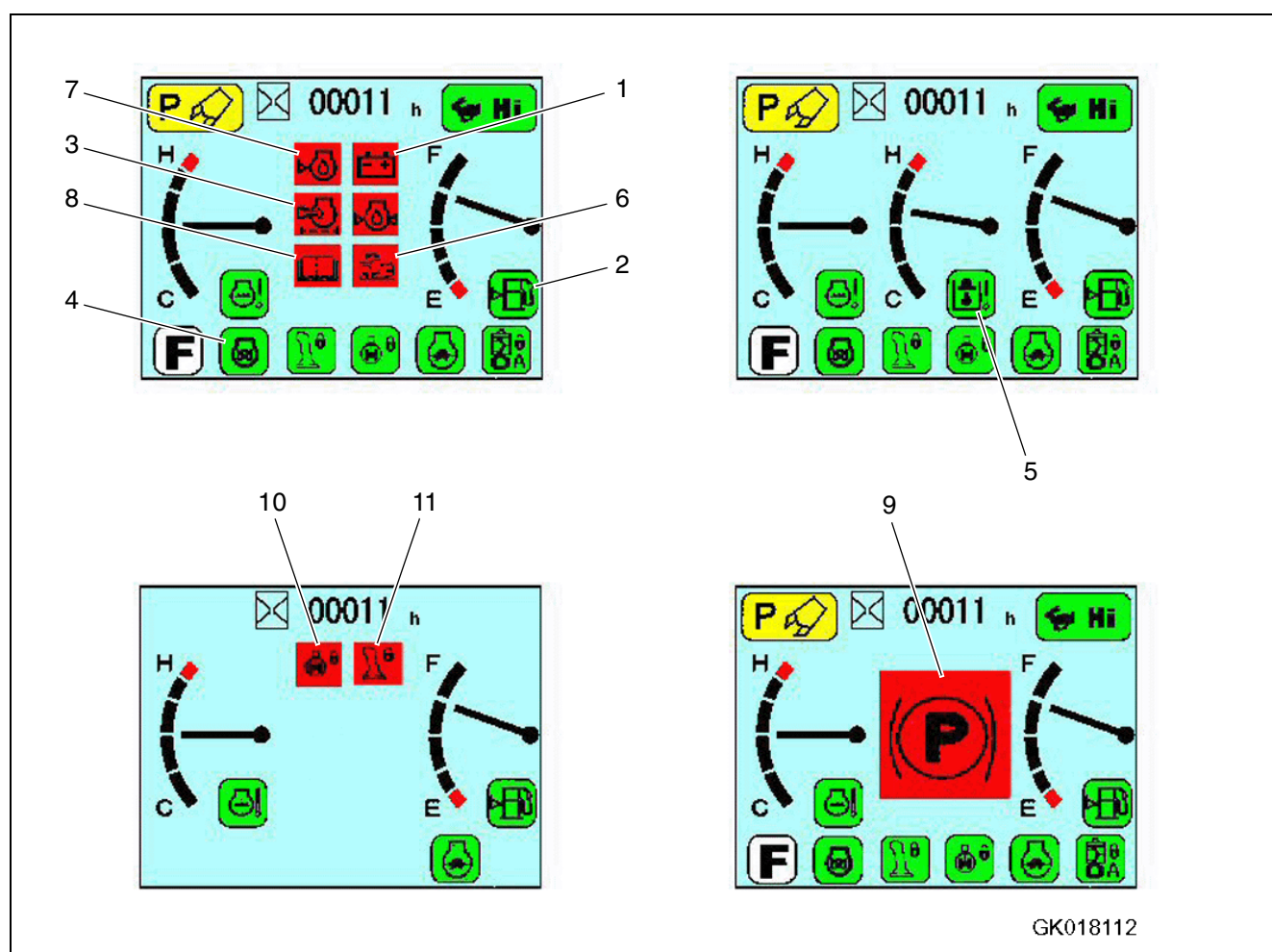
3.3.1 Caution items

WARNING

If the warning monitor lights up red, stop operations as soon as possible and carry out inspection and maintenance at the applicable location. If the warning is ignored, it may lead to failure.

These are items that should be observed while the engine is running. If any abnormality occurs, the screen displays the item that needs immediate action.

If there is an abnormality, the monitor for the abnormal location lights up red.

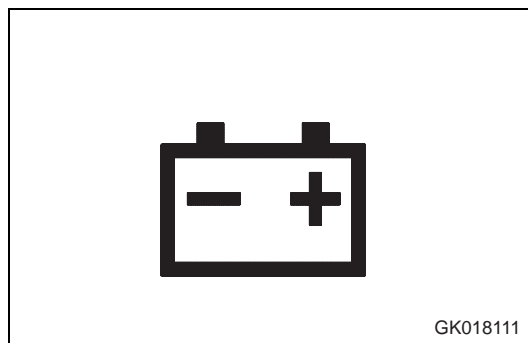


1.	Charge level monitor	7.	Engine oil level low
2.	Fuel level monitor	8.	Service machine – overdue
3.	Air cleaner clogging monitor	9.	Park brake
4.	Engine water temperature monitor	10.	Swing lock
5.	Hydraulic oil temperature monitor	11.	PPC lock
6.	Overload caution monitor		

1. Charge level monitor

This monitor (1) warns the operator that there is an abnormality in the charging system when the engine is running. If the battery is not being charged properly while the engine is running, it lights up red.

If it lights up red, check for looseness of the V-belt. If any abnormality is found, take the necessary action.
For details, see "Other trouble (3-176)".



REMARK

While the starting switch is ON, the lamp will remain lit and will go off once the engine is started.

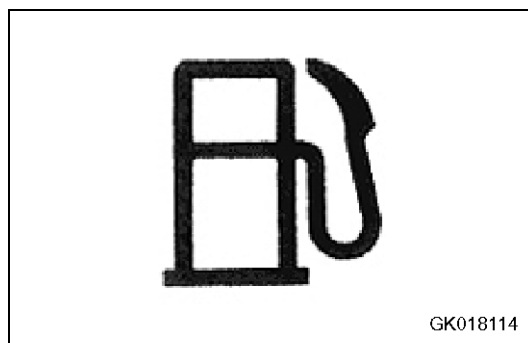
REMARK

When the engine is started or stopped with the starting switch at the ON position, the lamp may light up and the buzzer may sound momentarily, but this does not indicate any abnormality.

2. Fuel level monitor

This monitor (2) lights up to warn the operator that the level in the fuel tank is low.

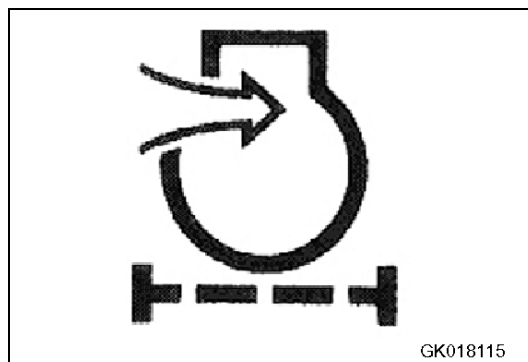
If the remaining amount of fuel goes down to 33 litres, the light changes from green to red, so add fuel as soon as possible.



3. Air cleaner clogging monitor

This monitor (3) warns the operator that the air cleaner is clogged.

If it lights up red, stop the engine and inspect and clean the air cleaner.

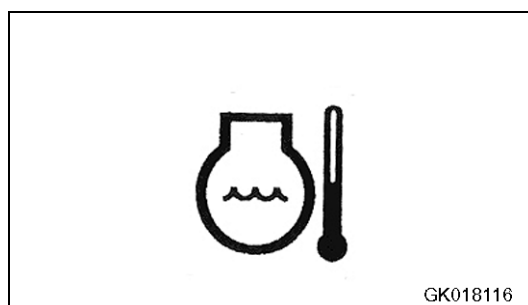


4. Engine water temperature monitor

If this monitor (4) lights up white in low temperatures, carry out the warming-up operation.

For details, see "Warming up operation (3-115)".

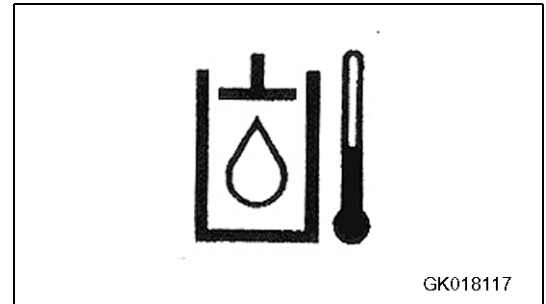
Continue the warming-up operation until monitor (4) changes to green.



5. Hydraulic oil temperature monitor

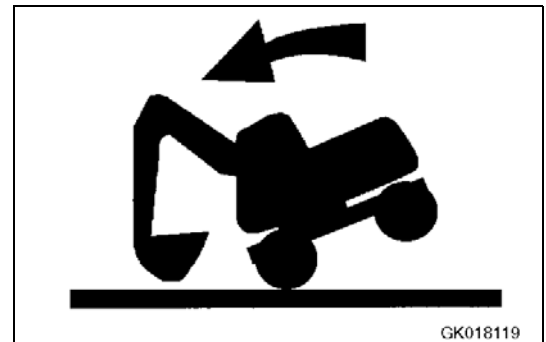
If this monitor (5) lights up white in low temperatures, carry out the warming-up operation.

For details, see "Warming up operation (3-115)".



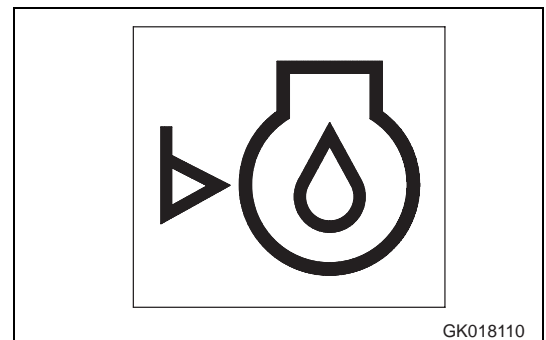
6. Overload caution monitor (when lifting)

This monitor warns that the machine is close to tipping due to the load (an audible warning is also given), if the warning is given lower the load. Refer to the lifting capacity chart for safe load, see "Lifting capacity chart PW180-7E0 (2-44)".



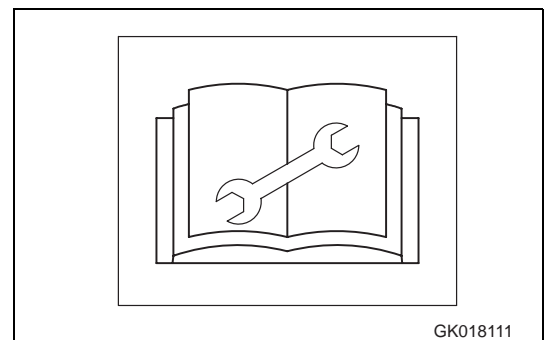
7. Engine oil level low

When monitor (7) lights up, the engine oil level is insufficient. Stop machine immediately and refill to recommended levels.



8. Service machine – overdue

This monitor (8) lights red when the machine service is overdue. The machine should be serviced immediately or damage may occur.



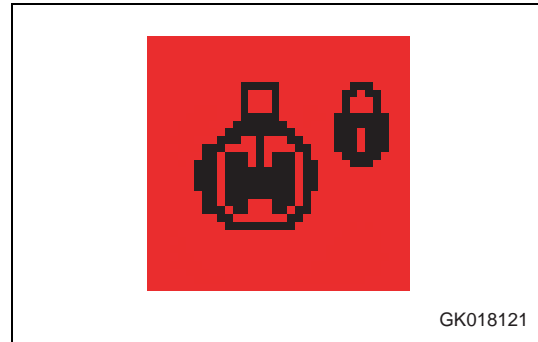
9. Park brake

When park brake is applied, this lamp will illuminate.



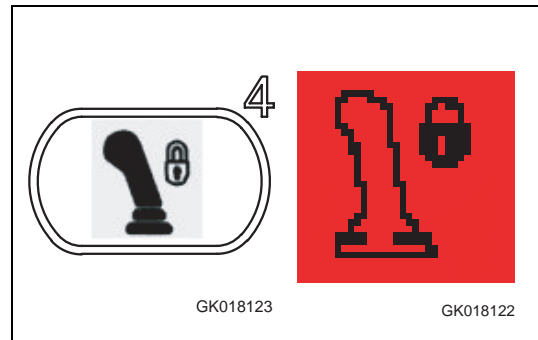
10. Swing lock

This monitor warns that the machine is travelling at high speed without applying the swing lock switch. Turn on the swing lock switch immediately when the machine is travelling at high speed.



11. PPC lock

This monitor warns that the machine is travelling at high speed without applying the PPC lock switch. Push the PPC lock switch immediately when the machine is travelling at high speed.

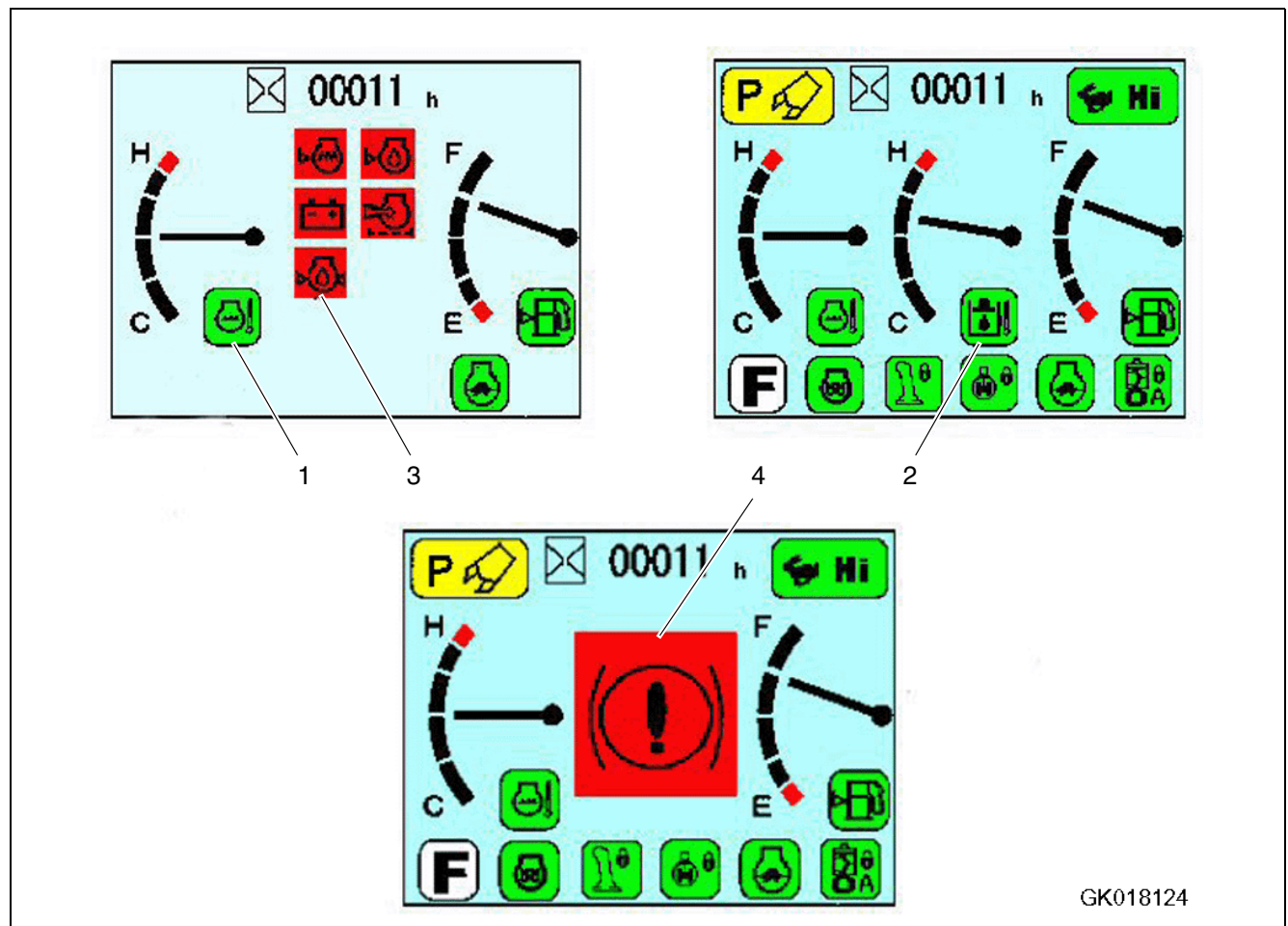


3.3.2 Emergency stop items

WARNING

If the monitor lights up red, stop the engine immediately or run it at low idle, then check the applicable location and carry out the necessary action.

These are items that should be observed while the engine is running. If there is an abnormality, the monitor for the abnormal location lights up red and the buzzer sounds, so carry out action immediately.



GK018124

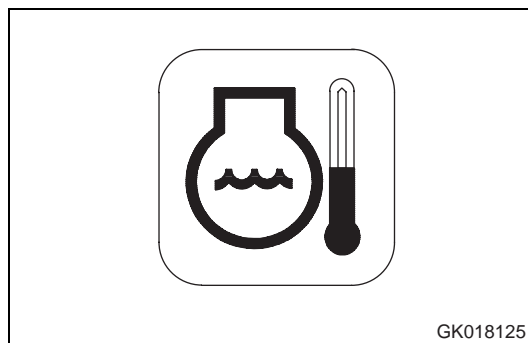
1.	Engine water temperature monitor
2.	Hydraulic oil temperature monitor
3.	Engine oil pressure monitor
4.	Low brake pressure

1. Engine water temperature monitor

This monitor (1) warns the operator that the engine water temperature has risen.

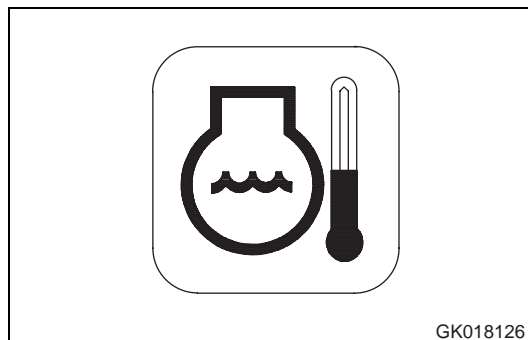
If the engine water temperature becomes abnormally high, the monitor lights up red, the overheat prevention system is automatically actuated, and the engine speed goes down.

Stop operations and run the engine at low idle until monitor (1) changes to green.



2. Hydraulic oil temperature monitor

This monitor (2) warns the operator that the hydraulic oil temperature has risen. If it lights up red during operations, run the engine at low idle or stop the engine and wait until the oil temperature goes down and the monitor changes to green.

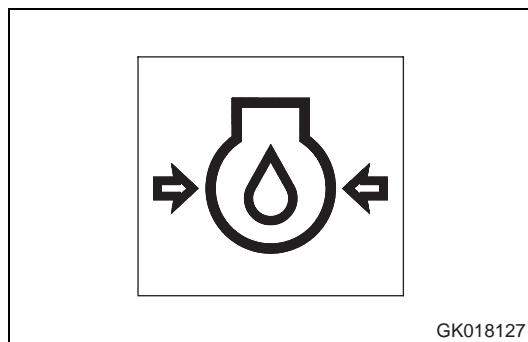


3. Engine oil pressure monitor

This monitor (3) lights up red if the engine lubrication oil pressure goes below the normal level. If it lights up red, stop the engine, and check the lubrication system and the level of oil in the oil pan.

REMARK

When the starting switch is ON, this lamp remains illuminated, and after the engine starts, it goes out. When the engine starts, the buzzer sounds momentarily, but this is not an abnormality.



4. Low brake pressure

When brake system hydraulic pressure is abnormal, this lamp will illuminate.

CAUTION

Do not drive machine with low brake pressure warning lamp illuminated.

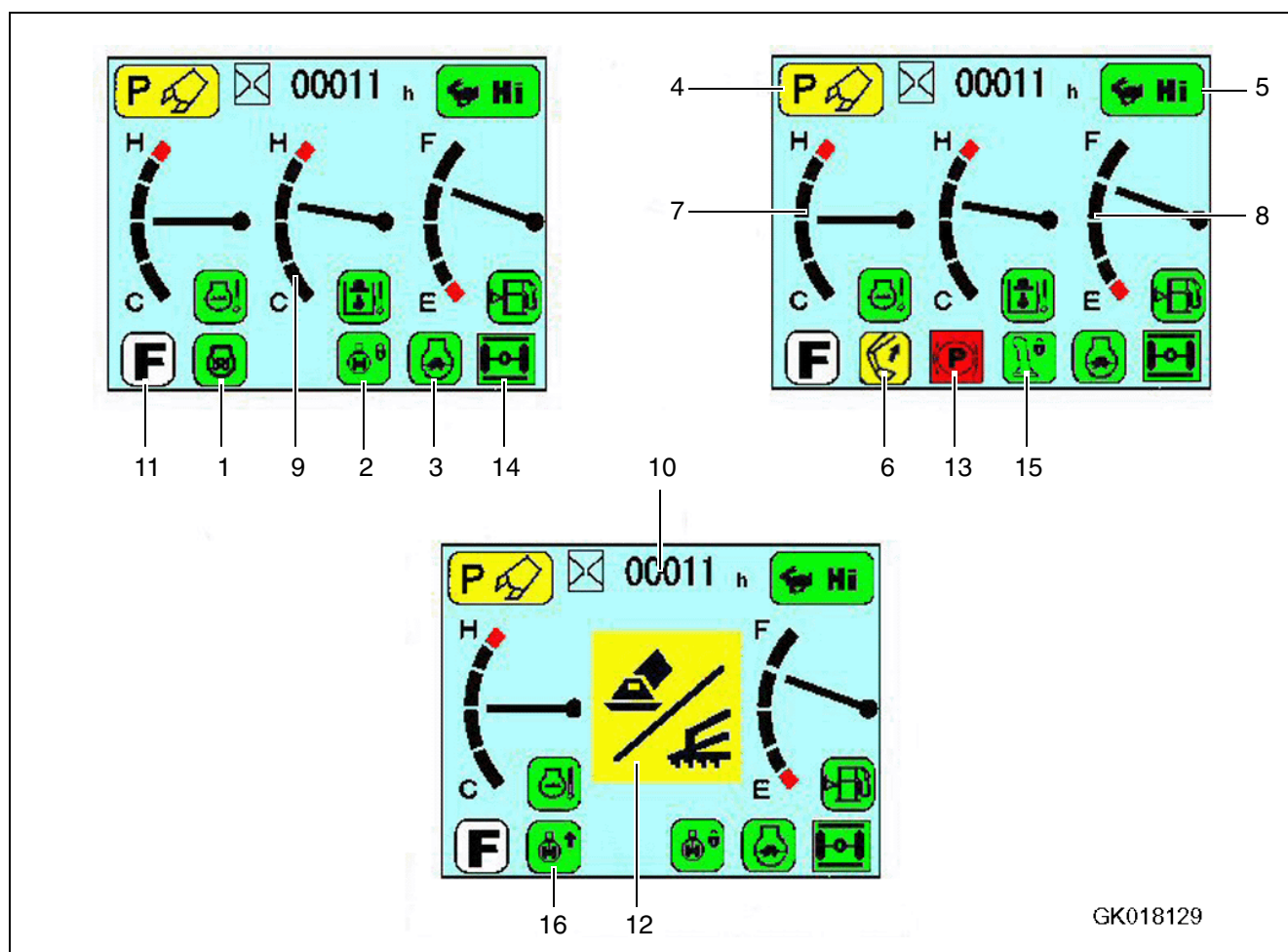


REMARK

The color when the monitor lights up for the basic check items, caution items, and emergency stop items is as follows.

Type of monitor	Color when monitor lights up		
	When normal	When abnormal	At low temperature
Radiator water level monitor	OFF	Red	–
Engine oil level monitor	OFF	Red	–
Maintenance interval monitor	OFF	Red	–
Charge monitor	OFF	Red	–
Fuel level monitor	Green	Red	–
Air cleaner clogging monitor	OFF	Red	–
Engine water temperature monitor	Green	Red	White
Hydraulic oil temperature monitor	Green	Red	White
Engine oil pressure monitor	OFF	Red	–
Overload caution monitor	OFF	Red	–
Low brake pressure	OFF	Red	–
Swing lock	OFF	Red	–
Control lever lock	OFF	Red	–

3.3.3 Meter display portion



GK018129

1.	Engine pre-heating monitor
2.	Swing lock monitor
3.	Auto-deceleration monitor
4.	Working mode monitor
5.	Travel mode monitor
6.	Power max monitor
7.	Engine water temperature gauge
8.	Fuel gauge
9.	Hydraulic oil temperature gauge
10.	Service meter and clock
11.	Travel direction monitor
12.	Undercarriage attachment monitor
13.	Park brake
14.	Suspension lock
15.	Control lever lock
16.	Swing position

Pilot display

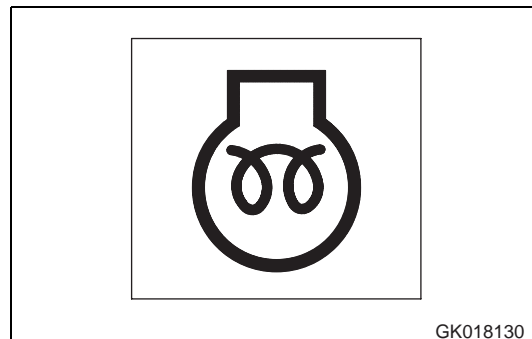
When the starting switch is ON, the pilot display lights up when the display items are functioning.

1. Engine pre-heating monitor

This monitor lamp (1) indicates the pre-heating time required when starting the engine at an ambient temperature below 0°C.

The monitor lamp lights when the starting switch is turned to the HEAT position and flashes after about 30 seconds to show that the pre-heating is completed.

(The monitor lamp will go off after about 10 seconds)



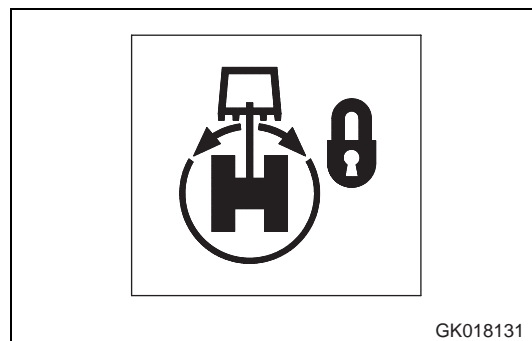
2. Swing lock monitor

This monitor (2) informs the operator that the swing lock is being actuated.

Actuated: Lights up

When the swing lock switch is turned ON (ACTUATED), the monitor lamp lights up.

This monitor flashes when the swing holding brake cancel switch is turned on.



REMARK

The swing motor is equipped with a disc brake that mechanically stops the rotation. When the swing lock monitor lamp is lit up, the brake remains applied.

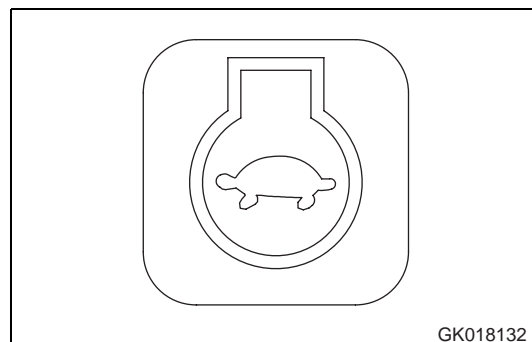
3. Auto-deceleration monitor

This monitor (3) shows if the auto-deceleration function has been actuated.

The monitor display when the auto-deceleration switch is operated is as follows.

Auto-deceleration monitor ON: Auto-deceleration actuated.

Auto-deceleration monitor OFF: Auto-deceleration canceled.

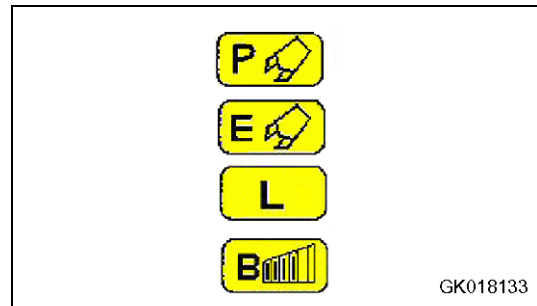


4. Working mode monitor

This monitor (4) displays the set working mode.

The monitor display when the working mode switch is operated is as follows.

- P: P mode (for heavy-load operations)
 E: E mode (for operations with emphasis on fuel economy)
 L: L mode (for fine-control operations and lifting)
 B: B mode (for breaker operations)

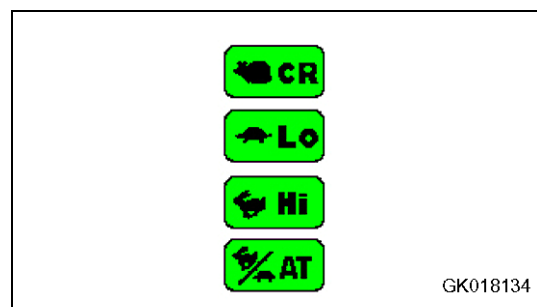


5. Travel mode monitor

This monitor (5) displays the set mode for the travel speed.

When one of the travel mode selector switches is operated the monitor displays one of the following selections.

- CR: Creep mode
 LO: Low mode
 HI: High mode
 AT: Automatic mode



6. Power max monitor

This monitor (6) shows if the power max function has been actuated.

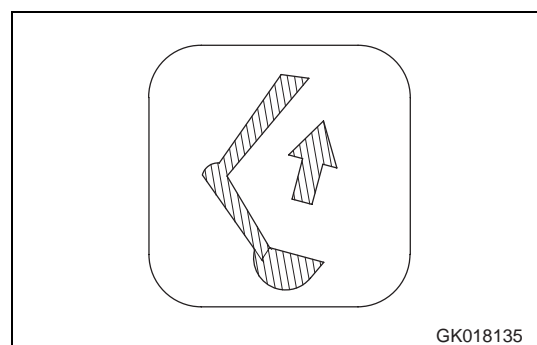
The monitor display (when the button on the left control lever is operated) is as follows.

Monitor lights up: Digging power is increased for 8.5 seconds.

REMARK

The digging power is increased while the knob switch is being pressed only for working modes A and E. Note that this operation should be used to overcome heavy operating conditions and not for continuous use.

Monitor goes out: Power max function stopped.



Meters

7. Engine water temperature gauge

This meter (7) indicates the engine cooling water temperature.

During normal operations, the indicator should be in the black range. If the indicator enters the red range during operations, the overheat prevention system is actuated.

The overheat prevention system acts as follows.

Red range position (A):

Engine water temperature monitor (1) turns red.

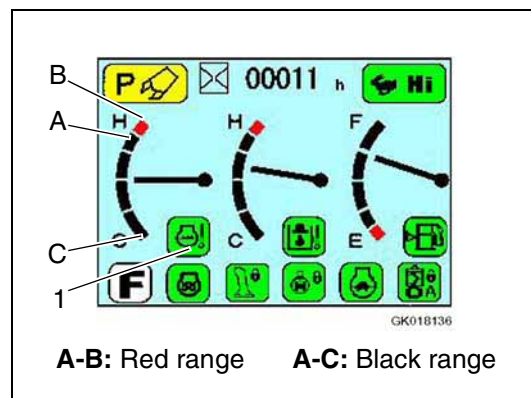
Red range position (B):

Engine speed is reduced to low idle, engine water temperature monitor lamp (1) turns red, and the alarm buzzer sounds at the same time.

The overheat prevention system remains actuated until the indicator returns to the black range.

When the engine is started, if the indicator is at position (C), engine water temperature monitor (1) lights up white.

In this case, carry out the warming-up operation. For details, see "Warming up operation (3-115)".



8. Fuel gauge

This meter (8) displays the level of fuel in the fuel tank.

During operations, the indicator should be in the black range.

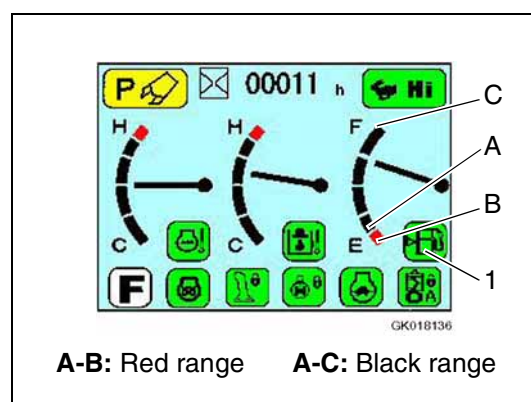
If the indicator enters red range (A) during operations, there are less than 80 litres of fuel remaining in the tank, so check and add fuel.

REMARK

If the indicator enters red range (B), there are less than 33 litres of fuel remaining.

When the indicator is in the red range (A) to (B), fuel level monitor (1) lights up red. When indicator is between A and C the fuel level monitor (1) remains green.

The correct fuel level may not be displayed for a short time when the starting switch is turned ON, but this is not an abnormality.



9. Hydraulic oil temperature gauge

This meter (9) displays the hydraulic oil temperature.

During operations, the indicator should be in the black range.

If the indicator enters red range (A) during operations, the hydraulic oil temperature has gone above 102°C. Stop the engine or run it at low idle and wait for the hydraulic oil temperature to go down.

REMARK

When the indicator is in the red range (A) to (B), the hydraulic oil temperature is as follows.

- Red range position (A): More than 102°C.
- Red range position (B): More than 105°C.

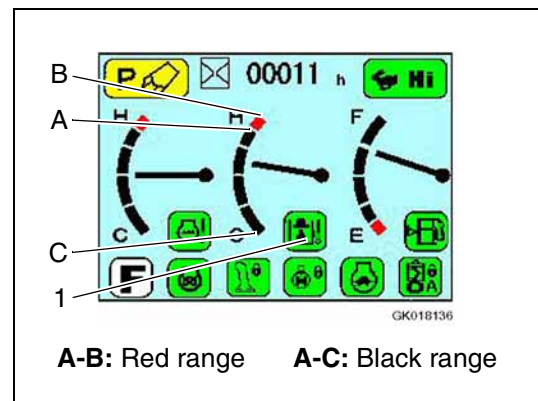
When the indicator is in the red range (A) to (B), hydraulic oil temperature monitor (1) lights up red. When indicator is between A and C the hydraulic oil temperature monitor (1) remains green.

If the indicator is at position (C) when the engine is started, the hydraulic oil temperature is less than 25°C, and hydraulic oil temperature monitor (1) lights up white. In this case, carry out the warming-up operation.

For details, see "Warming up operation (3-115)".

REMARK

If other warnings are displayed, only monitor (1) is displayed and not the range indicator.

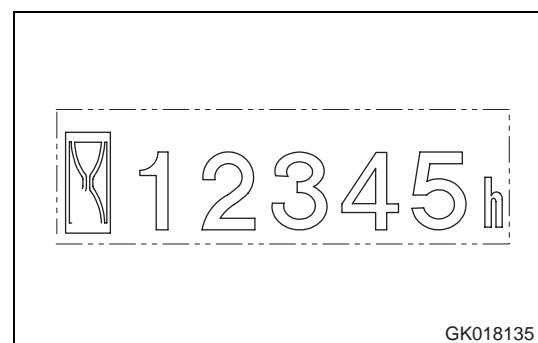


10. Service meter and clock

This monitor (10) displays the total time that the machine has been operated. When the engine is running this display changes to a clock.

Use the time display to set the maintenance interval. When the starting switch is ON, the service meter advances even if the machine is not moving.

The service meter advances by 1 for every hour of operation, regardless of the engine speed.



11. Travel direction monitor

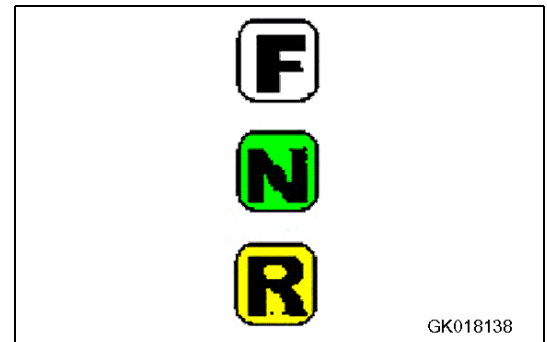
This monitor (11) displays the set travel direction.

When one of the travel direction switches is selected the monitor displays one of the following selections.

F: Forward mode

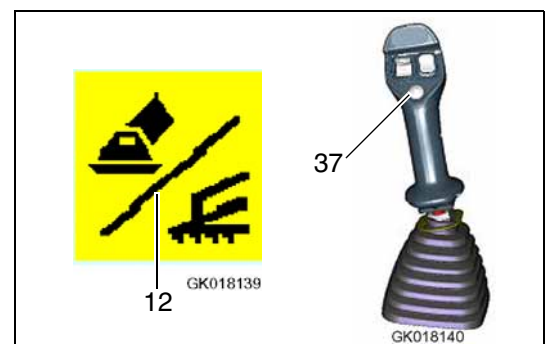
N: Neutral mode

R: Reverse mode



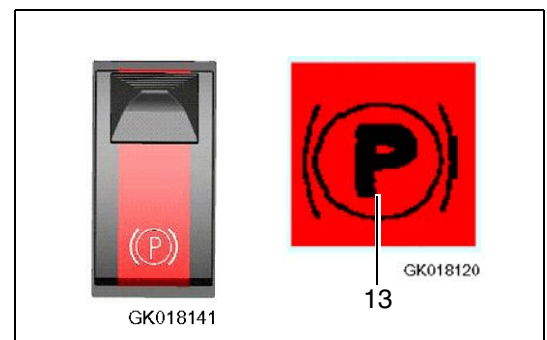
12. Undercarriage attachment monitor

When undercarriage attachment is selected from right control lever switch (37) monitor (12) will be displayed. This symbol will remain until undercarriage attachment has been deselected.



13. Park brake

This lamp (13) will illuminate when the park brake is switched on and when the cautions, indicators or error codes are displayed this lamp (13) minimises to the bottom of the screen.



14. Suspension lock

This monitor (14) displays the set suspension lock mode. When one of the suspension lock switches is selected the monitor displays one of the following selections.



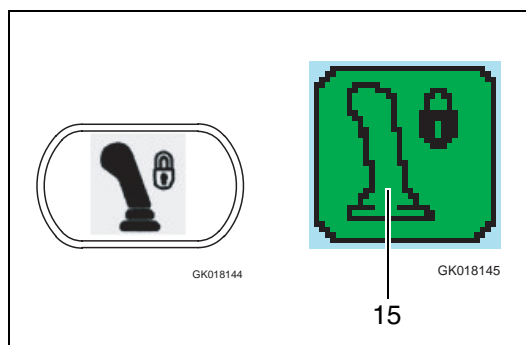
Auto suspension lock mode



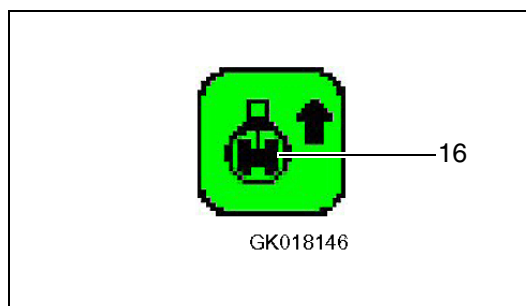
Permanent suspension lock

15. Control lever lock

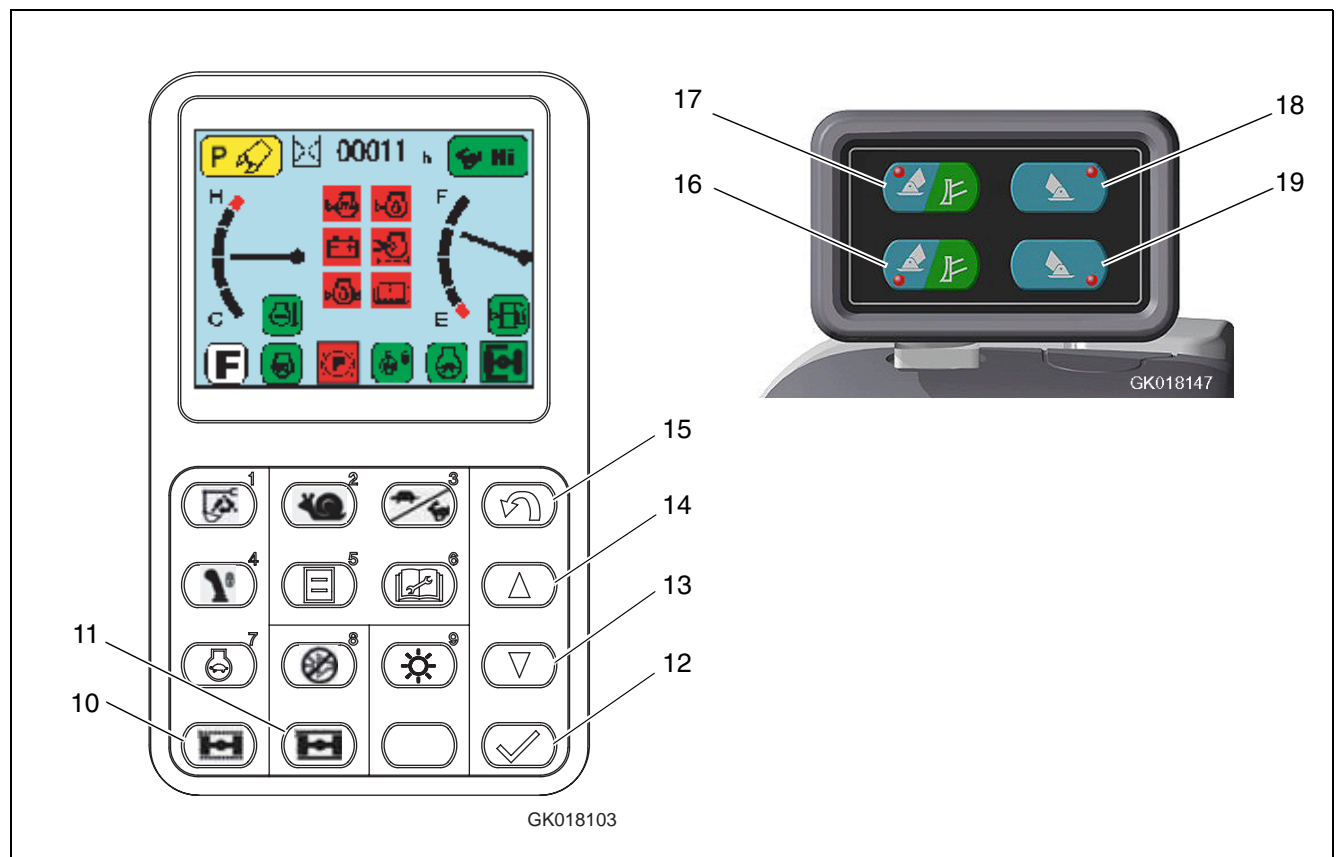
This lamp will illuminate when the PPC lock is switched on.

**16. Swing position**

This lamp (16) will illuminate when the upper structure is orientated to straight ahead.



Monitor switches



1.	Working mode selector switch
2.	Creep speed selector switch
3.	High/low speed selector switch
4.	Control lever lock switch
5.	Menu select switch
6.	Service menu switch
7.	Auto-deceleration switch
8.	Buzzer cancel switch
9.	Contrast adjustment switch
10.	Automatic suspension lock switch
11.	Permanent suspension lock switch
12.	Input confirmation switch
13.	Scroll down
14.	Scroll up
15.	Undo switch
16.	Rear left outrigger/blade switch
17.	Front left outrigger/blade switch
18.	Front right outrigger switch
19.	Rear right outrigger switch

1. Working mode selector switch (basic switch)

This switch (1) is used to set the power and movement of the work equipment.

Operations can be carried out more easily by selecting the mode to match the type of operation.

P mode: For heavy-load operations

E mode: For operations with emphasis on fuel economy

L mode: For fine-control operations and lifting

B mode: For breaker operations

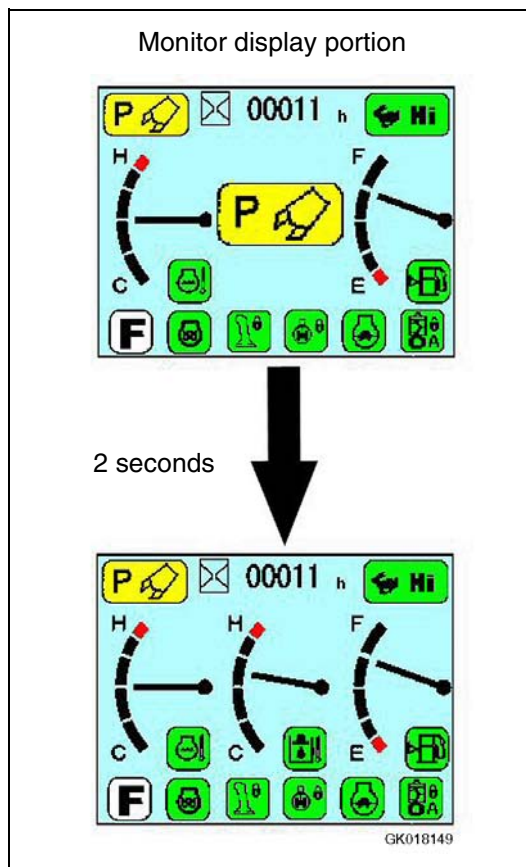
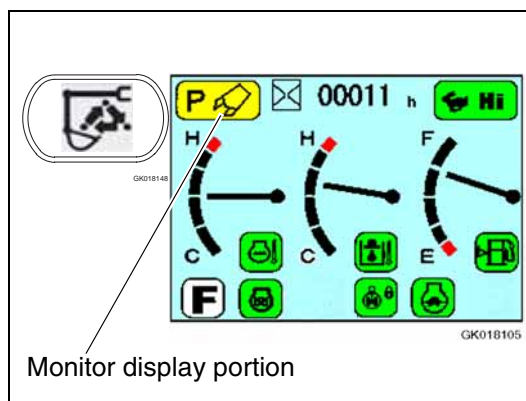
- When the engine is started, the working mode is set automatically to P mode. When the switch is pressed, the system will scroll through each mode in turn. The display on the monitor display portion changes for each mode.
- If you require a default setting other than "P mode" please consult your KOMATSU distributor or dealership to have the setting amended.

REMARK

When the mode selector switch is pressed, the mode is displayed in the centre of the monitor display, and the screen returns to the normal screen after 2 seconds. (The diagram on the right is an example of the display for the P mode.)

WARNING

When using the breaker, do not use P mode. There is danger that the breaker may be damaged.



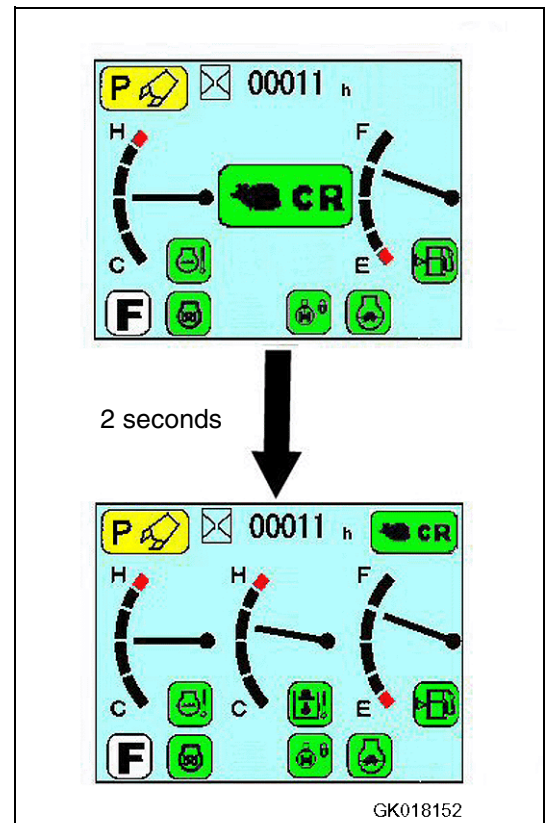
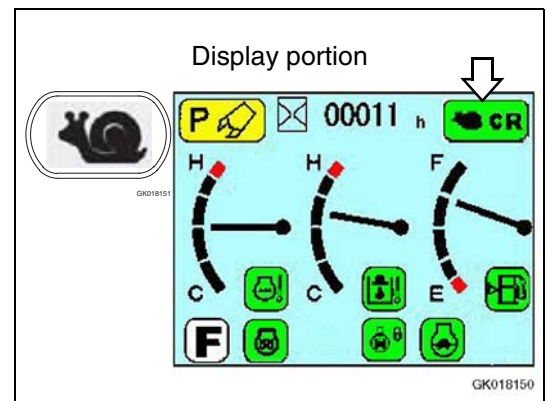
2. Creep speed selector switch

This switch (2) is used to set the travel mode to creep.

- CR lights up:
Creep mode travel (0 - 2.5 kph).
- To cancel creep speed, press Hi/Lo switch.

REMARK

When creep speed is selected the mode is displayed in the centre of the screen for 2 seconds before returning to the normal screen display.



3. High/low speed selector switch

This switch (3) is used to set the travel speed to 3 stages.

Lo lights up: Low-mode travel

Hi lights up: Hi-mode travel

At lights up: Auto mode travel

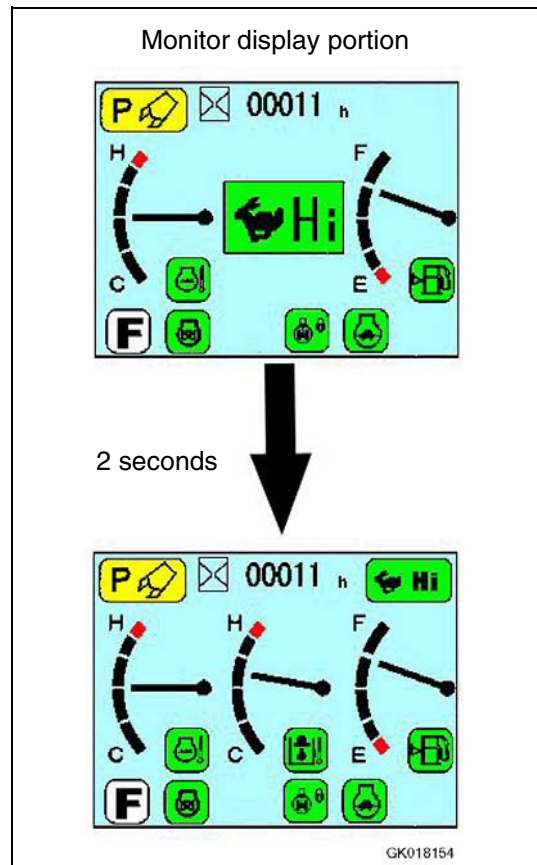
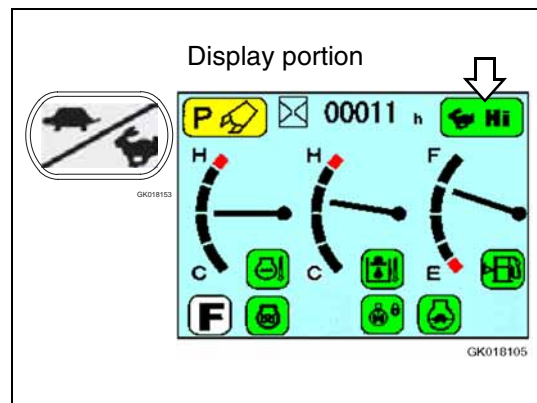
When the engine is started, the speed is automatically set to the last value before engine was stopped.

Each time that the switch is pressed, the display changes
Lo → Hi → At → Lo in turn.

- When travelling in auto mode (At), if more travel torque is needed, such as when traveling on soft ground or on slopes, the speed automatically switches to low speed (Lo), so there is no need to operate the switch.
- When loading or unloading from a trailer, always travel at creep. Speed. Never operate the travel speed selector switch during the loading or unloading operation.

REMARK

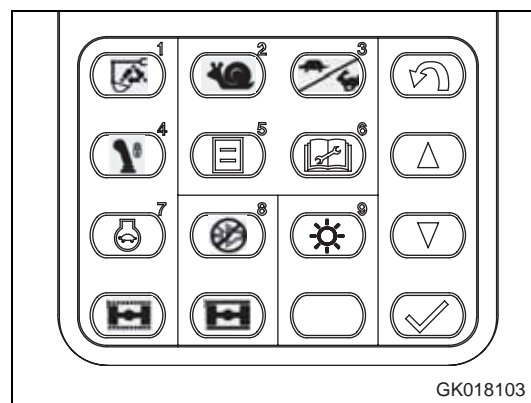
Each time that the travel speed selector switch is operated, the mode is displayed in the centre of the monitor display, and the screen returns to the normal screen after 2 seconds.



4. Control lever lock switch

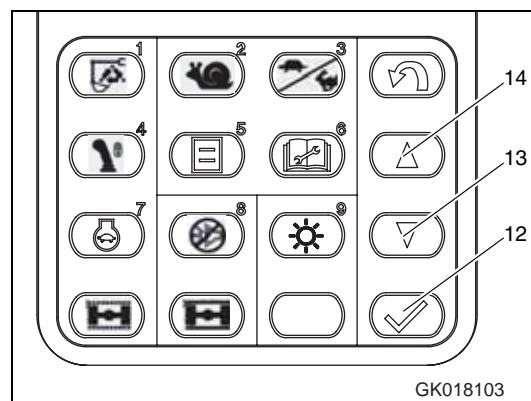
Depressing control lever lock switch (4) will stop lever functionality. Lever lock switch must be engaged when machine travels on highway to prevent accidental use of work equipment.

Light on switch will illuminate when active.



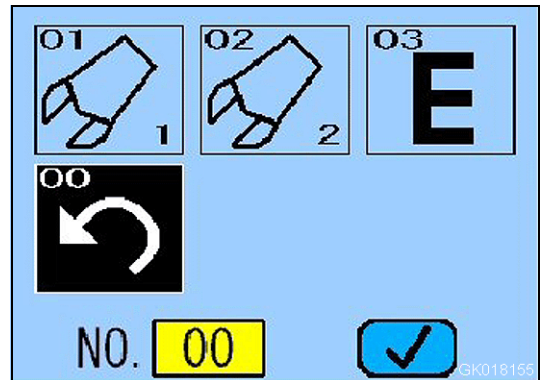
5. Menu select switch

This switch (5) is used to select the attachment hydraulic flow setting in each of the working modes P, E, and B.



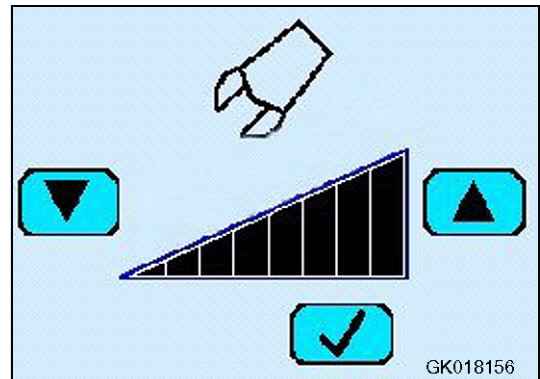
When the working mode is P or E

1. Press select switch (5) and the normal screen on the monitor display changes to the screen shown in the diagram on the right.

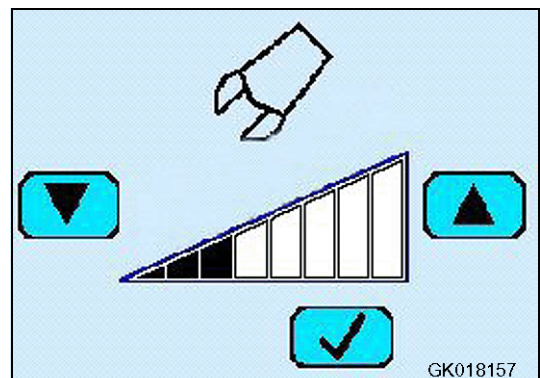


2. Select 01 from the screen and the monitor display changes to the flow setting screen shown on the right (Full flow). By pressing down switch (13) the flow can be reduced.

OR



Select 02 from screen and the monitor display changes to the flow setting on the right. Press up switch (14) or down switch (13) to adjust to the desired flow.



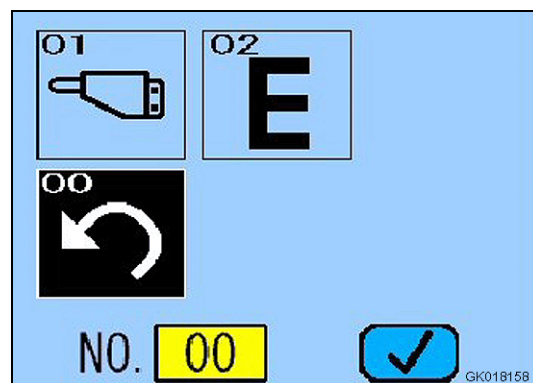
3. After completing the flow setting, press input confirmation switch (12).
The monitor display will return to the normal screen.

REMARK

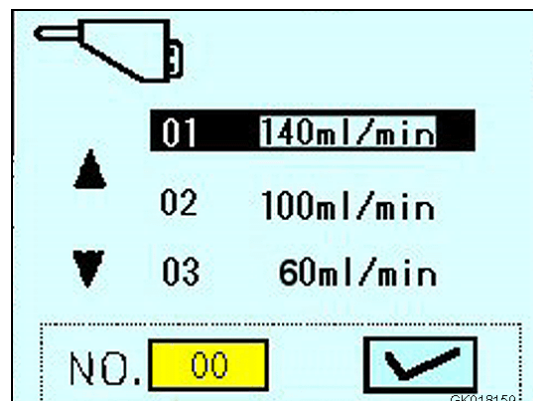
The flow can be adjusted for the attachment installed.

When the working mode is B mode

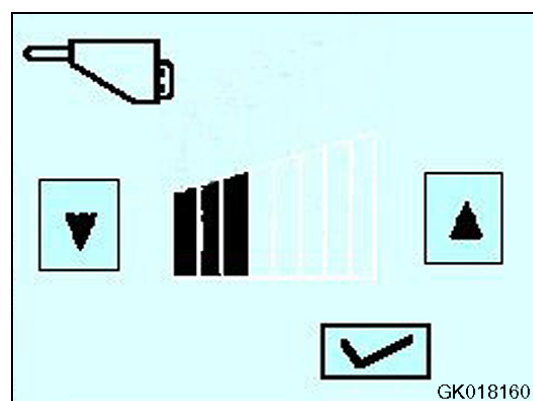
1. Press menu select switch (5) and the normal screen on the monitor display changes to the screen shown in the diagram on the right.



2. Select 01 from screen and the monitor display changes to the flow setting screen shown on the right.
3. Press up switch (14) or down switch (13) to adjust to the desired flow.
4. After completing the flow setting, press input confirmation switch (12).

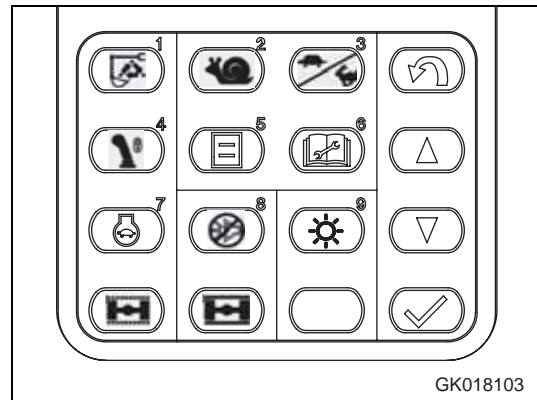


5. With the operation in Step 3, the flow setting screen changes to the fine flow adjustment screen shown in the diagram on the right.
6. Press up switch (14) or down switch (13) to adjust to the desired flow.
7. After completing the flow setting, press input confirmation switch (12).
The monitor display will return to the normal screen.



6. Service menu switch

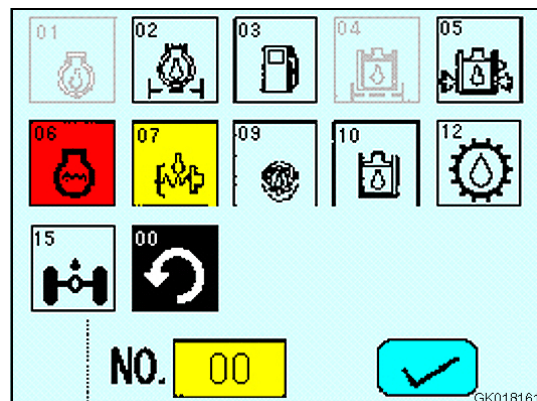
This switch (6) is used to check the time remaining to maintenance.



When this switch (6) is pressed, the screen on the monitor display changes to the maintenance screen shown in the diagram on the right.

The time remaining to maintenance is indicated by the color of each monitor display. After confirming the maintenance time, carry out the maintenance.

- White display:
More than 30 hours remaining to maintenance
- Yellow display:
Less than 30 hours remaining to maintenance
- Red display:
Maintenance time has already passed

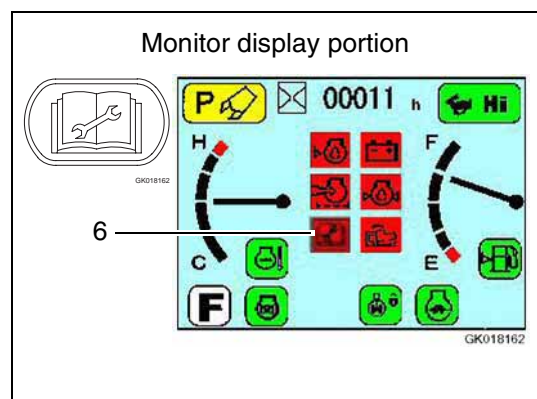


NOTE

If the monitor display changes to the maintenance warning screen when the engine is started or when the machine is being operated, stop operations immediately. When this happens, the monitor corresponding to the maintenance warning screen will light up red.

Press switch (6) to display the maintenance screen and check that there is no abnormality in any other monitor.

If another monitor is lit up red on the maintenance screen, carry out maintenance for that item also.



The maintenance display items are as follows

Monitor No.	Maintenance item	Default set screen (H)
01	Change engine oil	500
02	Replace engine oil filter	500
03	Replace fuel filter	500
04	Replace hydraulic oil filter	1000
05	Replace hydraulic tank breather	500
07	Check damper case oil level, add oil	1000
09	Change swing machinery case oil	1000
10	Change hydraulic oil	5000
12	Transmission	1000
15	Axles	1000

If it is desired to change the setting for the maintenance interval, please contact your KOMATSU distributor.

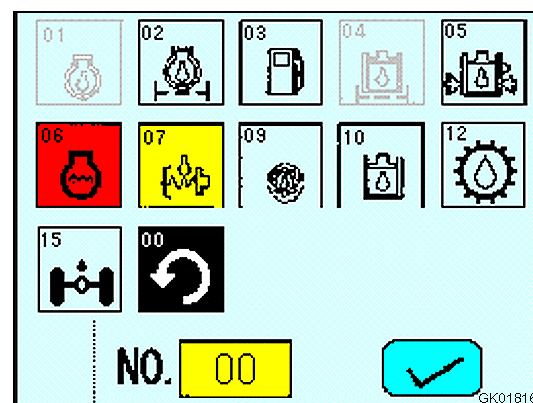
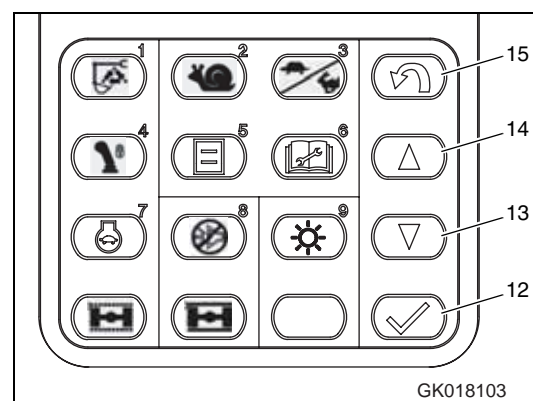
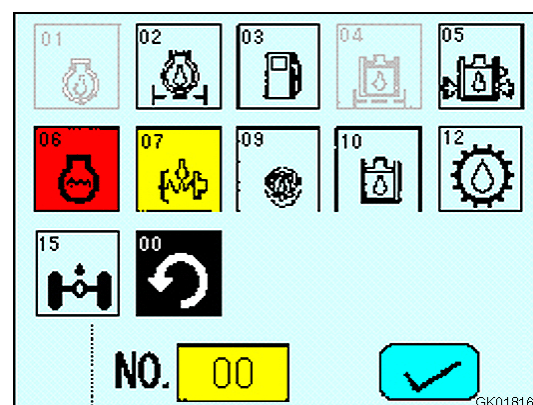
The method of checking the time remaining to maintenance is as follows.

1. Look at the maintenance screen, press up switch (14) or down switch (13) on the monitor switch portion, until required item is highlighted.
(The colour of the monitor for the selected item is inverted to black.)

REMARK

It is possible to enter the number of the item from the keypad (i.e. Enter 12 for transmission oil)

2. After highlighting the monitor item, press input confirmation switch (12). The display screen will switch to the time remaining to maintenance.
(Press back switch (15) to return to the previous screen.)



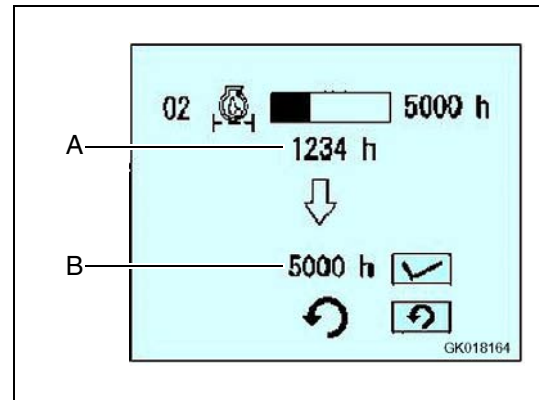
3. Check the time remaining to maintenance.

- A. Time remaining to maintenance
- B. Default setting for maintenance interval

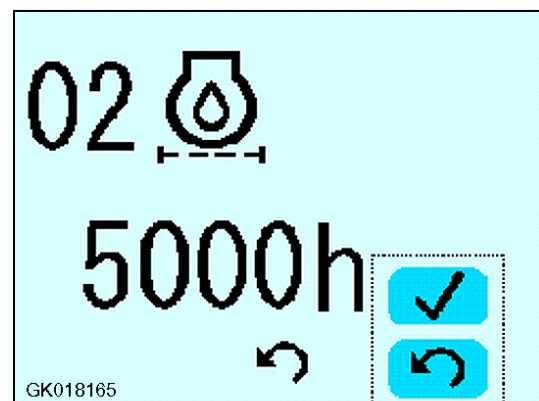
When only checking the time remaining to maintenance, press back switch (15) twice.

The screen will return to the normal operation monitor screen.

When canceling the time remaining to maintenance and returning to the default time setting, press input confirmation switch (12). The screen will switch to the default setting screen.



- 4. After checking the time on the default setting screen, press input confirmation switch (12). The screen will return to the maintenance screen. (Press back switch (15) to return to the previous screen.)



7. Auto-deceleration switch

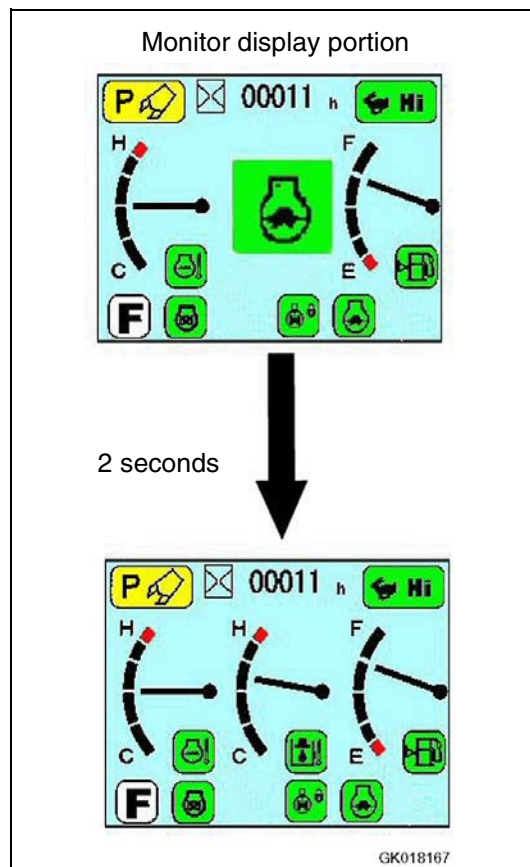
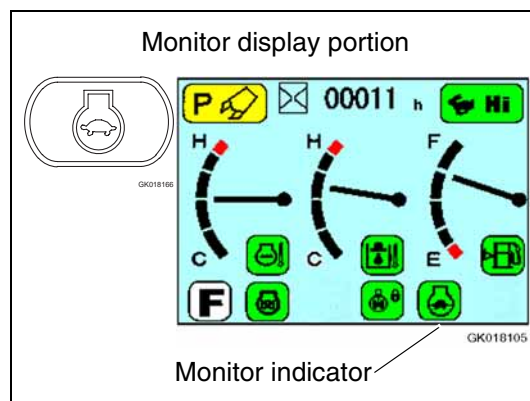
When this auto-deceleration switch (7) is depressed, the auto-deceleration is actuated. If the control levers and foot pedals are in the neutral position, the engine speed is automatically lowered to reduce fuel consumption.

Monitor display ON: Auto-deceleration actuated

Monitor display OFF: Auto-deceleration cancelled

REMARK

When the auto-deceleration switch is pressed and the auto-deceleration is actuated, the mode is displayed in the centre of the monitor display, and the screen returns to the normal screen after 2 seconds.



8. Buzzer cancel switch

This switch (8) is used to stop the alarm buzzer when it has sounded to warn of some abnormality that has occurred whilst the machine is operating.

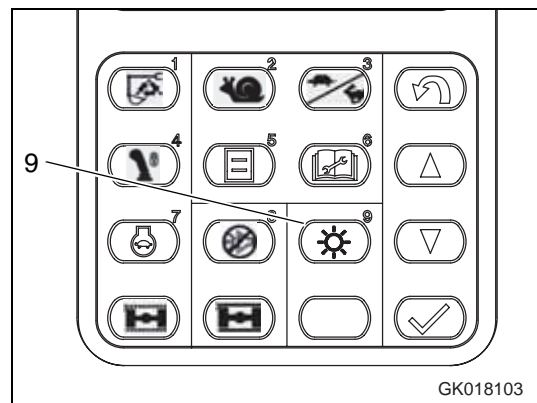
REMARK

The lamp on the switch will illuminate when the warning buzzer is sounding.

9. Contrast adjustment switch

When the contrast adjustment switch (9) is depressed this brings up the adjustment menu.

For more information, refer to "Adjustment screens (3-39)".

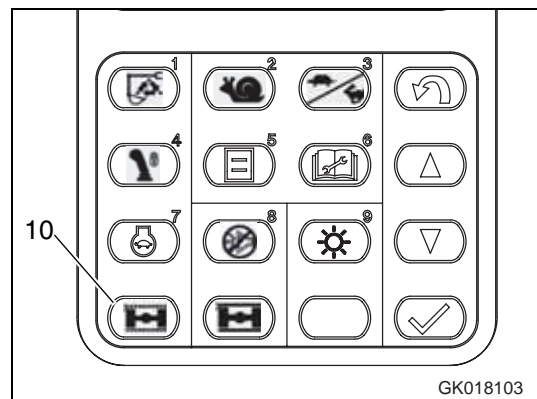


10. Automatic suspension lock switch

Release the front axle suspension lock, using switch.

Press switch (10) for front axle suspension "auto" mode i.e. when travel pedal is depressed, front axle suspension travels freely and when travel pedal is not depressed, front axle suspension is locked, as long as machine is stationary. To disengage press (10) again.

The auto suspension lock indicator will illuminate when automatic suspension lock is selected.



WARNING

Take care when using undercarriage attachments to stabilize the machine, and suspension lock simultaneously, as locked front axle may suddenly become free.

REMARK

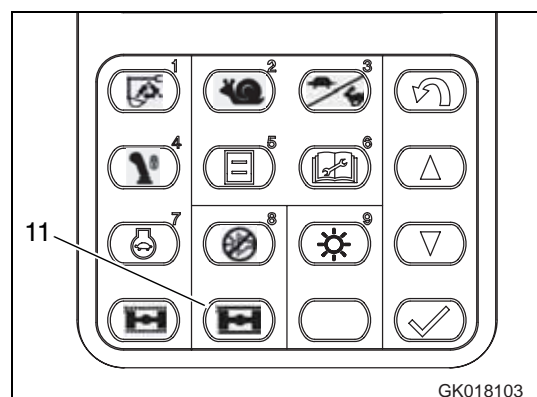
Permanent and automatic suspension lock cannot be active at the same time. Each mode can be turned on and off by their individual switches.

11. Permanent suspension lock switch

Press switch (11) in order to engage permanent front axle lock. Front axle will be fixed in place when engaged, the permanent suspension lock indicator will illuminate. To disengage lock, press switch (11) again.

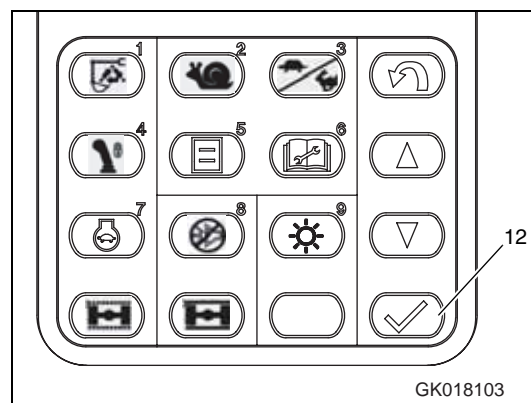
REMARK

Permanent suspension lock should only be used when travelling slowly. Do not use in high speed travel.



12. Input confirmation switch

Press this switch (12) to confirm the selected mode when in the maintenance mode, brightness/contrast adjustment mode, or select mode.

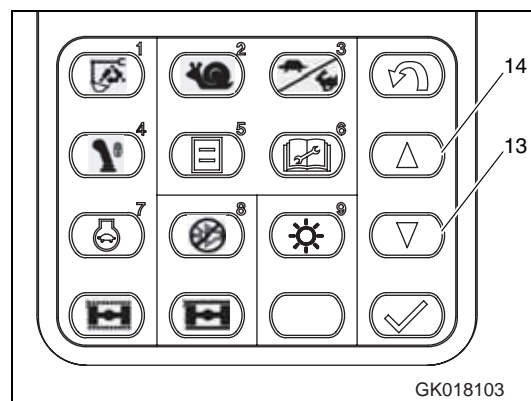


13. Scroll down

14. Scroll up

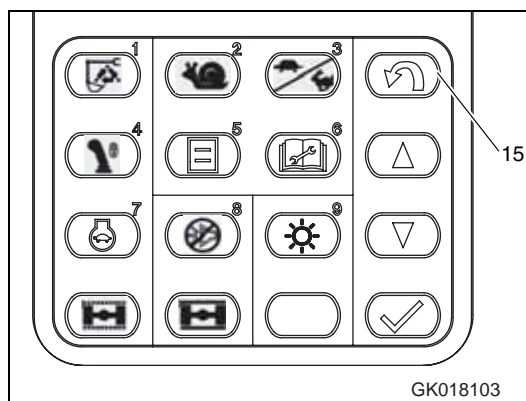
Pressing up switch (14) or down switch (13) when in the menu screens will allow you to move up and down the menu options.

In certain menus they can also be used to increase and decrease displayed values. (e.g. Flow in the attachment circuit)



15. Undo switch

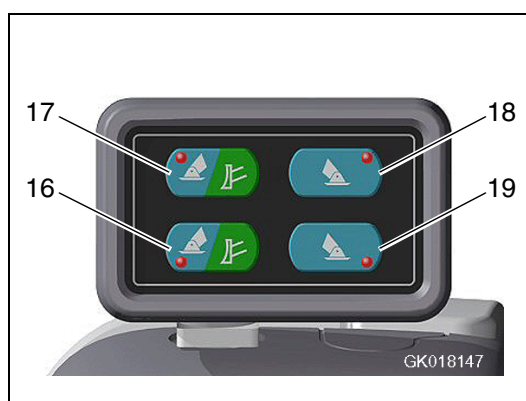
Pressing switch (15) whilst in the monitor menu screens, will return you back to the previous screen displayed.

**16. Rear left outrigger/blade switch**

This switch enables selection of rear left outrigger or rear blade Light illuminates when selected.

17. Front left outrigger/blade switch

This switch enables selection of front left outrigger/front blade. Light illuminates when active.

**18. Front right outrigger switch**

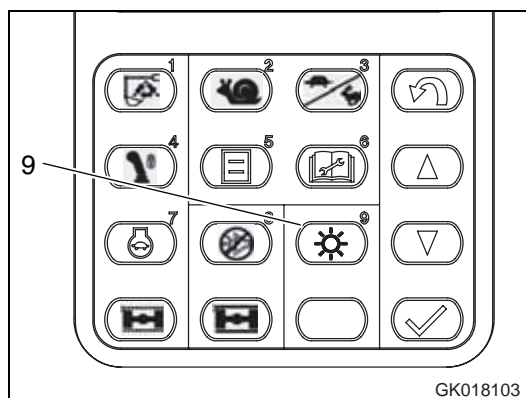
Allows operation of front right outrigger only. Light on switch illuminates when activated.

19. Rear right outrigger switch

Allows operation of rear right outrigger. Light on switch illuminates when activated.

Liquid crystal monitor adjustment switch

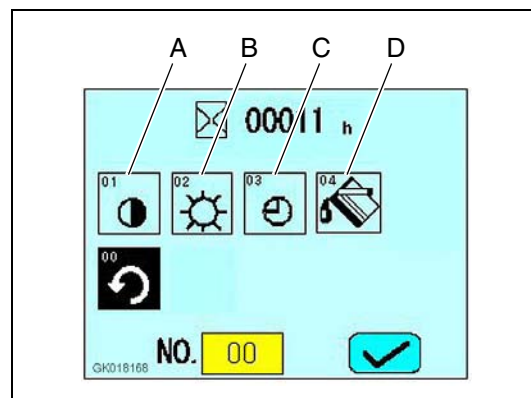
Press this switch (9) to adjust the brightness and contrast of the monitor display screen.



Adjustment screens

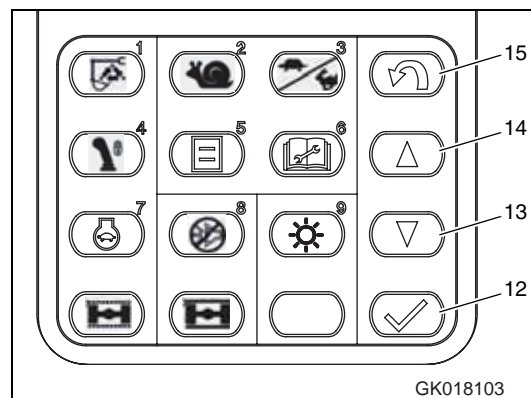
When contrast adjustment switch (9) is pressed, the monitor display screen changes to the screen shown in the diagram on the right.

- A. Contrast adjust
- B. Brightness adjust
- C. Clock adjust
- D. Background adjust



A. – Adjusting contrast

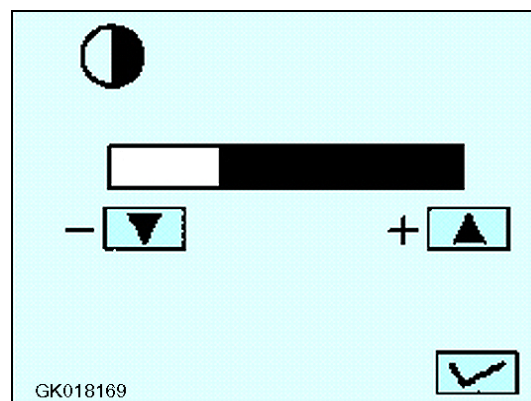
1. Use the brightness/contrast screen and press up switch (14) or down switch (13) to select the contrast monitor. (The selected monitor is inverted to black.)



2. When the screen changes to the contrast adjustment screen, press up switch (14) or down switch (13) to adjust the contrast.
3. After completing adjustment of the contrast, press input confirmation switch (12). This will store the new setting and return you to the adjustment menu.

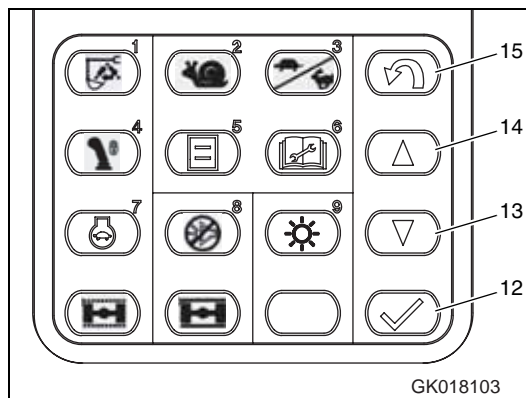
REMARK

As normal, within any menu, press switch (15) to return to the previous screen at any time.

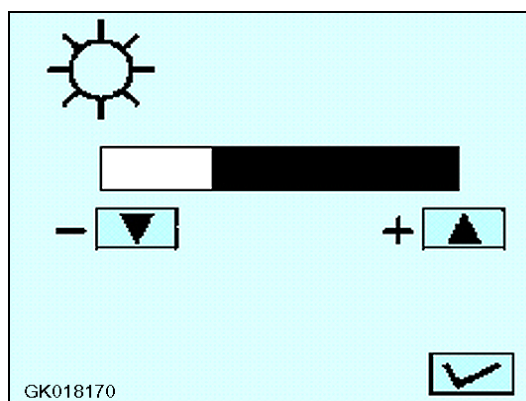


B. – Adjusting brightness

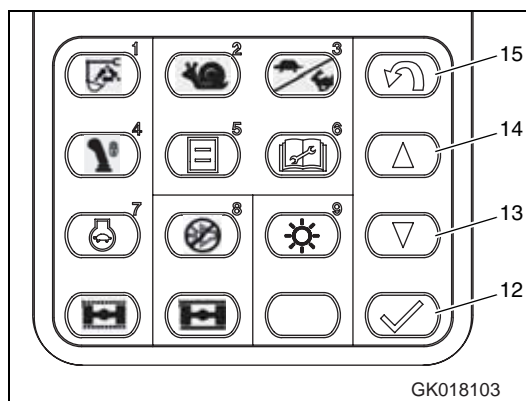
1. Use the adjustment screen and press up switch (14) or down switch (13) to select the brightness monitor.
(The selected monitor is inverted to black.)



2. When the screen changes to the brightness adjustment screen, press up switch (14) or down switch (13) to adjust the brightness.
3. After completing adjustment of the brightness, press input confirmation switch (12). This will return you to the above menu and store the new setting.

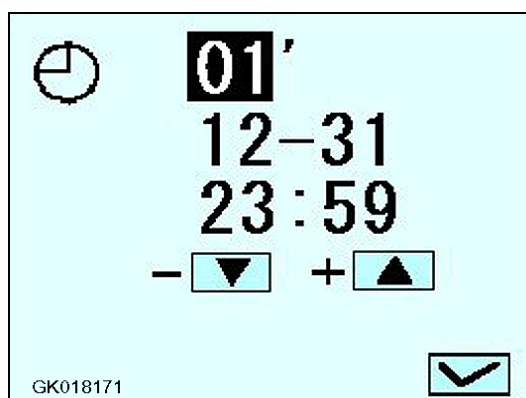
**C. – Adjusting the clock**

1. Use the adjustment screen and press up switch (14) or down switch (13) to select the clock monitor.
(The selected monitor is inverted to black.)
2. When the screen changes to the clock adjustment screen, press up switch (14) or down switch (13) to adjust the year, to move to the date press input confirmation switch (12), the order in which the cursor moves is shown below:



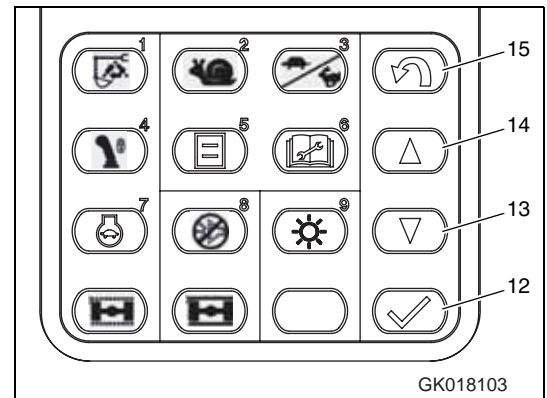
Year → Month → Day → Hour → Minute

3. After completing adjustment of the clock, press input confirmation switch (12). This will return you to the above menu and store the new setting.



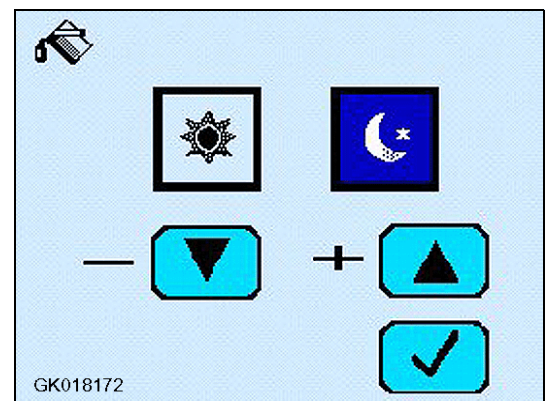
D. – Adjusting background colour

1. Use the adjustment screen and press up switch (14) or down switch (13) to select the background colour monitor.
(The selected monitor is inverted to black.)
2. When the screen changes to the background colour adjustment screen, press up switch (14) or down switch (13) to adjust the colour day time and for night time, the different combinations of colours are shown below: Day time/Night time.

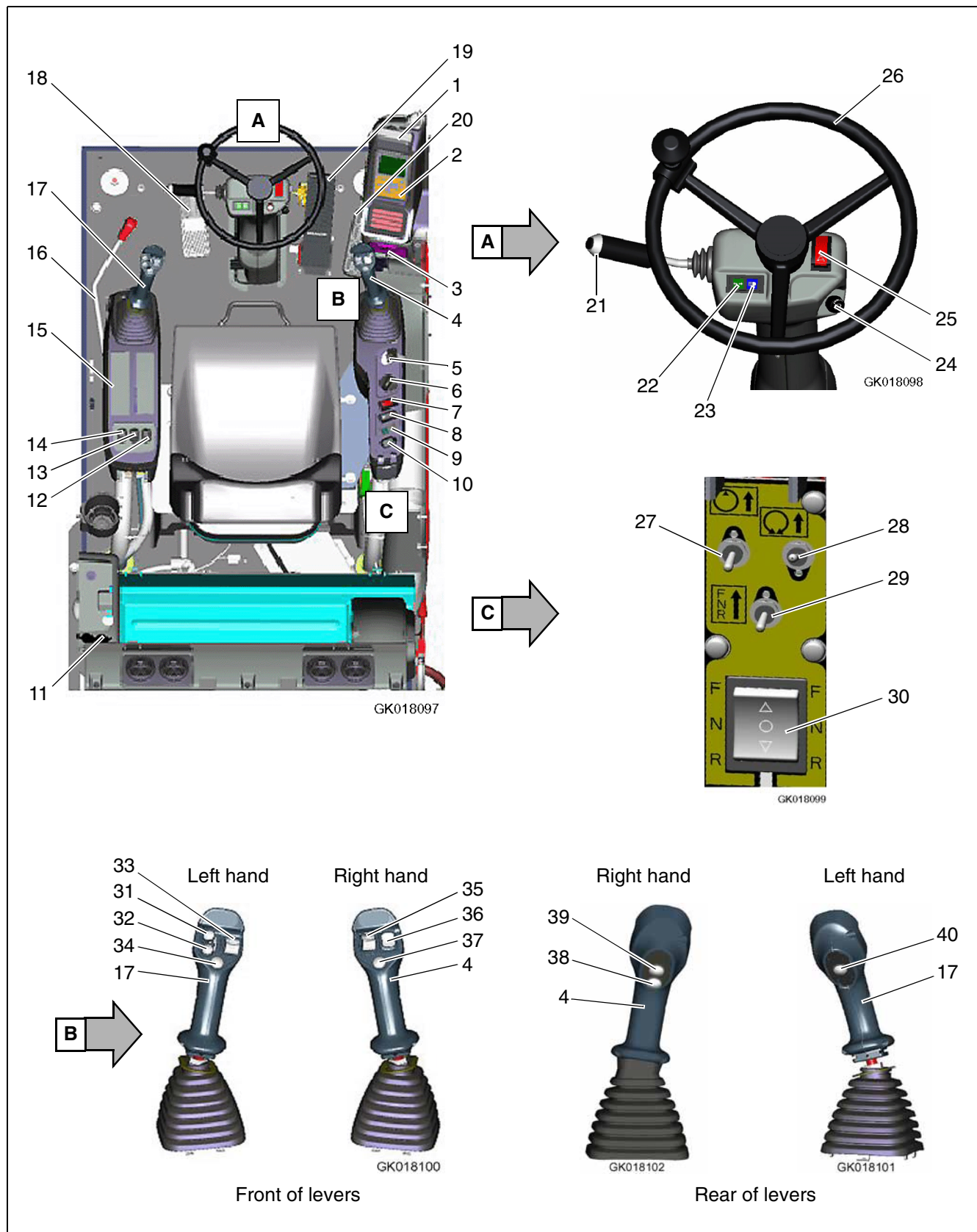


Light blue/Dark blue → Dark blue/Light blue

3. After completing adjustment of the background colour, press input confirmation switch (12). This will return you to the above menu and store the new setting.



3.4 Switches



1.	Undercarriage attachment select	
2.	Machine monitor	see page 3-6
3.	Cigarette lighter	see page 3-45
4.	Right work equipment control lever	see page 3-57
5.	Starter switch	see page 3-44
6.	Fuel control dial (with auto-deceleration mechanism)	see page 3-44
7.	Park brake switch	see page 3-48
8.	Work light switch	see page 3-52
9.	Quick coupler	see page 6-7
10.	Swing lock switch	see page 3-45
11.	12V power supply	see page 3-52
12.	Heated seat switch (option)	see page 3-52
13.	Beacon light switch (option)	see page 3-53
14.	Lower wiper switch (option)	see page 3-53
15.	Air conditioner controls	see page 3-75
16.	Safety lock lever	see page 3-56
17.	Left work equipment control lever	see page 3-57
18.	Hydraulic adjust boom pedal	see page 3-60
19.	Brake pedal	see page 3-59
20.	Travel pedal	see page 3-58
21.	Direction indicator switch	see page 3-51
21.	Horn switch	see page 3-51
21.	Windscreen wash switch	see page 3-51
21.	Roadlights dip/main beam/flash switch	see page 3-51
21.	Main windscreen wiper switch	see page 3-52
22.	Turn Indicator warning lamps	see page 3-93
23.	Full beam indicator	see page 3-51
24.	Driving light switch	see page 3-49
25.	Hazard warning switch	see page 3-53
26.	Steering wheel	see page 3-59
27.	Pump control override switch	see page 3-47
28.	Swing lock override switch	see page 3-47
29.	Travel override switch	see page 3-48
30.	F/N/R override switch	see page 3-48
31.	Spare	—
32.	Rototilt bucket	see page 6-43
33.	HCU switch (option)	see page 3-50
34.	Horn button	see page 3-46
35.	Clamshell rotation switch	see page 3-50
36.	F/N/R switch	see page 3-49
37.	Boom/undercarriage attachment switch	see page 3-49
38.	Breaker switch	see page 3-50
39.	Spare	—
40.	Power max button	see page 3-46

Starter switch

This switch (5) is used to start or stop the engine.

- OFF position

The key can be inserted or withdrawn. Except for the driving light switch, hazard warning, seat compressor and interior light, the switches for the electric system are all turned off and the engine is stopped.

- ON position

Electric current flows in the charging and lamp circuits.

Keep the starting switch key at the ON position while the engine is running.

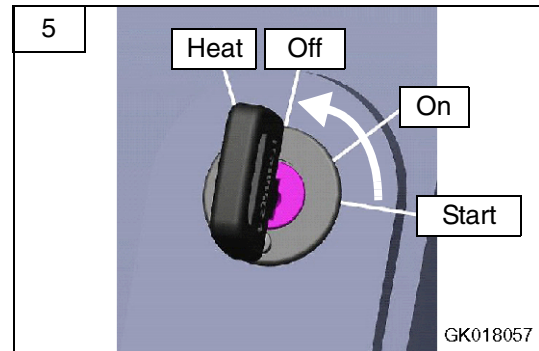
- START position

This is the engine-start position. Keep the key at this position during cranking. Immediately after starting the engine, release the key which will automatically return to the ON position.

- HEAT (preheat) position

When starting the engine in winter, set the key to this position. When the key is set to the HEAT position, the pre-heating symbol on the monitor lights up.

Keep the key at this position until the monitor lamp begins to flash. Immediately after the pre-heating symbol flashes, release the key. The key automatically returns to the OFF position. Then, start the engine by turning the key to the START position.

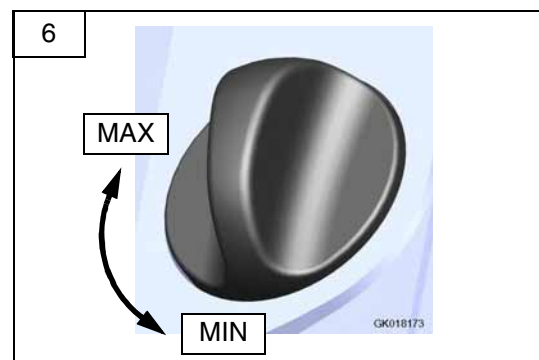


Fuel control dial (with auto-deceleration mechanism)

Fuel Control Dial (6) adjusts the engine speed and output.

MIN (low idling): Turned fully to the left

MAX (full speed) Turned fully to the right

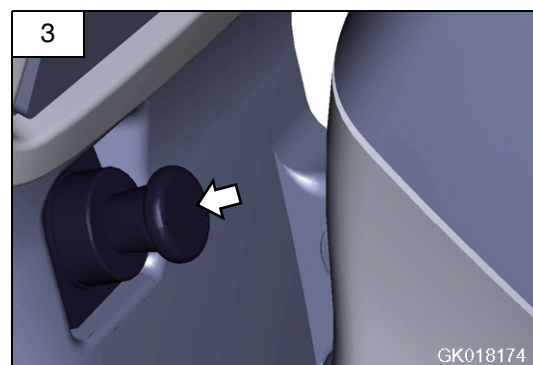


Cigarette lighter

This is used to light cigarettes. To use, push the lighter in. After a few seconds it will spring back.

Pull out the lighter (3) and light your cigarette.

No other equipment may be connected to the cigarette lighter without the prior permission of an authorized KOMATSU distributor.

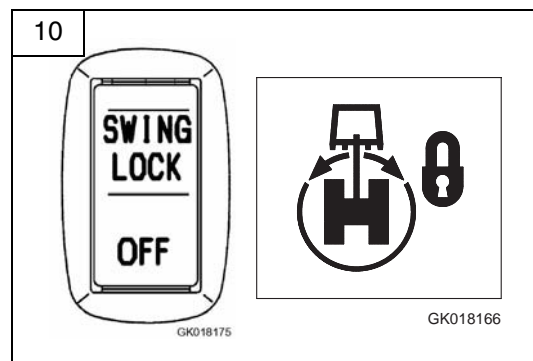


Swing lock switch



WARNING

- When the machine is travelling under its own power, or when the swing is not being operated, always set the switch to the ON (ACTUATED) position.
- On a slope, the work equipment may swing to the down side even if the swing lock switch is located at the ON position. Be careful concerning this point.



This switch is used to lock the upper structure so that it cannot swing.

- ON position (actuated):

When swing lock switch (10) is activated, the swing lock is always applied and the upper structure will not swing even if the swing lever is activated. In this condition monitor indicator lights up.

- OFF position (cancelled):

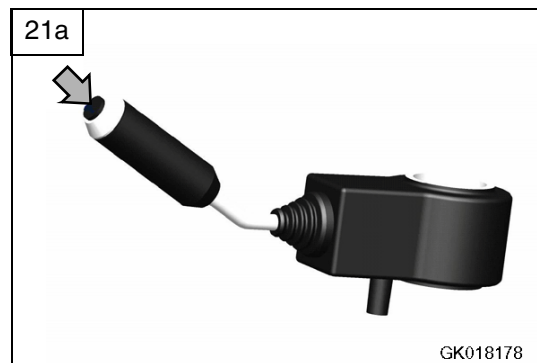
The swing lock switch should only be activated when the upper structure is motionless and with the swing lock lever in the neutral position.

Horn button

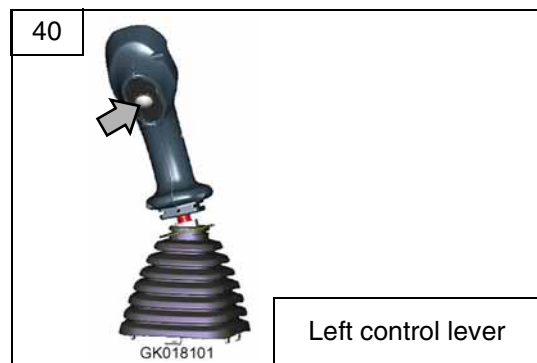
When the lower button on the left control lever (34) is pressed, the horn will sound.

NOTE

Additional horn switch is on end of steering column stalk (21a).

**Power max button**

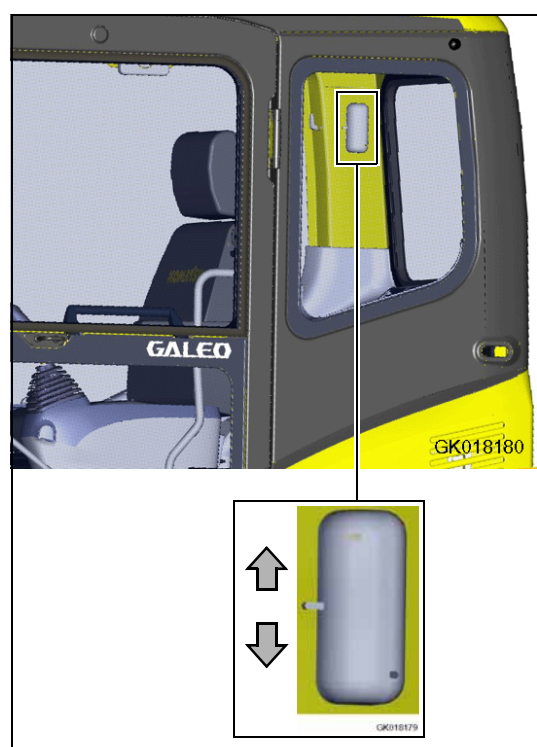
The upper button (40) of the left control lever is used to actuate the power max function. Press the button once (single click) and keep it depressed the power max. function actuates for a max. 8.5 seconds in P and E mode.

**Cab lamp switch**

This lights up the cab lamp.

ON position: Lights up

The cab lamp can be turned on even when the starting switch is at the OFF position, so be careful not to leave it on by mistake.



Pump control override switch

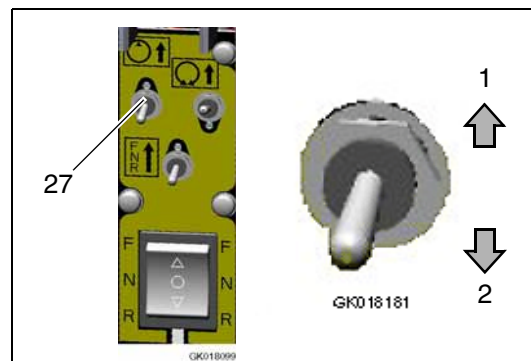
When normal: Switch (27) is down

Pos. Status

1. Abnormal
2. Normal

(1) When abnormal:

When the monitor display shows E02 (EPC valve system error), it is possible to carry out operation when this switch is moved up. The pump control override switch is designed to allow operations to be carried out for a short period when there is an abnormality in the pump control system (EPC valve system error). The abnormality must be repaired immediately.



Swing lock override switch

When normal: Switch (28) is down

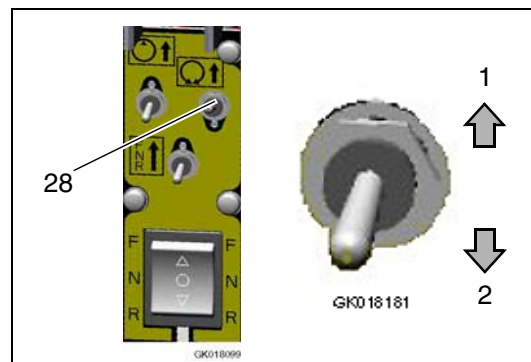
Pos. Status

1. Abnormal
2. Normal

(1) When abnormal:

When the monitor display shows E03 (swing brake system error), the brake is cancelled and it becomes possible to swing the upper structure when this switch is moved up, so normal operations can be carried out. However, the swing brake remains cancelled.

The swing lock override switch is designed to allow operations to be carried out for a short period when there is an abnormality in the swing brake electrical system (swing brake system error). The abnormality must be repaired immediately.



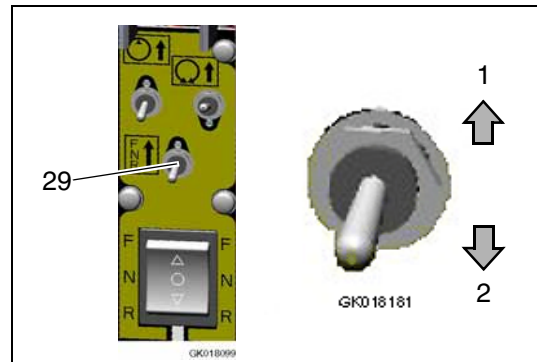
Travel override switch

Emergency travel switch:

If there is a problem with the controller or the signals being supplied to the controller and travel is not possible, the Emergency Travel Switch (29) can be used to move the machine in a situation of emergency.

Pos. Status

1. Abnormal
2. Normal



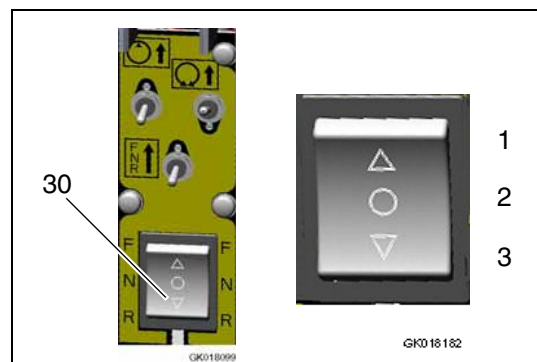
F/N/R override switch

Emergency F/N/R switch:

When the Emergency Travel Switch has been activated the F/N/R switch on the right control lever will no longer function. The emergency F/N/R switch located at the rear of the right pod should be used in conjunction with the Emergency Travel Switch in a situation of emergency.

Pos. Status

1. Forward
2. Neutral
3. Reverse



Park brake switch

This switch (7) is used to apply and release park brake.

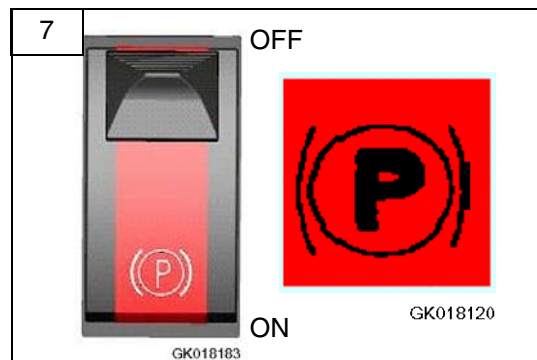
OFF: Park brake released (warning light not illuminated)

ON: Park brake applied (warning light illuminated)

Do not apply the park brake while the machine is in motion except in an emergency.

NOTE

Applying the park brake while the machine is in motion may damage the park brake.



Driving light switch

Switch (24) has three functions:

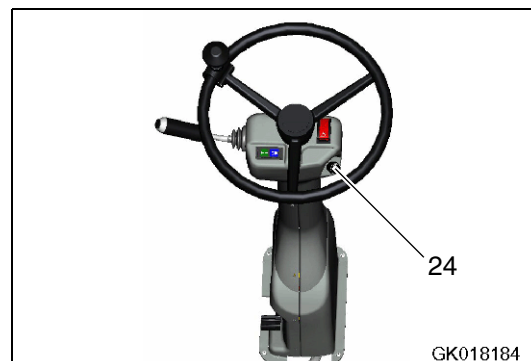
- OFF
- Sidelights
- Dipped Headlights

REMARK

The caution buzzer sounds when the starting switch is turned from ON to OFF while the driving light switch is in the ON position.

REMARK

Engine compartment light will only illuminate when sidelights are on.

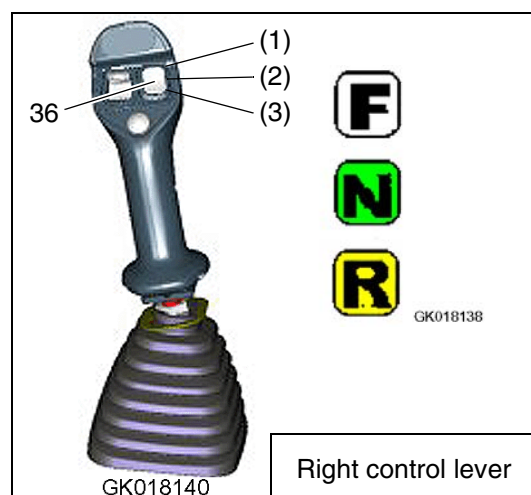


F/N/R switch (Forward/Neutral/Reverse)

The F/N/R switch (36) (located on the front of the right control lever) is used to select direction of travel.

Pos. Status

1. Forward
2. Neutral
3. Reverse

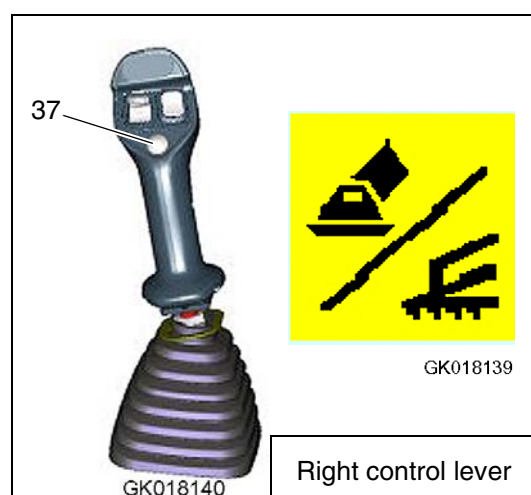


Boom/Undercarriage attachment switch

Switch (37) changes the function of the right control lever between boom and undercarriage attachment operation.

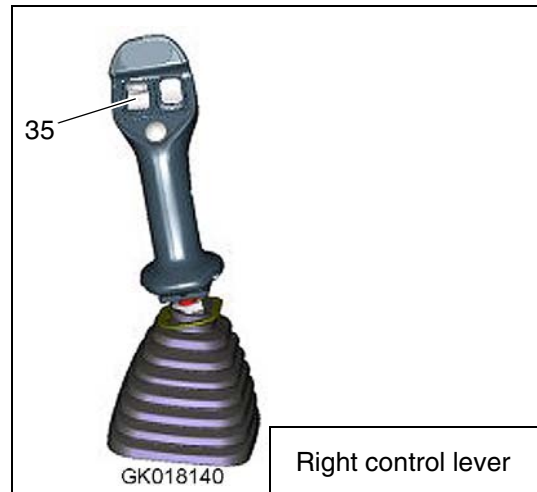
WARNING

Lights on the undercarriage attachment select panel indicate which undercarriage attachments are in operation.

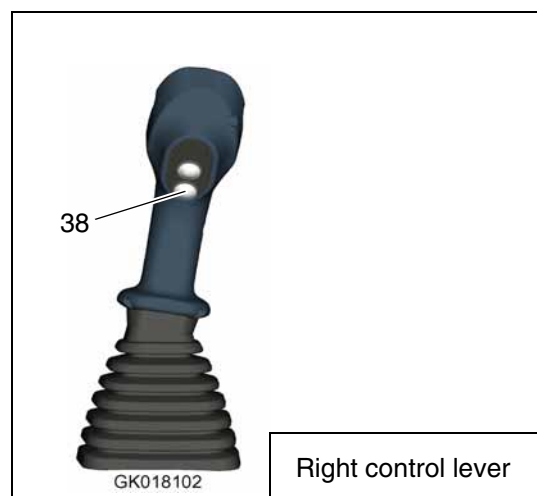


Clamshell rotation switch

Switch (35) operates clockwise and anti-clockwise clamshell rotation (option). The switch (35) is a roller proportional control switch. Rolling the switch up produces clockwise rotation, rolling down produces anti-clockwise rotation. Slight movement of the roller will give slight movement of the clamshell; full movement of the roller will give faster movement of the clamshell.

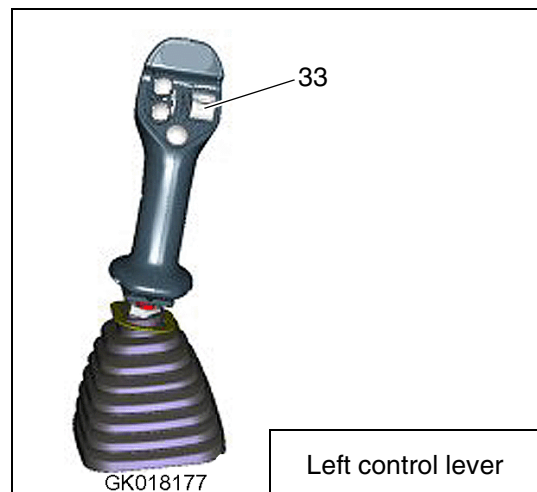
**Breaker switch**

Switch (38) operates the breaker (option).

**HCU switch (option)**

Switch (33) operates the attachment (option).

The switch (33) is a roller proportional control switch. Rolling the switch up produces movement of the attachment, rolling down produces opposite movement of the attachment. Slight movement of the roller will give slight movement of the attachment; full movement of the roller will give faster movement of the attachment.

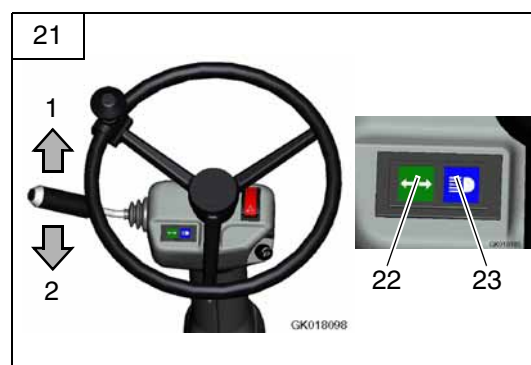


Direction indicator switch

This switch (21) is used to indicate the driver's intention to change direction.

1. Turn right: push lever fully forward
2. Turn left: pull lever fully back (direction indicator (a) to the rear of the steering wheel hub will flash)

The indicator cancel automatically, but can be cancelled manually by returning return lever to neutral position.

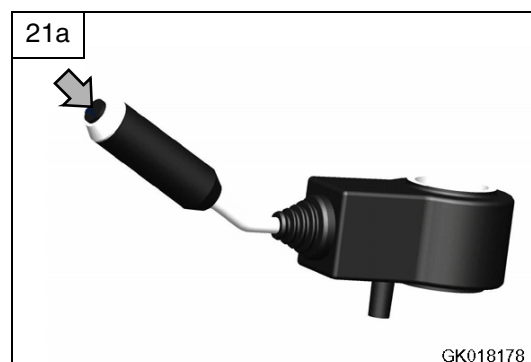


Horn switch

When the button at the tip of the steering column stalk (21a) is pressed the horn will sound.

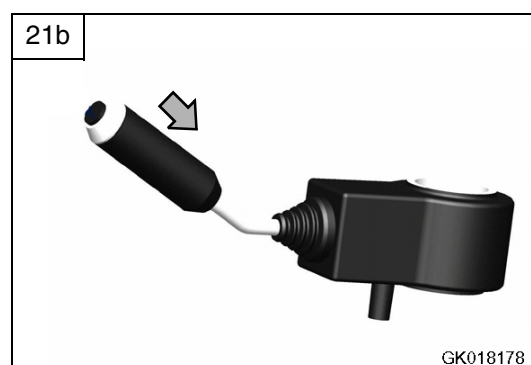
REMARK

Additional horn switch is switch (34).



Windscreen wash switch

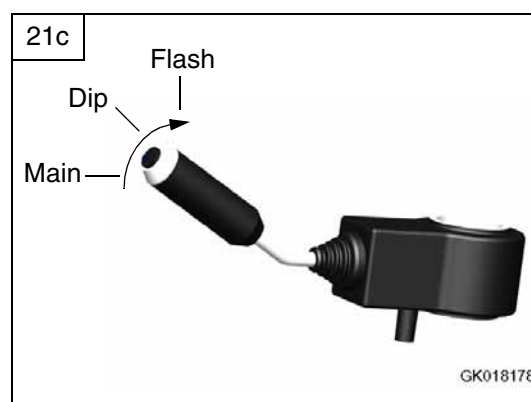
When the sleeve switch on the steering column stalk (21b) is pushed towards the steering column the windscreen wash will operate.



Roadlights dip/main beam/flash switch

This switch (21c) has two functions.

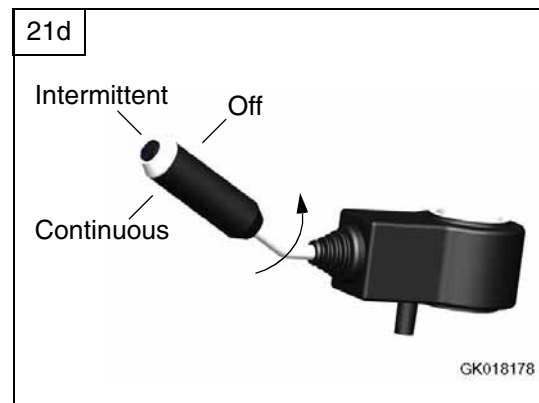
- To alternate between headlight dipped and main beams. For main beam push steering column stalk fully downwards. (Note road lights switch (24) must be at position (2) for this function), to return to headlights dipped push steering column stalk fully downwards. Main beam indicator (23) will illuminate when main beam headlights are illuminated.
- To flash headlights pull steering column stalk fully upwards and release.



Main windscreen wiper switch

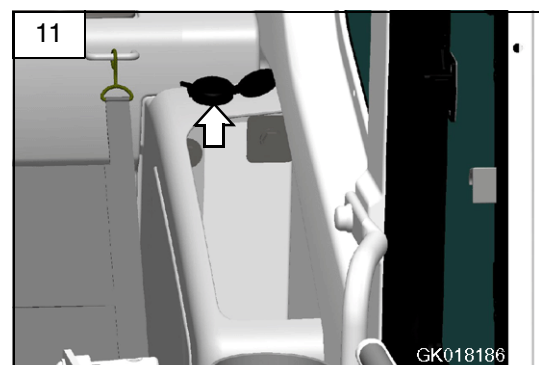
This rotary switch (21d) on column stalk controls main windscreen wiper.

- Rotate switch 30° away.
From operator for intermittent wipe
- Rotate switch a further 30° away
From operator for continuous wipe.



12V Power supply

The 12V socket (11) provided on the cab rear left panel may be used only for electrical accessories drawing 1,5 A. maximum. Any accessories attached to this socket must carry the EC mark.



Work light switch

When the work light switch (8) is depressed, the left hand boom light and the counterweight light will be switched on.

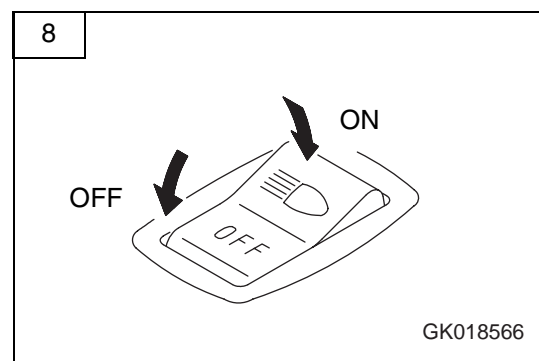
Options:

- Right hand boom light
- Front cab lights
- Rear cab light

When any or all of these options are fitted, all of the lights will be switched on (or off) with this switch.

ON: Lamps light up

OFF: Lamps go off

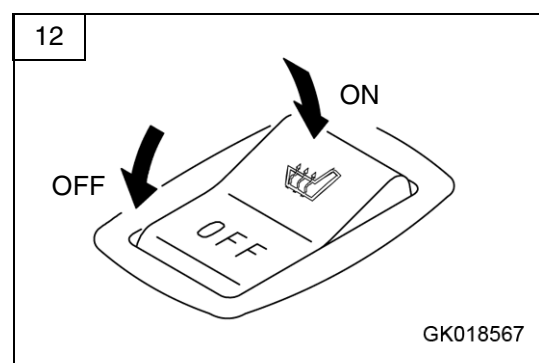


Heated seat switch (option)

If fitted - switch (12) actuates the heated seat.

ON: Seat heated

OFF: Seat not heated

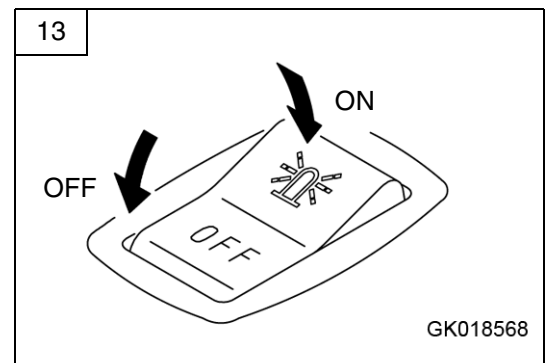


Beacon light switch (option)

If fitted - switch (13) actuates the rotating beacon.

ON: Beacon light illuminates and rotates

OFF: Beacon light is not illuminated

**Lower wiper switch (option)**

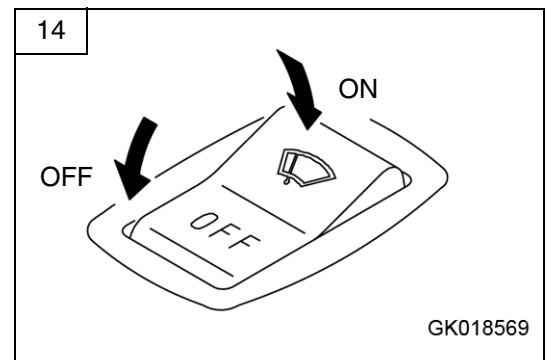
If fitted - switch (14) actuates the lower wiper.

ON: Wiper moves continuously

OFF: Wiper stops

NOTE

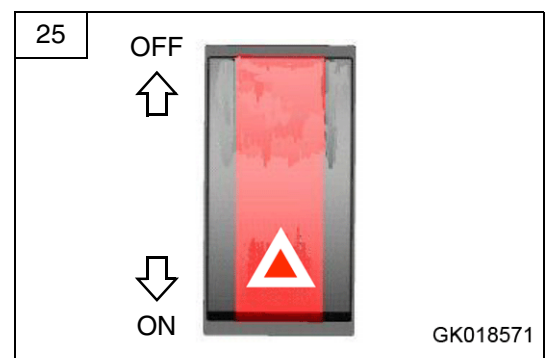
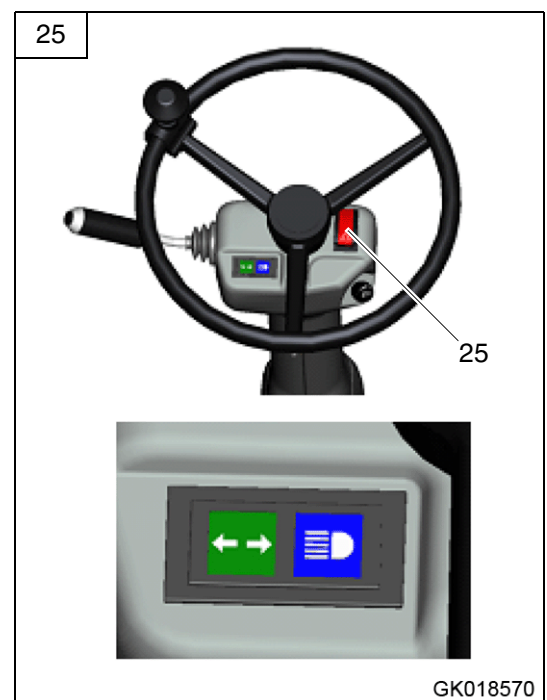
Do not operate the lower wiper with the front lower screen removed.

**Hazard warning switch**

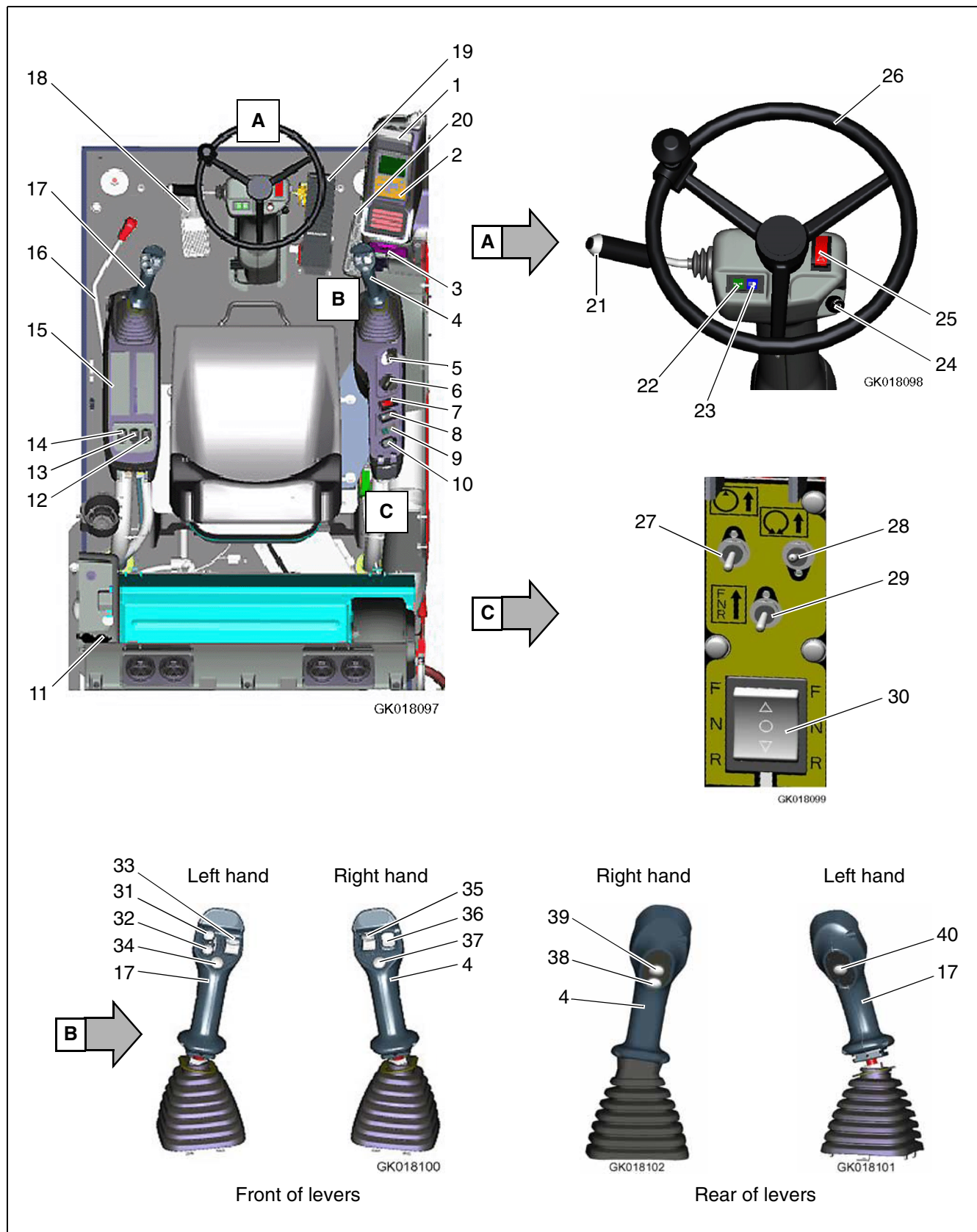
To turn on the hazard warning lights, depress hazard warning switch (25), this starts all of the indicator lights to flash on and off. This is indicated by lights in the switch (25) and the green left/right indicator display, flashing on and off together.

ON: Hazard warning lights off

OFF: Hazard warning lights on



3.5 Control levers, pedals



1.	Undercarriage attachment select	
2.	Machine monitor	see page 3-6
3.	Cigarette lighter	see page 3-45
4.	Right work equipment control lever	see page 3-57
5.	Starter switch	see page 3-44
6.	Fuel control dial (with auto-deceleration mechanism)	see page 3-44
7.	Park brake switch	see page 3-48
8.	Work light switch	see page 3-52
9.	Quick coupler	see page 6-7
10.	Swing lock switch	see page 3-45
11.	12V power supply	see page 3-52
12.	Heated seat (option)	see page 3-52
13.	Beacon light (option)	see page 3-53
14.	Lower wiper (option)	see page 3-53
15.	Air conditioner controls	see page 3-75
16.	Safety lock lever	see page 3-56
17.	Left work equipment control lever	see page 3-57
18.	Hydraulic adjust boom pedal	see page 3-60
19.	Brake pedal	see page 3-59
20.	Travel pedal	see page 3-58
21.	Direction indicator switch	see page 3-51
21.	Horn switch	see page 3-51
21.	Windscreen wash switch	see page 3-51
21.	Roadlights dip/main beam/flash switch	see page 3-51
21.	Main windscreen wiper switch	see page 3-52
22.	Turn Indicator warning lamps	see page 3-93
23.	Full beam indicator	see page 3-51
24.	Driving light switch	see page 3-49
25.	Hazard warning switch	see page 3-53
26.	Steering wheel	see page 3-59
27.	Pump control override switch	see page 3-47
28.	Swing lock override switch	see page 3-47
29.	Travel override switch	see page 3-48
30.	F/N/R override switch	see page 3-48
31.	Spare	–
32.	Rototilt bucket	see page 6-43
33.	HCU switch (option)	see page 3-50
34.	Horn button	see page 3-46
35.	Clamshell rotation switch	see page 3-50
36.	F/N/R switch	see page 3-49
37.	Boom/undercarriage attachment switch	see page 3-49
38.	Breaker switch	see page 3-50
39.	Spare	–
40.	Power max button	see page 3-46

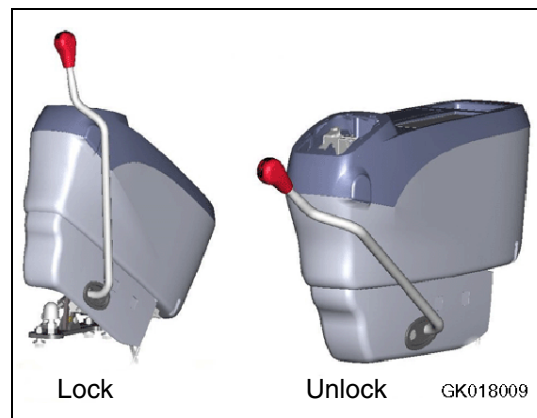
**WARNING**

- When leaving the operator's compartment, switch control lever lock switch to OFF position, raise the safety lock lever to the LOCK position. If the control levers are not locked and they are touched by mistake this could lead to a serious accident.
If the safety lock lever is not raised in the LOCK position and lock switch is not OFF, the control levers may not be properly locked. Check that the situation is as shown in the diagram.
- When the safety lock lever is being raised, take care not to touch the work equipment control lever. If the safety lock lever is not properly locked at the upper position, the work equipment and swing will move, creating a potentially dangerous situation.
- When the safety lock lever is lowered, take care not to touch the work equipment control lever.
- In certain conditions it may be possible for the safety lock lever to contact the left hand arm rest on the operator seat. to avoid this, always ensure that the left hand arm rest is stowed in the fully up position before operating the safety lock lever.

Safety lock lever

The safety lock lever LOCKS the work equipment, swing, attachment controls and travel functions.

This device is a hydraulic lock, so even if it is in the lock position, the work equipment control lever will move, but the work equipment and swing motor will not work.



Left work equipment control lever (with auto-deceleration device)

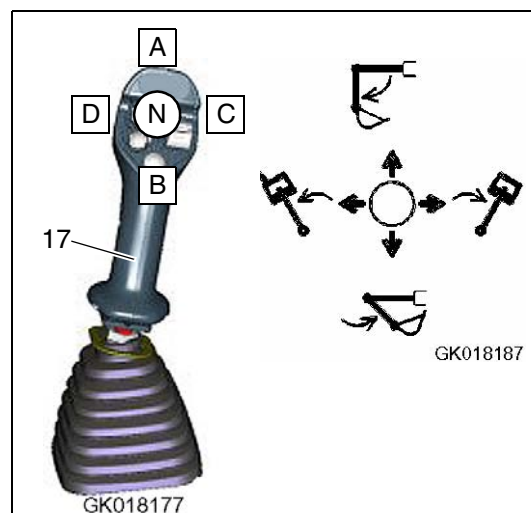
WARNING

If any lever is operated when in the deceleration range, the engine speed will suddenly increase, so be careful when operating the levers.

Lever (17) is used to operate the arm and upper structure.

Arm operation	Swing operation
(A) Arm OUT	(C) Swing to right
(B) Arm IN	(D) Swing to left
(N) Neutral	

When the lever in this position, the upper structure and the arm will be retained in the position in which they stop.



Right work equipment control lever (with auto-deceleration device)

WARNING

If any lever is operated when in the deceleration range, the engine speed will suddenly increase, so be careful when operating the levers.

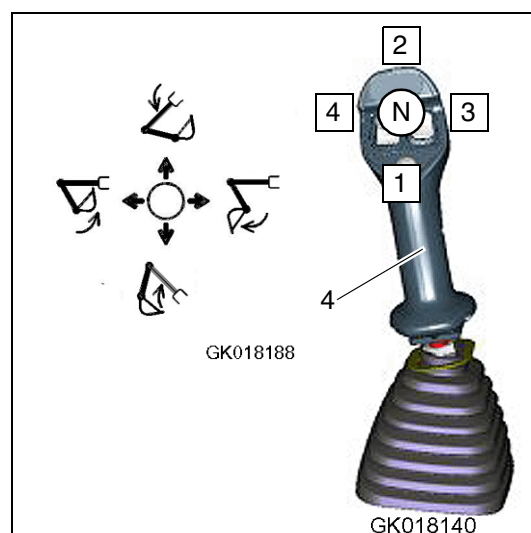
Lever (4) is used to operate the boom and bucket.

Boom operation	Bucket operation
(1) RAISE	(3) DUMP
(2) LOWER	(4) CURL
(N) Neutral	

When the lever in the N (neutral position), the boom and the bucket will be retained in the position in which they stop.

The engine speed changes as follows because of the auto-deceleration mechanism.

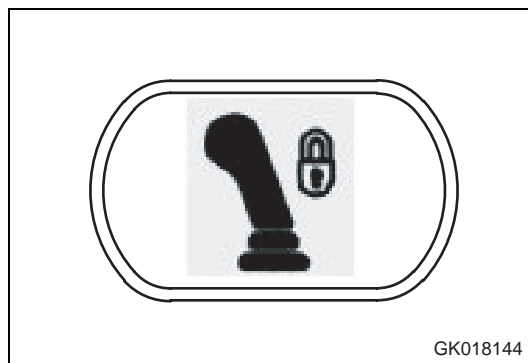
- When the travel pedal and work equipment control levers are at neutral, even if the fuel control dial is above the mid-range position, the engine speed will drop to a mid-range speed. If any of the levers are operated, the engine speed will rise to the speed set by the fuel control dial.
- If all control levers are set to neutral, the engine speed will drop by approx. 100 rpm, and after approx. 4 seconds, the engine speed will drop to the deceleration speed (approx. 1400 rpm).



Control lever lock switch**WARNING**

The Control lever lock switch (located on the monitor panel) should be engaged when travelling on the Public Highway to prevent accidental use of the work equipment.

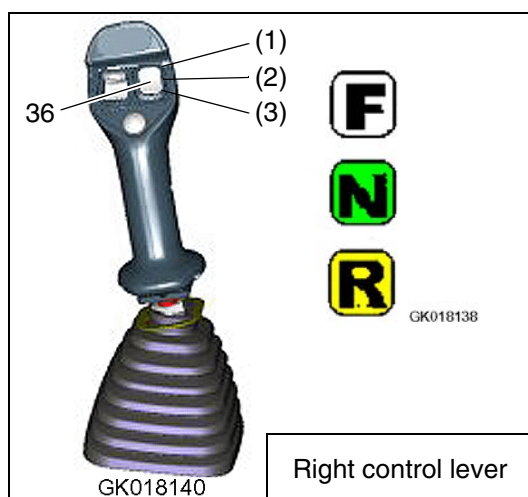
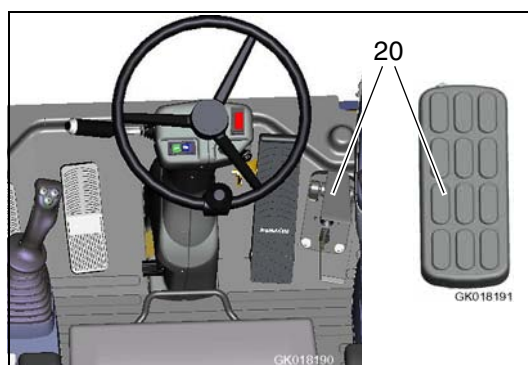
For details, see "Control lever lock switch (3-29)".
ON position (actuated).

**Travel pedal**

The travel pedal is used in conjunction with the Forward/Neutral/Reverse (F/N/R) switch (36) located on the right control lever. Select the direction required using F/N/R switch then depress travel pedal (20) to commence travel.

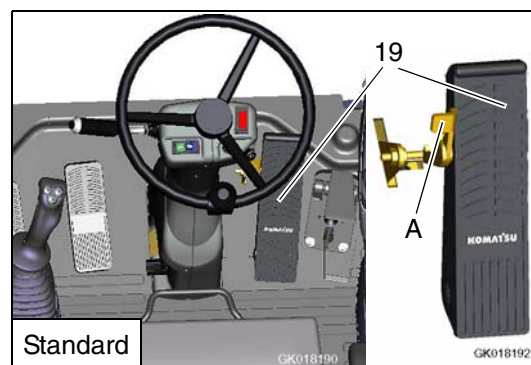
Pos. Status

1. Forward
2. Neutral
3. Reverse



Brake pedal

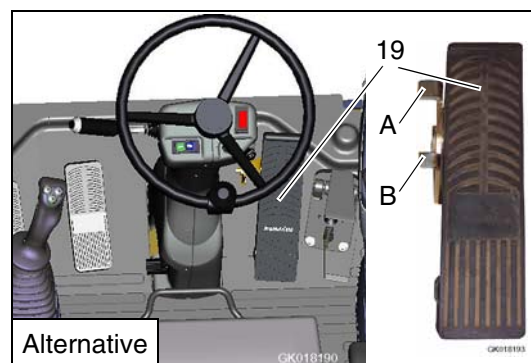
The service brakes are operated by depressing pedal (19). The service brakes can be locked in the "ON" position for digging and lifting operations, to lock the service brakes in the "ON" position fully depress the brake pedal. To unlock the service brakes depress latch (A).



Depending upon the specification the service brake pedal may be of the alternative design shown.

The service brakes are operated by depressing pedal (19). The service brakes can be locked in the "ON" position for digging and lifting operations, to lock the service brakes in the "ON" position fully depress the brake pedal. To unlock the service brakes depress latch (A).

For on highway driving the lock can be disabled. Depress latch (A) fully. This will prevent the lock from operating when the brake pedal (19) is depressed. When the lock is needed again depress latch (B).



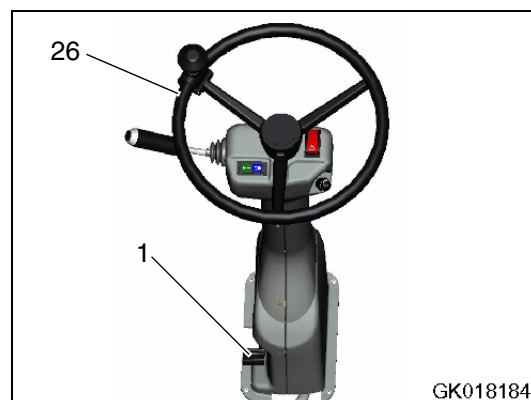
Steering wheel

The machine can be steered by turning steering wheel (26) in the desired direction.

The position of the steering column can be adjusted fore and aft by depressing pedal (1), moving column to desired position and releasing pedal (1).

WARNING

Steering actions will be reversed if undercarriage is facing opposite direction.



Hydraulic adjust boom pedal

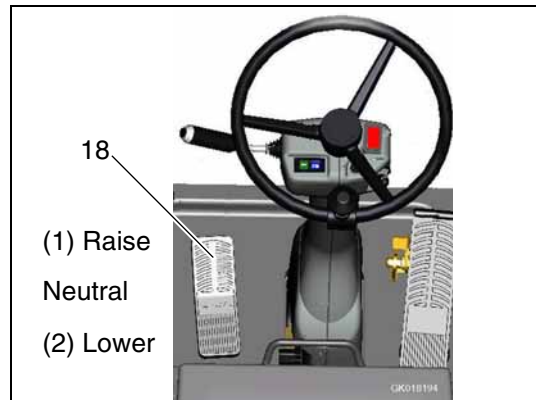
Pedal (18) is used to operate the second boom.

1. Raise: Pedal pushed forward
2. Lower: Pedal pushed back

Neutral position: Boom is stopped and held in the same position.

NOTE

On machines equipped with a monoboom this pedal is used to operate the second attachment circuit (option).

**CAUTION**

Do not rest foot on the pedal unless in use.

3.6 Front window



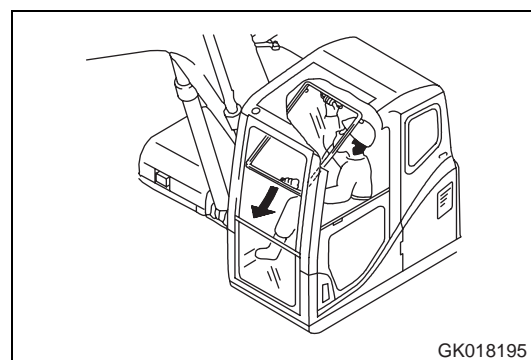
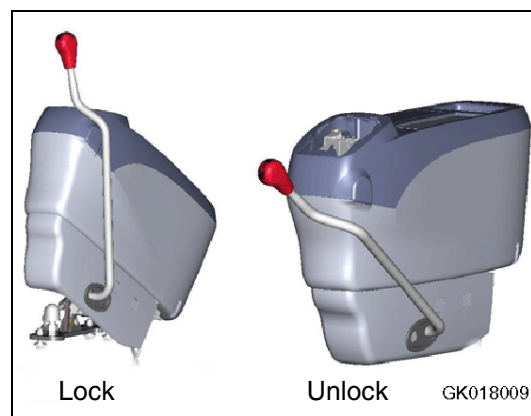
WARNING

- When opening or closing the ceiling window, front window, bottom window, or door, always set the safety lock lever to the LOCK position.
If the control levers are not locked and they are touched by accident, a serious accident may occur.
- When opening or closing the window at the front of the cab, stop the machine on horizontal ground, lower the work equipment completely to the ground, stop the engine, then carry out the operation.
- When opening the front window, hold the grip securely with both hands, pull up, and do not let go until the automatic lock catch is locked.
- When closing the front window hold the grips securely with both hands.

It is possible to store (pull up) the front window (top) in the roof of the operator's compartment.

When opening

1. Place the work equipment on flat ground and stop the engine.
2. Raise safety lock lever.



3. Check that the wiper blade (A) is stored in the right frame.

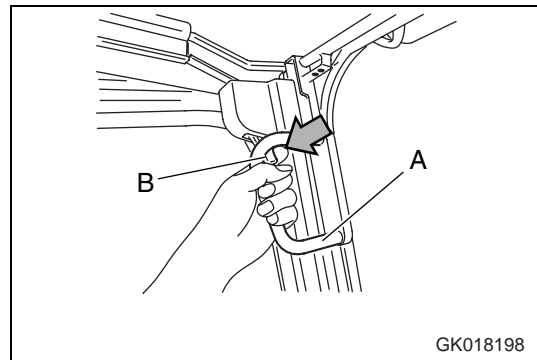
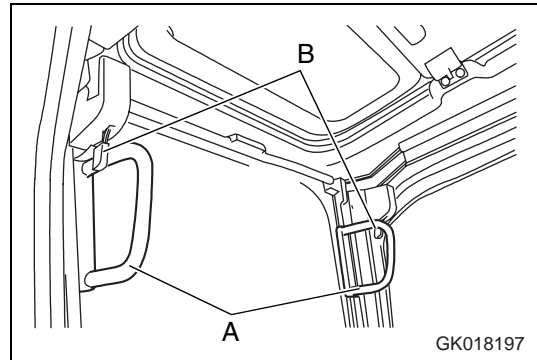


WARNING

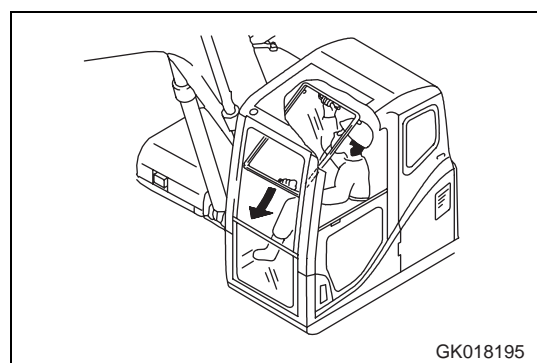
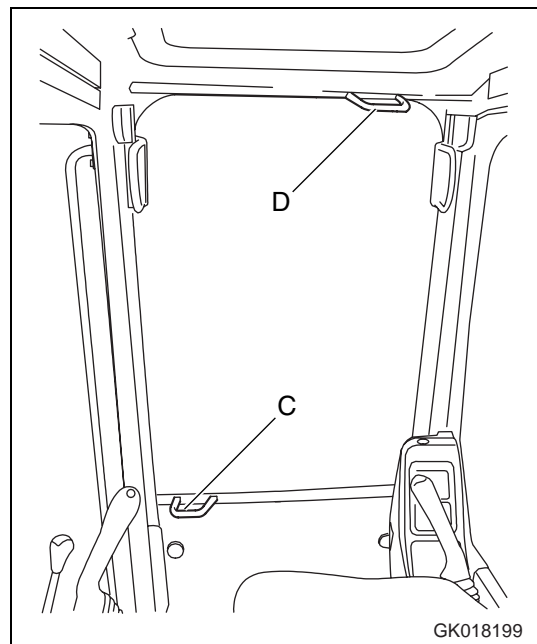
When the front window is open, there is danger that it will fall, so always lock it with left and right lock levers (B).

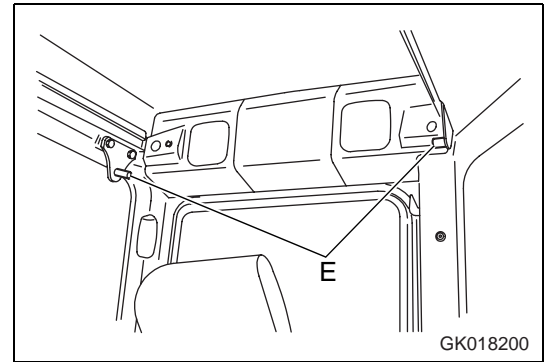


4. Grip handles (A) at the top, left, and right of the front window, and pull lock lever (B) to release the lock at the top of the front window. The top of the front window will come out.



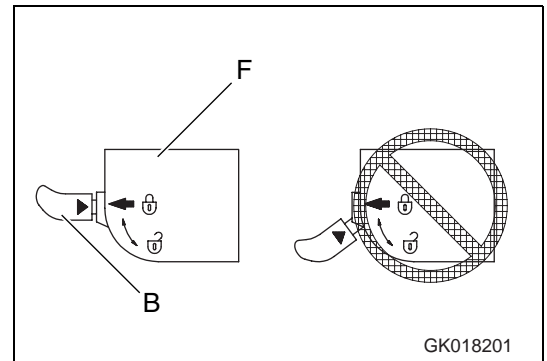
5. Hold lower handle (C) with your left hand from inside the operator's cab, and with your right hand, grip top handle (D), pull it up, and firmly push it against lock catch (E) at the rear of the cab to securely lock the window.





6. Check that lock lever (B) is secured at the LOCK position.

- The lock is engaged if the arrow on lock case (F) lines up with the arrow on lock lever (B). Check it visually.
- If the arrow on lock case (F) does not line up with the arrow on lock lever (B), the lock is not properly engaged. Repeat the operation in Step 5 to engage the lock.



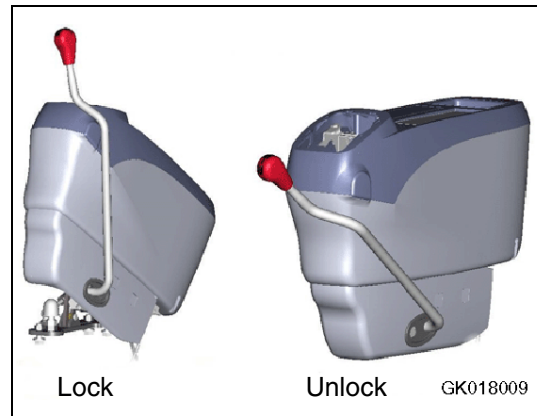
When closing



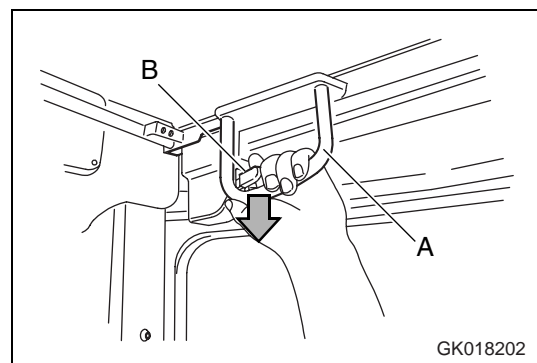
WARNING

When closing the window, lower it slowly and be careful not to trap your hand.

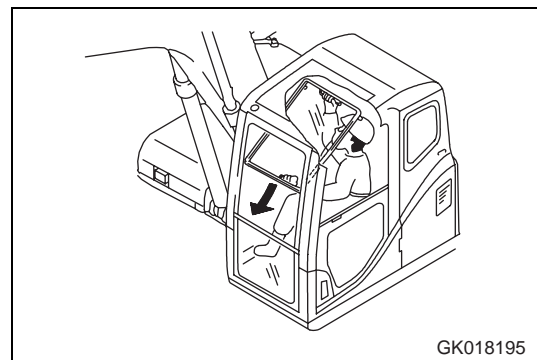
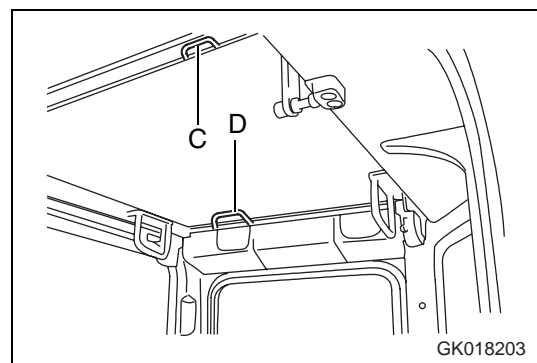
1. Place the work equipment on flat ground and stop the engine.
2. Raise the safety lock lever.



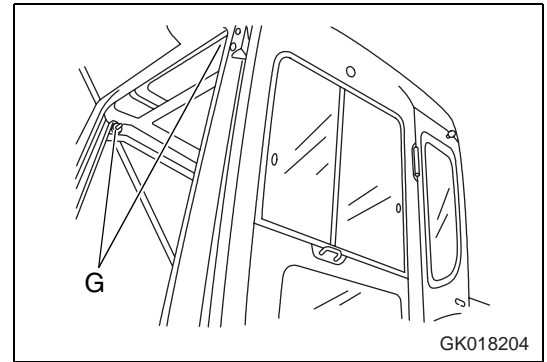
3. Grip left and right handles (A), and pull down lock lever (B) to release the lock.



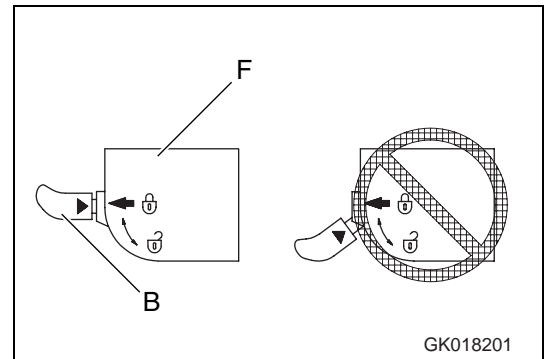
4. Grip handle (C) at the bottom of the front window with your left hand and handle (D) at the top with your right hand, push the window to the front, then lower it slowly.



5. When the bottom of the window reaches the top of the lower window, push the top of the window forward to engage the locks against catches (G).

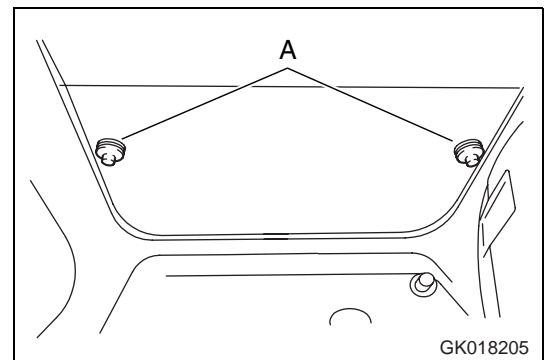


6. Check that lock lever (B) is secured at the LOCK position.
 - The lock is engaged if the arrow on lock case (F) lines up with the arrow on lock lever (B). Check it visually.
 - If the arrow on lock case (F) does not line up with the arrow on lock lever (B), the lock is not engaged. Repeat the operation in Step 5 to engage the lock.



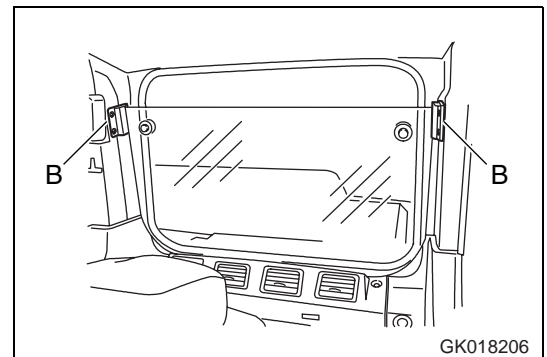
Removing front bottom window

1. Open the front window, then hold grip (A), pull up, and remove the bottom window.



2. After removing the bottom window, store it at the rear of the operator's cab and lock it securely with left and right locks (B).

When removing, always hold the glass with one hand and release the lock with the other hand.

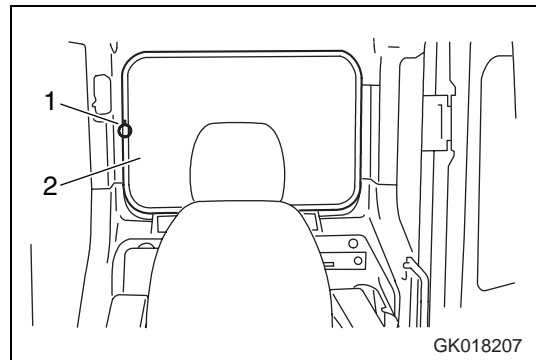


3.7 Emergency exit from operator's cab

If for some reason, the cab door can not be opened, open the rear window and use it as an emergency escape exit.

Remove the rear window as follows:

1. Pull ring (1) and completely remove seal (2) from the rubber core.
2. When the corner of the front window glass is pushed strongly, it can be removed to the outside.
3. Do not remove the rear window except when using it as an emergency exit.



Ceiling window

The operator cab is provided with a fixed clear ceiling window for improved visibility. An optional guard can be provided for working in areas at risk from falling or flying objects.



Clear rain visor

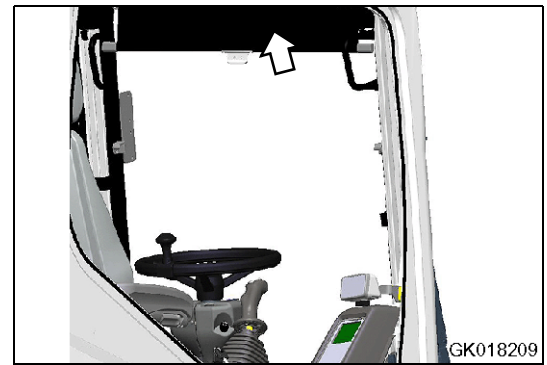
The cab is fitted with a clear rain visor to prevent rainfall on the windscreen above the area cleared by the wiper.



Pull down sun visor

The operator cab is fitted with a pull down sun visor. The visor is simply pulled down and hooked into the retainers mounted on the front window. The position of the retainers can be adjusted to one of three pre-set locations by removing the bolts holding the brackets, and re-attaching to one of the other prepared locations.

A second set of retainers is positioned at the bottom of the front window to allow coverage of the clear roof when the front window is in the raised position.



Door lock

Use the door lock to fix the door in position after opening it.

1. The door will become fixed in place when it is pressed against catch (1).
2. To release the lock, press knob (2) down at the left side of the operator's seat to release the catch.
When fixing the door, fix it firmly to the catch.

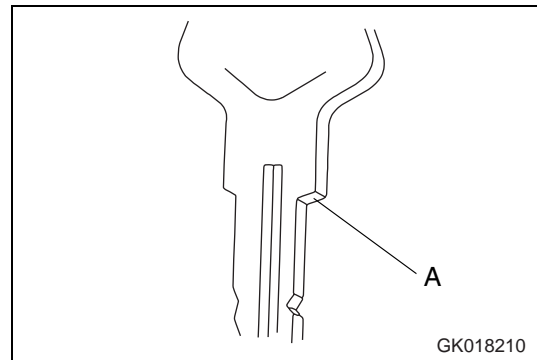


3.8 Cap, cover with lock

The fuel filler, hydraulic tank filler, operator's cab, engine hood, tool box cover, right side door and left side door of the machine body are fitted with locks.

Use the starting switch key to lock or unlock these places.

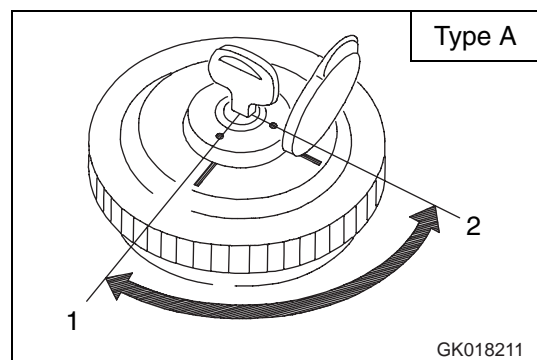
Insert the key as far as the shoulder (A). If the key is turned before it is inserted all the way, it may break.



3.8.1 Method of opening and closing cap with lock (for the fuel tank filler port)

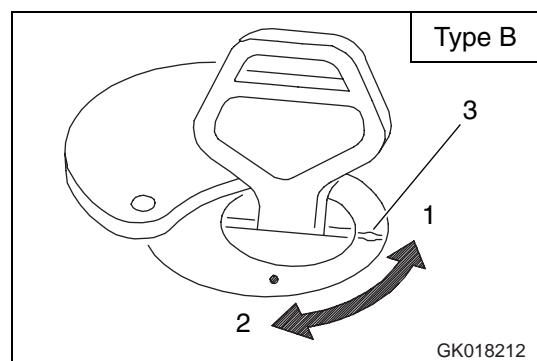
To open the cap

1. Insert the key into the cap.
2. Turn the key clockwise, align the match mark on the cap with the key slot.
3. Turn the cap anti-clockwise to remove it.



To lock the cap

1. Turn the cap into place.
2. Turn the key anti-clockwise to align the match mark on the cap with the key slot.
3. Take the key out.



3.8.2 Method of opening and closing cover with lock (cover with lock)

To open the cover (locked cover)

1. Insert the key.
2. Turn it counterclockwise and open the cover by pulling the cover grip.

To lock the cover

1. Close the cover and insert the key.
2. Turn the key clockwise and take the key out.



3.9 Fuse

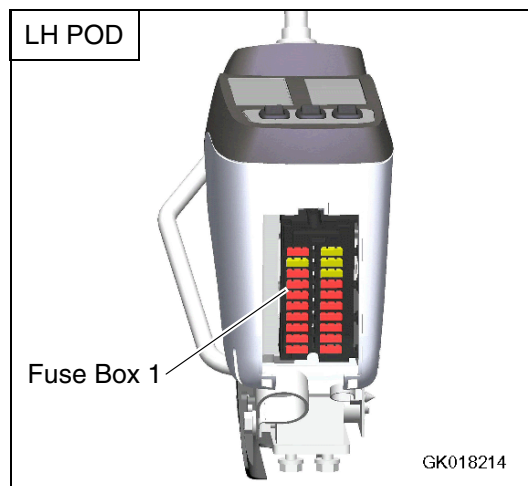
REMARK

Before replacing a fuse, be sure to turn off the starting switch.

The fuses protect the electrical equipment and wiring from burning out.

If the fuse becomes corroded, or white powder can be seen, or the fuse is loose in the fuse holder, replace the fuse.

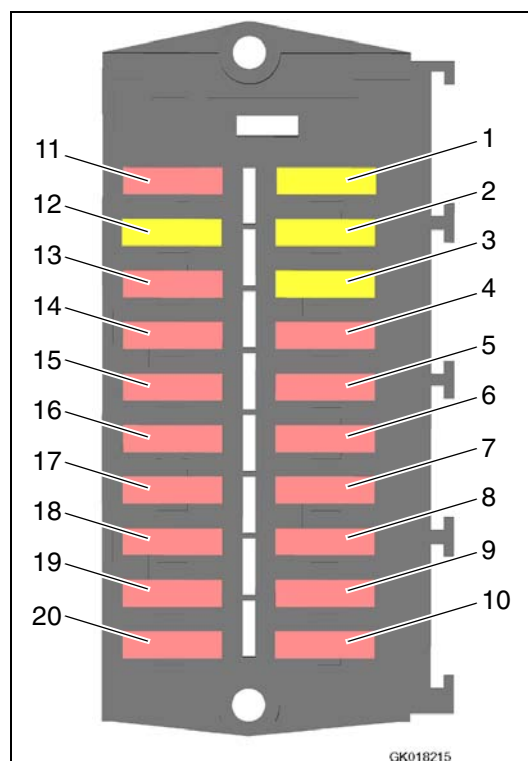
Replace a fuse with another of the same capacity.



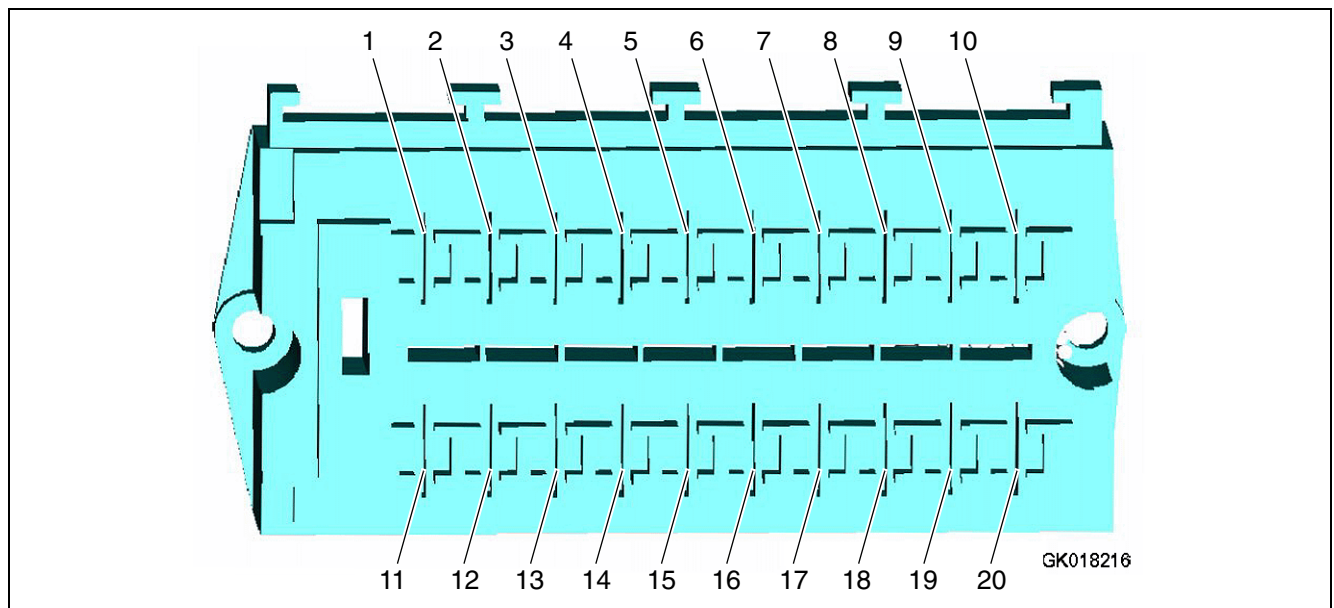
3.9.1 Fuse box 1

This is located in the rear of the left hand pod.

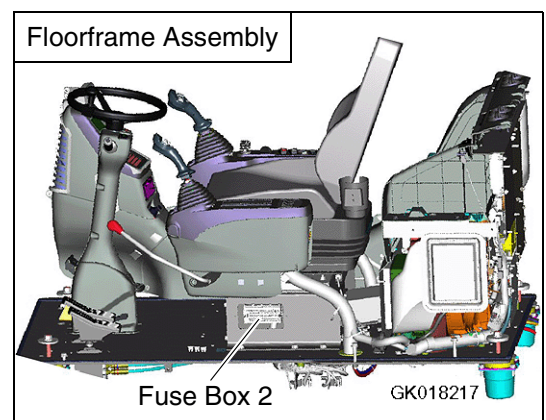
No.	Fuse capacity	Name of circuit
1.	10 A	Controller (switched power)
2.	20 A	Chassis attachment solenoids (controller)
3.	10 A	PPC lock
4.	10 A	Window washer and cigar lighter
5.	10 A	Horn and power max.
6.	10 A	Lower wiper and auto pre-heat relay
7.	10 A	Beacon
8.	10 A	Low brake pressure
9.	15 A	Flasher
10.	10 A	Refuelling pump
11.	20 A	A/C unit
12.	20 A	Monitor (switched power)
13.	20 A	Spare fuse
14.	10 A	Heated seat and optional power supply (24V)
15.	15 A	RH PPC lever power
16.	20 A	Seat compressor and cab interior light
17.	15 A	Monitor, controller (regular power), starter switch
18.	10 A	Hazard warning
19.	30 A	Engine controller
20.	5 A	Engine controller



3.9.2 Fuse Box 2

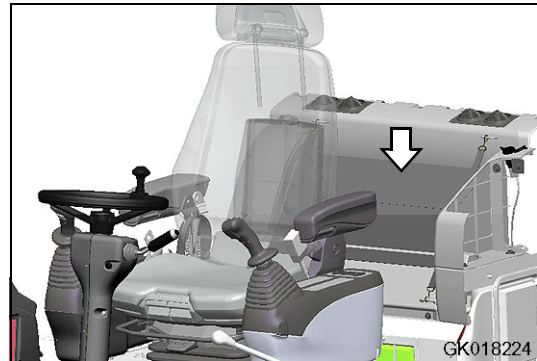


No.	Fuse capacity	Name of circuit
1.	5 A	Travel FNR
2.	10 A	Park brake
3.	20 A	Work lights (C/W, boom and op. cab rear) and quick coupler
4.	25 A	Work lights (Op. cab front)
5.	20 A	Work lights (Operator fitment option)
6.	10 A	Brake lamp
7.	10 A	Rototilt controller (2)
8.	10 A	Spare fuse
9.	10 A	Spare fuse
10.	10 A	Spare fuse
11.	20 A	Road lights (Master fuse)
12.	10 A	Rototilt controller (1)
13.	10 A	Spare fuse
14.	10 A	Spare fuse
15.	10 A	Spare fuse
16.	5 A	Side light (LH)
17.	5 A	Side light (RH)
18.	15 A	Dipped beam
19.	15 A	Main beam
20.	10 A	Spare fuse



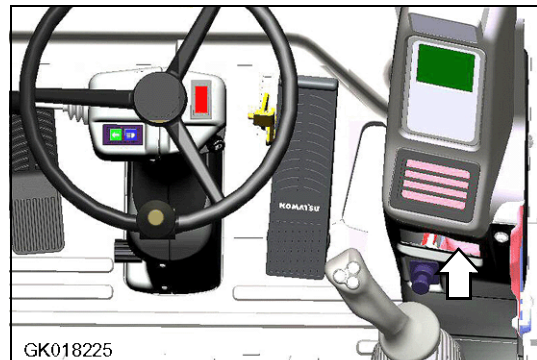
3.10 Luggage tray

This tray is located to the rear of the operator's seat. Always keep the Operation and Maintenance Manual in this tray for easy reading access.



3.11 Ashtray

The ashtray is under the machine monitor at the front right of the operator compartment. Always ensure when cigarettes are extinguished they are put in the ashtray and the lid closed.



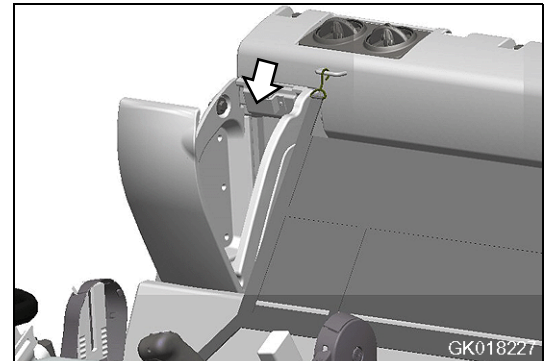
3.12 Cup holder

A cup holder is provided to the left of the operator for holding cups or cans. Drinks should not be left in the cup holder whilst operating the machine because spillage may occur.



3.13 Hot and cool box

The box is at the rear right of the operator's seat. It is interconnected with the air conditioner. It warms when the heater is being used and cools when the air conditioner is being used.



3.14 Cab radio

Located to rear right of the operator's seat.

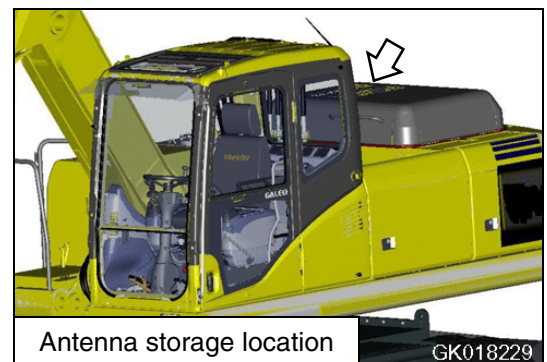
Refer to the separate operations manual for radio cassette.

REMARK

Ensure radio is switched off when leaving the machine for long periods to prevent draining of battery charge.

NOTE

Before transporting the machine or putting inside a building store the antenna to prevent any interference.



Precaution of use

- To ensure safe operation, adjust the volume level so that external noise is still audible.
- Ensure no water is splashed over the speaker case or cab radio to prevent malfunction.
- Never use solution such as benzine or thinners to clean the dial or buttons. These should be wiped with a dry, soft cloth. (Use a cloth dipped in alcohol for very dirty surfaces.)
- At battery replacement, all the memory pre-set with the pre-set buttons will be cleared. Perform pre-setting again.

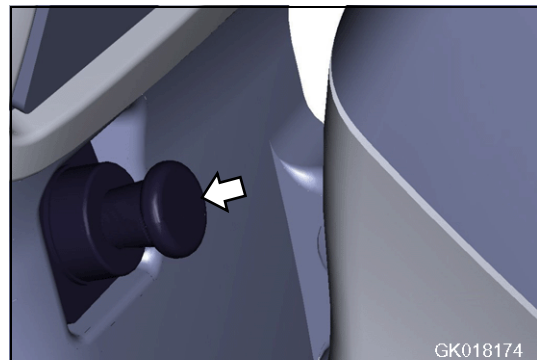
3.15 Power pick-up port

24V power source.

NOTE

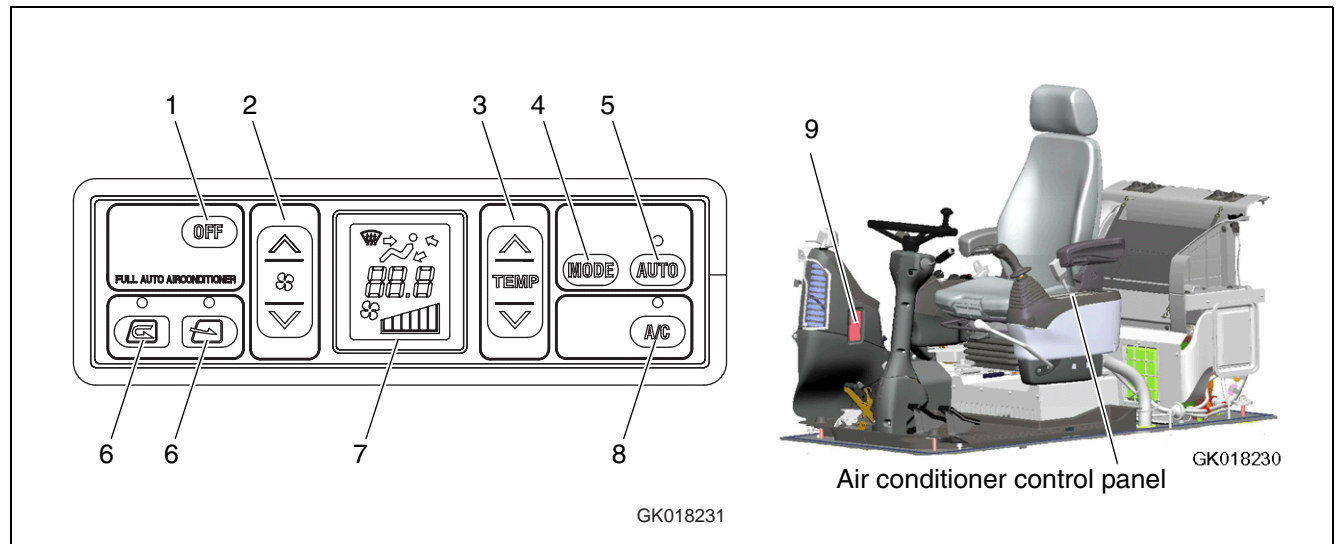
Do not use cigarette lighter as the power source for 12V equipment. It will cause damage to the equipment.

If the cigarette lighter is removed, it can be used as a power source. The capacity of the cigarette lighter is 85W (24V × 3.5A).



3.16 Handling air conditioner

3.16.1 General locations of control panel

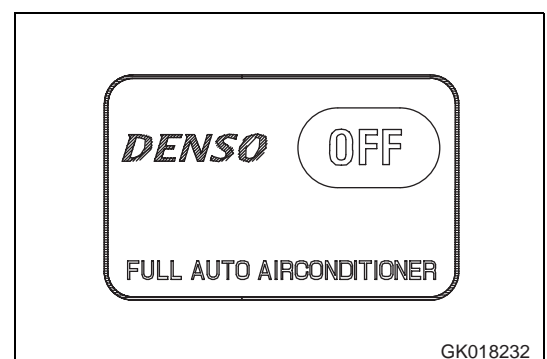


1.	OFF switch
2.	Fan switch
3.	Temperature set switch
4.	Vent selector switch
5.	Auto switch
6.	RECIRC/FRESH selector switch
7.	Display monitor
8.	Air conditioner switch
9.	Defroster selector lever

1. OFF switch

This switch (1) is used to stop the fan and air conditioner.

When OFF switch (1) is pressed, the set temperature and air flow display on display monitor (7) and the lamps above auto switch (5) and air conditioner switch (8) go out, and operation stops.

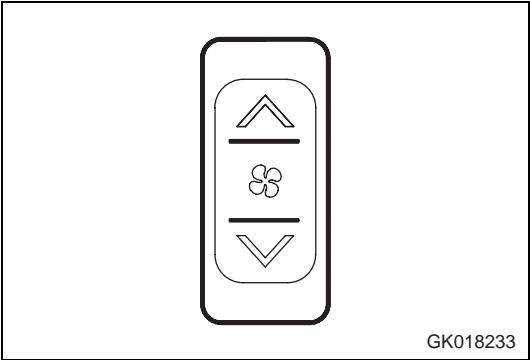








2. Fan switch

This switch (2) is used to adjust the air flow.

The air flow can be adjusted to six levels.

- Press the ▲ switch to increase the air flow; press the ▼ switch to reduce the air flow.
- During auto operation, the air flow is automatically adjusted.

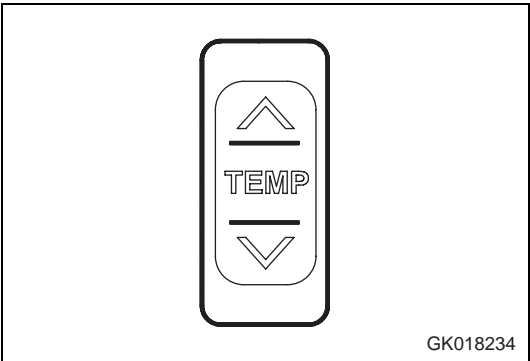


Monitor display and air flow	
Liquid crystal display	Air flow
	Air flow "low"
	Air flow "medium 1"
	Air flow "medium 2"
	Air flow "medium 3"
	Air flow "medium 4"
	Air flow "high"

3. Temperature set switch

This switch (3) is used to control the temperature inside the cab. The temperature can be set between 18°C and 32°C.

- Press the ▲ switch to raise the set temperature; press the ▼ switch to lower the set temperature.
- The temperature is generally set at 25°C.
- The temperature can be set in stages of 0.5°C.

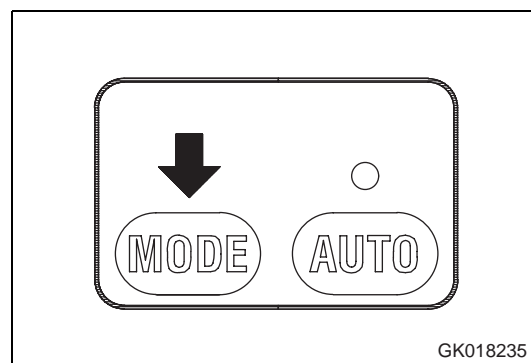


Monitor display and the function	
Monitor display (°C)	Set temperature
18.0	Max. cooling
18.5 to 31.5	Adjusts temperature inside cab to set temperature
32.0	Max. heating

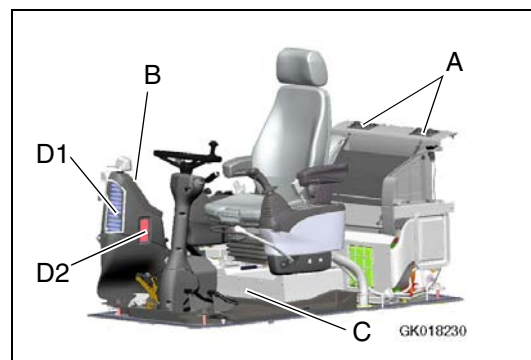
4. Vent selector switch

This switch (4) is used to select the vents.

- When switch (4) is pressed, the display on monitor display (7) switches and air blows out from the vents displayed.
- If AUTO operation is selected, the vents are selected automatically.



- A. Rear vents (4 places)
- B. Face vent (1 place)
- C. Foot vent (1 place)
- D1. Front window vent (1 place)
- D2. Front window vent (1 place)



NOTE

Front window vent (D2) can be opened or closed by hand.

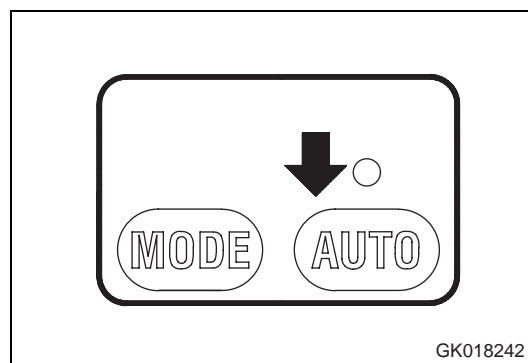
Liquid crystal display	Vent mode	Vent				Remarks
		(A)	(B)	(C)	(D)	
	Front and rear vents (including defroster vent)	O	O		(O)	—
	Front and rear vents (including defroster vent)	O	O	O	(O)	—
	Foot vent			O		—
	Foot, foot vents (including defroster vent)		O	O	(O)	Cannot be selected for automatic operation
	Front vents (including defroster vent)		O		(O)	Cannot be selected for automatic operation

5. Auto switch

With this switch (5), the air flow, vents, and air source (RECIRC/ FRESH) are automatically selected according to the set temperature.

This switch also acts as the air conditioner main switch.

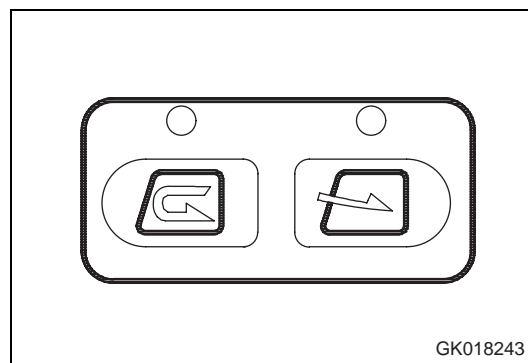
- When auto switch (5) is pressed, the lamp at the top of the auto switch lights up.
- Normally, press this switch, then use temperature control switch (3) to set the temperature, and run the air conditioner under automatic control.
- When the control is switched from automatic operation to manual operation, it is then possible to operate the switch to change the air flow, vents, and air source (RECIRC/ FRESH). When the manual control is used, the lamp at the top of the auto switch goes out.



6. RECIRC/FRESH selector switch

This switch (6) is used to switch the air source between recirculation of the air inside the cab and intake of air from the outside.

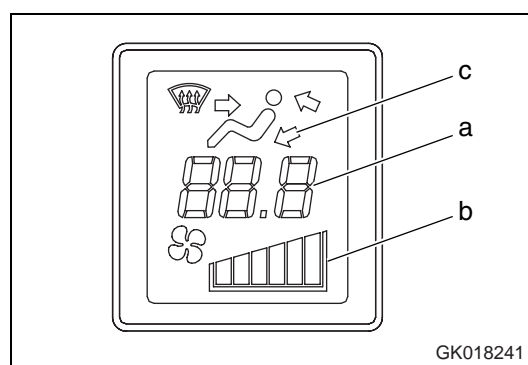
- When switch (6) is pressed, the lamp at the top of the selector switch lights up to show that air is being blown out.
- During automatic operation, the selection of inside air (RECIRC) and outside air (FRESH) is carried out automatically.



RECIRC	The outside air is shut off and only the air inside the cab is circulated. Use this position to carry out rapid cooling of the cab or when the outside air is dirty.
FRESH	Outside air is taken into the cab. Use this position to take in fresh air or when carrying out de misting.

7. Display monitor

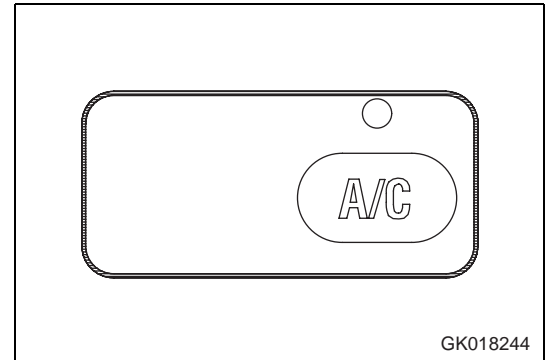
- This display monitor displays the status of temperature setting (a), air flow (b), and vents (c).
- When OFF switch (1) is pressed, the display of temperature setting (a) and air flow (b) goes out, and operation stops.



8. Air conditioner switch

This switch (8) is used to turn the air conditioner (cooling, dehumidifying, heating) ON or OFF.

- When the fan is actuated (the display monitor shows (b)) and air conditioner switch (8) is pressed, the air conditioner is switched ON, the lamp at the top of the air conditioner switch lights up, and the air conditioner starts. When it is pressed again to the OFF position, the lamp at the top of the air conditioner switch goes out.
- The air conditioner cannot be operated while the fan is stopped.

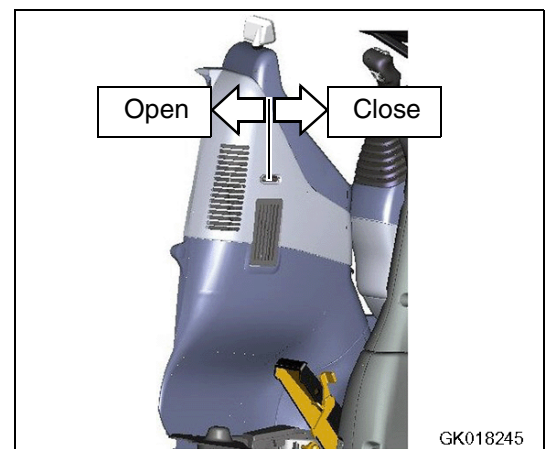


9. Defroster selector lever

This switch (9) is used in cold or rainy weather to remove the mist that forms on the front glass.

- Selector lever forward: To defroster (open)
- Selector lever back: Closed

The defroster can be used when the vent selector switch is set to face or face and foot.



3.16.2 Method of operation

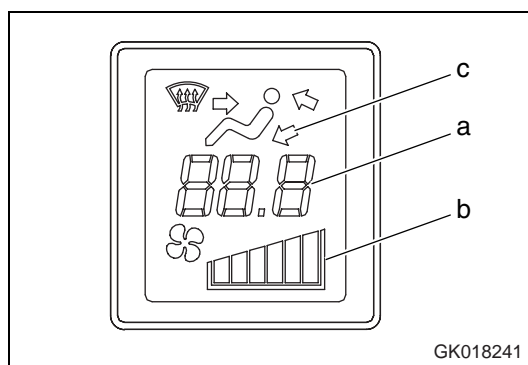
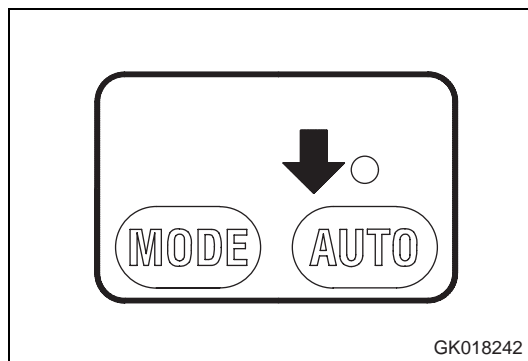
The air conditioner can be operated automatically or manually. Select the method of operation as desired.

Automatic operation

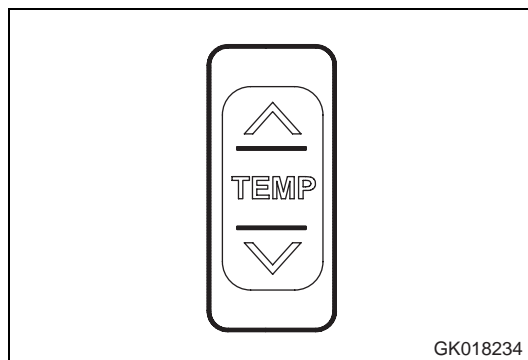
1. Turn auto switch (5) ON.

The lamp at the top of switch (5) lights up.

The set temperature (a) and air flow (b) are displayed on the monitor.

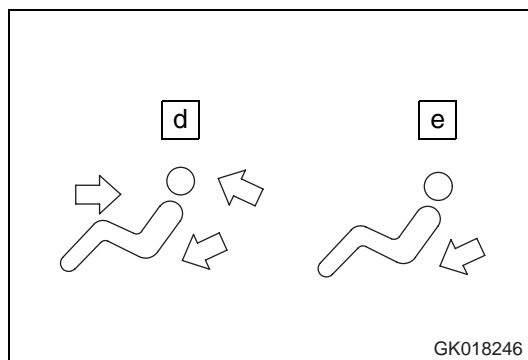


2. Use temperature set switch (3) to set to the desired temperature. The air flow, combination of vents, and selection of fresh or recirculated air is automatically selected according to the set temperature, and the air conditioner is operated automatically to provide the set temperature.



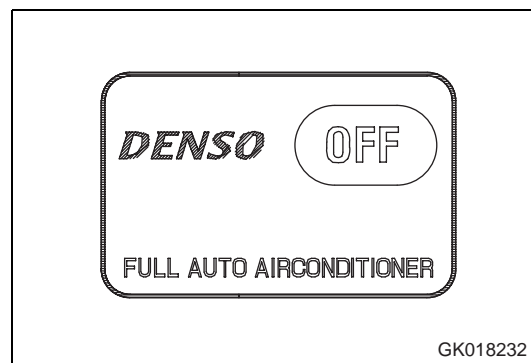
REMARK

When vent display monitor (c) displays (d) or (e), and the engine water temperature is low, the air flow is automatically limited to prevent cold air from blowing out.



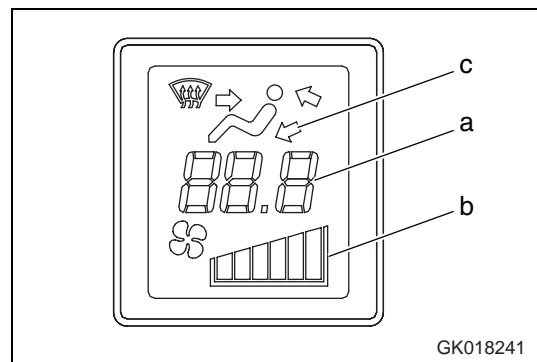
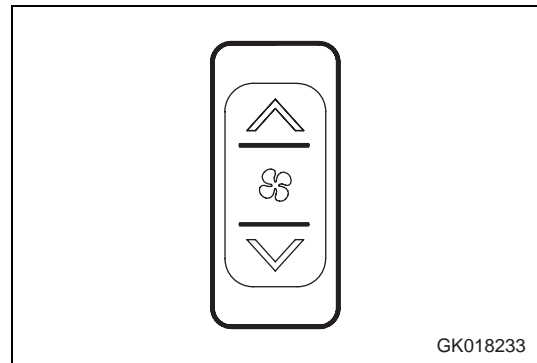
Stopping automatic operation

Press OFF switch (1). The displays for temperature setting (a) and air flow (b) on the display monitor, and the lamps above auto switch (5) and air conditioner switch (8) go out, and the operation stops.

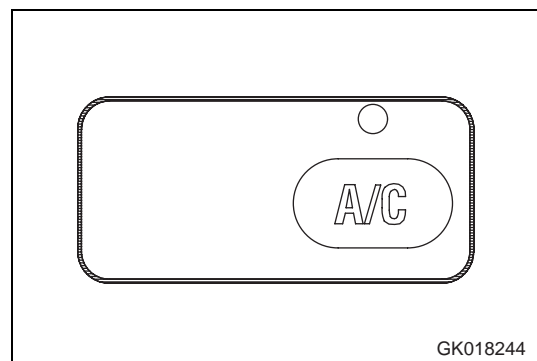


Manual operation

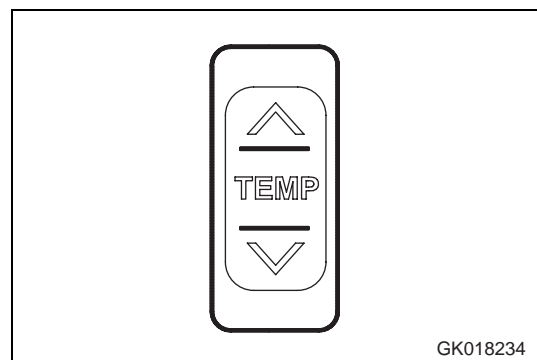
1. Press fan switch (2) and adjust the air flow. When doing this, check that temperature setting (a) and air flow (b) are displayed on the display monitor.



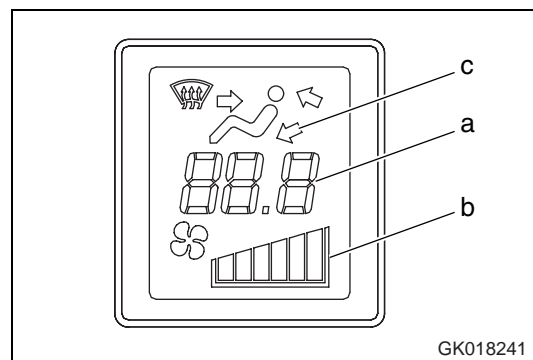
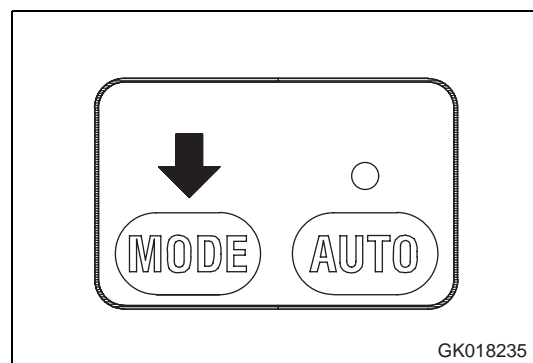
2. Turn air conditioner switch (8) ON. Check that the lamp at the top of the air conditioner switch lights up.



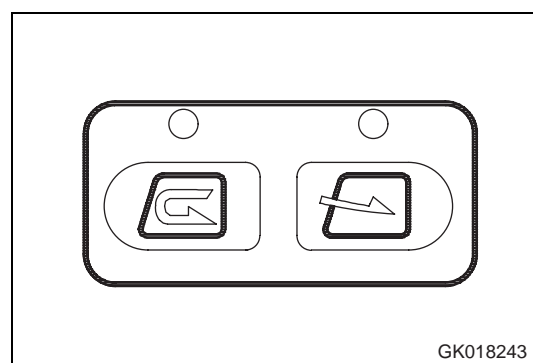
3. Press the temperature setting switch and adjust the temperature inside the cab.



4. Press vent selector switch (4) and select the desired vents. When this is done, the display for vent (c) of the display monitor changes according to the selection.

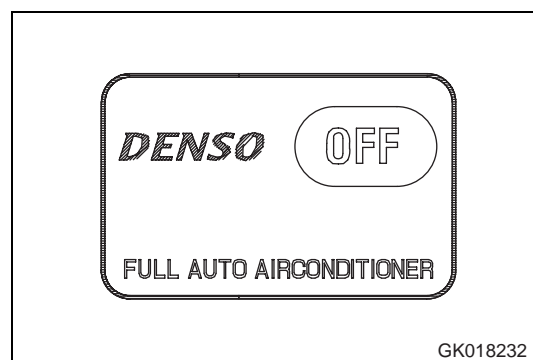


5. Press RECIRC/FRESH selector switch (6) and select recirculation of the air inside the cab (RECIRC) or intake of fresh air from outside (FRESH).



Stopping manual operation

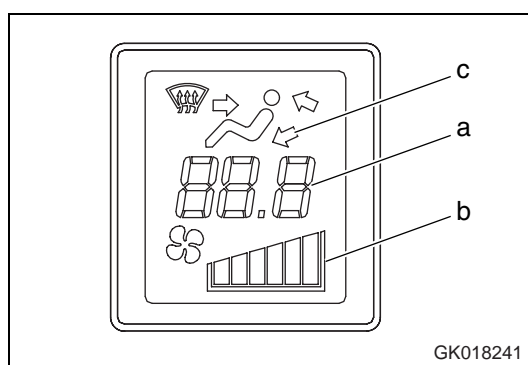
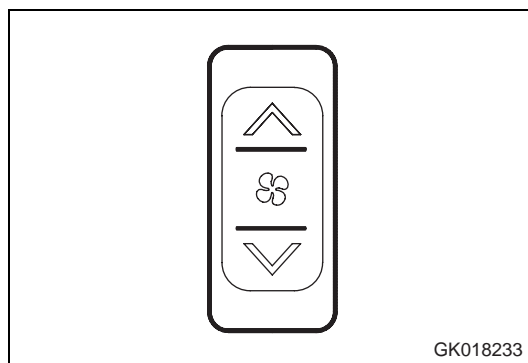
Press OFF switch (1). The displays for temperature setting (a) and air flow (b) on the display monitor, and the lamps above auto switch (5) and air conditioner switch (8) go out, and the operation stops.



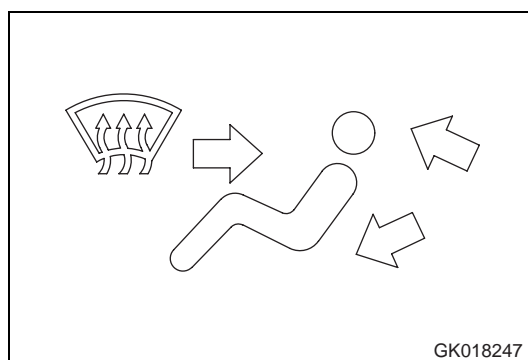
Operation with cold air to face and warm air to feet

To operate with cold air blowing to the face and warm air blowing to the feet, set as follows.

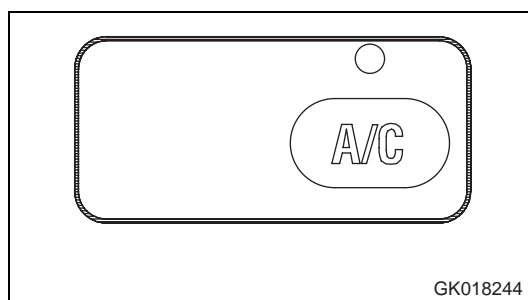
1. Press fan switch (2) and adjust the air flow. When doing this, check that temperature setting (a) and air flow (b) are displayed on the display monitor.



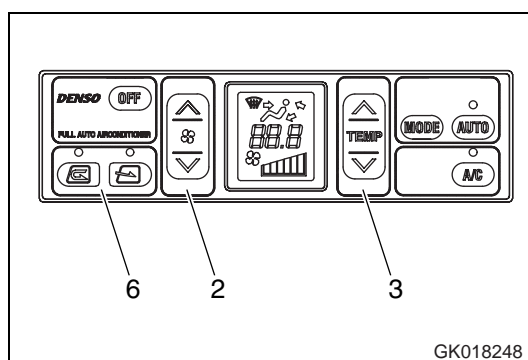
2. Press vent selector switch (4) and set the vent display on the display monitor (c) to the display shown in the diagram on the right.



3. Turn air conditioner switch (8) ON. When this is done, check that the lamp above the air conditioner switch lights up.

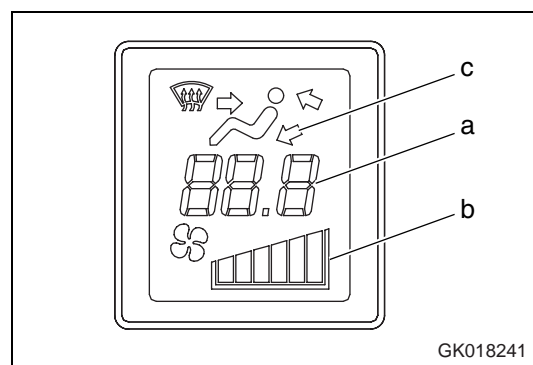
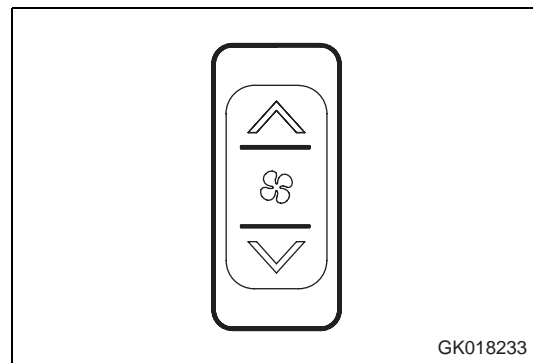


4. Adjust fan switch (2), temperature setting switch (3) and FRESH/RECIRC selector switch (6) to the desired positions.

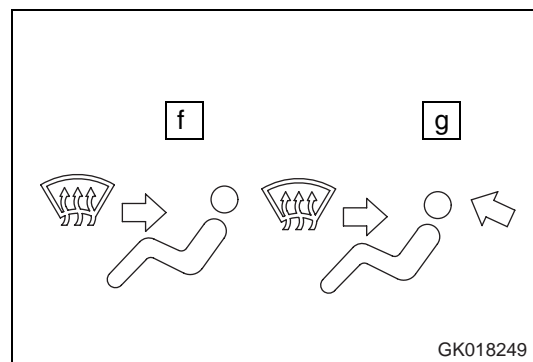
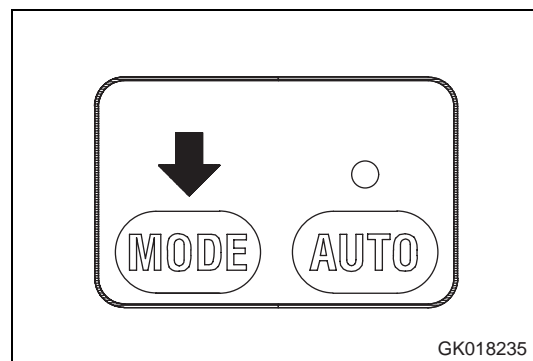


Defroster operation

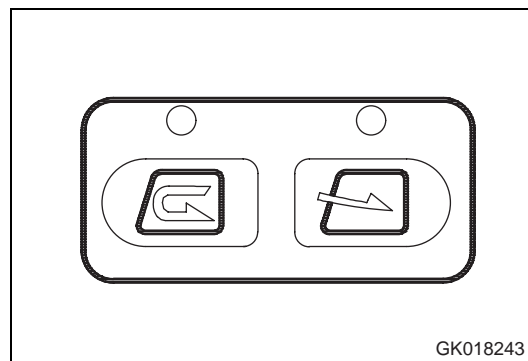
1. Press fan switch (2) and adjust the air flow. When doing this, check that temperature setting (a) and air flow (b) are displayed on the display monitor.



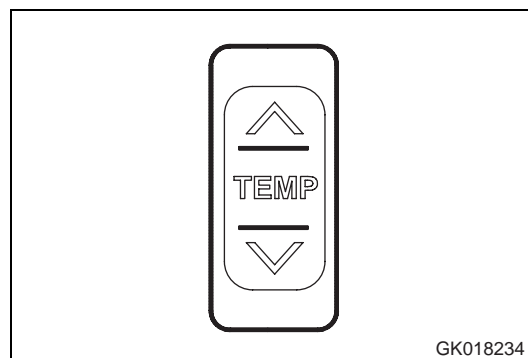
2. Press vent selector switch (4) and set the vent display on the display monitor to the display shown in (f) or (g) in the diagram on the right.



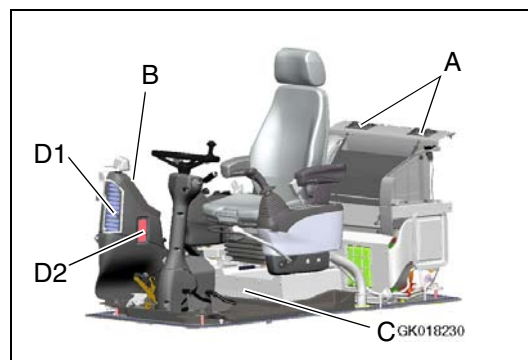
3. Press FRESH/RECIRC selector switch (6) and set it to take in fresh air.



4. Press temperature setting switch (3) and set the set temperature display on the display monitor to the maximum heating temperature of 32°C.

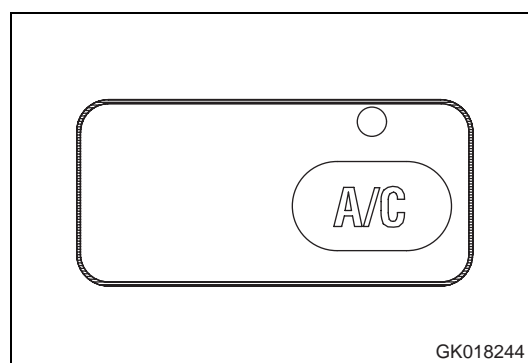


5. Adjust vents (A), (B), and (D2) so that the air blows onto the window glass.
(Vents (C) and (D1) are fixed and cannot be adjusted.)



NOTE

When operating in the rain or when it is desired to remove the mist from the window glass or to dehumidify the air, turn air conditioner switch (8) ON.



3.16.3 Precautions when using air conditioner

NOTE

- *When running the air conditioner, always start with the engine running at low speed. Never start the air conditioner when the engine is running at high speed. It will cause failure of the air conditioner.*
- *If water gets into the control panel or sunlight sensor, it may lead to unexpected failure, so be careful not to let water get on these parts. In addition, never bring any flame near these parts. The sunlight sensor is on the front of the steering column.*
- *For the auto function of the air conditioner to work properly, always keep the sunlight sensor clean and do not leave anything around the sunlight sensor that may interfere with its sensor function.*

Ventilate the cab from time to time when using the cooler.

If you smoke when the cooler is on, the smoke may start to hurt your eyes, so open the window and carry out ventilation and cooling for a short time to remove the smoke.

When running the air conditioner for a long time, carry out ventilation and cooling together once each hour.

Be careful not to make the temperature in the cab too low.

When the cooler is on, set the temperature so that it feels slightly cool when entering the cab (5 - 6°C) lower than the outside temperature). This temperature difference is considered to be the most suitable for your health. Adjust the temperature properly.

3.16.4 Check, maintain machine equipped with air conditioner

When carrying out inspection of a machine equipped with an air conditioner, see the "Maintenance schedule chart (4-24)" and carry out inspection according to the table.

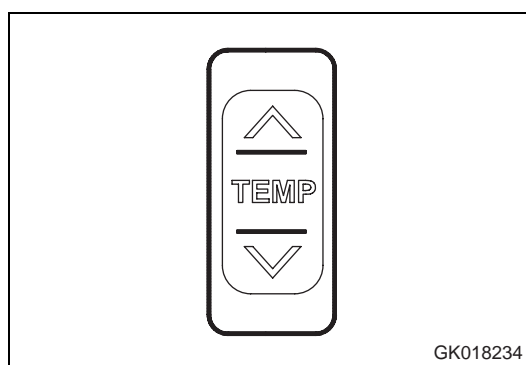
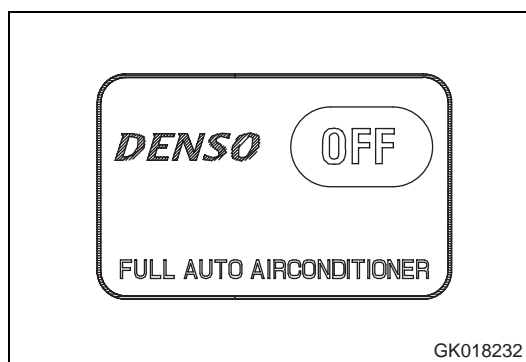
3.16.5 Other functions

Self-diagnostic function

It is possible to carry out troubleshooting of the various sensors and equipment used on the air conditioner.

1. Press OFF switch (1). The temperature setting and air flow display on the liquid crystal display portion go out and operation stops.
2. If the "▲" and "▼" parts of temperature setting switch (3) are kept pressed at the same time for at least 3 seconds, the troubleshooting mode is displayed on the liquid crystal display.

Monitor display and failure mode	
Display	Failure mode
E--	No failure
E11	Disconnection in recirculated air sensor
E12	Short circuit in recirculated air sensor
E13	Disconnection in fresh air sensor
E14	Short circuit in fresh air sensor
E15	Disconnection in water temperature sensor
E16	Short circuit in water temperature sensor
E18	Short circuit in sunlight sensor
E21	Disconnection in vent sensor
E22	Short circuit in vent sensor
E43	Abnormality in vent damper
E44	Abnormality in air mix damper
E45	Abnormality in FRESH/RECIRC air damper
E51	Abnormality in refrigerant pressure



- When more than one failure is detected, press the "▲" or "▼" portion of temperature setting switch (3) to display the failures in turn.
- After completing the troubleshooting, press OFF switch (1) again to return to the normal display.

If any abnormality is detected by the self-diagnostic function, ask your KOMATSU distributor to carry out inspection and repair.

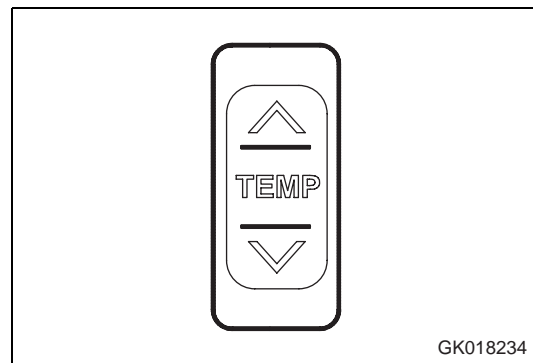
Switch set temperature display between °F and °C

It is possible to switch the set temperature display between °F and °C.

If the "▲" and "▼" portions of temperature setting switch (3) are pressed at the same time for more than 5 seconds while the fan is running, the temperature display will switch between °F and °C.

(Note that the unit is not displayed.)

	Liquid crystal display range
°C	18.0 to 32.0
°F	63 to 91

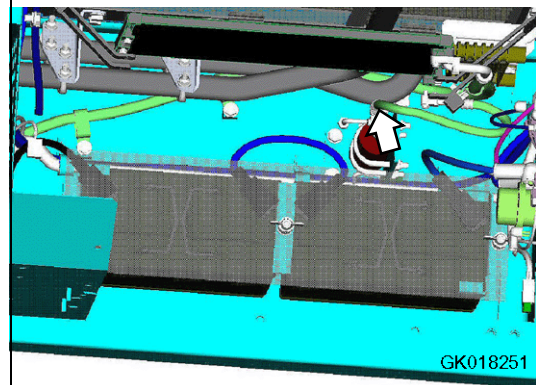


3.17 Fusible link

If the starting motor will not rotate when the starting switch is turned ON, a possible cause is disconnection of wire-type fusible link. Open the radiator compartment door to inspect the fusible link and, if necessary, replace it.

REMARK

A fusible link is a large-sized fuse wire installed in the high current flow portion of the circuit to protect electrical components and wiring from burning, similar to an ordinary fuse.

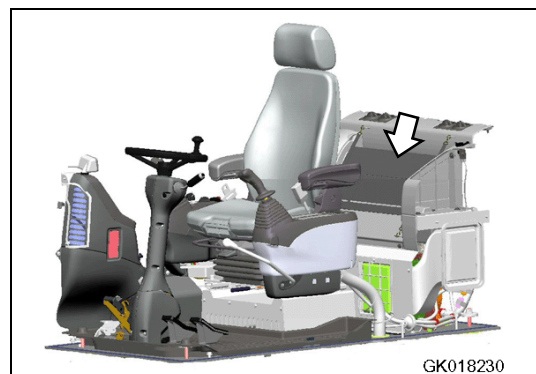


3.18 Controller

A pump and governor controller is provided. It is located underneath the panels behind the seat.

NOTE

- *Never splash or spill water, mud or drink over the controller as this may cause a fault.*
- *If a fault occurs in the controller do not attempt repair. Consult your KOMATSU distributor.*



3.19 Tool box (chassis)

This is used for storage of tools.

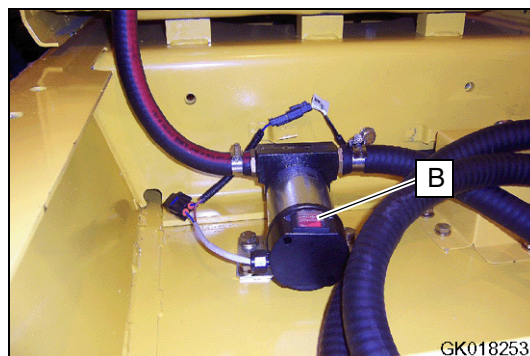
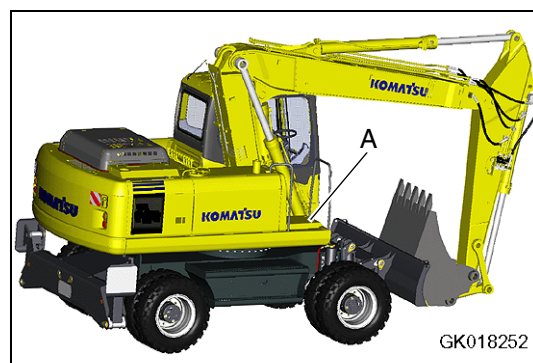
3.20 Refuelling pump

3.20.1 Safety

- Do not bring fire or sparks near fuel - smoking is prohibited.
- In event of ingested fuel – do not induce vomiting. Drink large quantity of milk or water and seek medical attention.
- Skin protection:
Wear protective gloves when dispensing fuel. Plastic gloves conforming to EN388 cat: 2 are recommended.
- Attendance:
Transfer of fuel must always take place under the supervision of the operator.
- Location for refuelling:
Ensure that refueling takes place away from hazardous areas.

3.20.2 Procedure

1. When the machine is operated on sites with no fuel container and pump, the machine may be refuelled from the fuel barrels using the refuelling pump.
2. The refuelling pump is located in the compartment shown (A).
3. Stop the machine engine.
4. Open the cap on the foot valve by unscrewing fully.
5. Check strainer on the fuel hose end is clean.
6. Place the fuel hose into the fuel barrel, ensuring that the foot valve is placed at the bottom of the barrel.
7. Open the cap on top of the tank.
8. Switch on the pump (switch B).
9. Check that the pump primes properly (should prime within 1 minute). If it does not, stop the pump and check that the strainer is clean and hose is immersed in the fuel.



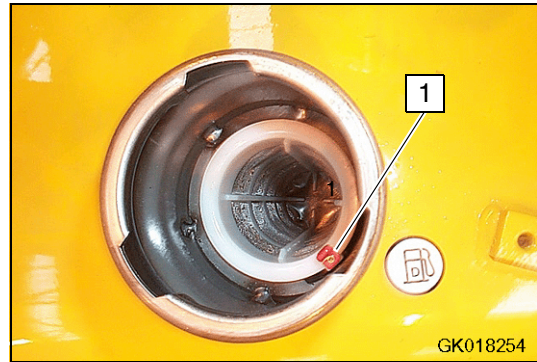
10. When the level indicator (1) shows the tank to be full, stop the pump. Take care not to allow fuel to overflow from the tank.
11. Close the cap on the foot valve by screwing fully.
12. Replace the hose and the tank cap.

REMARK

The pump is protected by a fuse. If pump fails to function, check fuse (15A).

Do not allow the pump to run dry, as this will overheat the motor. If the barrel is emptied during the refuelling stop the pump immediately.

The maximum permitted running time for the pump is 30 minutes. The tank should be full before 20 minutes elapses. Do not allow the pump to run for longer than this as damage will occur to the motor.



3.20.3 Maintenance

- Weekly:
Clean the suction filter.
- Monthly:
Check hose joints, electrical cables and clean the pump body of impurities.
- Storage:
If the pump is not to be used for a period, ensure that fuel is sprayed into the motor housing every two weeks to prevent risk of rusting to the rotor.

3.21 Warning lamps

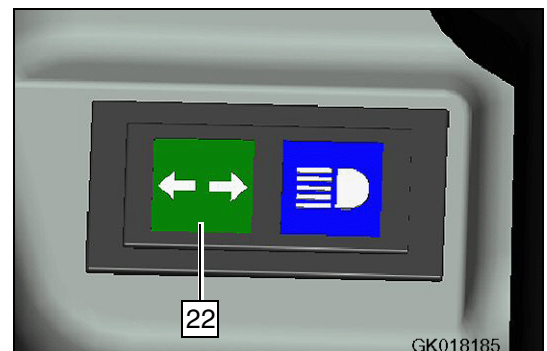
Turn indicator warning lamps

When the indicator lever is pulled fully backward, warning light (22) will flash to indicate the driver's intention to turn to the left.

When the indicator lever is pushed fully forward, the same warning light (22) will flash to indicate the driver's intention to turn to the right.



GK018098



GK018185

Hazard warning switch

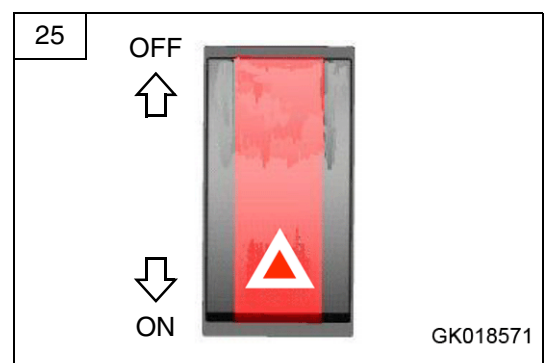
To turn on the hazard warning lights, depress hazard warning switch (25), this starts all of the indicator lights to flash on and off. This is indicated by lights in the switch (25) and the green left/right indicator display, flashing on and off together.

ON: Hazard warning lights off

OFF: Hazard warning lights on



GK018098



GK018571

3.22 Handling accumulators



WARNING

After stopping the engine, always raise the safety lock to the LOCK position.

The accumulators are filled with high-pressure nitrogen gas, and it is extremely dangerous if they are handled in the wrong way.

Always observe the following precautions:



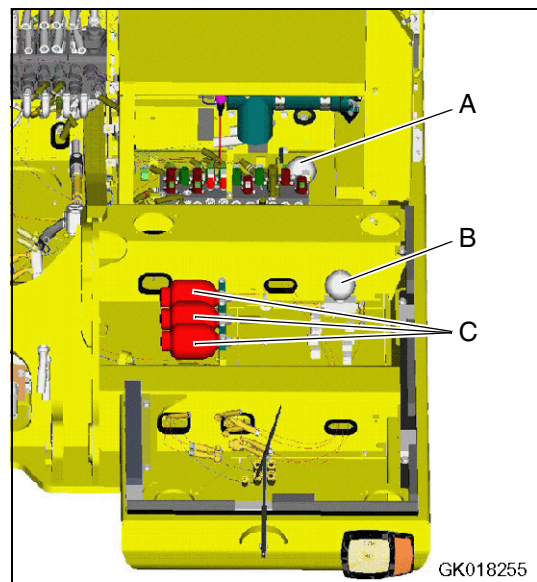
WARNING

- Never make any hole in the accumulators or expose them to flame or fire.
- Do not weld any boss to the accumulators.
- When disposing of accumulators, it is necessary to re-lease the gas from the accumulators, so please contact your KOMATSU distributor.

3.22.1 Control circuit accumulator (A)

This machine is equipped with an accumulator in the control circuit. The accumulator is a device to store the pressure in the control circuit. If the key is in the "ON" position, and the safety lock lever is in the down position, the control circuit can be operated for a short time even after the engine is stopped. Therefore, if the control lever is moved in the direction to lower the work equipment, it is possible for the work equipment to move under its own weight.

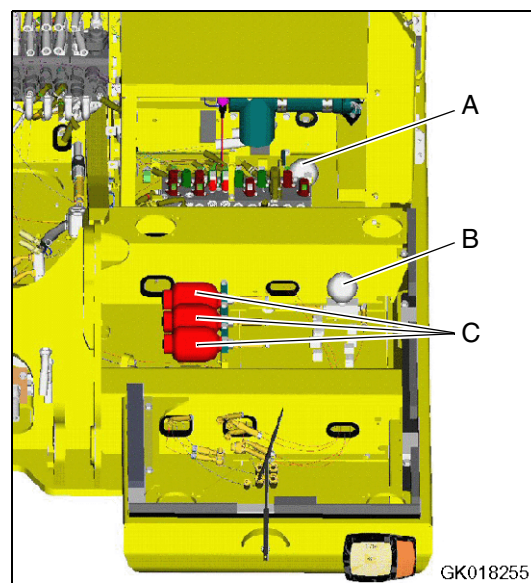
The accumulator is installed to the position shown in the diagram on the right.



3.22.2 Clutch control accumulator (B)

This machine is equipped with an accumulator in the transmission circuit.

The accumulator is installed to the position shown in the diagram on the right.



3.22.3 Brake circuit accumulators (C) × 3

This machine is equipped with accumulators in the brake circuits.

The accumulator is a device to store the pressure in the circuit, and when it is installed, the circuit can be operated for a short time even after the engine is stopped.

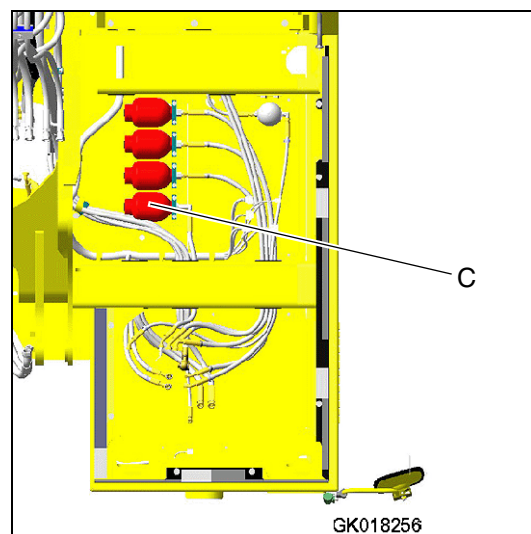
REMARK

The accumulators are installed to the position shown in the diagram on the right.

Special accumulator (Italian regulations) (C) × 4 for machines supplied to Italy four brake circuit accumulators are installed.

An additional accumulator (C) is required for machines destined for the Italian domestic market.

The additional accumulator is required to meet Italian braking regulations.



3.23 Operation

3.23.1 Check before starting engine

Walk-around check

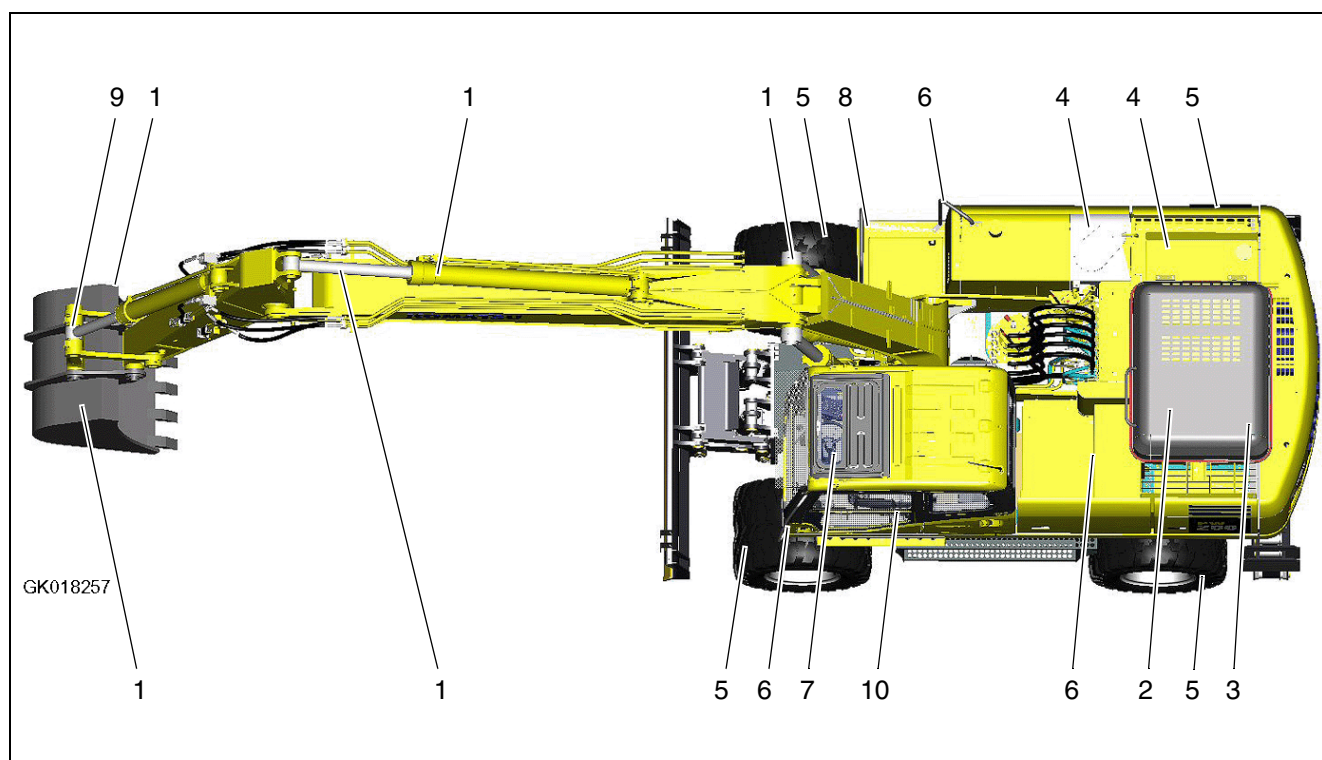
WARNING

Dirt, oil or fuel around the parts of the engine which reach high temperatures may cause fire and damage to the machine. Check carefully, and if any abnormality is found, always repair it or contact your KOMATSU distributor.

Before starting the engine, look around the machine and under the machine to check for loose nut or bolts, or leakage of oil, fuel, or coolant, and check the condition of the work equipment and hydraulic system.

Check also for loose wiring, play, and collection of dust at places which reach high temperatures.

Always carry out the items in this section before starting the engine each day.



1. Check for damage, wear, play in work equipment, cylinders, linkage, hoses

Check that there are no cracks, excessive wear, or play in the work equipment, cylinders, linkage, or hoses. If any abnormality is found, repair it.

2. Remove dirt from around engine, radiator, battery

Check that there is no dirt accumulated around the engine, battery or radiator. If any dirt is found, remove it. Also check for flammable material (rags, leaves, twigs, grass etc.) and remove.

3. Check for leakage of water or oil around engine

Check that there is no leakage of oil from the engine or leakage of water from the cooling system. If any abnormality is found, repair it.

4. Check for oil leakage from hydraulic equipment, hydraulic tank, hoses, joints

Check that there is no oil leakage. If any abnormality is found, repair the place where the oil is leaking.

5. Check for damage to wheels and tyres**6. Check for damage to handrail and for loose bolts**

Repair any damaged handrails and tighten any loose bolts.

7. Check for damage to monitor and loose bolts

Check that there is no damage to the monitor in the operator's cab. If any abnormality is found, replace the parts. Clean off any dirt on the surface.

8. Clean rear view mirror, check for damage

Check that there is no damage to the rear view mirror. If it is damaged, replace it with a new mirror. Clean the surface of the mirror and adjust the angle so that the view to the rear can be seen from the operator's seat.

9. Check lifting eye for damage

Check the lifting eye (or hook and safety latch) for damage. If damage is found, contact your KOMATSU distributor for repair.

10. Check seat belt and mounting clamps

Check there is no abnormality in the seat belt or mounting clamps. If there is any damage, replace with new parts

3.23.2 Check before starting

Always carry out the items in this section before starting the engine each day.

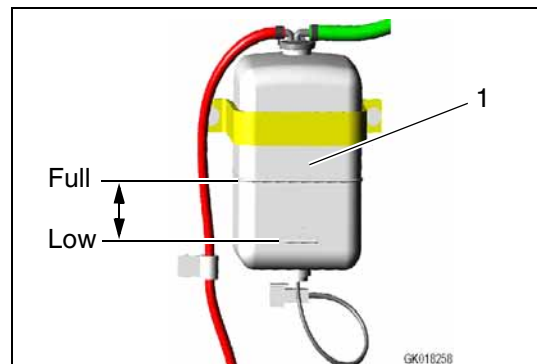
Check coolant level, add water



WARNING

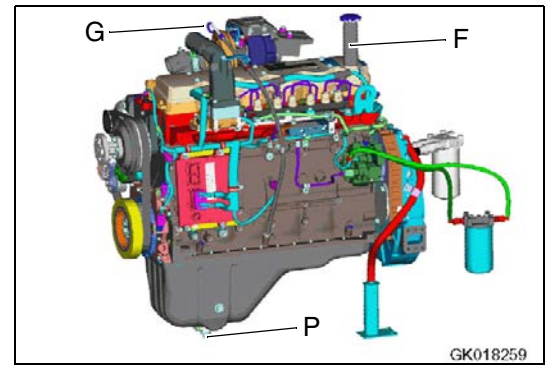
- Do not open the radiator cap unless necessary. When checking the coolant, always check the radiator reserve tank when the engine is cold.
- Immediately after the engine is stopped, the coolant is at a high temperature and the radiator is under high internal pressure. If the radiator cap is removed to drain the coolant in this condition, there is danger of burns. Wait for the temperature to go down, then turn the cap slowly to release the pressure before removing it.

1. Open the rear door on the left side of the machine and check that the cooling water level is between the FULL and LOW marks on radiator reserve tank (1) (shown in the diagram on the right). If the water level is low, add water through the water filler of reserve tank to the FULL level.
2. After adding water, tighten the cap securely.
3. If the reserve tank becomes empty, first inspect for water leaks and then fill the radiator and the reserve tank with water.



Check oil level in engine oil pan, add oil

1. Open the engine hood.
2. Remove dipstick (G) and wipe the oil off with a cloth.
3. Insert dipstick (G) fully in the oil filler pipe, then take it out again.

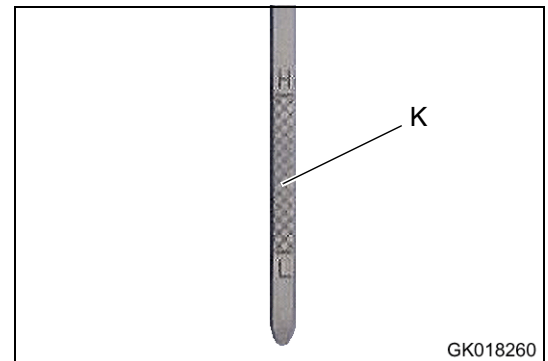


4. The oil level should be between the H and L marks on dipstick (K).

If the oil level is below the L mark, add engine oil through oil filler (F).

For details of the oil to use, see "Use fuel, coolant and lubricants according to ambient temperature (4-16)".

5. If the oil is above the H mark, drain the excess engine oil from drain plug (P), and check the oil level again.
6. If the oil level is correct, tighten the oil filler cap securely and close the engine hood.



REMARK

Ensure the machine is level when checking oil level and wait 15 minutes after stopping engine before checking the oil level.



WARNING

Allow the engine to cool before checking the oil level to avoid burns by touching hot engine parts.

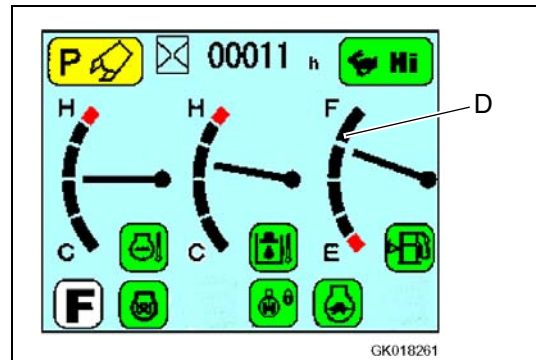
Check fuel level, add fuel



WARNING

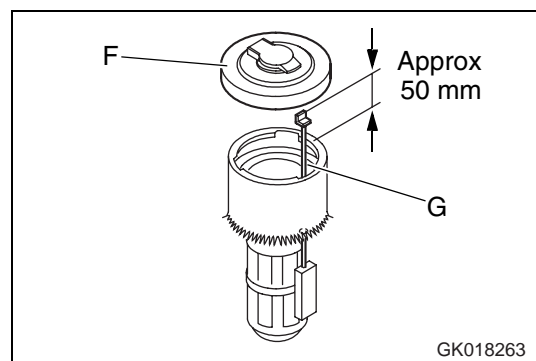
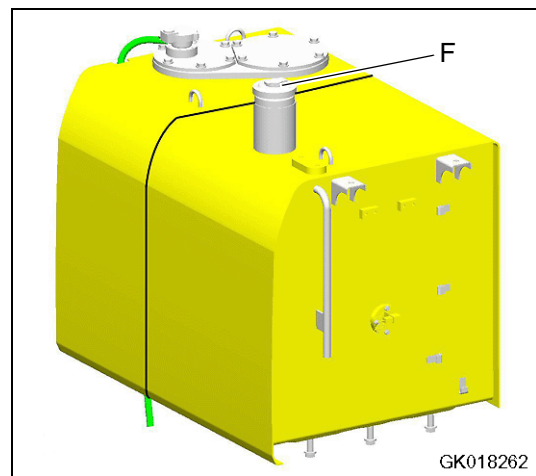
When adding fuel, never let the fuel overflow. This may cause a fire. If fuel is spilled, thoroughly clean up any spillage.

1. Check fuel level on monitor panel (D).



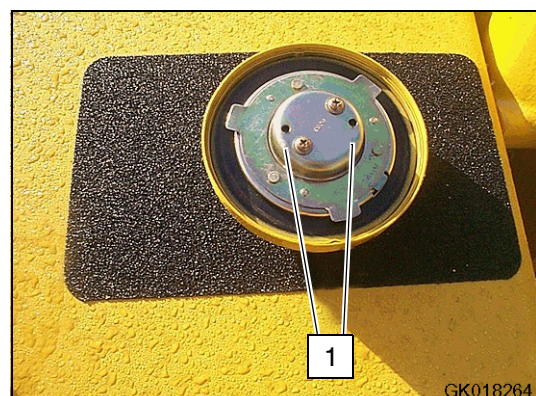
2. If fuel level is on the E marker you need to refill the tank.
3. Open fuel filler cap (F) on fuel tank.
4. When the fuel filler cap (F) is opened, float gauge within filler neck will rise according to fuel level. Check that the fuel tank is full by looking into tank and checking float gauge.
5. If the tank is not full, add fuel through the fuel filler until the float gauge (G) rises to the maximum position. Fuel tank capacity: 325 litres. Position of tip of float gauge (G) when tank is full: Approx. 50 mm from top of surface of fuel tank.
6. After adding fuel, push float gauge (G) straight down with fuel filler cap (F). Be careful not to get float gauge (G) caught in the tab of fuel filler cap (F), and tighten fuel filler cap (F) securely.

For details of the fuel to use, see "Use fuel, coolant and lubricants according to ambient temperature (4-16)".



REMARK

*If breather holes (1) on the cap is clogged, the pressure in the tank will drop and fuel will not flow.
Clean the holes from time to time.*

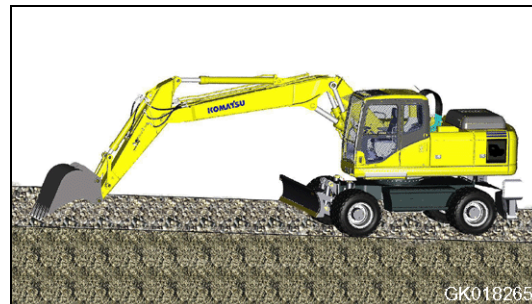


Check oil level in hydraulic tank, add oil



WARNING

- When removing the oil filler cap, oil may spurt out, so turn the cap slowly to release the internal pressure before removing the cap.
- If oil has been added to above the H mark, stop the engine and wait for the hydraulic oil to cool down, then drain the excess oil from the drain plug (P).

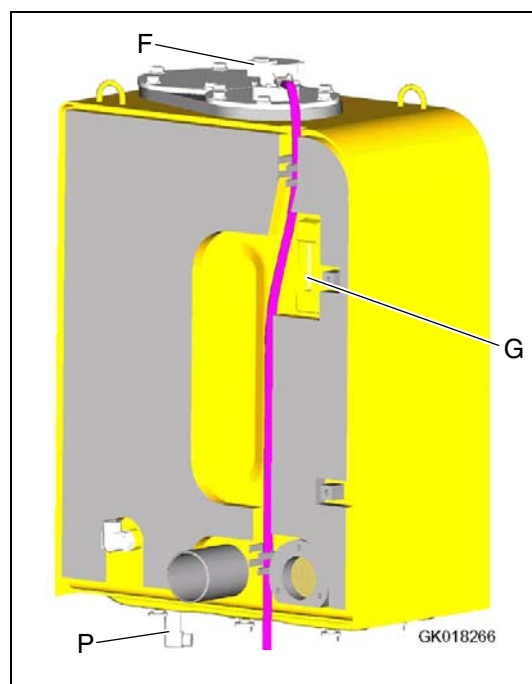


1. If the work equipment is not in the condition shown in the diagram on the right, start the engine, run the engine at low speed, retract the arm and bucket cylinders, then lower the boom, set the bucket teeth in contact with the ground, and stop the engine.
2. Check sight gauge (G). The oil level is normal if midway between the H and L marks.

NOTE

Do not add oil if the level is above the H line. This will damage the hydraulic equipment and cause oil to spurt out.

3. If the level is below the L mark, remove cap (F) from the hydraulic tank and add oil.



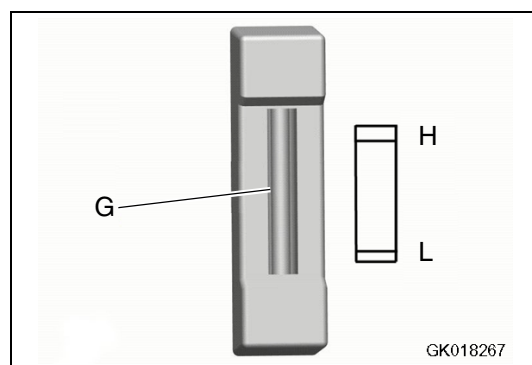
For details of the oil to use, see "Use fuel, coolant and lubricants according to ambient temperature (4-16)".

REMARK

The oil level will vary depending upon the oil temperature.

Accordingly, use the following as a guide:

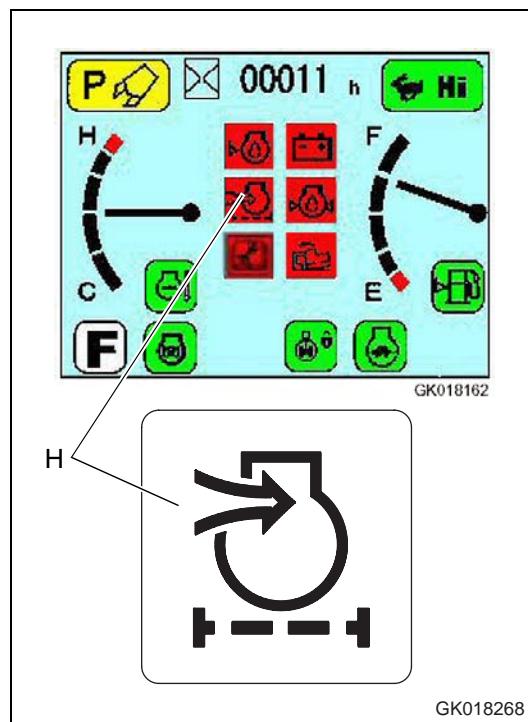
- Before operation:
Around midway between H and L
(Oil temperature 10 to 30°C)
- Normal operation:
Around H level
(Oil temperature 50 to 80°C)



Check air cleaner for clogging

1. Confirm that the air cleaner clogging monitor (H) is not lit.
2. If lit, immediately clean or replace the element.

For details of the method of cleaning the element, see "Check, clean and replace air cleaner element (4-33)".



Check electric wiring



WARNING

- If the fuses frequently blow, if there are traces of short circuits in the electrical wiring, locate the cause immediately and carry out repairs, or contact your KOMATSU distributor for repairs.
- Keep the top surface of the battery clean and check the breather hole in the battery cap. If it is clogged with dirt or dust, wash the battery cap to clean the breather hole.

Check for damage, wrong fuse capacity, and any sign of disconnection or short circuit in the electric wiring. Check for loose terminals and tighten any loose parts.

In particular check the wiring of the "battery", "starting motor" and "alternator" carefully.

When carrying out walk-around checks or checks before starting, always check if there is any accumulation of flammable material around the battery, and remove it.

Please contact your KOMATSU distributor for investigation and correction of the cause.

Check function of horn

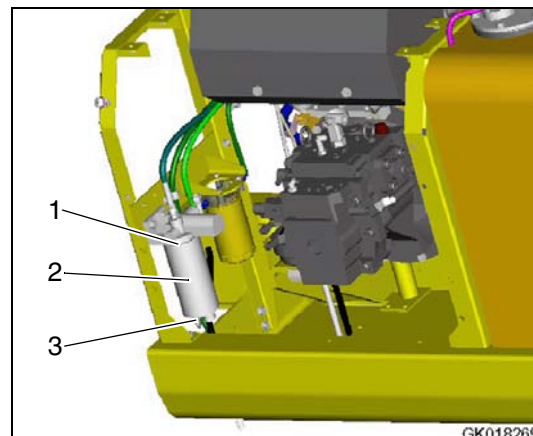
1. Turn the starting switch to the ON position.
2. Confirm that the horn sounds without delay when the horn button is pressed. If the horn does not sound, ask your KOMATSU distributor for repair.

Check for water and sediment in water separator, drain water

1. Open the pump room door on the right side of the machine.

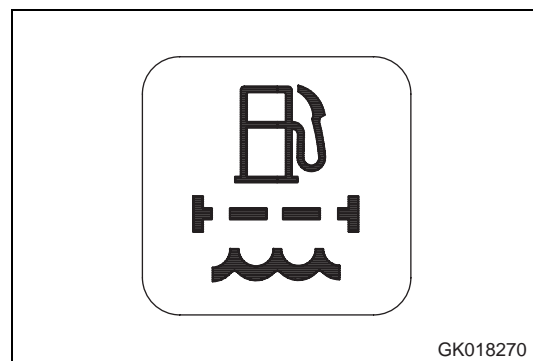
The water separator forms one unit with fuel pre-filter (1) and consists of bottom parts (2), (3).

2. Water and sediment on the bottom can be checked through transparent cap (2). If there is water or sediment prepare a container to receive it under drain hose
3. Loosen drain valve (3) to drain the water.
4. If fuel starts flowing out through drain hose, close valve (3) immediately.



5. On this machine, a sensor is installed to detect if water is accumulated at the bottom of fuel pre-filter (1). When the water separator monitor shown in the illustration on the right lights up red on the machine monitor at the front right of the operators seat, it indicates that water is accumulated in fuel pre-filter(1).

In this case also, use the above steps 1 - 4 to drain the water.



NOTE

- If the water accumulated in transport cap (2) freezes, the water separator monitor may not light up. After the engine is started, as the temperature around the fuel pre-filter (1) increases, the frozen water will melt and the water separator monitor may suddenly light up. In cold areas, even if the water separator monitor does not light up, drain the water frequently.
- If the water inside the transparent cap (2) freezes, check that the frozen water has melted completely, then use the procedure above to drain the water.

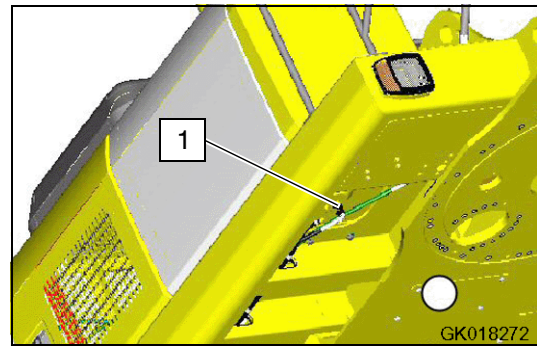
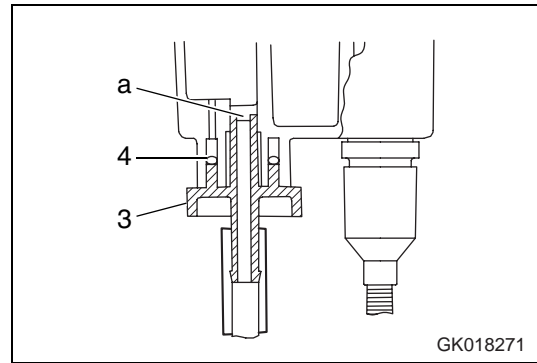
REMARK

If drain valve (3) is stiff, coat O-ring (4) of drain valve (3) with grease.

6. Close valve (5) at the bottom of the fuel tank to shut off the fuel supply.
7. Set a fuel container under drain hose.
8. Loosen drain valve (3), then drain all the sediment together with the fuel from drain hose.
9. Check that nothing comes out from drain hose (4), then remove drain valve (3).
10. Coat O-ring portion (4) with suitable amount of grease. When doing this, be careful not to let the grease get on the drain valve water drain port (a) or the drain valve thread.
11. Screw in drain valve (3) by hand until it contacts the bottom
12. Remove the fuel container.
13. Open valve (5) at the bottom of the fuel tank

If transparent cap (2) is dirty and the contents cannot be easily seen, clean transparent cap (2) when replacing the filter.

When washing, if drain valve (3) is removed, coat the O-ring with grease, then tighten by hand until it contacts bottom



3.23.3 Adjustment of operator's seat (air suspension seat)

A – Fore-and-aft adjustment of seat

Pull lever (1) up. After the seat is set to the desired position, release the lever.

REMARK

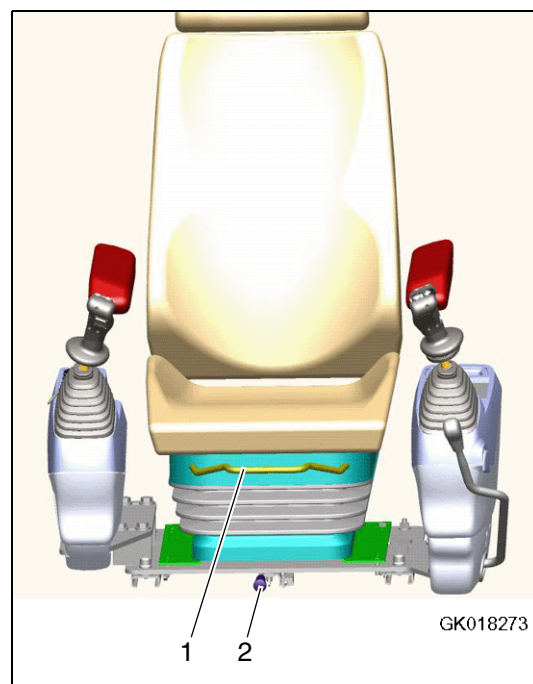
This operation will affect relative position of seat and wrist control levers.

B – Forward/aft adjustment of seat and base

Pull lever (2) sideways. After the seat is set to the desired position release the lever.

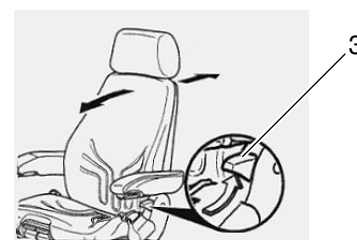
REMARK

This operation will not affect relative position of seat and wrist control levers.



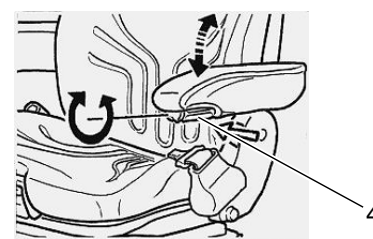
C – Adjustment of reclining seat

The backrest is adjusted using the locking lever (3). Once locking lever (3) is in locked position it should not be possible to move onto another position.



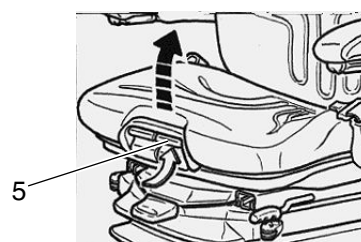
D – Adjustment of arm rest height

The inclination of the armrests can be modified by turning the adjustment knob.



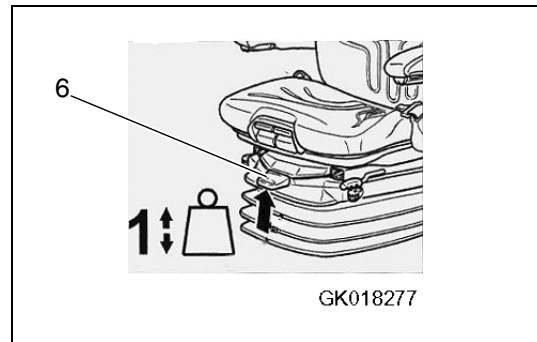
E – Adjustment of tilting seat angle

To adjust the tilt of the seat lift left hand handle (5). By exerting pressure on or off the seat it can be moved to the desired angle position.

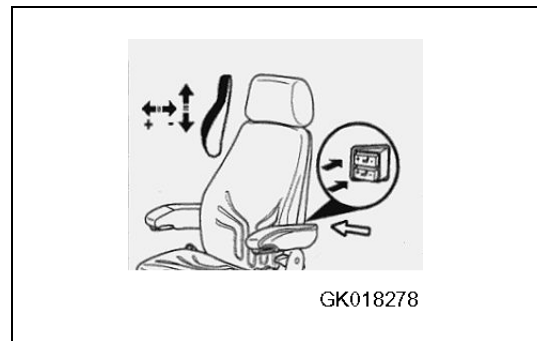


F – Suspension adjustment

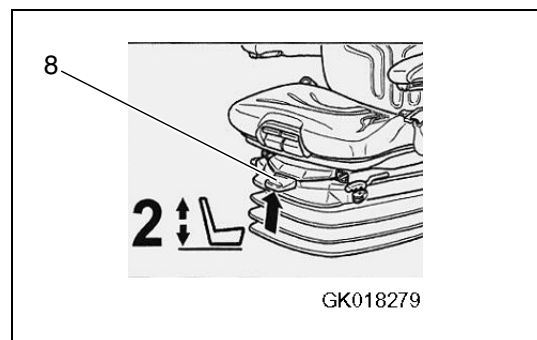
The seat should be adjusted for the drivers weight by briefly pulling the actuator lever of the automatic and height adjuster (6) with the vehicle at a standstill and the driver sitting on the seat, the driver must sit absolutely still during adjustment.

**G – Lumbar adjustment**

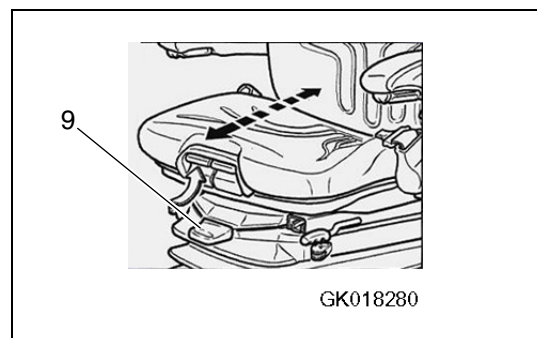
The curve of the backrest cushion can be individually adjusted by pressing the upper and lower switches (7).

**H – Height adjustment**

The height can be altered by pulling or pressing the actuator lever fully out or in (8) if the adjustment reaches the top or bottom end stop, the height is adjusted automatically in order to guarantee a minimum spring level.

**I – Seat depth adjustment**

To adjust the depth of the seat cushion, lift the right hand handle (9). By moving the seat cushion backwards or forwards the desired seating position can be reached.



3.23.4 Rearview mirrors

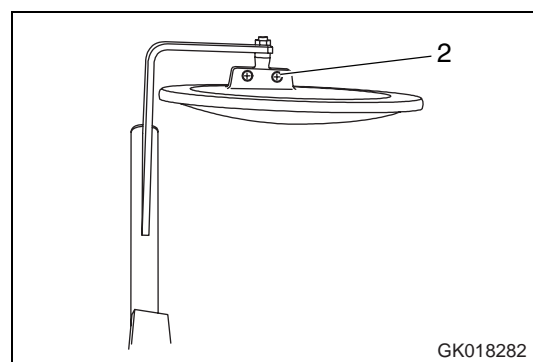
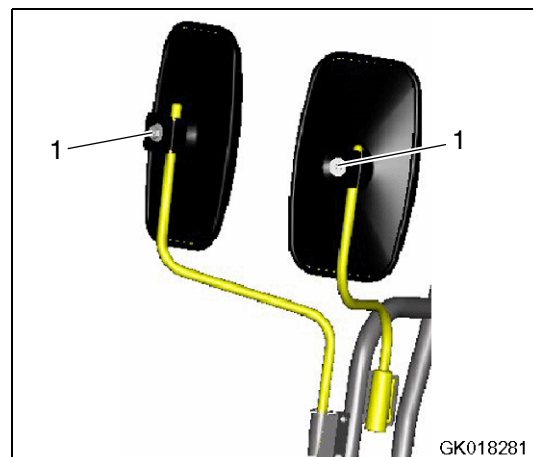
Mirrors A,B, C and D

Loosen bolt (1) on the mirror, then adjust the mirror to a position which gives the best view from the operators seat of the blind spot at the left and right sides at the rear of the machine. The mirror stay can be pulled/pushed into pre-set positions to aid this adjustment.

Mirrors E

Adjust so that is possible to see the ground around the rear machine at a range of 1 m, from the operators seat.

If the movement of the mirror is stiff when adjusting it, loosen screw (2) of the mirror.



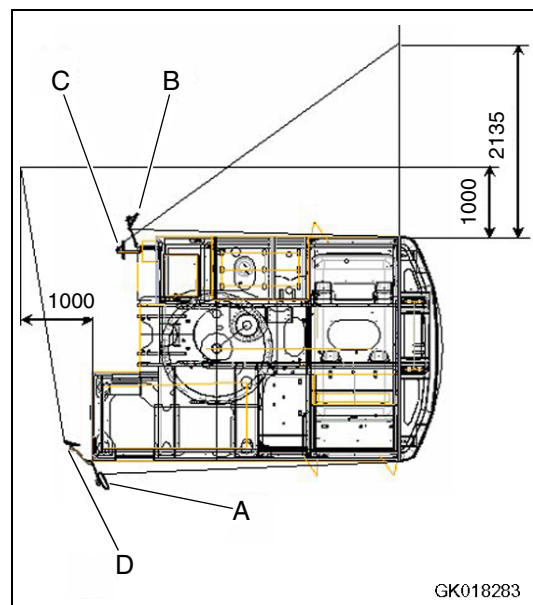
The mirrors should be mounted on the end of the mirror stays.

Mirror A (driving mirror): Adjust the mirror so the left hand edge of the counterweight can just be seen at the RIGHT hand edge of the mirror (see diagram).

Mirror B (driving mirror): Adjust the mirror so the right hand edge of the counterweight can just be seen at the LEFT hand edge of the mirror (see diagram).

Mirror C (additional mirror): Adjust the mirror so a point 2135 mm to the right of the machine, level with the rear of the machine and at a height of 1655 mm above the ground can just be seen at the TOP RIGHT hand edge of the mirror (see diagram).

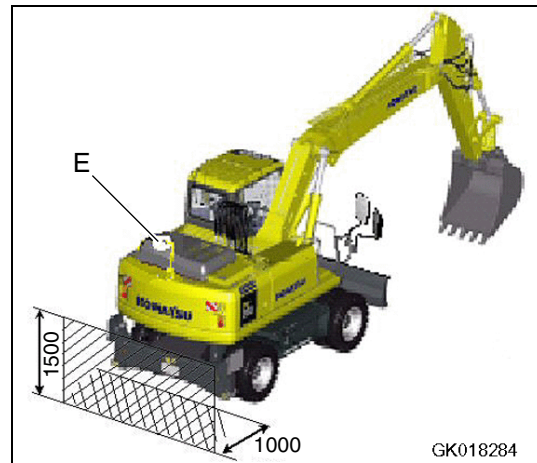
Mirror D (cross view mirror): This mirror is to give clear visibility to the right of the machine, under the boom. Adjust the mirror so a point 1000 mm to the right of the machine, 1000 mm in front of the machine and 1500 mm above the ground can just be seen from the edge of the mirror (see diagram).



Mirror E (counterweight mirror): Adjust the mirror so the area 1000 mm behind the machine and 1500 mm above ground is clearly visible.

NOTE

Any modifications to the machine configuration by the user which may result in a restriction of the machine visibility must be verified according to the relevant visibility standard.



3.23.5 Seat belt

- Before fitting the seat belt, check that there is no abnormality in the belt or its mounting bracket. If it is worn or damaged, replace the seat belt.
- Even if the seat belt appears normal, replace it every 3 years. The date of manufacture of the belt is shown on the back of the belt.
- Always wear the seat belt during operations.
- Fit the seat belt so that it is not twisted.

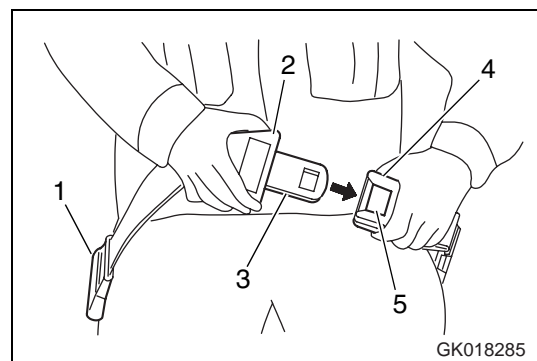
Fastening and removing seat belt

This seat belt has a retractor, so it is not necessary to adjust the length.

Fastening seat belt

Hold grip (2) and pull the belt out from the retractor (1), check that the belt is not twisted, then insert tongue (3) into buckle (4) securely.

Pull the belt lightly to check that it is properly locked.



Removing seat belt

Press button (5) in buckle (4), and remove tongue (3) from the buckle (4).

The belt is automatically spooled, hold grip (2) and return the belt slowly to the retractor (1).

3.23.6 Adjustment of operator's seat (mechanical seat)

A – Fore-and aft adjustment of seat

For details, see "A – Fore-and-aft adjustment of seat (3-105)".

B – Forward/aft adjustment of seat

For details, see "B – Forward/aft adjustment of seat and base (3-105)".

C – Adjusting of reclining seat

For details, see "C – Adjustment of reclining seat (3-105)".

D – Adjustment of arm rest height

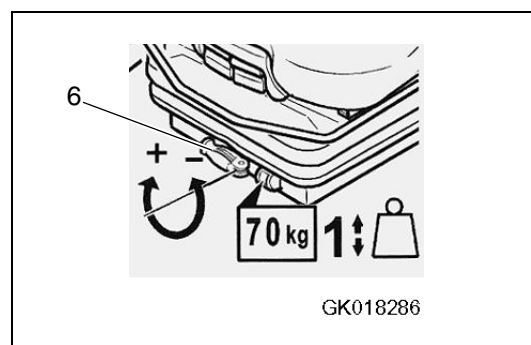
For details, see "D – Adjustment of arm rest height (3-105)".

E – Adjustment of tilting seat angle

For details, see "E – Adjustment of tilting seat angle (3-105)".

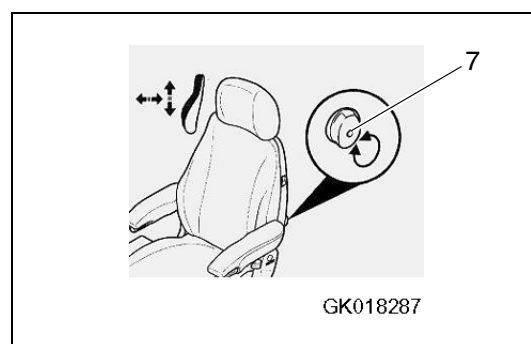
F – Weight adjustment

The seat should be adjusted for the drivers weight by turning the weight adjuster lever (6) with the seat empty. The set weight can be read from the indicator.



G – Lumbar adjustment

By turning the adjustment knob (7) to the left or right, both the height and curvature of the backrest cushion can be individually adjusted.



H – Height adjustment

For details, see "H – Height adjustment (3-106)".

I – Seat depth adjustment

For details, see "I – Seat depth adjustment (3-106)".

Seat belt

For details, see "Seat belt (3-108)".

3.23.7 Operations and checks before starting engine



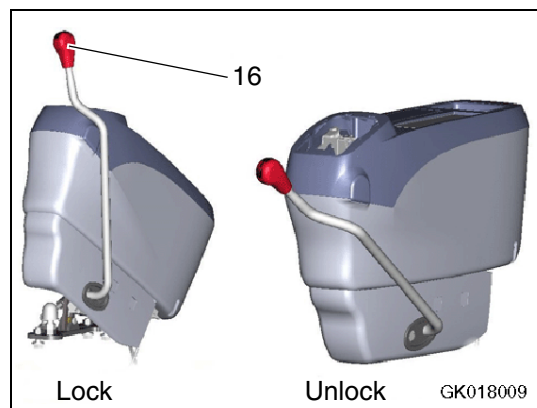
WARNING

- If the control lever is touched by accident, the work equipment or the machine may move suddenly.
- When leaving the operator's compartment, always raise the safety lock lever to the LOCK position.

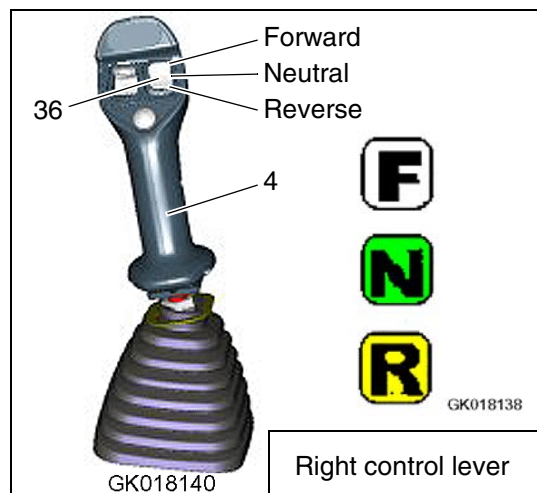
1. Check that safety lock lever (16) is in the LOCK position.

REMARK

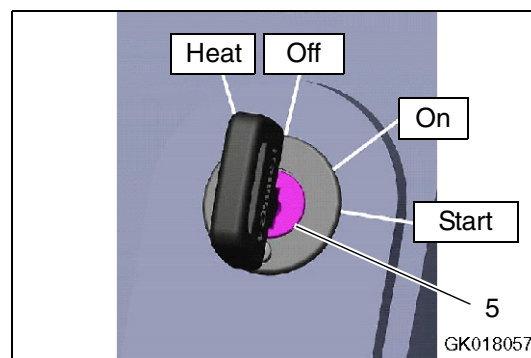
In certain conditions it may be possible for the safety lock lever to contact the left hand arm rest on the operator seat. To avoid this, always ensure that the left hand arm rest is stowed in the fully up position before operating the safety lock lever.



2. Select neutral on the right control lever (4).

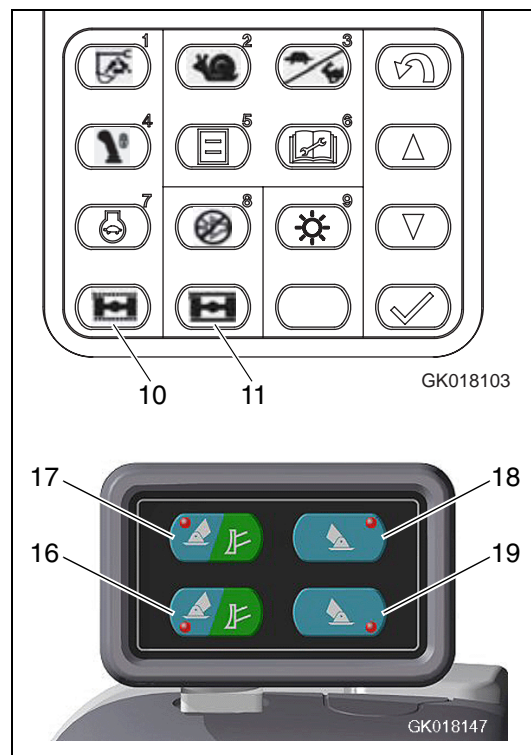


3. Insert the key in starting switch (5), turn the key to the ON position, then carry out the following checks.



The buzzer will sound for approx. 1 sec., and the following switch lights will illuminate approx. 2 sec.

- Control lever lock (4)
- Engine auto decel (7)
- Buzzer cancel (8)
- Suspension auto lock (10)
- Suspension lock (11)
- Front left outrigger/blade (17)
- Rear left outrigger/blade (16)
- Front right outrigger (18)
- Rear right outrigger (19)
- Swing lock (monitor) (A)

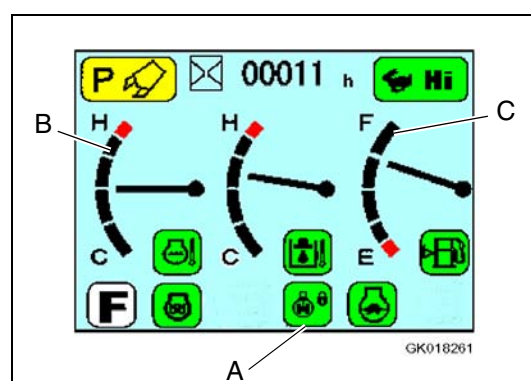


If the monitors or gauges do not light up or the buzzer does not sound, there is probably a broken bulb or disconnection in the monitor wiring, so contact your KOMATSU distributor for repairs.

After approx. 3 sec., the following gauges will remain on and the other monitors will go out.

The buzzer will sound intermittently and the monitor will show the low brake pressure symbol if the machine has been idle for some time.

- Engine water temperature gauge (B)
- Fuel gauge (C)



CAUTION

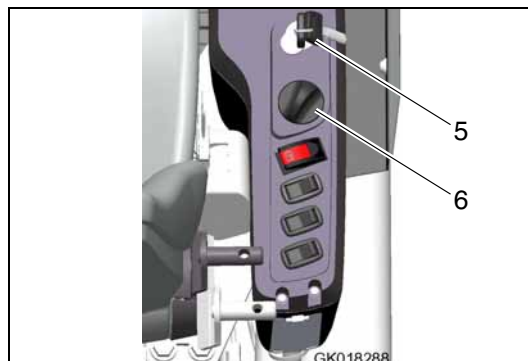
It is illegal to travel on the road in certain countries with rearward facing worklights illuminated.

3.23.8 Starting engine

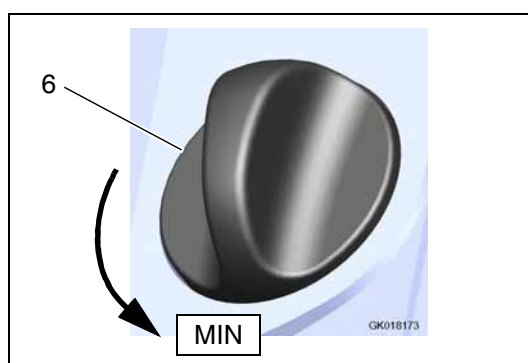


WARNING

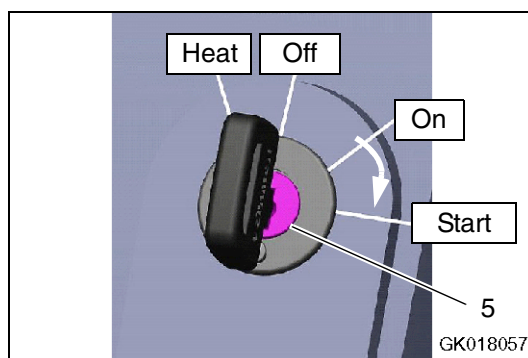
- Check that there are no persons or obstacles in the surrounding area, then sound the horn and start the engine.
- Exhaust gas is toxic, when starting the engine in confined spaces, ensure adequate ventilation at all times.



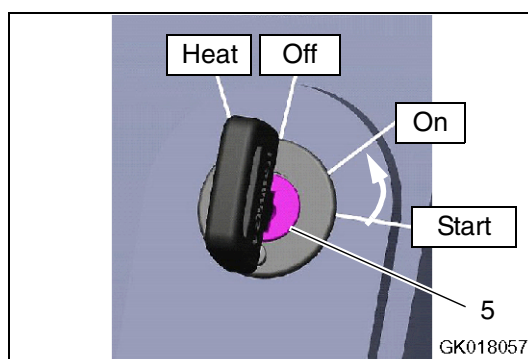
1. Set fuel control dial (6) at the low idling (MIN) position.



2. Turn the key in starting switch (5) to the START position. The engine will start.



3. When the engine starts, release the key in starting switch. The key will return automatically to the ON position.



Starting in cold weather



WARNING

- Check that there are no persons or obstacles in the surrounding area, then sound the horn and start the engine.
- Never use starting aid fluids as they may cause explosions.

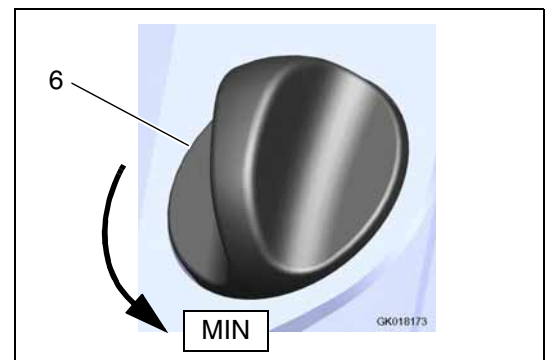
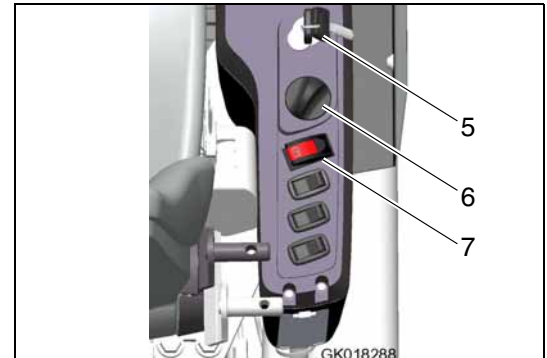
NOTE

Do not keep the starting motor rotating continuously for more than 20 seconds.

If the engine fails to start, repeat steps from 2 after waiting for 2 minutes.

When starting in low temperatures, do as follows.

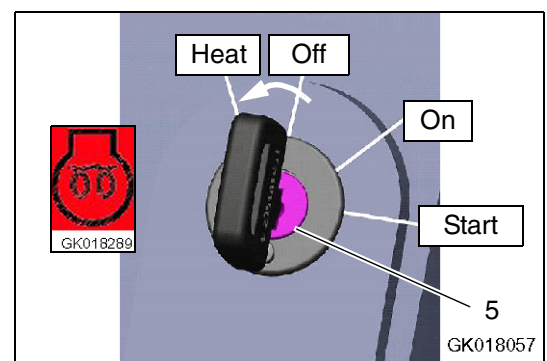
1. Set fuel control dial (6) at the low idling (MIN) position.



2. Hold the key in starting switch (5) at the HEAT position, and check that preheating monitor lights up. After about 30 seconds, preheating monitor will flash for about 10 seconds to indicate that preheating is finished.

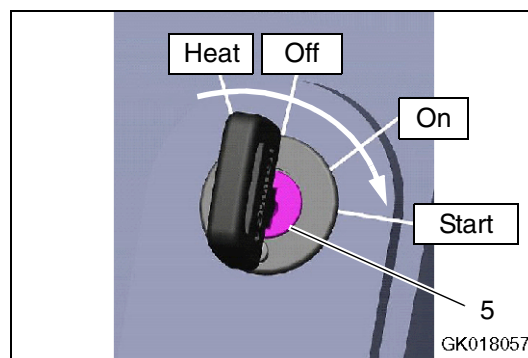
REMARK

The monitor and gauge also light up when the key is at the HEAT position, but this does not indicate any abnormality. If the temperature is low, the monitor screen may become dark or it may take time for the display to appear. This is normal.

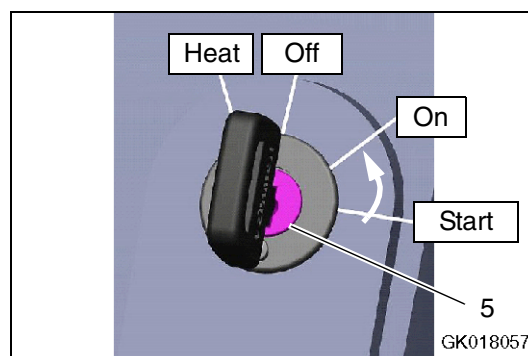


3. When preheating monitor flashes, turn the key in starting switch (5) to the START position to start the engine.

Ambient temperature	Preheating time
Above 0°C	—
0°C to -10°C	20 seconds
-10°C to -20°C	30 seconds



4. When the engine starts, release the key in starting switch (6).
The key will return automatically to the ON position.



Operations and checks after starting engine



WARNING

- Emergency stop
If there has been any abnormal actuation or trouble, turn the starting switch key to the OFF position.
- If the work equipment is operated without warming the machine up sufficiently, the response of the work equipment to the movement of the control lever will be slow, and the work equipment may not move as the operator desires, so always carry out the warming-up operation. Particularly in cold areas, be sure to carry out the warming-up operation fully.

Warming up operation

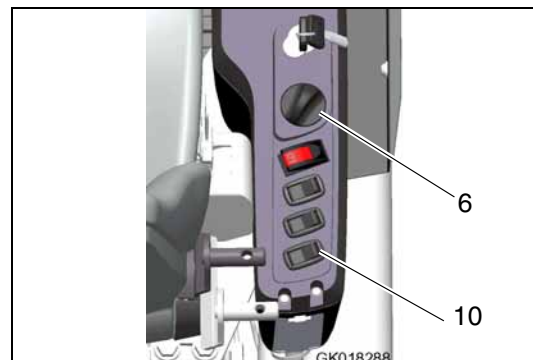
NOTE

- When the hydraulic oil is at a low temperature, do not carry out operations or move the levers suddenly. Always carry out the warming-up operation. This will help to extend the machine life.
Do not suddenly accelerate the engine before the warming-up operation is completed.
- Do not run the engine at low idling or high idling continuously for more than 20 minutes. This will cause leakage of oil from the turbocharger oil supply piping.
If it is necessary to run the engine at idling, apply a load from time to time or run the engine at a mid-range speed.

REMARK

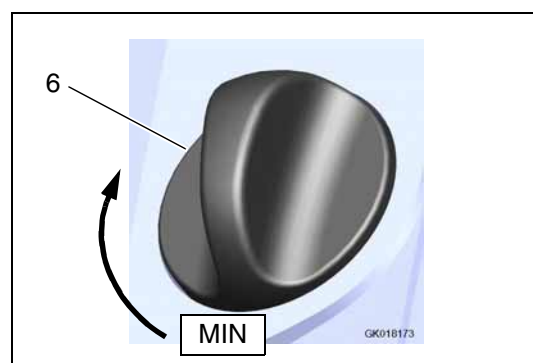
If water temp is above 30°C, to protect the turbocharger, the engine speed does not rise for 2 seconds after starting, even if the fuel control dial is turned.

If the hydraulic oil temperature is low, the hydraulic oil temperature monitor display will be white.

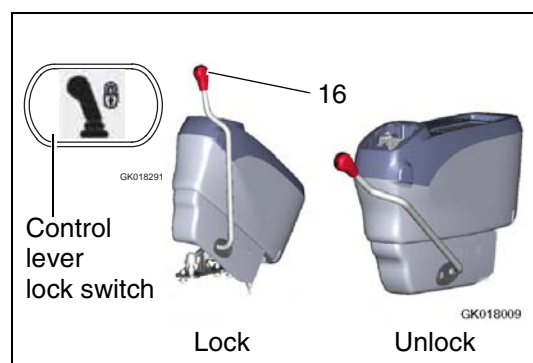


After starting the engine, do not immediately start operations. First, carry out the following operations and checks.

1. Turn fuel control dial (6) to the centre position between LOW IDLING (MIN) and HIGH IDLING (MAX) and run the engine at medium speed for about 5 minutes with no load.

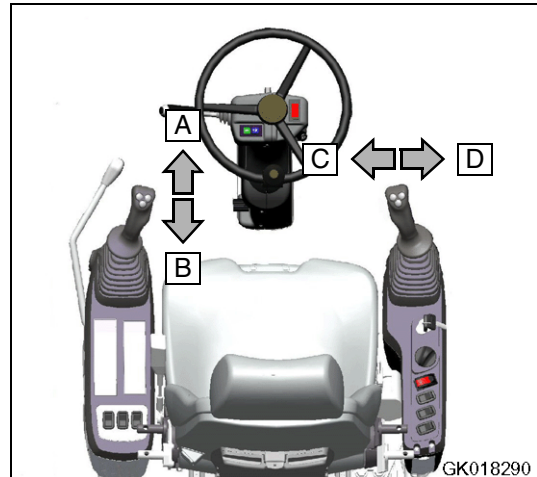


2. Lower the safety lock lever (16) to the UNLOCK position, switch OFF the control lever lock switch and raise the bucket from the ground.



3. Operate bucket control - right control lever, and arm control - left control lever (slowly to move the bucket cylinder and arm cylinder to the end of the stroke.

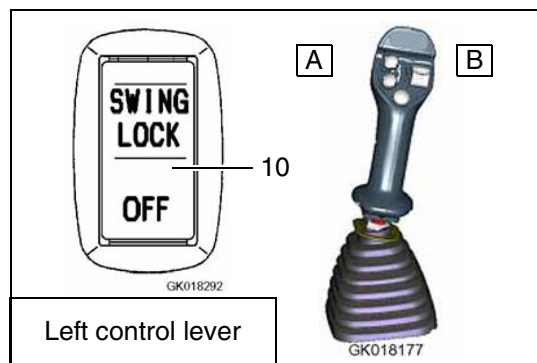
- A. Arm Out
- B. Arm In
- C. Bucket Curl
- D. Bucket Dump



4. Carry out bucket and arm operation for 5 minutes at full stroke, alternating between bucket operation and arm operation at 30 second intervals.
If the swing lock switch (10) is set to the ON (actuated) position and swing control lever is operated at full stroke, oil temperature rise can be increased quicker.

NOTE

When the work equipment is retracted, take care that it does not interfere with the machine body or ground.



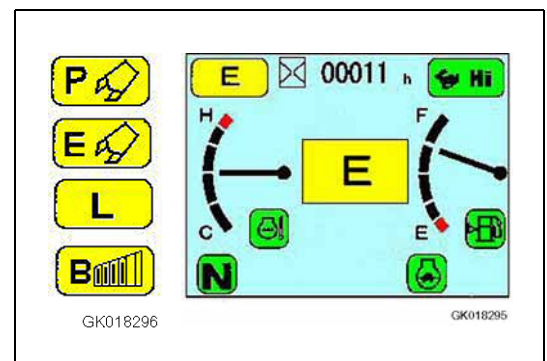
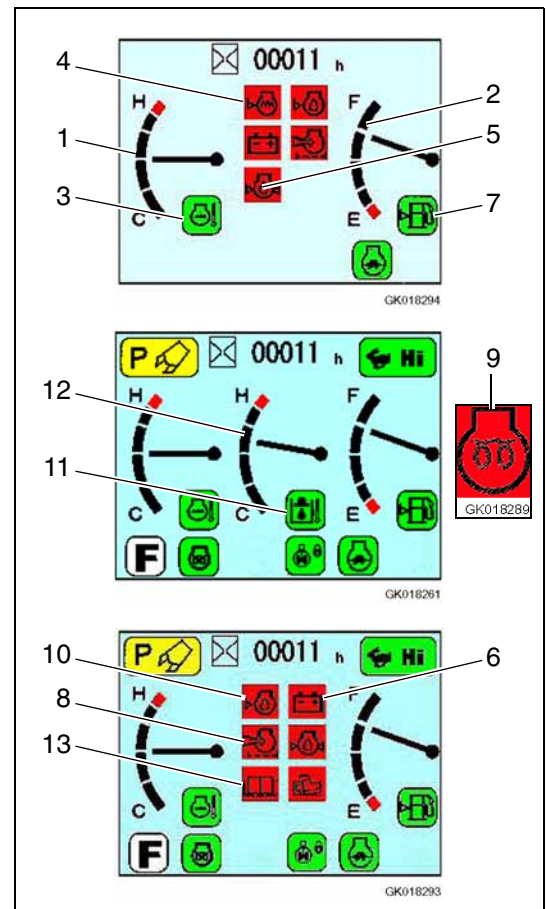
- A. Left swing
- B. Right swing

5. After carrying out the warming-up operation, check that each gauge and monitor lamp is in the following condition.

- Engine water temperature gauge (1): Inside black range
- Fuel gauge (2): Inside green range
- Engine water temperature monitor (3): green
- Radiator water level monitor (4): off
- Engine oil pressure monitor (5): off
- Charge level monitor (6): off
- Fuel level monitor (7): green
- Air cleaner clogging monitor (8): off
- Engine pre-heating lamp (9): off
- Engine oil level monitor (10): off
- Hydraulic oil temperature (11): green
- Hydraulic oil temperature gauge (12): inside black range
- Replacement monitor of engine oil: off (13)

6. Check that there is no abnormal exhaust gas colour, noise, or vibration. If any abnormality is found, repair it.

7. Press power mode select on the monitor panel until the lamp of the mode to be used lights up.



In cold areas (automatic warming-up operation)

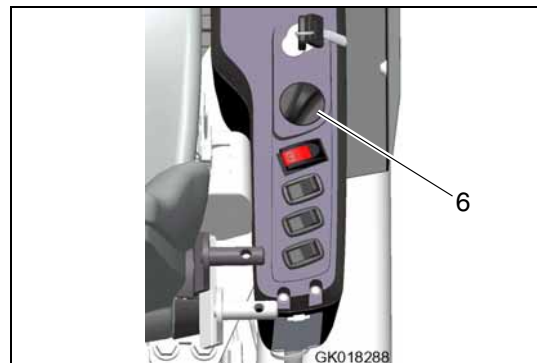
When starting the engine in cold areas, carry out the automatic warming-up operation after starting the engine.

When the engine is started, if the engine water temperature is low (below 30°), the warming-up operation is carried out automatically.

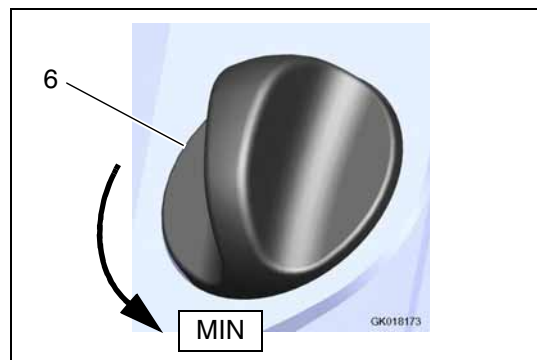
The automatic warming-up operation is cancelled if the engine water temperature reaches the specified temperature (30°C) or if the warming-up operation is continued for 10 minutes. If the engine water temperature or hydraulic oil temperature are low after the automatic warming-up operation, warm the engine up further as follows.

NOTE

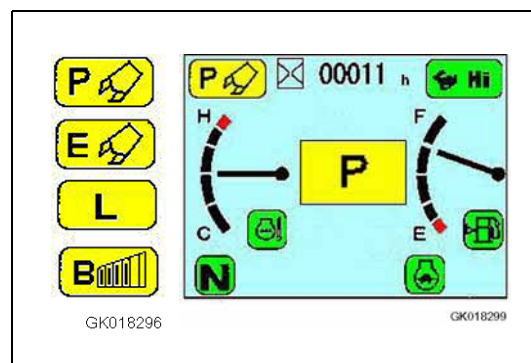
- When the hydraulic oil is at a low temperature do not carry out operations or move the levers suddenly. Work equipment control will be slower and less responsive than normal therefore always carry out the warming up operation first to ensure safe operation of the machine and help extend the machine life.
- Do not suddenly accelerate the engine before the warming-up operation is completed.
Do not run the engine at low idling or high idling continuously for more than 20 minutes. This will cause leakage of oil from the turbocharger oil supply piping. If it is necessary to run the engine at idling, apply a load from time to time or run the engine at a mid-range speed.



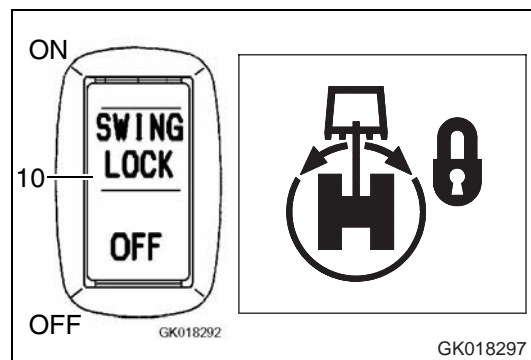
1. Set fuel control dial (6) at the low idling (MIN) position and run the engine for about 5 minutes without load.



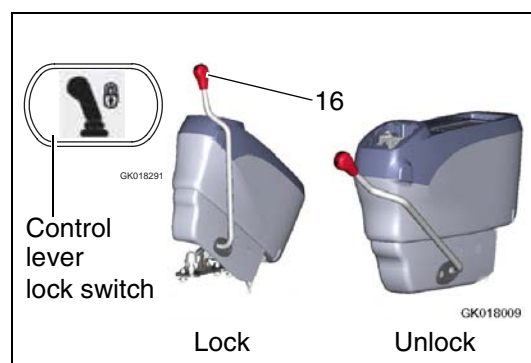
- When the automatic warming-up operation is completed, press working mode switch on the monitor panel until the heavy-duty operation mode lamp lights up.



- Turn fuel control dial (6) to the mid-range speed position and turn swing lock switch (10) ON.



- Lower safety lock lever (16) to the UNLOCK position, put control lever lock switch to OFF position and raise the bucket from the ground.
- Operate boom and bucket control lever and arm control lever slowly to operate the boom cylinder, bucket cylinder, and arm cylinder to the end of their stroke.

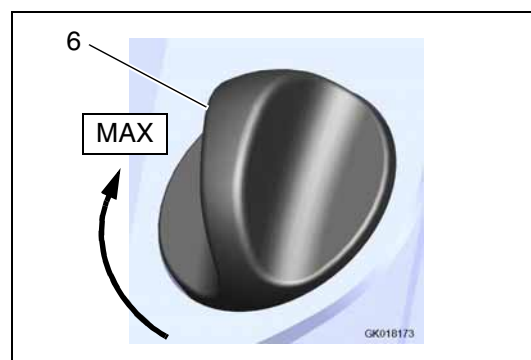


- Operate the boom and arm slowly at the same time, and repeat this for 30 seconds. Next, repeat the same operation with the bucket and swing for 30 seconds. Operate both fully in turn for 5 minutes.

NOTE

When pulling in the work equipment, be careful not to let it hit the chassis or ground.

- Turn fuel control dial to the full speed (MAX) position and carry out the operation in Step 6 for 3 - 5 minutes.



8. Repeat the following operation 3 - 5 times and operate slowly.

- Boom operation RAISE ↔ LOWER
- Arm operation IN ↔ OUT
- Bucket operation CURL ↔ DUMP
- Swing operation LEFT ↔ RIGHT
- Travel (Lo) operation FORWARD ↔ REVERSE

A. Display when temperature is correct:
Monitor background (C) is blue.

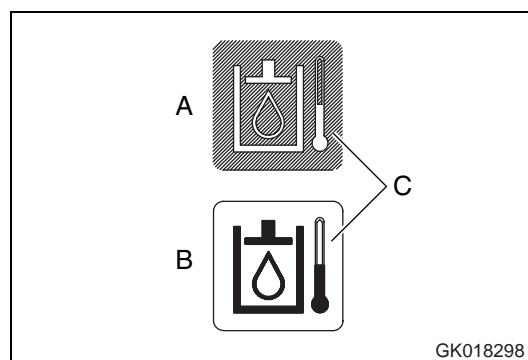
B. Display when temperature is low:
Monitor background (C) is white.

NOTE

When the hydraulic oil is at a low temperature the machine travel function may have very slow operation. Always carry out the warming up operation before travelling to ensure correct function of the travel system and help extend the life of the machine.

REMARK

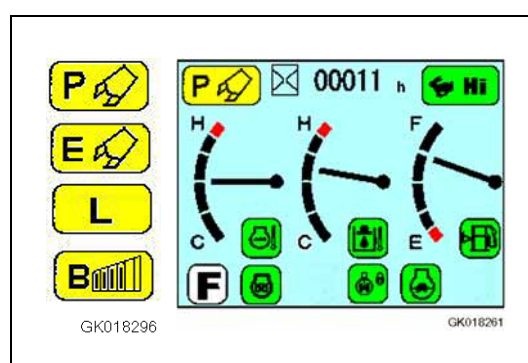
If the above operation is not carried out, there may be a delay in response when starting or stopping each actuator, so continue the operation until it becomes normal.



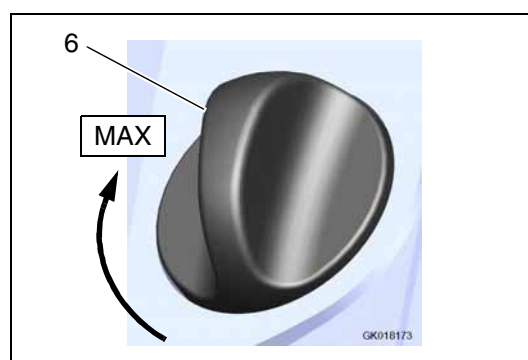
9. Use working mode switch on the monitor panel to switch to the working mode to be used.

NOTE

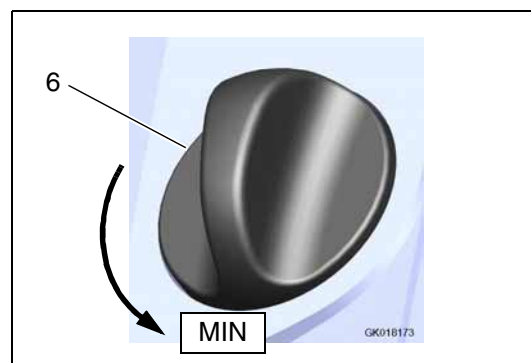
Cancelling automatic warming-up operation
If it becomes necessary in an emergency to lower the engine speed to low idling, cancel the automatic warming-up operation as follows.



1. Turn fuel control dial to the full speed (MAX) position and hold it for 3 seconds.



2. When fuel control dial is returned to the low idling (MIN) position, the engine speed will drop.



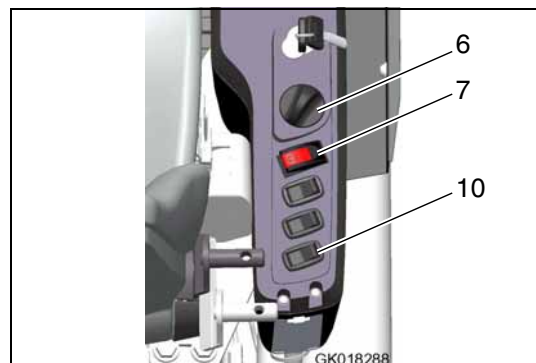
3.23.9 Moving machine off

Moving machine forward

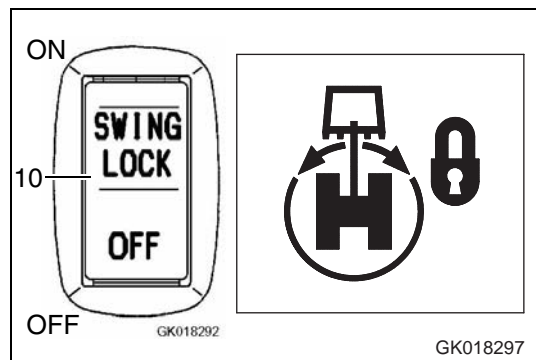


WARNING

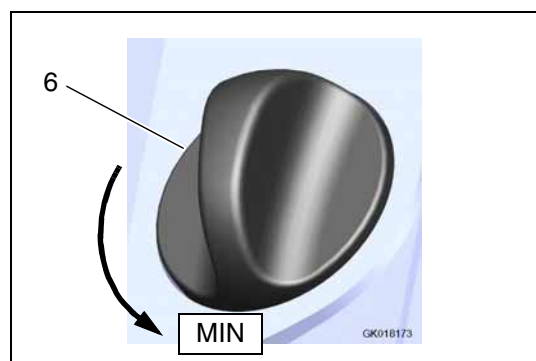
- When moving off, check that the area around the machine is safe, and sound the horn before moving.
- Clear all personnel from the machine and the area.
- Clear all obstacles from the path of the machine.
- If installed, ensure outriggers and dozer blade are up.
- If the lever is moved inside auto decel speed, engine speed will rise suddenly. Operate the levers carefully.
- Note the direction of undercarriage before moving off.
- Check that low brake pressure warning lamp is off
- Check service brake just after moving off.
- Always fasten seat belt



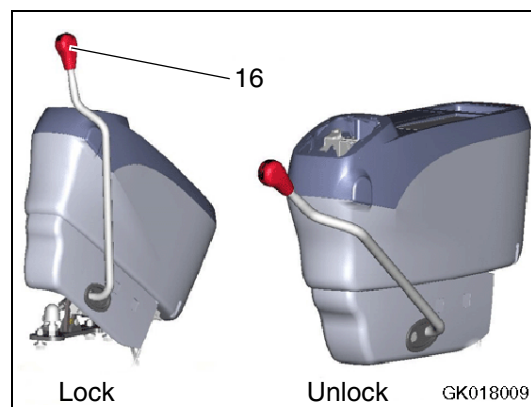
1. Set swing lock switch (10) to the ON (actuated) position and confirm that swing lock monitor lamp lights up.



2. Turn fuel control dial (6) to the min. idling position, engine speed is controlled automatically.



3. Lower the safety lock lever (16) to the UNLOCK position, fold the work equipment, and raise it 40 - 50 cm from the ground.
4. Raise the stabilisers/dozer blade (option).
For details see "Operation of dozer and outriggers (3-132)".



5. Ensure that the wheel brake is off by depressing service brake pedal (19) to release latch mechanism (19a).
6. Release the front axle suspension lock, using automatic suspension lock switch.

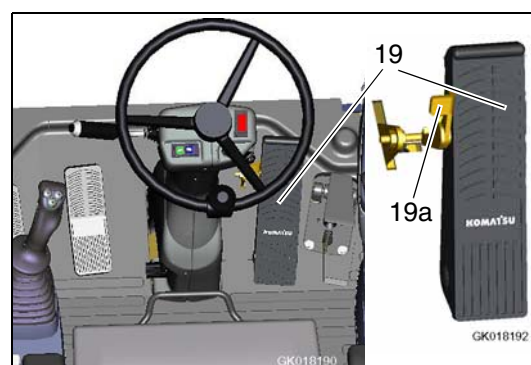
For details, see "Automatic suspension lock switch (3-36)".

7. Select travel speed using switch. According to the ground conditions and type of operation required, as follows:

For details, see "Creep speed selector switch (3-27)".

Creep mode:

See "Creep speed selector switch (3-27)" for fine control speed is restricted to 2.5 km/h.



REMARK

Creep can be engaged from any other mode by pressing the Creep button. Press High/Low speed select switch to disengage Creep.

Creep mode will only engage fully when the machine comes to a stop.

Lo mode:

For travelling on rough surfaces and on steep slopes (up or down), e.g. work sites. Speed is restricted to 9.5 km/h.

REMARK

Lo mode will only engage when machine speed is below 9.5 km/h.

Hi mode is for high speed travel, on smooth surfaces with slopes up to 5 degrees.

Auto mode:

for travelling on roads or job sites with varying terrain.

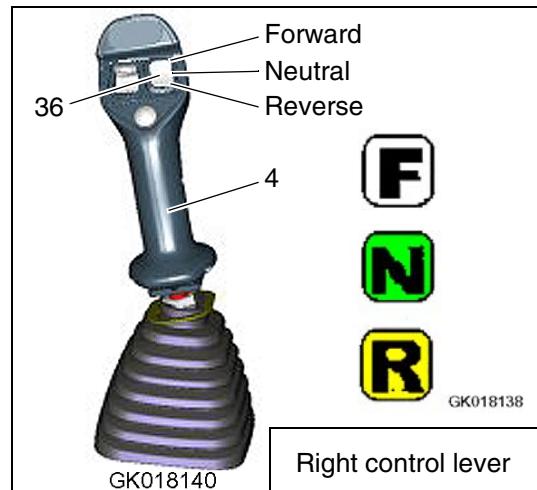


WARNING

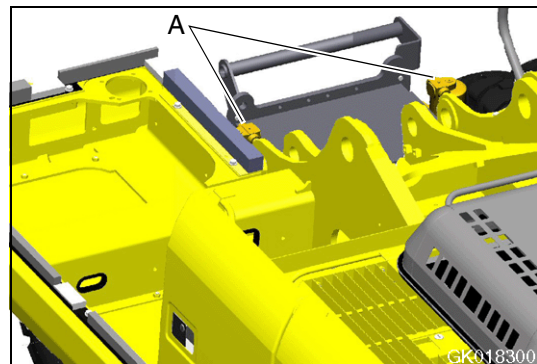
Do not use auto mode on steep downhill slopes - use Lo mode

8. Select travel direction (36) on right control lever (4)

If the undercarriage is not facing the normal forward direction - then the travelling direction will be opposite to that which is selected.



The front (steering) axle has two suspension locking cylinders (A) mounted above the axle. These can be seen clearly from the operators seat, indicating that the undercarriage is facing in the normal forward direction.



9. Release park brake by using switch (7). If on downhill slope hold machine on foot brake to prevent machine rolling.

REMARK

If starting to travel on a steep uphill slope, first press the travel pedal fully, then release the park brake, this will minimise rolling backwards when starting.



10. Press the travel pedal (20) smoothly. The machine will move off in the selected direction.

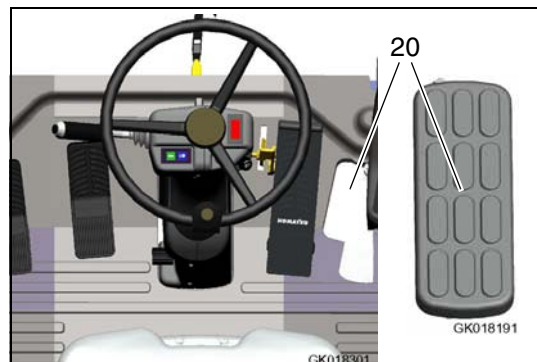
REMARK

Engine speed will automatically increase when travel pedal is depressed.

11. When changing direction from forward to reverse or vice versa, always allow the machine to stop before changing the position of the travel switch on right control lever.

REMARK

When travelling in Auto mode a slight shock may occasionally be heard and/or felt as the automatic transmission clutch operates. This is normal.



3.23.10 Steering



WARNING

- If the upper structure is turned 180 degrees (the undercarriage is reversed) the machine steers in the opposite direction of the steering wheel. Therefore, take care of the direction of the chassis.
- When auto-deceleration is selected, if the wrist control lever or travel pedal is operated at the reduced engine speed, the engine speed will rise suddenly.
- Before moving off turn steering wheel full lock in both directions and check wheels turn fully.
- Do not press travel pedal until the safety lock lever is fully down (UNLOCKED).

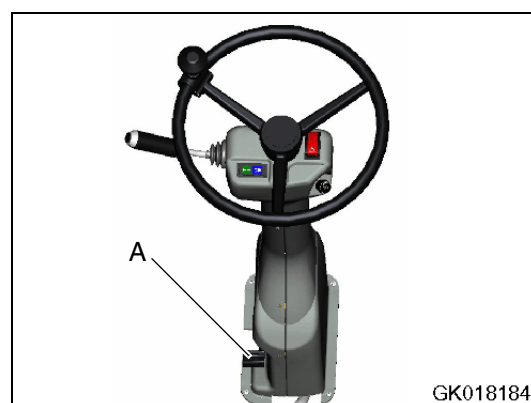
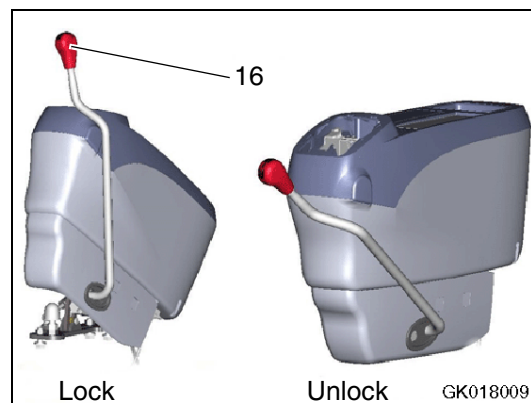
The machine can be steered by turning steering wheel in the desired direction.

The position of the steering column can be adjusted fore and aft by depressing pedal (A), moving column to desired position and releasing pedal (A).



WARNING

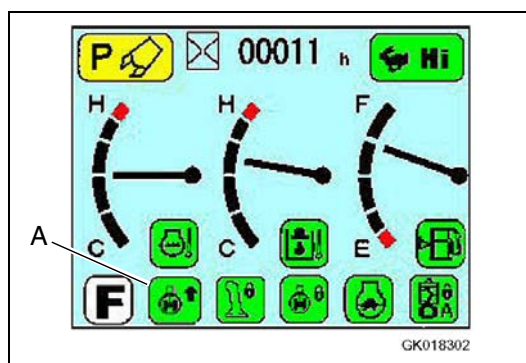
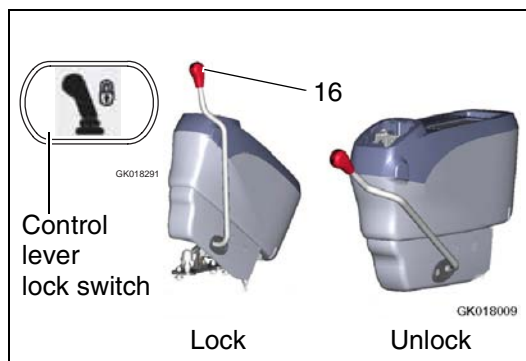
- If it becomes necessary to tow the machine the operator must not operate the travel system when the transmission disengagement pin is rotated. Failure to comply with this notice will result in severe damage to the transmission unit.
- If you are uncertain about how to tow the machine, please contact your local KOMATSU distributor for advice.



3.23.11 Travelling on public highway

WARNING

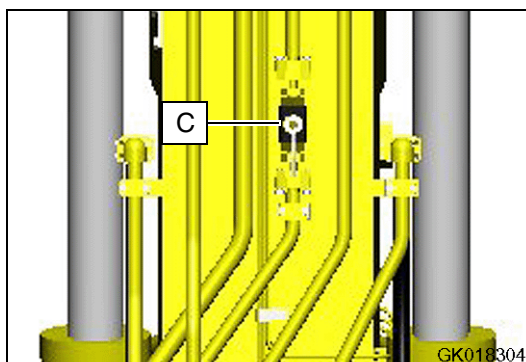
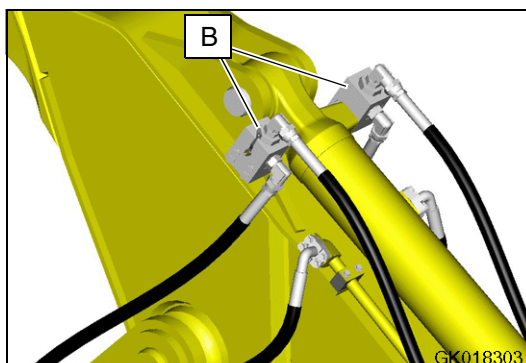
- When driving the machine on a road, raise the outriggers and/or dozer blade and insert the lock pins to prevent them from moving.
- Position Work Equipment to suit local road travel regulations.
- The control lever lock switch (located on the monitor panel) must be engaged when travelling on the Public Highway to prevent accidental use of the work equipment.
- Put the upper structure of the machine into "straight ahead" condition using the indicator on the monitor (A).
- Engage the swing lock using switch (9).
- Switch on warning beacon if applicable to local road travel regulations.
- Lock off (B) Bucket cylinder - both sides and (C) Arm Cylinder - rear of boom, with isolation valves if installed.



1. Before travelling on a Public Highway, with the safety lock lever lowered (in the UNLOCK position) engage the control lever lock switch (located on the monitor panel) to prevent accidental use of the work equipment.
2. Before travelling on a Public Highway fold the work equipment, and raise to 40 - 50 cm from the ground
3. Ensure machine is free of rocks and mud before travelling on a Public Highway.

WARNING

- If it becomes necessary to tow the machine the operator must not operate the travel system when the transmission disengagement pin is rotated. Failure to comply with this notice will result in severe damage to the transmission unit.
- If you are uncertain about how to tow the machine, please contact your local KOMATSU distributor for advice

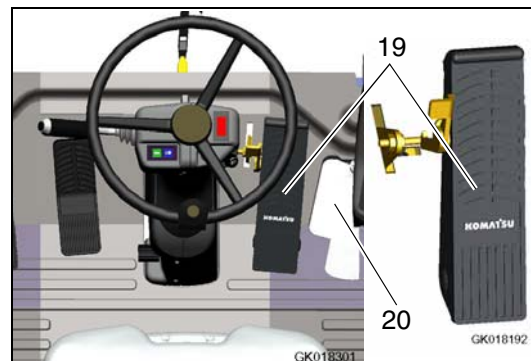


3.23.12 Stopping and parking

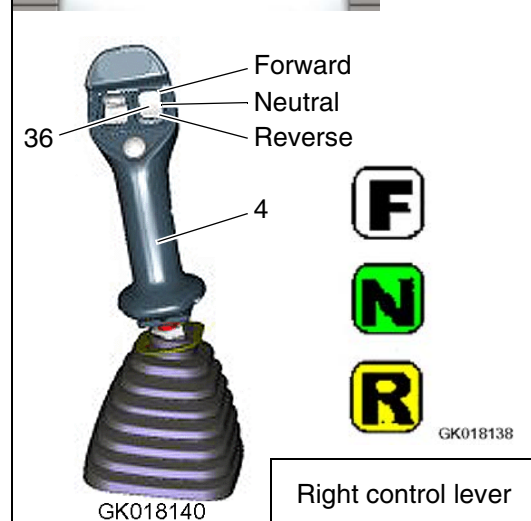
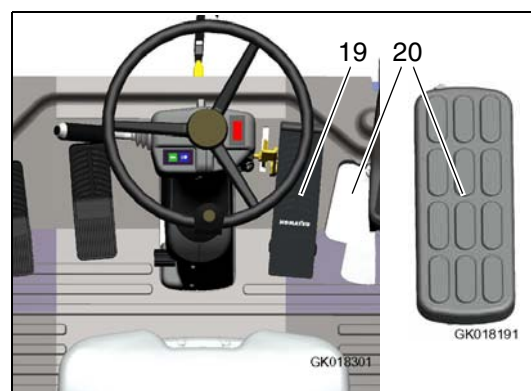


WARNING

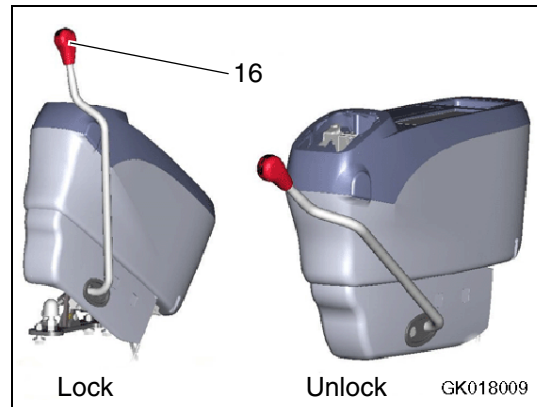
- Avoid stopping suddenly. Give yourself ample room when stopping.
- If the control lever is touched by accident, the work equipment or the machine may move suddenly, and this may lead to a serious accident. Before leaving the operator's compartment, always raise the safety lock lever to LOCK the work equipment controls.
- In certain conditions it may be possible for the safety lock lever to contact the left hand arm rest on the operator seat. To avoid this, always ensure that the left hand arm rest is stowed in the fully up position before operating the safety lock lever.
- When parking the machine, select flat hard ground and avoid dangerous places. If it is unavoidable to park the machine on a slope insert chocks underneath the wheels. As an additional safety measure, thrust the bucket into the ground.
- Before travelling re-apply the swing brake.
- Do not latch the brake pedal when moving.



1. Release the travel pedal (20) and depress the service brake pedal (19) to stop the machine. (The service brakes may be locked by fully de-pressing the service brake pedal until it 'latches').
2. Select neutral on right control lever (4).
3. When parking, lower the work equipment until it touches the ground.



4. Raise the safety lock lever (16) to LOCK the work equipment controls.
5. Apply Park brake (7).



Stopping machine (emergency)

REMARK

The park brake on this machine is a hydraulic-mechanical device which can be used to stop the machine if the service brakes do not work. (In an Emergency only)

NOTE

The park brake internal components may be destroyed during this operation and must be serviced prior to further operation.

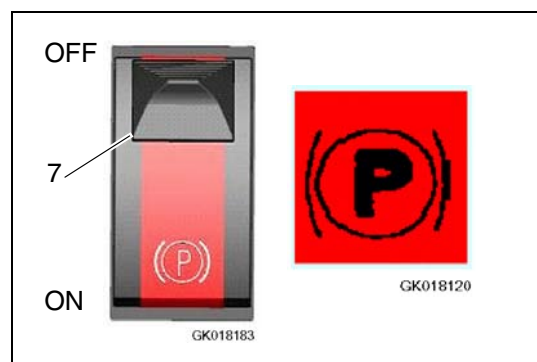
ONLY USE IT IN AN EMERGENCY.

In the event of service brake failure:

1. Release travel pedal.
2. Depress service brake pedal. (to confirm no braking)
3. Brace yourself before engaging emergency brake (A seat-belt is fitted for your safety and comfort. Please wear this at all times)
4. Press park brake switch (7) to "ON" position, machine will very quickly come to a halt.

WARNING

- If it becomes necessary to tow the machine the operator must not operate the travel system when the transmission disengagement pin is rotated. Failure to comply with this notice will result in severe damage to the transmission unit.
- If you are uncertain about how to tow the machine, please contact your local KOMATSU distributor for advice.



3.23.13 Swinging (slewing the upper carriage)

WARNING

Never apply swing brake when machine is swinging as this is a static brake only. (Damage may occur otherwise)

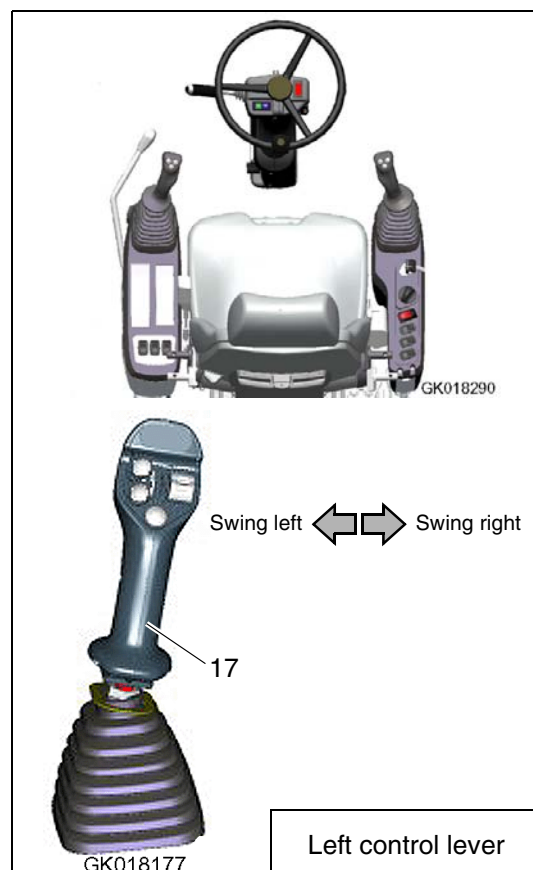
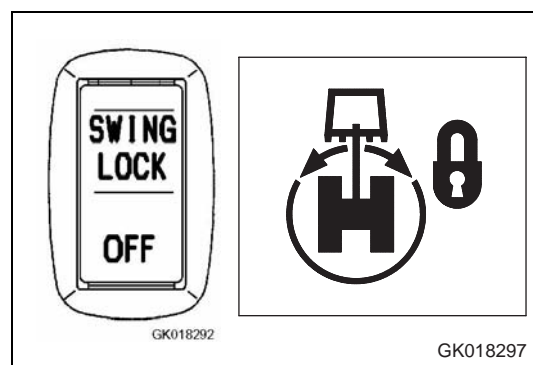
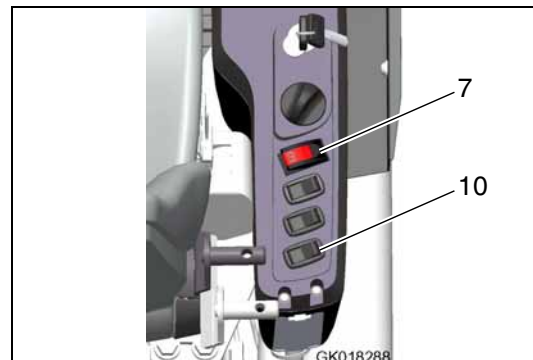
When operating the swing, check that the area around the machine is safe.

1. Before operating the swing, turn swing lock switch (10) OFF (CANCELLED).

NOTE

*Check that swing lock monitor goes out at the same time.
Straight - ahead position can be found by using the indicator.
For details, see "Swing position (3-24)".*

2. Operate left work equipment control lever (17) to swing the upper structure.
3. When not operating the swing, turn swing lock switch (10) ON (ACTUATED)
4. Before travelling re-apply swing lock brake.



3.23.14 Operation of work equipment



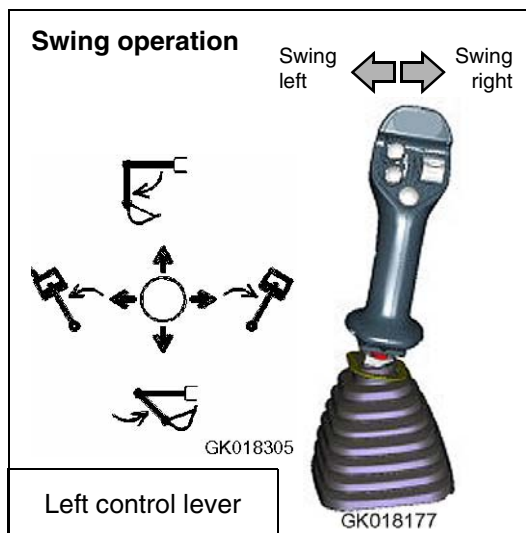
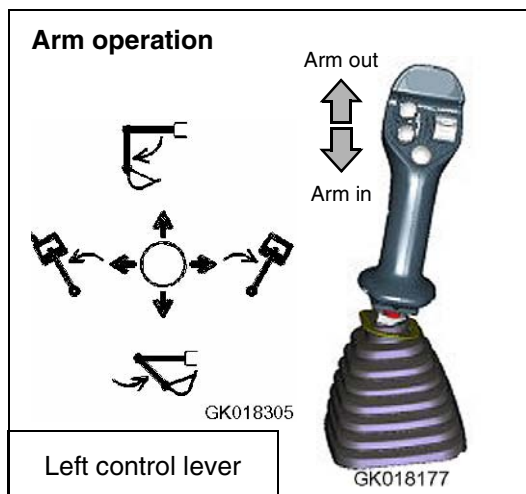
WARNING

If any lever is operated when the engine is at auto deceleration speed, the engine speed will suddenly increase, so be careful when operating the levers.

The work equipment is operated by the left and right work equipment control levers. The left work equipment control lever operates the arm and swing, and the right work equipment control lever operates the boom and bucket.

The movements of the lever and work equipment are as shown in the diagrams on the right. When the levers are released, they automatically return to the neutral position and the work equipment is held in place.

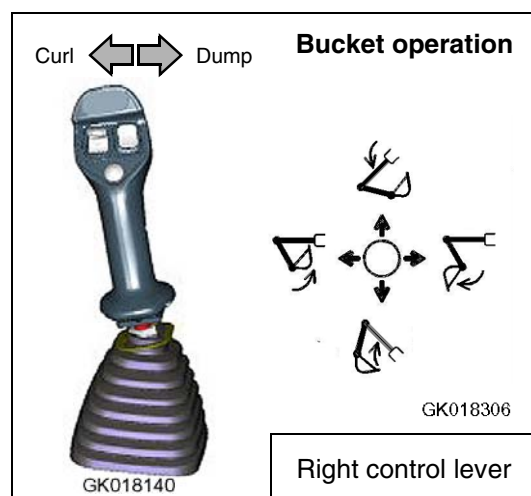
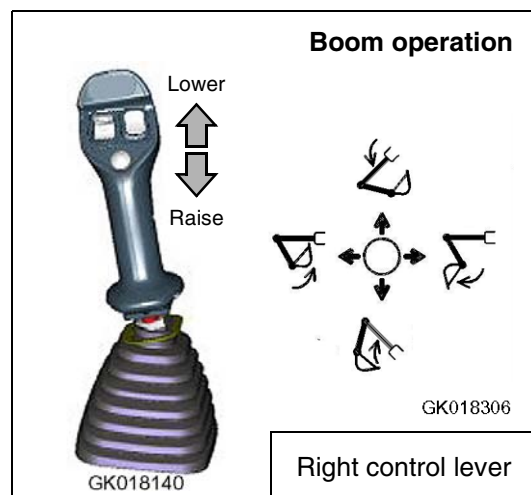
If the work equipment control lever is returned to the neutral position for 4 seconds, even if the fuel control dial is set to FULL, the auto-deceleration mechanism will act to reduce the engine speed to auto-decel speed.



If the levers are operated within 15 seconds after the engine stops, it's possible to lower the work equipment to the ground. In addition, the levers can also be operated to release any remaining pressure inside the hydraulic cylinder circuit and to lower the boom after loading the machine on a trailer.

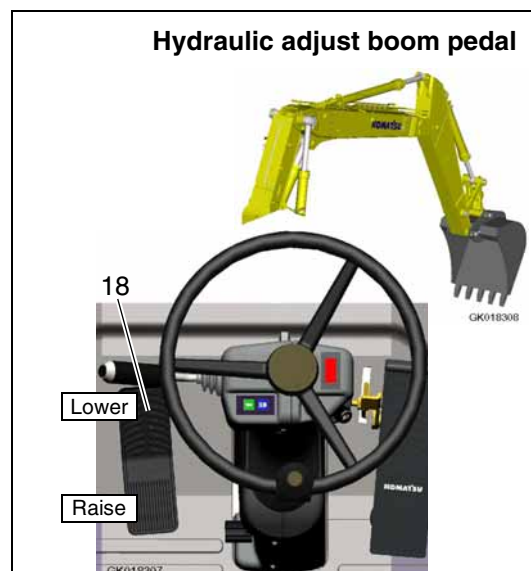
NOTE

This is only possible if the key is returned to the "ON" position after the engine is stopped.



Hydraulic adjust boom operation:

Depress front of pedal (29) to extend the boom and the rear of the pedal to retract the boom.

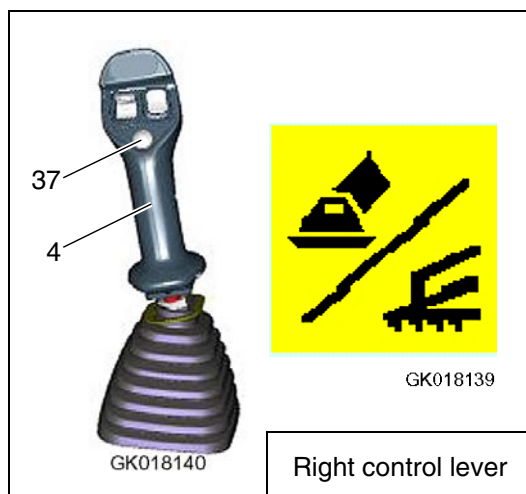


Operation of dozer and outriggers

REMARK

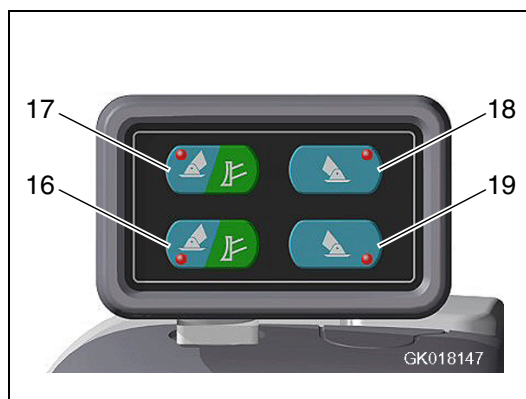
Ensure safety lock lever is lowered (UNLOCKED).

1. Press switch (37) on right control lever to change from boom operation to dozer/outrigger operation (attachment). The monitor will now display symbol (12) indicating the dozer/outrigger option has been selected



2. Using monitor panel switches (16~19) select the desired combination of dozer/outriggers required. A light will illuminate next to the switch to confirm selection

- 16. Rear Left Outrigger/Blade
- 17. Front Left Outrigger/Blade
- 18. Front Right Outrigger
- 19. Rear Right Outrigger



3. Right control lever (4) will now operate the dozer/outriggers.
 - Lever forward – Attachment down
 - Lever back – Attachment up
4. To return right control lever to boom operation activate switch (37). Symbol (12) will now disappear from the monitor panel display



WARNING

When moving the machine, confirm that the chassis attachment is raised.

Precautions for using the dozer

1. When using the dozer blade as stabiliser:
Use the dozer blade in the same way as an outrigger. However, use it only on level ground so that uneven loads will not be applied to the blade.
2. When using the dozer blade with the upper structure facing the rear of the undercarriage, the steering wheel acts in the opposite direction to normal travel.
3. Ensure that suspension lock system is fully free when required for dozing operations. See "Automatic suspension lock switch (3-36)".

REMARK

Dozer blade is to be used only for stabilizing and light dozing.

3.23.15 Working mode selection

Working mode

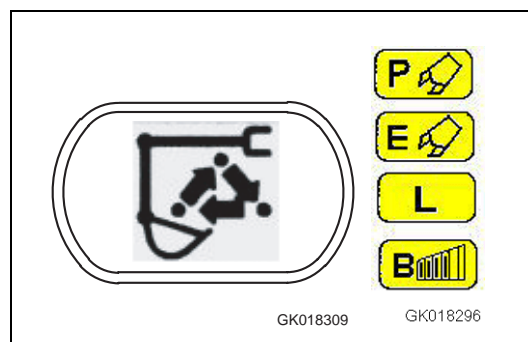
By using the working mode selector switch ("Working mode selector switch (basic switch) (3-26)") to select a working mode that matches the operating condition, it is possible to carry out operations efficiently.

Use the following procedures to make the most effective use of each mode.

When the starting switch is turned ON, the working mode is set to A mode (digging).

Use the working mode switch on the monitor panel to set the most efficient mode to match the type of work.

Working mode	Applicable operations
P mode	Normal digging, loading operations (Operations with emphasis on productivity)
E mode	Normal digging, loading operations (with emphasis on efficiency)
L mode	Lifting operations
B mode	Breaker operations



NOTE

If breaker operations are carried out in the heavy digging mode, the hydraulic equipment may be damaged. Operate the breaker only in B mode.

One touch power max switch

The one-touch power max switch (40) can be used during operations to increase the power. Make effective use of this function whenever necessary in combination with the working mode.

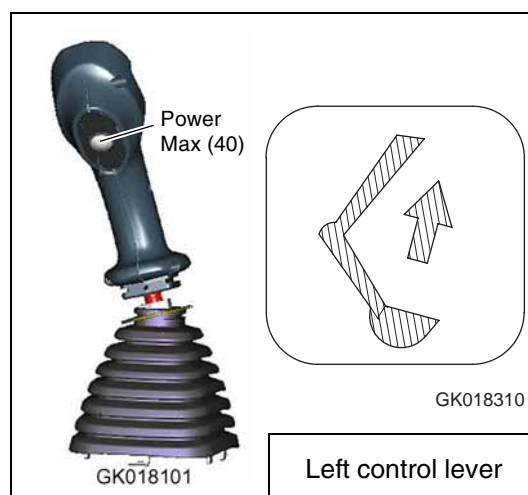
1. Press switch on the front of the left hand lever. The power is increased for up to 8.5 seconds. The increased power is automatically cancelled after 8.5 seconds. After which the button can be re-pressed.

This function is not actuated when the working mode is set to L mode or B mode.



CAUTION

Continuous use of this facility will raise the hydraulic oil temperature above normal.



3.23.16 Prohibitions for operation



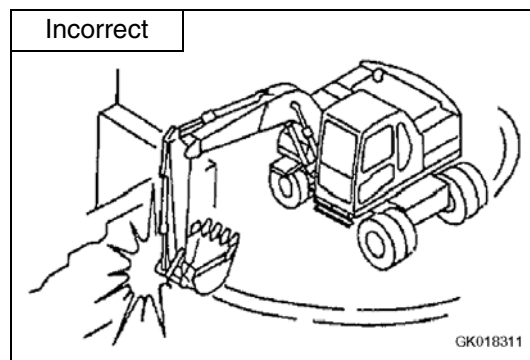
WARNING

- If it is necessary to operate the work equipment control lever when the machine is traveling, stop the machine before operating the work equipment control lever.
- If any lever is operated when the auto deceleration is being actuated, the engine speed will suddenly increase, so be careful when operating.

Prohibited operations using swing force

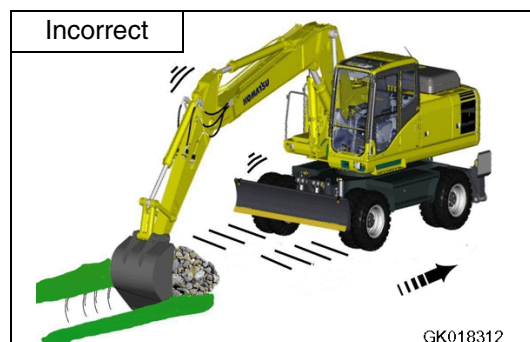
Do not use the swing force to compact soil or break earth mounds or walls.

When swinging, do not dig the bucket teeth into the soil. These operations will damage the work equipment.



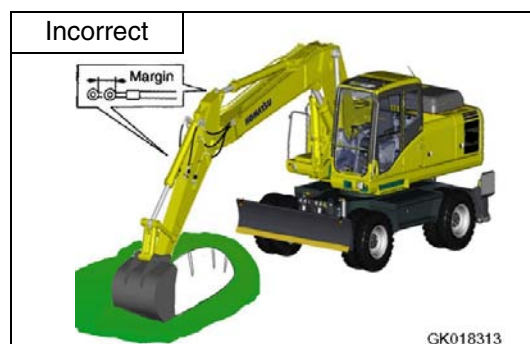
Prohibited operations using travel force

Do not leave the bucket dug into the ground and use the travel force to excavate. This will bring excessive force to bear on the structure of the machine.



Precautions when operating hydraulic cylinders to end of stroke

If the cylinder is operated to the end of its stroke during operations, force will be brought to bear on the stopper inside the cylinder, and this will reduce the life of the machine. To prevent this, always leave a small safety margin when operating the cylinders.



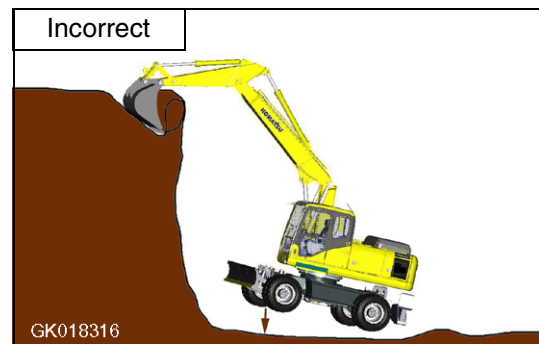
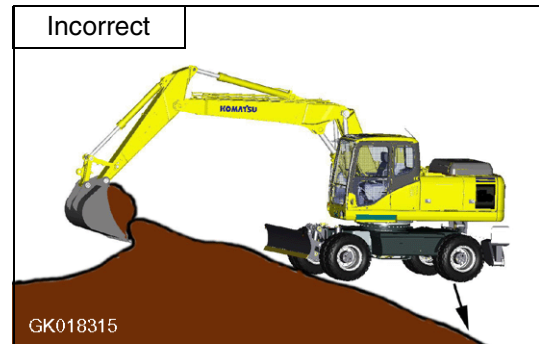
Prohibited operations using dropping force of bucket

Do not use the dropping force of the bucket as a pickaxe, breaker, or pile driver. This will bring excessive force to bear on the structure of the machine, and will not only damage the machine, but is also dangerous.



Prohibited operations using dropping force of machine

Do not use the dropping force of the machine for digging.

**Digging rocky ground**

It is better to excavate hard rocky ground after breaking it up by some other means. This will not only reduce damage to the machine but make for better economy.

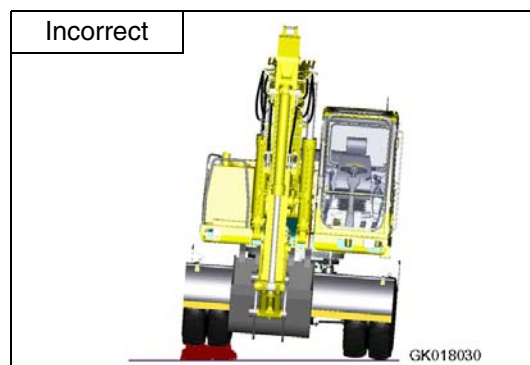
3.23.17 Precautions for operation

Precautions when travelling

When travelling over obstacles such as boulders or tree stumps, ensure sufficient clearance to avoid undercarriage damage. As far as possible, remove such obstacles or avoid travelling over them.

Do not operate machine (working or travelling) on 1 tyre (if twin tyres are fitted) after a puncture as this puts excessive load onto the one remaining tyre.

To prevent loss of control refrain from travelling fast over rough ground.



Precautions at HI-speed travel

On uneven roadbeds such as rock beds or uneven roads with large rocks, travel in Lo speed mode and adjust the speed of the machine to prevent loss of control.



Permissible water depth

Do not immerse the machine in water by more than the permissible depth (axle centre).

In addition, for parts that have been immersed in water for a long time, pump in grease until the old grease comes out from the bearings. (i.e. The bucket pins).

When lifting a load

Front axle of machine must be locked as machine will become unstable.



REMARK

Precautions when using the work equipment.

Do not use the park brake to reduce movement of the machine when using work equipment. This will result in premature failure of the park brake.

3.23.18 Recommendations for travelling

Ride vibration levels depend upon applications.

- Terrain conditions: bumps and potholes.
- Operating techniques: speed, steering, braking.

The operator determines the ride vibration levels.

- The operator chooses the speed and path of the machine.
- Maintenance of the smoothness of terrain conditions.

The result is a wide range of vibration levels which could be minimised with the following recommendations:

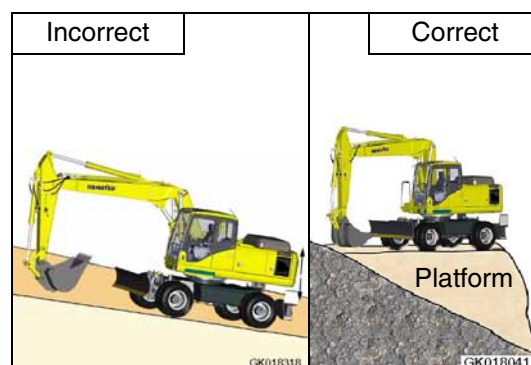
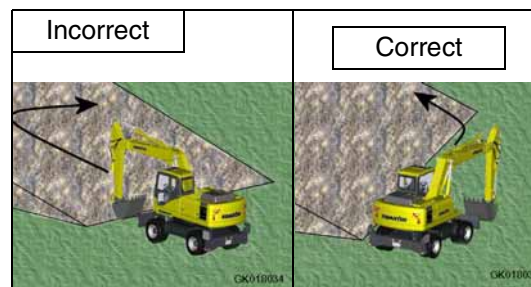
1. Select the right machine, equipment and attachments for the application.
2. Check that the machine is properly maintained (tire pressure, brakes, steering, linkages, etc.)
3. Steer, brake accelerate, shift gears, move the attachments and load the attachments smoothly.
4. Keep the terrain on work sites where the machine is working and travelling in good condition.
 - Remove any large rocks or obstacles.
 - Fill any ditches and holes.
 - Maintain the terrain conditions.
5. Use a seat that meets ISO 7096 and keep the seat maintained and adjusted.
 - Adjust the seat and suspension for the weight and size of the operator.
 - Repair the suspension and adjustment mechanisms if they wear.
6. Adjust the machine speed and travel path to minimise the vibration level
 - Slow down when travelling over rough terrain.
 - Drive around obstacles and excessively rough terrain.
7. Travel over longer distances (e.g. on public roads) at adjusted (medium) speed.
8. Disable the service brake lock (if installed). If the service brake pedal is the alternative type, see "Brake pedal (3-59)" disable the lock.

3.23.19 Precautions when travelling up or down hills

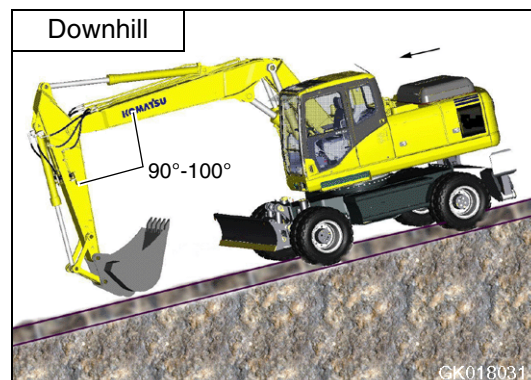


WARNING

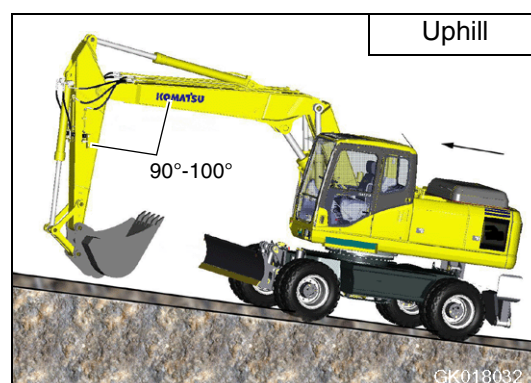
- When travelling, raise the bucket approx. 20 - 30 cm from the ground.
- *Do not travel downhill with the upper carriage travelling in the reverse direction.*
- When traveling over ridges or other obstacles, keep the work equipment close to the ground and travel slowly.
- It is dangerous to turn on slopes or to travel across slopes. Always go down to a flat place to perform these operations. It may be longer, but it will ensure safety.
- If the machine starts to slide or loses stability, lower the bucket immediately to the ground and brake the machine.
- Turning or operating the work equipment when working on slopes may cause the machine to lose its balance and turn over, so avoid such operations. It is particularly dangerous to swing downhill when the bucket is loaded. If such operations have to be carried out, pile soil to make platform on the slope so that the machine can be kept horizontal when operating.
- Do not travel on slopes of over 20° as there is danger that the machine may overturn. (Before travelling down steep slopes stop machine and engage low gear.)



1. When travelling down hills of more than 5° first stop, and select Low travel mode. Release the service brake and proceed (full hydraulic braking will then be available).
2. When travelling down slopes of more than 15°, set the work equipment in the posture shown in the figure on the right, and lower the engine speed.



3. When travelling up a steep hill of more than 15°, set the work equipment in the posture shown in the diagram on the right.



Precautions on slopes

If the engine stops when the machine is on a slope, never use the left work equipment control lever to carry out swing operations. The upper structure will swing under its own weight.

Do not open or close the door on the cab if the machine is on a slope. This may cause a sudden change in the door opening/closing force. Always keep the door locked.



WARNING

- If it becomes necessary to tow the machine the operator must not operate the travel system when the transmission disengagement pin is rotated. Failure to comply with this notice will result in severe damage to the transmission unit.
- If you are uncertain about how to tow the machine, please contact your local KOMATSU distributor for advice.

3.23.20 How to escape from mud

Always operate carefully to avoid getting stuck in mud. If the machine does get stuck in mud, use the following procedures to get the machine out.

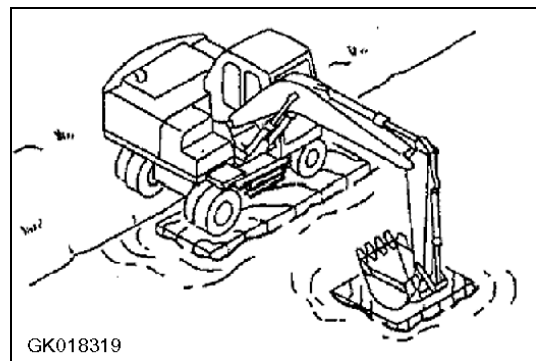
When one side is stuck

When only one side is stuck in mud, use the bucket to raise the wheels then lay boards or logs and drive the machine out. If necessary, put a board under the bucket also.

NOTE

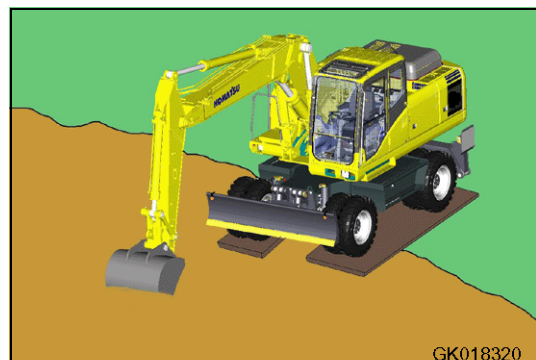
When using the boom or arm to raise the machine, always have the bottom of the bucket in contact with the ground. (Never push with the teeth). The angle between the boom and arm should be 90° to 110°.

The same applies when using the inverting bucket.



When both sides are stuck

When all wheels are stuck in mud and the machine will not move, lay boards as explained above, and dig the bucket into the ground in front. Then pull in the arm as in normal digging operations and drive machine in required direction to free it from the mud.



3.23.21 Work possible using hydraulic excavator

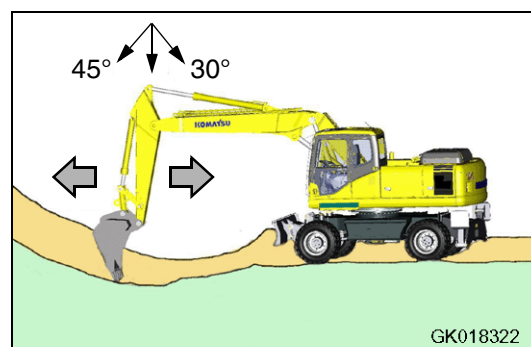
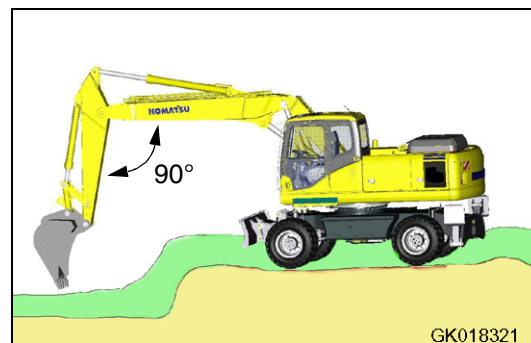
In addition to the following, it is possible to further increase the range of applications by using various attachments.

Backhoe work

When condition of the machine is as shown in the diagram at right, each cylinders maximum pushing excavation force is obtained when the bucket cylinder and link, arm cylinder and arm are at 90° .

When excavating, use this angle effectively to optimize your work efficiency.

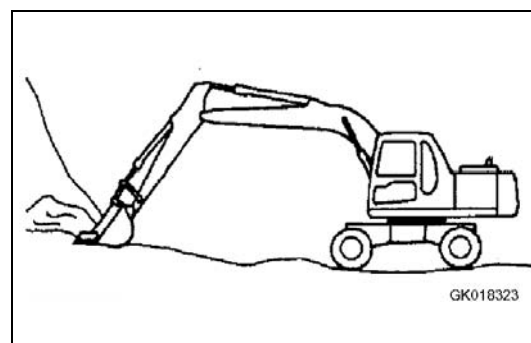
The range for excavating with the arm is from a 45° angle away from the machine to a 30° toward the machine.



There may be some differences depending on the excavation depth, but try to use within the above range rather than going all the way to the extreme end of the cylinder stroke.

Shovel work

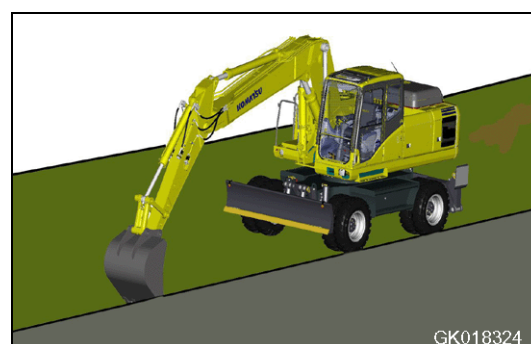
A shovel is suitable for excavating at a position higher than the machine. Shovel work is performed by attaching the bucket in the reverse direction.



Ditching work

Ditching work can be performed efficiently by attaching a bucket to match the width of the ditch and then setting the wheels parallel to the line of the ditch to be excavated.

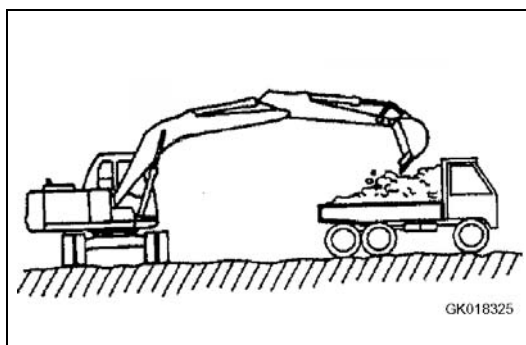
To excavate a wide ditch, first dig out both sides and then finally remove the center portion.



Loading work

In places where the swing angle is small, work efficiency can be enhanced by locating the dump truck in a place easily visible to the operator.

Loading is easier and capacity greater if you begin from the front of the dump truck body than if loading is done from the side.



Levelling work

Can be carried out with work equipment or dozer blade (option).

3.23.22 Replacement and inversion of bucket



WARNING

- When knocking the pin in with a hammer, metal particles may fly and cause serious injury, particularly if they get into your eyes. When carrying out this operation, always wear goggles, helmet, gloves, and other protective equipment.
- When the bucket is removed, place it in a stable condition.

Stop the machine on a firm, flat surface. When performing joint work, make clear signals to each other and work carefully for safety's sake.

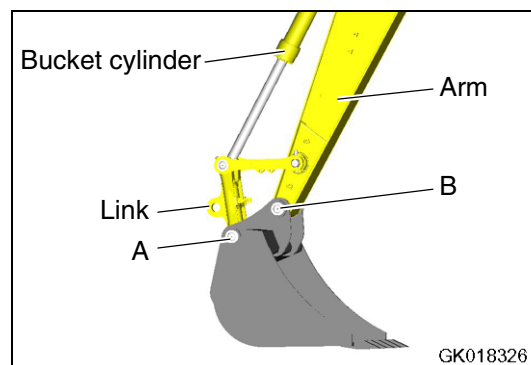
Replacement

1. Place the bucket in contact with a flat surface.

REMARK

When removing the pins, place the bucket so that it is in light contact with the ground.

If the bucket is lowered strongly to the ground, the resistance will be increased and it will be difficult to remove the pins.

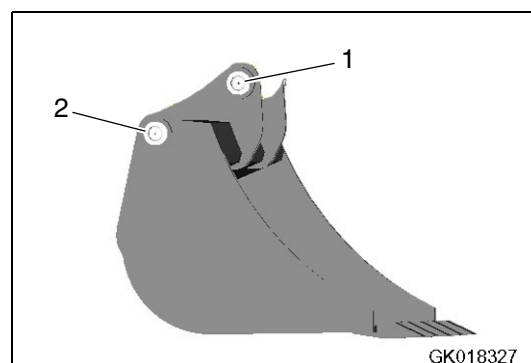


2. Remove the stopper bolts and nuts, then remove pins (A) and (B) and remove the bucket.

NOTE

After removing the pins, make sure that they do not become contaminated with sand or mud and that the seals of bushing on both sides do not become damaged.

3. Align the arm with holes (1) and the link with holes (2), then install pins (A) and (B).



Inversion

1. Place the bucket in contact with a flat surface.

REMARK

When removing the pins, place the bucket so that it is in light contact with the ground.

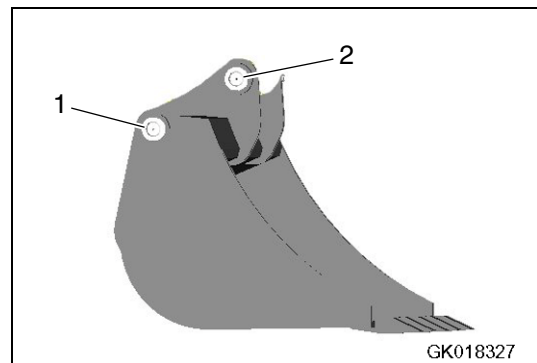
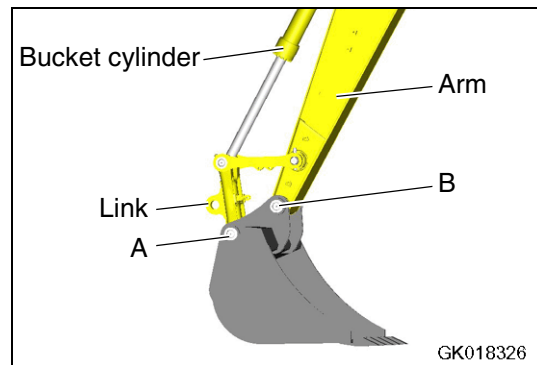
If the bucket is lowered strongly to the ground, the resistance will be increased and it will be difficult to remove the pins.

2. Remove the stopper bolts and nuts, then remove pins and, and remove the bucket.

NOTE

After removing the pins, make sure that they do not become contaminated with sand or mud and that the seals of bushing on both sides do not become damaged.

3. Install the bucket inversely.
After the bucket is reversed, correct the inclination and direction of the retaining pin holes (1) and (2) and stabilise the bucket securely.
4. Align the arm with holes (1) and the link with holes (2), then install pins (A) and (B).



WARNING

- If the control lever is touched by accident, the work equipment or the machine may move suddenly, and this may lead to a serious accident. Before leaving the operator's compartment, always raise the safety lock lever to LOCK the work equipment controls.
- In certain conditions it may be possible for the safety lock lever to contact the left hand arm rest on the operator seat. to avoid this, always ensure that the left hand arm rest is stowed in the fully up position before operating the safety lock lever.

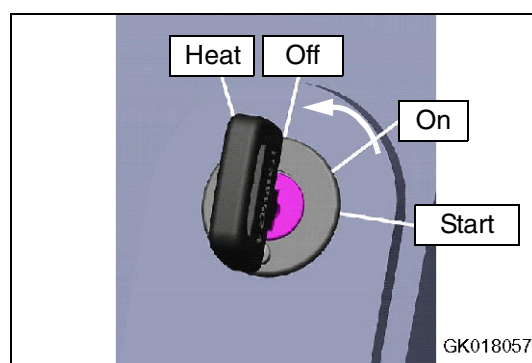
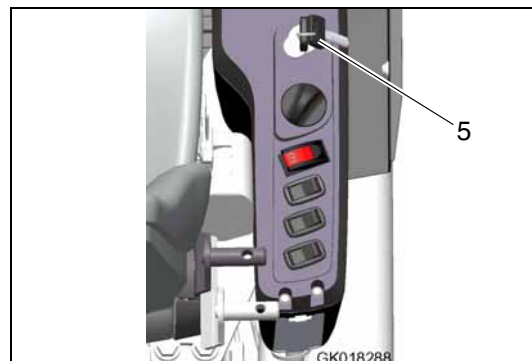
3.23.23 Stopping engine

NOTE

If the engine is abruptly stopped before it has cooled down, engine life may be greatly shortened. Consequently, do not abruptly stop the engine apart from an emergency.

In particular, if the engine has overheated, do not abruptly stop it but run it at medium speed to allow it to cool gradually, then stop it.

1. Run the engine at low idling speed for about 5 minutes to allow it to gradually cool down.
2. Turn the key in starting switch (5) to the OFF position and stop the engine.
3. Remove the key from starting switch (5).

**Check after finishing work**

1. Check the engine water temperature, engine oil pressure and fuel level on the monitor.
2. Walk around the machine and check the work equipment, and undercarriage, and check also for leakage of oil or water. If any abnormalities are found, repair them.
3. Fill the fuel tank.
4. Check the engine compartment for paper and debris. Clean out any paper and debris to avoid a fire hazard.
5. Remove any mud stuck to the undercarriage.

REMARK

It is normal for water to drip from aircon drain hoses under the cab.

3.23.24 Check after stopping engine

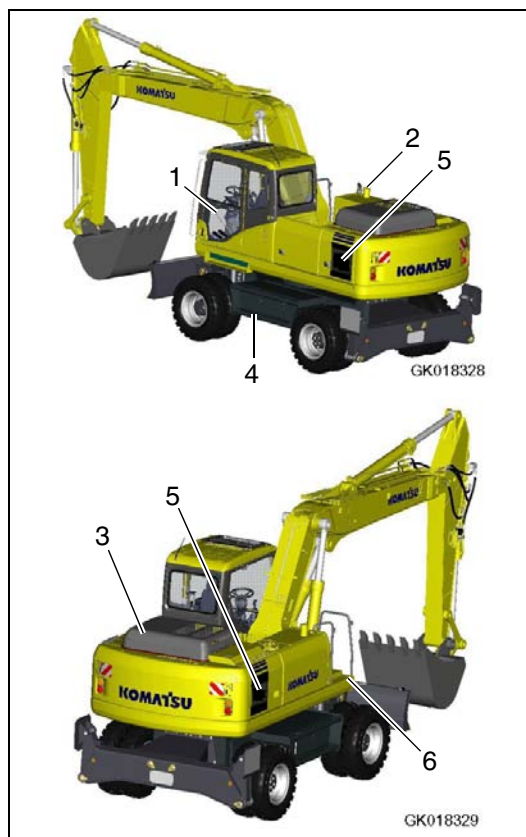
Locking

Always lock the following places.

1. Door of operator's cab.
Always remember to close the window.
2. Fuel tank filler port
3. Engine hood
4. Tool boxes within steps
5. Right and left machine cab doors
6. Refuel pump locker cover (if applicable)

REMARK

Use the starting switch key to open and close all these places.



Handling the wheels



WARNING

Incorrect handling of wheels and tyres can result in serious injury or death.

Particular care is required when working on twin wheel assemblies.

Before any attempt is made to remove the road wheels the tyres must be fully deflated.

1. General information

- Always replace damaged parts with new parts from your KOMATSU distributor.
Never attempt to repair damaged items.
- Use the appropriate tools in a good condition to remove the various pieces of the rim. Never use metallic hammer, use a mallet with a face made from Rubber, Plastic or Copper.
- On machines fitted with twin wheel assemblies a valve extension is fitted to the inner wheel to facilitate deflation. This part should always be refitted following disassembly as it ensures that the inner wheel assembly can be deflated whilst fitted to the hub.

Recommended tyre pressures

Mitas 10.00-20 14PR	Front tyre pressure	6.75 Bar
	Rear tyre pressure	6.75 Bar
Nokian 10.00-20 16PR	Front tyre pressure	7.25 Bar
	Rear tyre pressure	7.25 Bar
Michelin (Single) 18.00-19.5	Front tyre pressure	8.0 Bar
	Rear tyre pressure	8.0 Bar

2. Before starting to remove the wheels

1. Depress the brake pedal fully until it locks.
2. Raise the chassis with the boom so that the tyres are raised above the ground. Then, place axle stands below the front and rear axles.
3. Loosen wheel nuts with a wheel wrench. Wheel nuts have right hand threads.
4. Proceed in accordance with the following procedure, paying attention to the information specific to the type of wheel assembly fitted to the machine on which you are working.

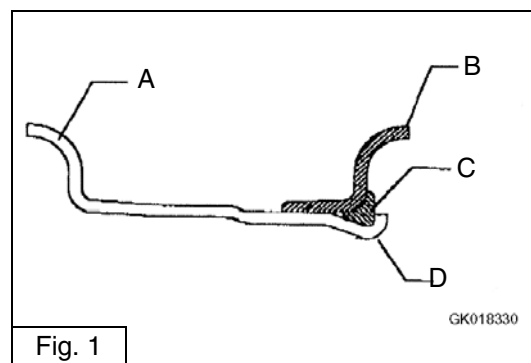


WARNING

Failure to observe the following procedure may result in serious injury or death.

3. Twin wheel assembly – 3 part rim

- A. Rim Base
- B. Loose flange
- C. Lockring
- D. Rim Gutter (groove)



Deflation and removal

- Before loosening the wheel retaining nuts, completely deflate the tyres by removing the valve with the appropriate tool. Always stand to the side during the deflating operation.
- Release 8 of the wheel retaining nuts leaving 2 diagonally opposed nuts to hold the assembly in position. Check that there is no remaining pressure being exerted on these remaining nuts by either the internal or external wheel assembly. Once satisfied that the remaining nuts are under no pressure, remove them.
- In order to remove the tyre from the rim first remove the lock-ring by progressively levering it from the gutter (groove). Do not exert excessive force as this may deform the retaining ring.
- Remove the loose flange and then the tyre/tube.

Reassembly and inflation

- Check thoroughly the condition of the wheel and rim for signs of wear or damage.
Discard any defective or doubtful parts and replace with approved replacement parts.
Clean the rims with a hard brush paying particular attention to the bottom of the rim gutter (groove).
- Fit the tyre to the rim base and fit the tube, ensuring that the valve is correctly located in its through hole.
- Place the loose flange against the tyre bead in the orientation shown in Fig. 1. Push it into place sufficient to clear the rim gutter (groove) to enable the lock-ring to be fitted.
- Insert the lock-ring with the aid of specific tools or with levers and a suitable mallet. Check correct seating of the lock-ring by measuring the dimension of the gap shown in Fig 2.

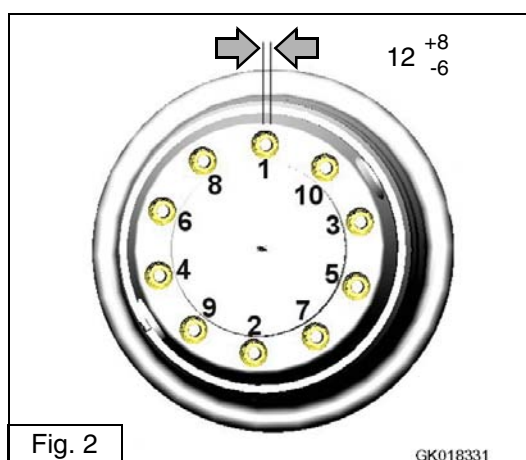
If it is not possible to achieve the stated gap with the lock-ring seated correctly renew the rim assembly.



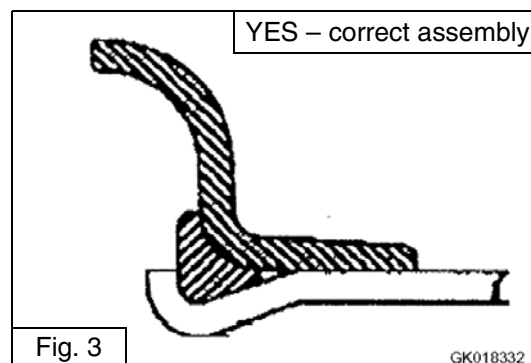
WARNING

It is essential that the lock-ring is seated correctly.

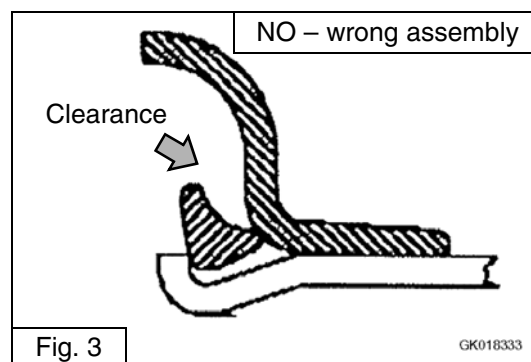
- Put the wheel assembly into a safety cage and inflate the tyre to a pressure of 1 - 1.5 bar.



- Visually check the lock-ring is still seated correctly and there is no clearance between it and the loose flange Fig. 3.



- If the lock-ring is not in the correct position stop the procedure as the lock-ring may be ejected from the groove resulting in possible injury.
Deflate the tyre and repeat the procedure.
If the lock-ring is correctly positioned continue to inflate the tyre to the value given in the previous table.
- Before removing the wheel assembly from the safety cage repeat the visual check.
- When refitting the wheel assemblies, tighten at least 2 diagonally opposite wheel nuts and then tighten the tyres to the specified torque in the order shown in Fig. 4.
Tightening torque: 80 Kg.m
- Retighten to the specified torque after 5 hours operation.

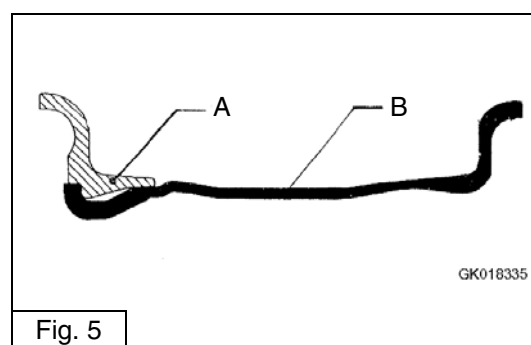


4. Twin wheel assembly – 2 part rim



Some KOMATSU machines are fitted with a 2 piece wheel rim of the type shown in Fig. 5. In this case the loose flange and lock-ring are replaced by a single split flange.

- A. Split flange
- B. Rim base

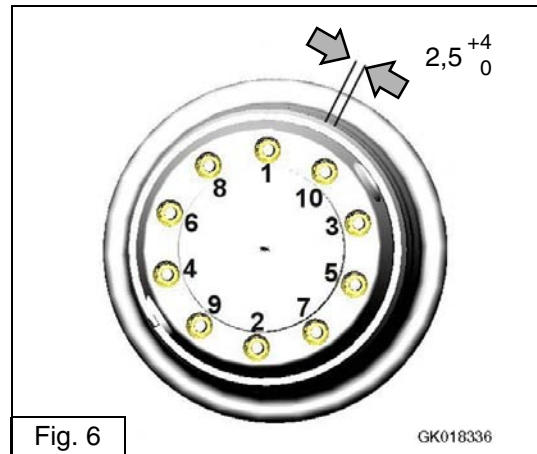


Similar precautions are required to those for the 3 piece rim when removing and refitting the wheel assemblies. However when judging the condition of the split flange, the dimension in Fig 6.applies.

Maintenance

Periodically remove the road-wheels, following the procedure de-tailed previously and perform the following checks.

- Remove all dirt especially in the area of the tyre bead seat and check the condition of the rim. If there are any signs of deformation or cracks the wheel must be replaced.
- Check carefully the wheel attachment holes, if you notice signs of ovalization or the presence of cracks the wheel must be replaced.
- If the fixing nuts or hub studs show signs of wear or corrosion they must be replaced.



5. Wheel spacer



WARNING

Wheel spacers must not be used with radial ply tyres.

6. Rotating tyres

Consult your local KOMATSU distributor for advice on rotating tyres.

3.24 Transportation

When transporting the machine, observe all related laws and regulations, and be careful to assure safety.

3.24.1 Transportation procedure

As a basic rule, transport the machine by trailer.

Select the trailer to match the weight and dimensions, see "Specifications (5-2)".

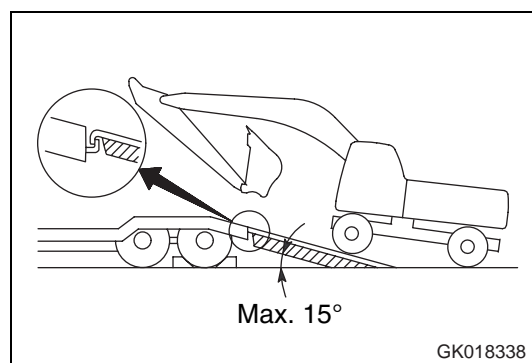
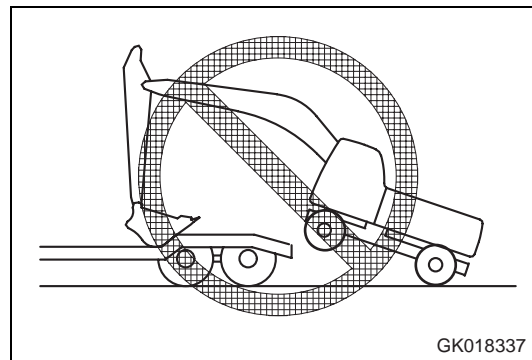
Note that the value for the weight and transportation dimensions given in SPECIFICATIONS may differ according to the type of shoe or type of arm or other attachments.

3.24.2 Loading, unloading work



WARNING

- Loading or unloading the machine can be a dangerous operation, so be particularly careful.
When loading or unloading the machine, run the engine at low idling and travel at low speed. Select creep speed.
- Make sure the ramp has sufficient width, length and thickness to enable the machine to be safely loaded and unloaded. If the ramp sags appreciably, reinforce it with blocks, etc.
- When loading and unloading the machine, park the trailer on a flat firm road surface. Keep a fairly long distance between the road shoulder and the machine.
- Remove the mud from the undercarriage to prevent the machine from slipping to the side on slopes.
Be sure the ramp surface is clean and free of grease, oil, ice and loose materials.
- Never change the direction of travel when on the ramps. If it is necessary to change direction, drive off the ramps and correct the direction, then drive on to the ramps again.
- Swing lock should always be engaged during transportation.
- When turning the machine on the trailer, the machine's footing is unstable, so carry out the operation slowly. Never rotate the upper structure if the work equipment is not installed as the machine might tip over.
- Always check that the door on the cab is locked, regardless of whether it is open or closed.
Do not open or close the door on ramps or on a platform. This may cause a sudden change in the operating force.



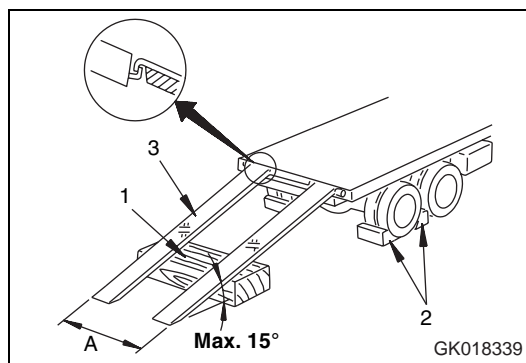
- When loading or unloading the machine with the automatic warming-up operation mode, if the automatic mode is released, the speed may change suddenly. Avoid loading or unloading during automatic warming-up operation.

When loading or unloading, always use ramps or a platform and carry out the operations as follows.

- Properly apply the brakes on the trailer and insert blocks (2) beneath the tyres to ensure that it does not move. Then fix the ramps in line with the centres of the trailer and the machine. Be sure that the two sides are at the same level as one another.

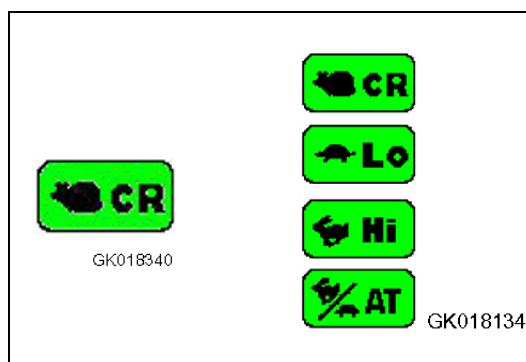
Make the angle of the ramps (3) a maximum of 15°.

Set the distance between the ramps (A) to match the centre of the wheels.



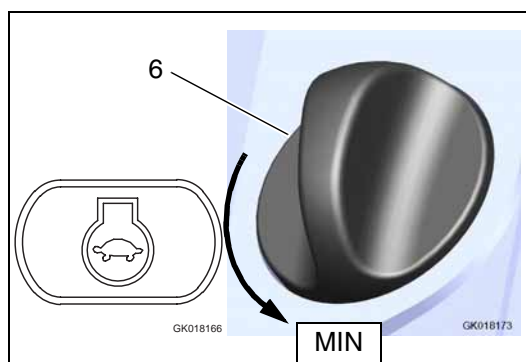
- Set the travel speed switch to the Creep position.

For details, see "Creep speed selector switch (3-27)".

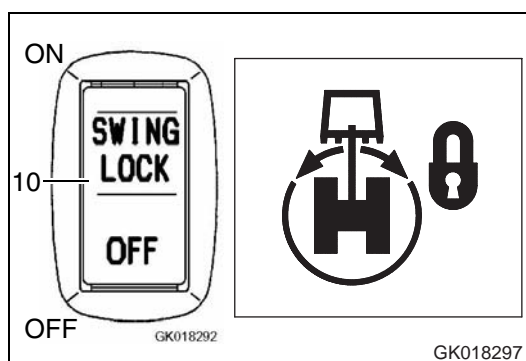


- Turn the auto-deceleration switch OFF, and return the fuel control dial (6) to reduce the engine speed.

For details, see "Auto-deceleration switch (3-35)".



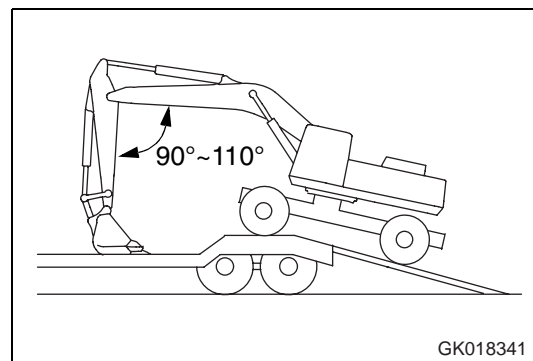
- Turn the swing lock switch (10) ON to apply the swing lock.



5. If the machine is equipped with work equipment, set the work equipment at the front and travel forward to load it; if it has no work equipment, travel in reverse

6. Align the direction of travel with the ramps and travel slowly. Lower the work equipment as far as possible without causing interference.

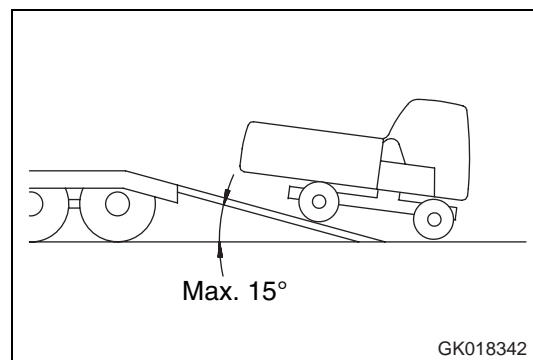
When on the ramps, operate only the travel lever. Do not operate any other lever or pedal.



7. When the machine travels over the rear wheels of the trailer, it becomes unstable, so drive slowly and carefully. (Never operate the steering)

8. At the moment the machine passes the rear wheels, it tilts forward, so be careful not to let the work equipment hit the trailer body. Drive the machine forward to the specified position, then stop the machine.

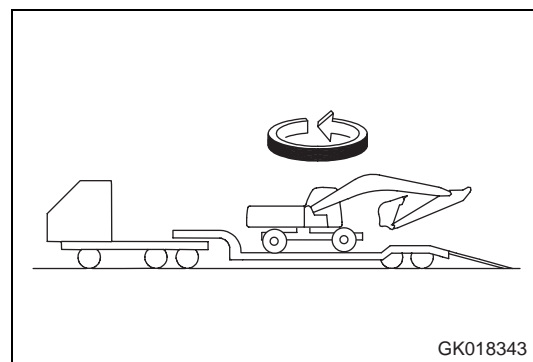
9. Turn the swing lock switch OFF to cancel the swing lock then swing the upper structure slowly 180°.



10. Stop the machine at the specified position on the trailer.

11. Turn the swing lock switch ON to lock the swing lock.

When the swing lock switch is turned ON, display monitor (3) lights up.



3.24.3 Securing machine

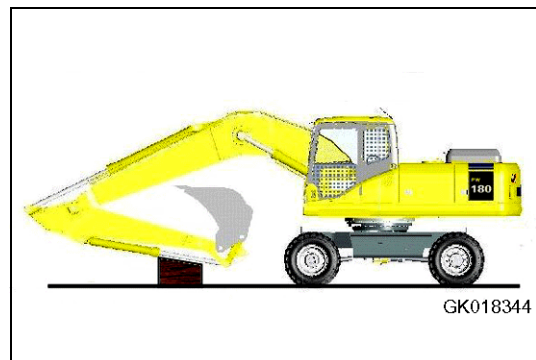


WARNING

- When loading the machine, park the trailer on a flat firm roadbed. Keep a fairly long distance between the road shoulder and the machine.
- Stow the antenna and reassemble the mirrors so that they are within the width of the machine.
- To prevent damage to the bucket cylinder during transportation, fit a wooden block at one end of the bucket cylinder to prevent it from touching the floor.

After loading to the specified position, secure the machine as follows.

1. Fully extend the bucket and arm cylinders, then slowly lower the boom.
2. Stop the engine and remove the key from the starting switch.

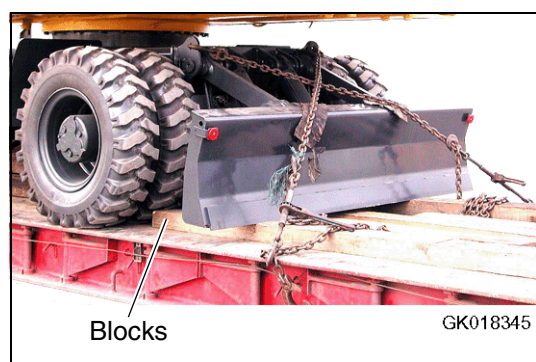
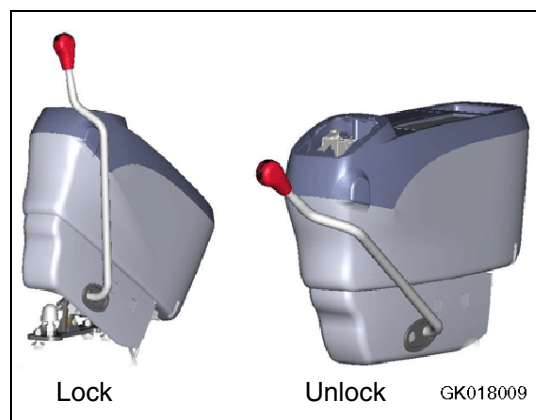


3. Raise safety lock lever to LOCK position.

REMARK

In certain conditions it may be possible for the safety lock lever to contact the left hand arm rest on the operator seat. To avoid this, always ensure that the left hand arm rest is stowed in the fully up position before operating the safety lock lever.

4. Lock the window glass, roof window, front window, operator's seat door, side cover, engine hood and battery box cover securely.
5. When transporting the machine, hold it down with chains or rope. Be particularly careful to ensure that the machine does not slip sideways. Also put blocks under all wheels to prevent machine from moving during transportation.



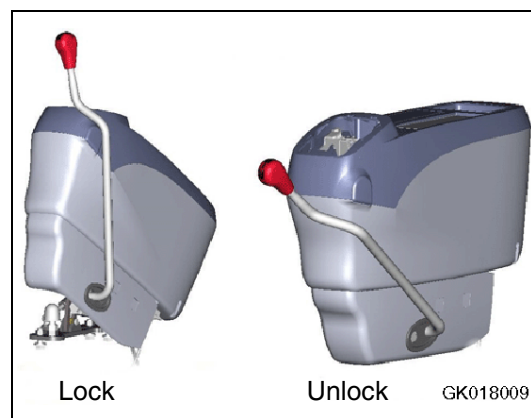
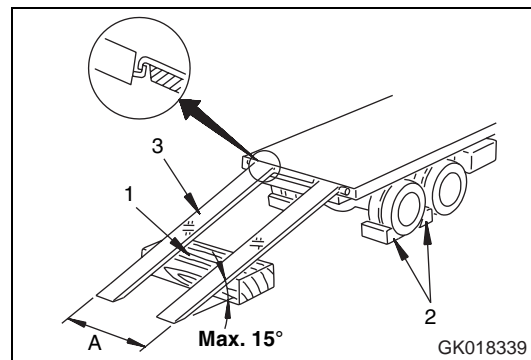
3.24.4 Unloading

1. Perform loading and unloading on firm, level ground only. Maintain a safe distance from the edge of the road.
2. Properly apply the brakes on the trailer and insert blocks (2) beneath the tyres to ensure that it does not move. Then fix the ramps in line with the centres of the trailer and the machine. Be sure that the two sides are at the same level as one another.

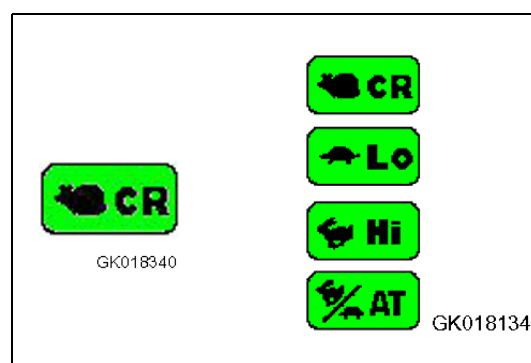
Make the angle of the ramps (3) a maximum of 15°.

Set the distance between the ramps (A) to match the centre of the wheels.

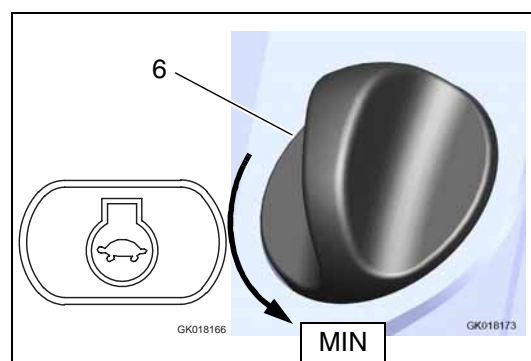
3. Remove the chains or wire rope holding the machine.
4. Start the engine.
Carry out the warming-up operation thoroughly in cold weather.
5. Set the safety lock lever to the UNLOCK position.



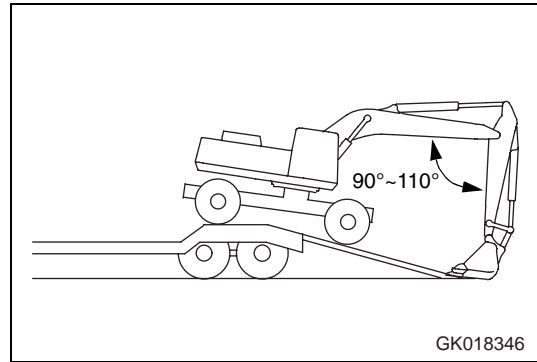
6. Set the travel speed switch to the creep position.
For details see "Creep speed selector switch (3-27)".



7. Turn the auto deceleration switch OFF and return the fuel control dial (6) to reduce the engine speed.
For details see "Auto-deceleration switch (3-35)".



8. Raise the work equipment, pull in the arm under the boom, then move the machine slowly.
9. When the machine is horizontal on the top of the rear wheels of the trailer, stop the machine.
10. When moving from the rear of the trailer on to the ramps, set the angle of the arm and boom to 90° - 110° , lower the bucket to the ground, then move the machine slowly.
11. When moving down the ramps, operate the boom and arm slowly to lower the machine carefully until it is completely off the ramps.



3.24.5 How to lift the machine

CAUTION

Personnel who perform lifting using a crane must be qualified.

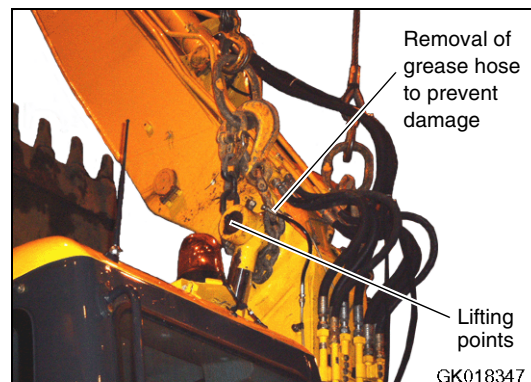
WARNING

Contact your distributor to get instructions of lifting a machine. Some parts are required and are available as optional parts.

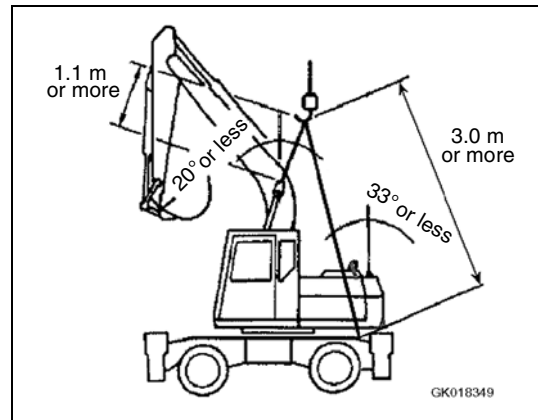
- WARNING**
- Do not lift a vehicle with personnel in it.
 - The rope used for lifting must have sufficient strength to withstand the weight of this machine.
 - The machine must not be in a position other than that shown in the following procedure when lifting a vehicle. Otherwise, the machine may be unbalanced.
 - When lifting, keep the machine horizontal.
 - It is dangerous to go under the machine when it is raised. Never go under the machine when it is raised.

Lifting a machine must be performed on a flat place with the following procedure.

1. Start the engine and set the machine in the position shown in the figure at the right (boom, arm and bucket cylinders fully extended). If a two piece boom is installed set the adjust cylinder at maximum stroke. Direct the top revolving superstructure straight forward.
2. Engage the swing lock.
3. Raise the safety lock lever to the LOCK position.
4. Stop the engine. Confirm safety around the operator seat. Get off the machine.
Be sure to close the cab door, windshield, right and left doors, engine hood, etc.
5. Put a sling around the boom just below the pin at the top of the boom raise cylinders. Attach shackles to the lifting points on the rear of the chassis. Use a spreader bar above the rear of the machine to prevent damage to the left and right doors. Insert packing under the rear slings or chains to prevent damage to the revolving frame.



6. The length off the wire rope and the lifting angle must be as shown in the figure on the right.
7. When lifting, make sure that there is no change in the position due to possible leakage in the hydraulic circuit on the boom cylinder head side.
8. When the machine leaves the ground, stop lifting and check that the machine is balanced. Then lift the machine slowly.



3.24.6 Precautions for transportation



WARNING

- Determine the route for transporting the machine by taking into account the width, height and weight of the machine.
- Always ensure swing lock is engaged
- Always check that the door on the cab is closed and locked before transporting the machine.
- Always ensure machine covers/doors are closed and locked before transporting the machine.

NOTE

Always retract or remove the driving mirrors before transportation.

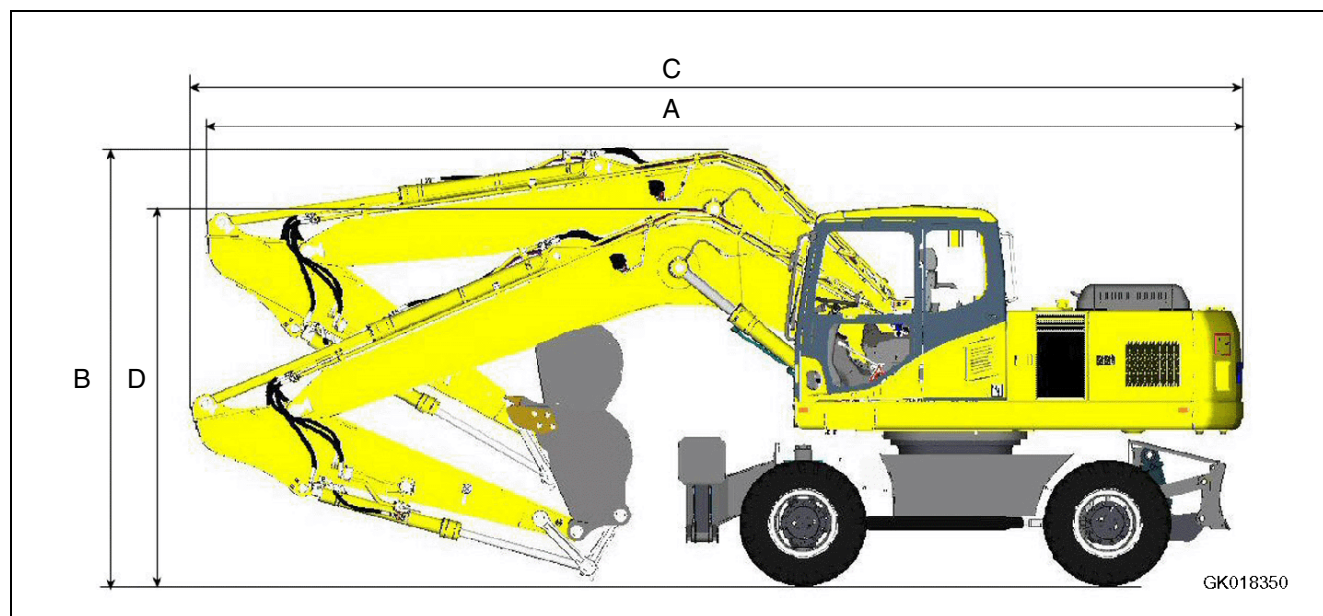
Obey all state and local laws governing the weight, width and length of a load. Observe all regulations governing wide loads.

Monoboom (with blade)

Arm Length (m)	Driving Position		Transport Position		Weight *
	A	B	C	D	
2.25	8,900	3,720	8,882	3,178	16,890
2.6	8,900	3,720	8,870	3,273	16,990
2.9	8,900	3,720	8,845	3,375	17,000

(1) Height for transport = (D) Overall height + height of trailer platform (2)

* Weights and dimensions: will vary according to specification. Consult your KOMATSU distributor if in doubt.

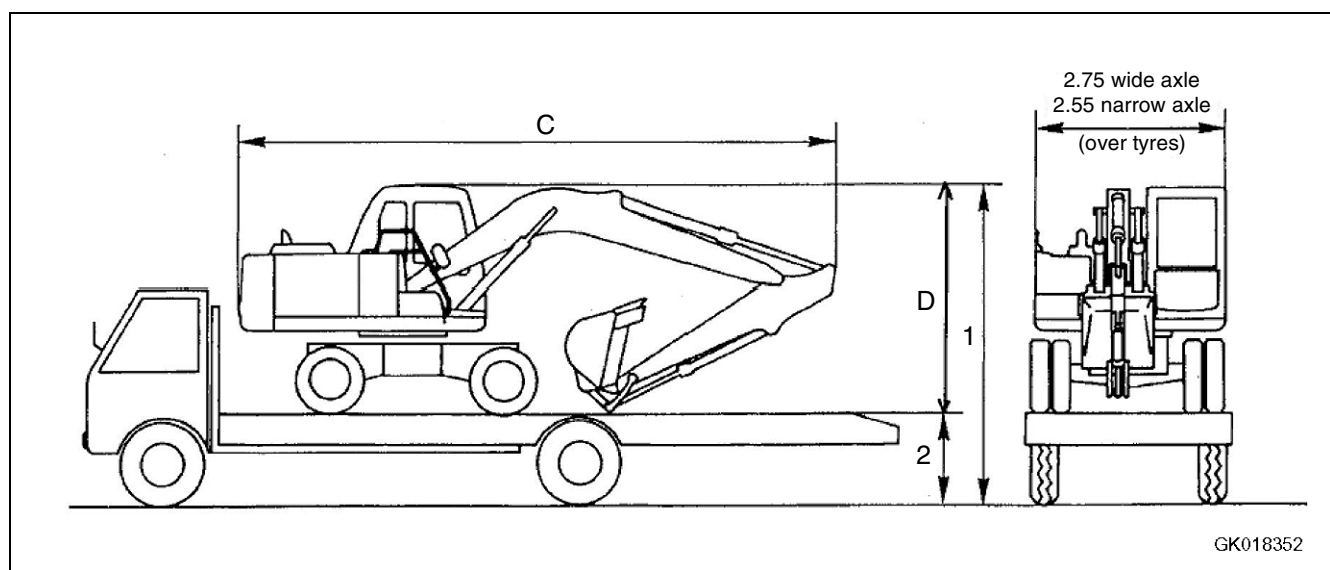
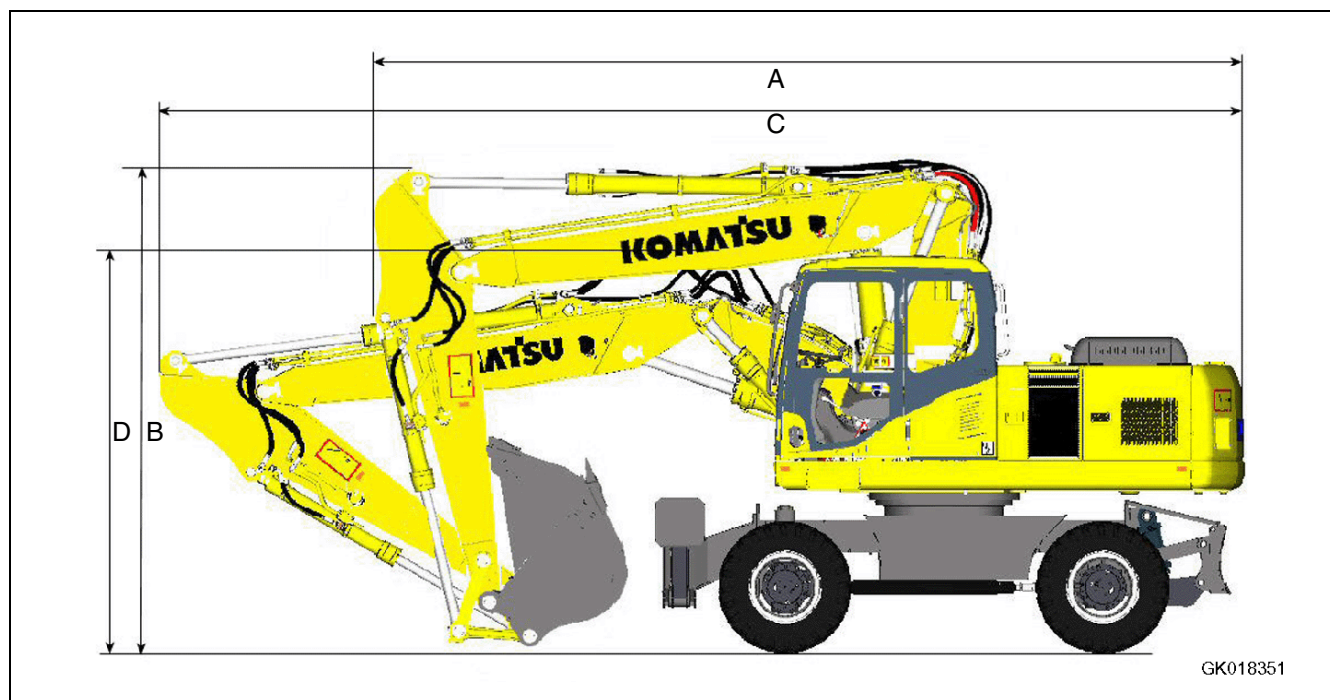


Two Piece Boom (with blade)

Arm Length (m)	Driving Position		Transport Position		Weight *
	A	B	C	D	
2.25	6,794	3,972	8,882	3,178	17,120
2.6	6,717	3,972	8,870	3,273	17,160
2.9	6,850	3,960	8,845	3,375	16,680

(1) Height for transport = (D) Overall height + height of trailer platform (2).

* Weights and dimensions: will vary according to specification.
Consult your KOMATSU distributor if in doubt.



3.24.7 Travelling posture

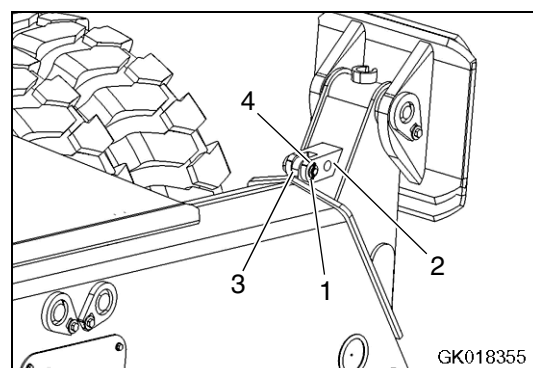
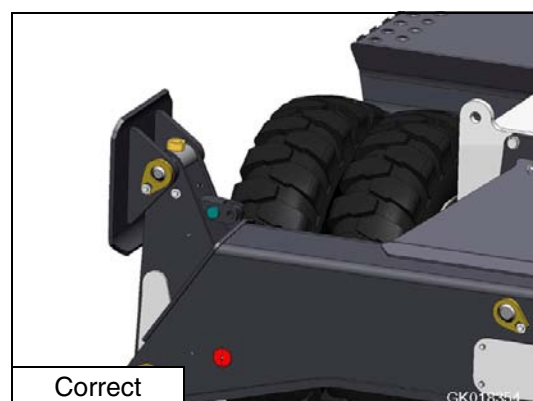
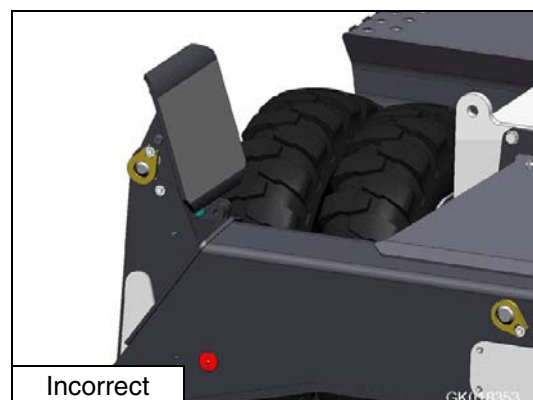
Before starting to travel, be sure to raise and lock the outriggers, and raise the dozer blade.

To lock the outriggers remove the safety pins from their holders (2) and insert through frame and outrigger (3). Fix pins position using clips (4).

Do not turn the shoe plates to the inside.

Before travelling on public roads, the work equipment should be positioned as follows.

1. Position the upper structure so that it is facing the front of the undercarriage (the oscillation lock cylinders can be seen). Use the indicator on the monitor, and engage swing lock.
2. Fully extend the bucket cylinder.
3. Fully extend the first boom cylinders.
4. Fully retract the second boom cylinders.
5. Adjust the arm cylinder such that the front of the arm is vertical.
6. Put the upper structure in the straight ahead position by using the indicator A, see "Swing position (3-24)".
7. Lock the swing using switch 10, see "Swinging (slewing the upper carriage) (3-129)".
8. Disable the work equipment levers by switching on the control lever lock switch.
9. Close manual lock valves.
 - For the bucket cylinder, located on the arm.
 - For the arm cylinder, located on the first boom (option).

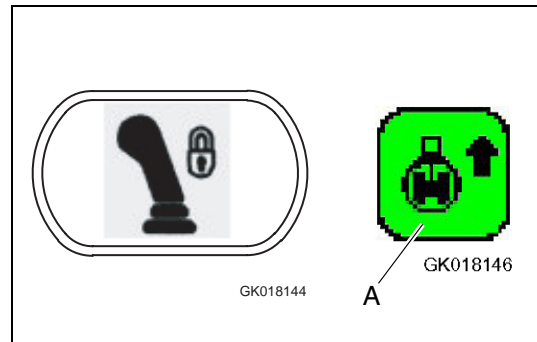


After setting the machine in the travelling posture, confirm that its overall height is below 4 m and that the distance between the centre of the steering wheel and the front of the work equipment is less than 3.5 m.

REMARK

This will necessitate removal of the bucket for machines fitted with 2.9 m arm.

Before moving off, lock all machine cover and toolbox doors to prevent accidental opening.



REMARK

When returning to operating mode remove the pins (1) and return them to the holders (2). Fix in position using clips (4).

3.25 Cold weather operation

3.25.1 Precautions for low temperature

If the temperature becomes low, it becomes difficult to start the engine, and the coolant may freeze, so do as follows.

Fuel and lubricants

Change to fuel and oil with low viscosity for all components. For details of the specified viscosity.

For details, see "Use fuel, coolant and lubricants according to ambient temperature (4-16)".



WARNING

- Antifreeze is toxic. Be careful not to get it into your eyes or on your skin. If it should get into your eyes or on your skin, wash it off with large quantities of fresh water and see a doctor at once.
- Antifreeze is toxic. Be extremely careful when handling it. When replacing coolant containing antifreeze or when handling coolant when repairing the radiator, contact your KOMATSU distributor or ask your local antifreeze dealer. Be careful not to let the water flow into drainage ditches or spray on to the ground surface.
- Antifreeze is flammable, so do not bring any flame close. Do not smoke when handling antifreeze.

NOTE

- *Never use methanol, ethanol or propanol based antifreeze.*
- *Absolutely avoid using any water leak preventing agent, whether it is used independently or mixed with an antifreeze.*
- *Do not mix one antifreeze with a different brand.*

For details of the antifreeze mixture when changing the coolant, see "Clean inside of cooling system (4-39)".

REMARK

Where no permanent antifreeze is available, an ethylene glycol antifreeze without corrosion inhibitor may be used only for the cold season. In this case, clean the cooling system twice a year (in spring and autumn). When refilling the cooling system, add antifreeze in autumn, but do not add any in spring.

For details of the antifreeze mixture when changing the coolant, see "Clean inside of cooling system (4-39)".

Battery



WARNING

- The battery generates flammable gas, so do not bring fire or sparks near the battery.
- Battery electrolyte is dangerous. If it gets in your eyes or on your skin, wash it off with large amounts of water, and consult a doctor.
- Battery electrolyte dissolves paint. If it gets on to the bodywork, wash it off immediately with water.
- If the battery electrolyte is frozen, do not charge the battery or start the engine with a different power source. There is danger that the battery may explode.

When the ambient temperature drops, the capacity of the battery will also drop. If the battery charge ratio is low, the battery electrolyte may freeze. Maintain the battery charge as close as possible to 100%, and insulate it against cold temperature so that the machine can be started easily the next morning.

REMARK

Measure the specific gravity and calculate the rate of charge from the following conversion table.

Rate of charge	Temperature of fluid			
	20°C	0°C	-10°C	-20°C
100	1.28	1.29	1.30	1.31
90	1.26	1.27	1.28	1.29
80	1.24	1.25	1.26	1.27
75	1.23	1.24	1.25	1.26

- Because the battery capacity drops markedly in low temperatures, cover the battery or remove it from the machine. Keep it in a warm place overnight, and install it again the next morning.
- If the electrolyte level is low, add distilled water in the morning before beginning work. To prevent fluid in the battery from freezing in the night, do not add the water after the day's work.

3.25.2 Precautions after completion of work

WARNING

After completion of operations, fill the fuel tank to prevent the formation of water caused by condensation of moisture in the empty space in the tank when the temperature goes down.

To prevent mud, water, or the undercarriage from freezing and making it impossible for the machine to move the following morning, always observe the following precautions.

- Mud and water on the machine body should be completely removed. This is to prevent damage to the seal caused by mud or dirt getting inside the seal with frozen drops of water.
- Park the machine on hard, dry ground. If this is impossible, park the machine on wooden boards. The boards help protect the wheels from being frozen in soil and the machine can start next morning.
- Open the drain valve and drain any water collected in the fuel system to prevent it from freezing.
- After operation in water or mud, remove water from undercarriage to extend undercarriage service life.

3.25.3 After cold weather

When season changes and the weather becomes warmer, do as follows.

- Replace the fuel and oil for all parts with oil of the viscosity specified.

For details, see "Use fuel, coolant and lubricants according to ambient temperature (4-16)".

- If for any reason permanent antifreeze cannot be used, and an ethyl glycol base antifreeze (winter, one season type) is used instead, or if no antifreeze is used, drain the cooling system completely, then clean out the inside of the cooling system thoroughly, and fill with fresh water.

3.26 Long-term storage

3.26.1 Before storage

NOTE

To protect the cylinder rod when the machine is not being used, set the work equipment in the posture shown in the diagram. (This prevents rusting of the cylinder rod)

When putting the machine in storage for a long time, do as follows.

- Clean and wash all parts, then store the machine indoors. If the machine has to be stored outdoors, select level ground and cover the machine with a sheet.
- Completely fill the fuel tank, lubricate and change the oil before storage.
- Apply a thin coat of grease to the metal surface of the hydraulic piston rods.
- Disconnect the negative terminals of the battery and cover it or remove it from the machine and store it separately.
- If the ambient temperature is expected to drop below 0°C, add antifreeze to the cooling water.
- Raise safety lock lever to the LOCK position.
- Set the stop valve to the LOCK position on machines which can install attachments. Install a plug in the elbow.



3.26.2 During storage



WARNING

If it is unavoidably necessary to carry out the rust preventive operation while the machine is indoors, open the doors and windows to improve ventilation and prevent gas poisoning.

Operate the engine and move the machine for a short distance once a month so that a new film of oil will be coated over movable parts and component surfaces. At the same time, also charge the battery.

Also carry out cooler operation in the case of machines equipped with an air conditioner.

3.26.3 After storage

NOTE

If the machine is stored without carrying out the monthly rust prevention operation, request your KOMATSU distributor for service.

Carry out the following procedure when taking the machine out of long-term storage.

- Wipe off the grease from the hydraulic cylinder rods.
- Add oil and grease to all places.
- When the machine has been stored for a long time, the moisture in the atmosphere will get into the oil. Check the oil at all parts before and after starting the engine. If there is water in the oil, change all the oil.

3.26.4 Starting machine after long-term storage

When starting the machine after a long-term storage, first cancel the automatic warming-up function as follows.

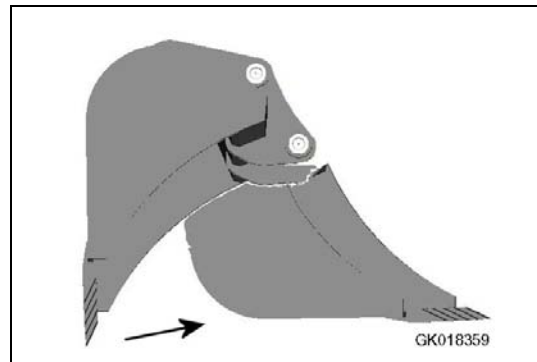
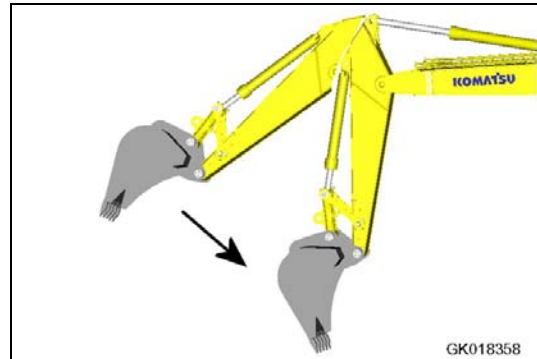
1. Turn the starting switch key to the ON position.
2. Turn the fuel control dial from the low idling (MIN) position to the full (MAX) position, hold it there for 3 seconds, then return it to the low idling (MIN) position and start the engine.

3.27 Troubleshooting

3.27.1 Phenomena that are not failures

Note that the following phenomena are not failures:

1. When the arm is pulled in, the speed of movement will drop momentarily when the arm is more or less vertical.
2. The arm speed will drop momentarily when the bucket teeth are more or less horizontal.
3. When starting or stopping the swing, noise will be emitted from the swing motor and swing machinery.
4. When going down a steep slope at low speed, a noise will be emitted from the travel motor.



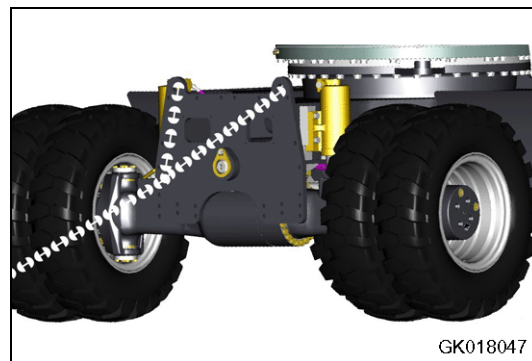
3.28 Method of towing machine

WARNING

When towing the machine, use a wire rope that has ample strength for the weight of the machine that is being towed.

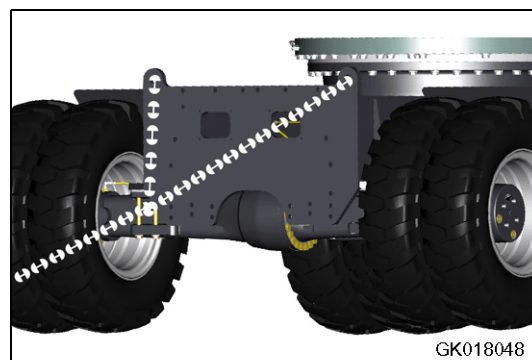
If the machine sinks in mud and cannot get out under its own power, or if the drawbar pull of the excavator is being used to tow a heavy object, use a wire rope as shown in the diagram.

When using the front of chassis



When using the rear of the chassis

For towing method, see "Towing (2-24)".



3.29 Precautions on particular jobsites

1. When carrying out digging operations in water, if the work equipment mounting pin goes into the water, carry out greasing every time the operation is carried out.
2. For heavy-duty operations and deep digging, carry out greasing of the work equipment mounting pins every time before operation.
3. After greasing, operate the boom, arm and bucket several times, then grease again.

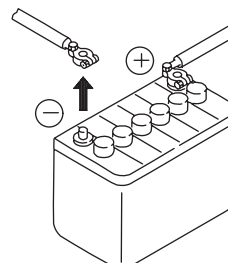
3.30 Discharged battery



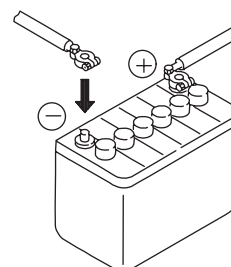
WARNING

- It is dangerous to charge the battery while it is still mounted on the machine. Always remove the battery before charging it.
- When checking or handling the battery, stop the engine and turn the starting switch key to the OFF position.
- The battery generates hydrogen gas, so there is danger of explosion.
Do not bring lighted cigarettes near the battery, or do anything that will cause sparks.
- Battery electrolyte is diluted sulphuric acid, and it will attack your clothes and skin. If it gets on your clothes or on your skin, wash it off immediately with large amounts of water. If it gets into your eyes, wash it out with fresh water, and consult a doctor.
- When handling batteries, always wear protective goggles and rubber gloves.
- When removing the battery, first disconnect the cable from the ground (normally the negative (-) terminal). When installing, install the positive (+) terminal first.
If a tool touches the positive terminal and the chassis, there is danger that it will cause a spark, be extremely careful.
- If the terminals are loose, there is danger that the defective contact may generate sparks that will cause an explosion.
- When installing the terminals, install them tightly.
When removing or installing the terminals, check which is the positive (+) terminal and which is the negative (-) terminal.
- Green rust around the terminals is a cause of self-discharge of the battery. Clean the terminals with sandpaper. After removing the rust, coat the terminals thinly with grease before installing.

When removing, disconnect the cable from the ground (-) terminal first.



When installing, connect the cable to the positive (+) terminal first



GK018360

3.30.1 Removal and installation of battery

NOTE

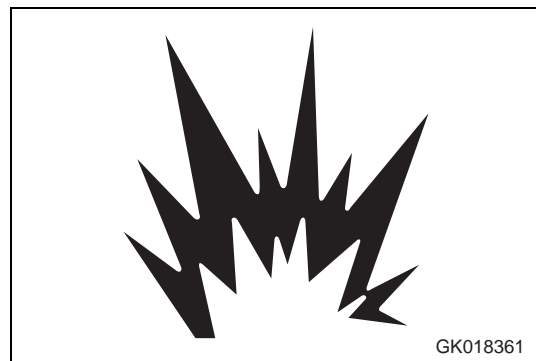
After fastening the battery in position, check that it does not move. If it moves, tighten clamp bolts and re-check.

- When removing, remove from the ground side terminal first (normally the (-) terminal).
Be careful not to touch the positive (+) terminal and the machine with any tool. Letting a tool touch is dangerous as it causes sparks.
- When installing, connect the ground side last.
- When replacing the battery, attach the battery securely with the battery mounting clamp.
- Tightening torque of mounting bolts: 9.8 to 14.7 Nm (1 to 1.5 kgfm)

3.30.2 Battery charges

When charging the battery, there is danger that the battery may explode if it is mishandled. Follow the instructions in "Warming up operation (3-115)" and the instruction manual supplied with the charger, and be sure to observe the following precautions.

- Set the voltage of the charger to match the voltage of the battery to be charged. If the voltage is not selected correctly, the charger may overheat and cause an explosion.
- Connect the positive (+) charger clip of the charger to the positive (+) terminal of the battery, then connect the negative (-) charger clip of the charger to the negative (-) terminal of the battery. Be sure to connect the clips securely.
- Set the charging current to 1/10 of the value of the rated battery capacity; when doing rapid charging, set it to less than the rated battery capacity.
If the charger current is too high, the electrolyte will leak or dry up, and this may cause the battery to catch fire and explode.
- If the battery electrolyte is frozen, do not charge the battery or start the engine with a different power source.
There is a danger that this will ignite the battery electrolyte and cause the battery to explode.
- Do not use or charge the battery if the battery electrolyte level is below the LOWER LEVEL line. This may cause an explosion. Always check the battery electrolyte level periodically and add distilled water to bring the electrolyte level to the UPPER LEVEL



3.30.3 Starting engine with booster cables

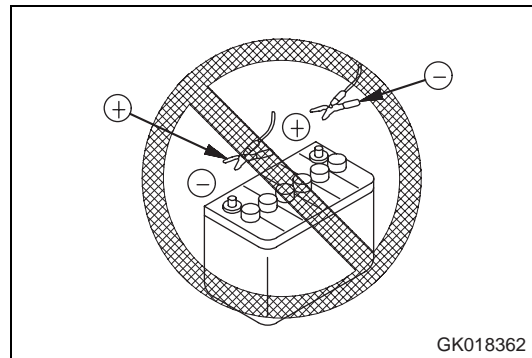
When starting the engine with a booster cable, do as follows:

Connecting and disconnecting booster cables



WARNING

- When connecting the cables, never contact the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals.
- When starting the engine with a booster cable, always wear safety glasses.
- Be careful not to let the normal machine and problem machine contact each other. This prevents sparks from generating near the battery which could ignite the hydrogen gas given off by the battery. If hydrogen gas explodes, it could cause serious injury.
- Make sure that there is no mistake in the booster cable connections.
The final connection is to the upper structure frame, but sparks will be generated when this is done, so connect to a place as far as possible from the battery. (However, avoid connecting the cable to the work equipment, as conduction is poor.)
- Use care when removing the cables from a machine that has been started. To avoid hydrogen explosion, do not allow the cable ends to contact each other or the machine.



NOTE

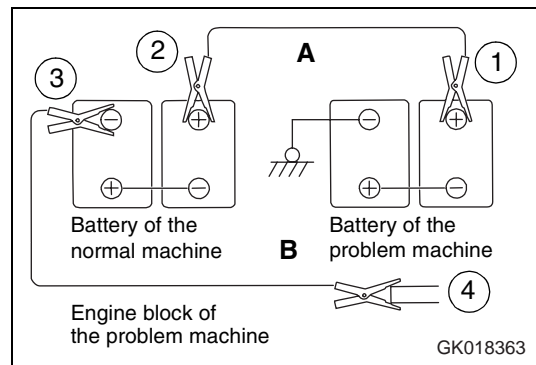
- The starting system for this machine uses 24 Volts. For the normal machine, use a 24V battery.
- The size of the booster cable and clip should be suitable for the battery size.
- The battery of the normal machine must be the same capacity as that of the engine to be started.
- Check the cables and clips for damage or corrosion.
- Make sure that the cables and clips are firmly connected.
- Check that the safety lock lever is raised in the LOCK position and parking brake applied.
- Check that each lever is in the NEUTRAL position.

Booster cable connection

Keep the starting switch of the normal machine and problem machine at the OFF position.

Connect the booster cable as follows, in the order of the numbers marked in the diagram.

1. Make sure that the starting switches of the normal machine and problem machine are both at the OFF position.
2. Connect one clip of booster cable (A) to the positive (+) terminal of the problem machine.
3. Connect the other clip of booster cable (A) to the positive (+) terminal of the normal machine.
4. Connect one clip of booster cable (B) to the negative (-) terminal of the normal machine.
5. Connect the other clip of booster cable (B) to the upper structure of the problem machine.



Starting the engine



WARNING

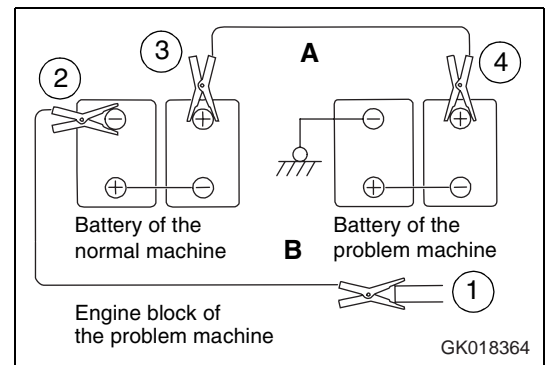
- Always check that the safety lock lever is raised in the LOCK position, regardless of whether the machine is working normally or has failed. Also check that all the control levers are at the HOLD or neutral position.
- In certain conditions it may be possible for the safety lock lever to contact the left hand arm rest on the operator seat. to avoid this, always ensure that the left hand arm rest is stowed in the fully up position before operating the safety lock lever.

1. Make sure the clips are firmly connected to the battery terminals.
2. Start the engine of the normal machine and keep it to running at high idling speed.
3. Turn the starting switch of the problem machine to the START position and start the engine. If the engine doesn't start at first, try again after 2 minutes or so.

Booster cable disconnection

After the engine has started, disconnect the booster cables in the reverse order in which they were connected.

1. Remove one clip of booster cable (B) from the upper structure of the problem machine.
2. Remove the other clip of booster cable (B) from the negative (-) terminal of the normal machine.
3. Remove one clip of booster cable (A) from the positive (+) terminal of the normal machine.
4. Remove the other clip of booster cable (A) from the positive (+) terminal of the problem machine.



3.31 Other trouble

3.31.1 Electrical system

- () Always contact your KOMATSU distributor when dealing with these items.
- In cases of abnormalities or causes which are not listed below, please contact your KOMATSU distributor for repairs.

Problem	Main causes	Remedy
Lamp does not glow brightly even when the engine runs at high speed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective wiring, deterioration of battery 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (Check, repair loose terminals, disconnections, replace battery)
Lamp flickers while engine is running	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Loose fan belt 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check fan belt tension, replace
Charge level monitor does not go out even when engine is running	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective alternator • Defective wiring 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (Replace) • (Check, repair)
Abnormal noise is generated from alternator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective alternator 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (Replace)
Starting motor does not turn when starting switch is turned to ON	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective wiring • Defective starting motor • Insufficient battery charge 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (Check, repair) • (Replace) • Charge
Pinion of starting motor keeps going in and out	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insufficient battery charge • Defective safety relay 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Charge • (Replace)
Starting motor turns engine sluggishly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insufficient battery charge • Defective starting motor 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Charge • (Replace)
Starting motor disengages before engine starts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective wiring, defective ring gear pinion • Insufficient battery charge 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (Check, repair) • Charge
Pre-heating monitor does not light	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective wiring • Defective heater relay • Defective monitor 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (Check, repair) • (Replace) • (Replace)
Oil pressure monitor does not light up when engine is stopped (starting switch at ON position)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective monitor • Defective caution lamp switch 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (Replace) • (Replace)
Outside of electrical heater is not warm when touched by hand	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defective wiring • Disconnection in electric heater • Defective operation of heater relay switch 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (Check, repair) • (Replace) • (Replace)

3.31.2 Chassis

- () Always contact your KOMATSU distributor when dealing with these items.
- In cases of abnormalities or causes which are not listed below, please contact your KOMATSU distributor for repairs.

Problem	Main causes	Remedy
Speed of travel, swing, boom, arm, bucket is slow	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lack of hydraulic oil 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Add oil to specified level, see "Check before starting (4-57)"
Pump generates abnormal noise (sucking in air)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clogged element in hydraulic tank strainer, lack of oil 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clean, see "Every 2000 hours service (4-93)"
Excessive rise in hydraulic oil temperature	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Loose fan belt • Dirty oil cooler • Lack of hydraulic oil 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check fan belt tension, replace • Clean, see "Every 500 hours service (4-75)" • Add oil to specified level, see "Check before starting (4-57)"
Bucket rises slowly, does not rise	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lack of hydraulic oil 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Add oil to specified level, "Check before starting (4-57)"
Does not swing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Swing lock engaged • Control lever lock ON 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Release swing lock • Turn OFF control lever lock switch

3.31.3 Engine

- () Always contact your KOMATSU distributor when dealing with these items.
- In cases of abnormalities or causes which are not listed below, please contact your KOMATSU distributor for repairs.

Problem	Main causes	Remedy
Engine oil pressure monitor lights up	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Engine oil pan oil level is low (sucking in air) • Clogged oil filter cartridge • Defective tightening of oil pipe, pipe joint, oil leakage from damaged point • Defective engine oil pressure sensor • Defective monitor 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Add oil to specified level, see "Check before starting (4-57)" • Replace cartridge, see "Every 500 hours service (4-75)" • (Check, repair) • (Replace sensor) • (Replace)
Steam spurts out from top of radiator (pressure valve)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cooling water level low, leakage of water • Loose fan belt • Dirt or scale accumulated in cooling system 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check, add water, repair, see "Check before starting (4-57)" • Check fan belt tension, adjust, replace • Change coolant, flush inside of cooling system, see "When required (4-33)"
Radiator water level monitor lights up	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clogged radiator fins or damaged fins • Defective thermostat • Loose radiator filler cap (high-altitude operations) • Defective water level sensor • Defective monitor 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clean or repair, see "Every 500 hours service (4-75)" • (Replace thermostat) • Tighten cap or replace packing • (Replace sensor) • (Replace sensor)
Engine does not start when starting motor is turned	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lack of fuel • Air in fuel system • Defective fuel injection pump or defective nozzle • Starting motor cranks engine sluggishly • Preheating monitor does not light up • Defective compression • Defective valve clearance 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Add fuel, see "Check before starting (4-57)" • Repair place where air is sucked in, see "Every 500 hours service (4-75)" • (Replace pump or nozzle) • See "Electrical system (3-176)" • See "Electrical system (3-176)" • (Adjust valve clearance)
Exhaust gas is white or blue	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Too much oil in oil pan • Improper fuel 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set oil to specified level, see "Check before starting (4-57)" • Change to specified fuel

Problem	Main causes	Remedy
Exhaust gas occasionally turns black	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Clogged air cleaner element ● Defective nozzle ● Defective compression ● Defective turbocharger 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Clean or replace, see "When required (4-33)" ● (Replace nozzle) ● (See defective compression above) ● Clean or replace turbocharger
Combustion noise occasionally make breathing sound	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Defective nozzle 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● (Replace nozzle)
Abnormal noise generated (combustion or mechanical)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Low-grade fuel being used ● Overheating ● Damage inside muffler ● Excessive valve clearance 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Change to specified fuel ● Refer to "Radiator water level monitor (3-9)" lights up as above ● Replace muffler ● (Adjust clearance)

3.31.4 Electronic control system

If an error code appears on the machine monitor display (normally displays TIME), follow the countermeasure table as shown below in the self-diagnosis.

Machine monitor trouble display

Monitor display	Error mode	Countermeasure
E01	Network system error	Place the machine in a safe posture, then have it inspected immediately by your KOMATSU distributor.
E02	TVC valve system error	If the pump override switch is set to the ON position, operation can be carried out. However, immediately have the PC-EPC valve system inspected by your KOMATSU distributor. (*)
E03	Swing brake system error	Turn the swing override switch ON to cancel the brake. When applying the swing brake, operate the swing lock manually. Depending on the cause of the failure, it may be impossible to release the brake. In any case, have the system inspected immediately by your KOMATSU distributor. (*)
E05	Governor system error	Governor will not execute the control function. Manually operate the governor-lever. To fix the governor lever at the full stroke position, use the retaining bolt holes on bracket. In this case, immediately have the governor system inspected by your KOMATSU distributor.
E20	Travel system error	If the travel override switch is set to ON position, operation can be carried out. However, immediately have the TVC valve system inspected by your KOMATSU distributor.
CALL	Error indicating that operation cannot be continued	Place the machine in a safe posture, then have it inspected immediately by your KOMATSU distributor.
In the case where the monitor will not display error codes and work equipment operation and swing operation cannot be carried out.		Have the machine inspected immediately by your KOMATSU distributor.

(*) For detail of operating the pump override switch and the swing override switch, refer to "Switches (3-42)".

4. Maintenance



WARNING

Please read and make sure that you understand the safety volume before reading this section.

4.1 Guides to maintenance

Do not carry out any inspection and maintenance operation that is not given in this manual.

Perform maintenance work on hard, flat ground.

Check service meter:

Check the service meter reading every day to see if the time has come for any necessary maintenance to be carried out.

KOMATSU genuine replacement parts:

Use KOMATSU genuine parts specified in the Parts Book as replacement parts.

KOMATSU genuine oils:

Use KOMATSU genuine oils and grease. Choose oils and grease with proper viscosities specified for ambient temperature.

Always use clean washer fluid:

Use automobile window washer fluid and be careful not to let any dirt get into it.

Always use clean oil and grease:

Use clean oil and grease. Also, keep containers of the oil and grease clean. Keep foreign materials away from oil and grease.

Keeping the machine clean:

Always keep the machine clean. This makes it easier to find parts causing problems. Keep in particular grease fittings, breathers and oil level gauges clean and avoid foreign matter from getting in them.

Be careful of hot water and oil:

Draining hot oil and coolant and removing their filters immediately after the engine stops is hazardous. Allow the engine to cool.

If the oil has to be drained when it is cold, warm up the oil to a suitable temperature (approx. 20°C - 40°C) before draining it.

Checking foreign material in drained oil and on filter:

After oil is changed or filters are replaced, check the oil and filters for metallic particles and foreign material. If large quantities of metallic particles or foreign material are found, consult your KOMATSU distributor.

Fuel strainer:

If your machine is equipped with a fuel strainer, do not remove it while fueling.

Oil change:

Check or change oils in the places where dust is scarce to keep foreign materials away from oils.

Warning tag:

Attach the warning tag to the starting switch or other appropriate control lever to avoid someone who is not aware of the circumstances from starting the engine.

Obey precautions:

During the operation, always obey the precautions on the safety label attached to the machine.

Welding instructions:

- Turn off the engine starting switch.
- Do not apply more than 200 V continuously.
- Connect grounding cable within 1 m from the area to be welded.
- Avoid seals or bearings from being between the area to be welded and the position of grounding
- Do not use the area around the work equipment pins or the hydraulic cylinders as the grounding point.

Fire prevention:

Use nonflammable cleaner or light oil for cleaning parts. Keep flame or cigarette light away from light oil.

Clamp faces:

When O-rings or gaskets are removed, clean the clamp faces and replace the O-rings and gaskets with new ones. Be sure to fit O-rings and gaskets when assembling.

Objects in your pockets:

Keep your pockets free of loose objects which can fall out and drop into the machinery; especially when you work on the machinery while bending over it.

Checking undercarriage:

When working in rocky areas, check for damage to the undercarriage and for looseness, flaws, wear and damage in bolts and nuts.

Precautions when washing machine:

- Never spray steam or water directly on the connectors and mechatronics parts.
- Do not allow water to get on the monitors and controllers inside the operator's cab.
- Never spray steam or water directly at the radiator or oil cooler portions.

Precautions when filling radiator

When refilling the cooling system with fluid via the radiator cap, always ensure that the header tank of the radiator is full prior to operating the machine.

Pre-and post-work checks:

Before starting work in mud, rain, snow or at seashore, check plugs and valves for tightness. Wash the machine immediately after the work to protect components from rusting. Lubricate components more frequently than usual.

Be sure to lubricate work equipment pins daily if they are submerged in water.

Dusty worksites:

When working at dusty worksites, do as follows:

- Inspect the air cleaner clogging monitor to see whether the air cleaner is blocked. Clean the air cleaner at shorter intervals than specified.
- Clean the radiator core frequently to avoid clogging.
- Clean and replace the fuel filter frequently.
- Clean electrical components, especially the starting motor and alternator, to avoid accumulation of dust.

Avoid mixing oils:

Never mix oils of different brands. If the only oil available is different brand from the type that is currently installed in the machine, then drain all of the current oil and replace it with the new oil (which is a different brand).

4.2 Outline of service

- Use KOMATSU genuine parts for replacement.
- When changing or adding oil, do not use a different type of oil.
- Unless otherwise specified, the oil and coolant used at the time of shipment from the factory are as shown in the table below.

Item	Kind of fluid
Engine oil pan	KOMATSU EO15W-40DH
Swing machinery case PTO gear case	SAE 30
Hydraulic tank	Shell Tellus 46 SAE 10 W
Fuel tank	ASTM D975 No.2 ASTM D975 No.1 is used for the winter season (October to March)
Radiator	Supercoolant AF-NAC (Density: 30% or above) (KOMATSU genuine parts)
Axles, Hubs	Fuchs Titan Hydra 20W-40
Transmission	BP Tractran 8
	BP Terrac Super Transmission S

4.2.1 Outline of oil, fuel, coolant

Oil

- Oil is used in the engine and work equipment under extreme severe conditions (high temperature, high pressure), and it deteriorates with use.
Always use oil that matches the grade and temperature for use given in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Even if the oil is not dirty, always replace the oil after the specified interval.
- Always be careful when handling oil to prevent any ingress of impurities (water, metal particles, dirt, etc.).
The majority of problems with machine are caused by the entry of such impurities. Take particular care not to let any impurities get in when storing or adding oil.
- Never mix oils of different grades or brands.
- Always add the specified amount of oil.
Having too much oil or too little oil are both causes of problems.
- If the oil in the work equipment is not clear, there is probably water or air getting into the circuit. In such cases, please contact your KOMATSU distributor.
- When changing the oil, always replace the related filters at the same time.
- We recommend you to have an analysis made of the oil periodically to check the condition of the machine. For those who wish to use this service, please contact your KOMATSU distributor.

Fuel

- The fuel pump is a precision instrument, and if fuel containing water or dirt is used, it cannot work properly.
- Be extremely careful not to let impurities get in when storing or adding fuel.
- Always use the fuel specified in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.
- Fuel may congeal depending on the temperature when it is used (particularly in low temperature below -15°C), so it is necessary to change to a fuel that matches the temperature.
- To prevent the moisture in the air from condensing and forming water inside the fuel tank, always fill the fuel tank after completing the day's work.
- Before starting the engine, or when 10 minutes have passed after adding fuel, drain the sediment and water from the fuel tank.
- If the engine runs out of fuel, or if the filters have been replaced, it is necessary to bleed air from the circuit.
- If there is any foreign material in the fuel tank, wash the tank and fuel system.

NOTE

Always use diesel oil for the fuel.

To ensure good fuel consumption characteristics and exhaust gas characteristics, the engine mounted on this machine uses an electronically controlled high-pressure fuel injection device. This device requires high precision parts and lubrication, so if low viscosity fuel with low lubricating ability is used, the durability may drop markedly.

Coolant

- The coolant has the important function of preventing corrosion as well as preventing freezing.

Even in the areas where freezing is not an issue, the use of antifreeze coolant is essential.

KOMATSU machines are supplied with KOMATSU Supercoolant (AF-NAC). KOMATSU Supercoolant (AF-NAC) has excellent anticorrosion, antifreeze and cooling properties and can be used continuously for 2 years or 4000 hours.

KOMATSU Supercoolant (AF-NAC) is strongly recommended wherever available.

- When using KOMATSU Supercoolant (AF-NAC), there is no need to use a corrosion resistor.

For details, see "Precautions when filling radiator (4-4)".

- When diluting the antifreeze coolant, use distilled water or tap water (soft water).

Natural water, such as a river water or well water (hard water), contains large amounts of minerals (calcium, magnesium, etc.), and this makes it easier for scale to form inside the engine or radiator. Once scale is deposited inside the engine or radiator, it is extremely difficult to remove. It also causes overheating due to poor heat exchange, so when you dilute the coolant, we recommend that you use water with an overall hardness of less than 100 PPM.

- When using antifreeze, always observe the precautions given in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.
- Antifreeze coolant is flammable, so be extremely careful not to expose it to flame or fire.
- The ratio of Supercoolant (AF-NAC) to water differs according to the ambient temperature.

For details of the mixing proportions, see "Clean inside of cooling system (4-39)".

Supercoolant (AF-NAC) may be supplied already mixed. In such cases, never dilute with water.

- If the engine overheats, wait for the engine to cool before adding coolant.
- If the coolant level is low, it will cause overheating and will also cause problems with corrosion from the air in the coolant.

Grease

- Grease is used to prevent twisting and noise at the joints.
- This construction equipment is used under heavy-duty conditions. Always use the recommended grease and follow the change intervals and recommended ambient temperatures given in this Operation and Maintenance Manual.
- The nipples not included in the maintenance section are nipples for overhaul, so they do not need grease.

When using the machine after it has been in storage for a long time, carry out greasing if there is any stiffness or screeching.

- Always wipe off all of the old grease that is pushed out when greasing.

Be particularly careful to wipe off the old grease in places where sand or dirt sticking in the grease would cause wear of the rotating parts.

Carrying out KOWA (KOMATSU Oil Wear Analysis)

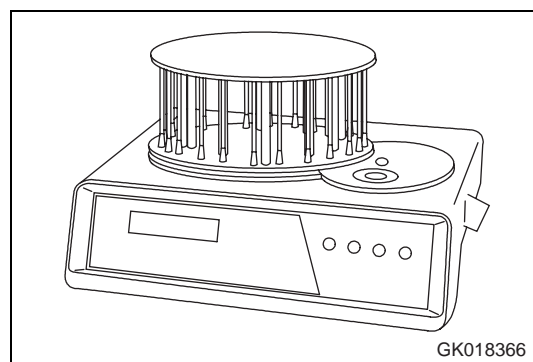
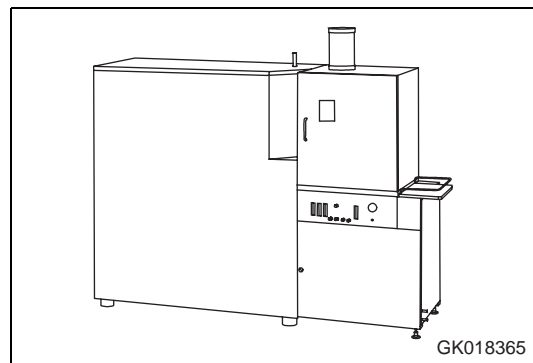
KOWA is a maintenance service that makes it possible to prevent machine failures and down-time. With KOWA, the oil is periodically sampled and analyzed. This enables early detection of wear of the machine drive parts and other abnormalities.

Periodic use of KOWA makes the following possible:

- It enables abnormalities to be detected early, leading to reduction of repair costs and machine downtime.
- It enables repair schedules to be planned, leading to improved machine availability.

KOWA analysis items

- Analysis of metal wear particles
This uses an ICP (Inductively Coupled Plasma) analyzer to measure the density of metal wear particles in the oil.
- Measurement of particle quantity
This uses a PQI (Particle Quantifier Index) metre to measure the quantity of large iron particles in the oil.
- Others
Measurements are made of items such as the ratio of water or fuel in the oil, and the dynamic viscosity.



Oil sampling

- Sampling interval
 - 500 hours: Engine
 - 500 hours: Other components
- Precautions when sampling
 - Make sure that the oil is well mixed before sampling.
 - Carry out sampling regularly at fixed intervals.
 - Do not carry out sampling on rainy or windy days when water or dust can get into the oil.

For further details of KOWA, please contact your KOMATSU distributor.

Storing oil and fuel

- Keep indoors to prevent ingress of water, dirt, or other impurities.
- When keeping drums for a long period, put the drum on its side so that the filler port of the drum is at the side (to prevent moisture from being sucked in).
If drums have to be stored outside, cover them with a water-proof sheet or take other measures to protect them.
- To prevent any change in quality during long-term storage, be sure to use in the order of first in first out (use the oldest oil or fuel first).

Filters

- Filters are extremely important safety parts. They prevent impurities in the fuel and air circuits from entering important equipment and causing problems.
Replace all filters periodically. For details, see the Operation and Maintenance Manual.
However, when working in severe conditions, it is necessary to consider replacing the filters at shorter intervals according to the oil and fuel (sulphur content) being used.
- Never try to clean the filters (cartridge type) and use them again. Always replace with new filters.
- When replacing oil filters, check if any metal particles are stuck to the old filter. If any metal particles are found, please contact your KOMATSU distributor.
- Do not open packs of spare filters until just before they are to be used.
- Always use KOMATSU genuine filters.

4.2.2 Outline of electric system

- If the wiring gets wet or the insulation is damaged, there is a risk of short circuit in the electrical system. This could result in hazardous malfunction of the machine.
- Services relating to the electric system are (1) check of fan belt tension, (2) check of damage or wear in the fan belt and (3) check of battery fluid level.
- Never remove or disassemble any electric components installed in the machine.
- Never install any electric components other than those specified by KOMATSU.
- Be careful to keep the electric system free of water when washing the machine or when it rains.
- Since the controller for the control system may cause malfunction due to external wave interference, before installing a radio receiver and a walkie-talkie or citizen band, consult your KOMATSU distributor.
- When working on the seashore, carefully clean the electric system to prevent corrosion.
- When installing a car cooler or another electrical equipment, connect it to an independent power source connector. The optional power source must never be connected to the fuse, starting switch, or battery relay.

4.2.3 Outline of hydraulic system

- During operation and immediately after operation is ended, the temperature of the hydraulic system still remains high. In addition, high hydraulic pressure is applied to the system. Take care when inspecting and maintaining the hydraulic system.
 - Stop the machine on level ground, lower the bucket to the ground, then set so that there is no pressure applied to the cylinder circuit.
 - Always stop the engine.
 - Immediately after operations, the hydraulic oil and lubricating oil are at high temperature and high pressure, so wait for the oil temperature to go down before starting maintenance. Even when the temperature goes down, the circuit may still be under internal pressure, so when loosening the plug or screw, or the hose joint, do not stand in front of the part. Loosen it slowly to release the internal pressure before removing it.
 - When carrying out inspection or maintenance of the hydraulic circuit, always bleed the air from the hydraulic tank to remove the internal pressure.
- Periodic maintenance includes the inspection of the hydraulic oil level, replacement of the filter and refilling of hydraulic oil.
- When a high pressure hose, etc. is removed, check the O-ring for damage. If necessary, replace it.
- After the hydraulic filter element and strainer are cleaned or replaced, or after the hydraulic system is repaired or replaced or the hydraulic piping is removed, bleed air from the hydraulic circuit.
- The accumulators are charged with high-pressure nitrogen gas. Incorrect handling may be dangerous.

For the handling procedure, see "Handling accumulators (3-94)".

4.3 Wear parts list

Wear parts such as the filter element, bucket tooth, etc. are to be replaced at the time of periodic maintenance or before their abrasion limits.

The wear parts should be changed correctly in order to use the machine economically. For part change, KOMATSU genuine parts of excellent quality should be used.

When ordering parts, please check the part number in the parts book.

The parts in parentheses are to be replaced at the same time.

Item	Part No.	Part Name	Q'ty	Replacement frequency
Hydraulic oil filter	20Y-60-31171 (07000-15160)	Element (strainer) (O-ring)	1 (1)	Every 1000 hours service
Air cleaner	600-185-4100	Element assembly	1	When required
Engine oil filter	6736-51-5142	Cartridge	1	Every 500 hours service
Hydraulic tank filter	207-60-71181	Element (filter)	1	Every 500 hours service
Fuel pre-filter	600-319-3610	Cartridge	1	Every 500 hours service
Hydraulic tank breather	20Y-60-21470 (07000-15195)	Element (O-ring)	1 (1)	Every 1000 hours service
Fuel main filter	6754-71-6130	Cartridge	1	Every 1000 hours service
Steer/brake hydraulic in line strainer	421-43-27920	Strainer	1	Every 2000 hours service
Steer/brake hydraulic tank strainer	20G-60-K1230	Strainer	1	Every 5000 hours service

4.4 Use fuel, coolant and lubricants according to ambient temperature

- KOMATSU genuine oils are adjusted to maintain the reliability and durability of KOMATSU construction equipment and components.

In order to keep your machine in the best conditioner for long periods of time, it is essential to follow the instructions in this Operation and Maintenance Manual.

- Failure to follow these recommendations may result in shortened life or excess wear of the engine, power train, cooling system, and/or other components.
- Commercially available lubricant additives may be good for the machine, but they may also cause harm. KOMATSU does not recommend any commercially available lubricant additive.
- Use the oil recommended according to the ambient temperature in the chart below.
- Specified capacity means the total amount of oil including the oil in the tank and the piping. Refill capacity means the amount of oil needed to refill the system during inspection and maintenance.
- When starting the engine in ambient temperatures below 0°C, do not use EO30DH, even if the daytime temperature rises to 10°C. Always use multigrade oil such as the recommended EO10W30DH or EO15W40DH.
- When the fuel sulphur content is high, change the oil according to the following table.

NOTE

Only use KOMATSU genuine engine oil.

Fuel sulfur content	Engine oil change interval
Less than 0.5	500 hours
0.5 - 1.0	250 hours
1.0 and up	Consult KOMATSU distributor

4.4.1 Proper selection of fuel, coolant and lubricants

Reservoir		Kind of fluid	Ambient temperature		Type of oil	Capacity	
			Min.	Max		Specified	Refill
Engine oil pan		Engine oil API CH-4 or API CI-4 or JASO DH-1	-30°C	30°C	(Note.1) Komatsu EOS0W30	26 litre	26 litre
			-25°C	40°C	(Note.1) Komatsu EOS5W40		
			-20°C	40°C	Komatsu EO10W30DH		
			-15°C	50°C	Komatsu EO15W40DH		
			0°C	40°C	Komatsu EO30DH		
Swing machinery case		Engine oil	-20°C	40°C	SAE 30	4.5 litre	4.5 litre
PTO gear case		Engine oil	-20°C	40°C	SAE 30	0.75 litre	0.75 litre
Hydraulic system		Bio-oil	-20°C	30°C	Panolin HLP synth 46	160 litre	120 litre
		Hydr-oil	-20°C	50°C	Komatsu H046-HM		
		Engine oil	-25°C	40°C	Komatsu EOS5W40		
			-20°C	40°C	Komatsu EO10W30DH		
			-15°C	40°C	Komatsu EO15W40DH		
Grease fitting		Hyper grease (Note 2)	-20°C	50°C	G2-T, G2-TE		
		Lithium EP grease	-20°C	50°C	G2-LI		
Fuel tank		Diesel fuel	-10°C -30°C	40°C -10°C	ASTM D975 No. 2 ASTM D975 No 1 (for winter use)	325 litre	
Cooling system		Supercoolant AF-NAC	-30°C	50°C	AF-NAC (Note.3)	17.6 litre	
Axles	Front	Multi oil	-30°C	40°C	Fuchs titan hydra 20W-40	11.5 litre	
	Rear					9.5 litre	
Transmission and clutch					BP tractran 8	4.85 litre	4.85 litre
Hubs	Front		-20°C	40°C	Fuchs titan hydra 20W-40	2.5 litre	
	Rear					2.0 litre	

Abbreviations:

ASTM: American Society of Testing and Material

SAE: Society of Automotive Engineers

API: American Petroleum Institute

JASO: Japanese Automobile Standards Organization

NOTE

Always use diesel oil for the fuel.

To ensure good fuel consumption characteristics and exhaust gas characteristics, the engine mounted on this machine uses an electronically controlled high-pressure fuel injection device. This device requires high precision parts and lubrication, so if low viscosity fuel with low lubricating ability is used, the durability may drop markedly.

Note 1:

HTHS (High-Temperature High-Shear Viscosity 150°C), specified by ASTM D4741 must be equal to or higher than 3.5 mPa·S. KOMATSU EOS0W30 and EOS5W40 are the most suitable oils.

Note 2:

Hypergrease (G2-T, G2-TE) is high-performance grease.

When it is necessary to improve the lubricating ability of the grease in order to prevent squeaking of pins and bushings, the use of G2-T or G2-TE is recommended.

Note 3:

Supercoolant (AF-NAC)

1. The coolant has the important function of preventing corrosion as well as preventing freezing.

Even in the areas where freezing is not an issue, the use of antifreeze coolant is essential.

KOMATSU machines are supplied with KOMATSU Supercoolant (AF-NAC). KOMATSU Supercoolant (AF-NAC) has excellent anticorrosion, antifreeze and cooling properties and can be used continuously for 2 years or 4000 hours.

KOMATSU Supercoolant (AF-NAC) is strongly recommended wherever available.

2. For details of the ratio when diluting super coolant with water, see "Clean inside of cooling system (4-39)".

Supercoolant AF-NAC may be supplied in premix. In this case, always top off with premix solution (never dilute with water).

When the machine is shipped from the factory, it may be filled with coolant containing 30% or more Supercoolant (AF-NAC). In this case, no adjustment is needed for temperatures down to -10°C (never dilute with water).

3. To maintain the anticorrosion properties of Supercoolant (AF-NAC), always keep the density of Supercoolant between 30% and 68%.

4.5 Recommended brands, recommended quality for products other than KOMATSU genuine oil

When using commercially available oils other than KOMATSU genuine oil, or when checking the latest specifications, refer to the KOMATSU web page or consult your KOMATSU distributor.

4.6 Standard tightening torques for bolts and nuts

4.6.1 Introduction of necessary tools

The following tools are needed when carrying out maintenance.
(These tools are provided in tool box)

No.	Name of tool	Part No.	Remarks
1.	Wrench	09014-10200	Applicable width across flats 36 mm - 41 mm
2.	Filter wrench	09019-08035	
3.	Grease pump	07950-10450	For greasing work
4.	Nozzle	07951-41017	
5.	Grease cartridge	07950-90403	(Lithium base grease: 400 g)
6.	Pinch bar	09055-10390	
7.	Socket	20E-98-K1110	33 mm drive socket

If any of the above tools are broken, please order them from your KOMATSU distributor.

4.6.2 Tightening torque specifications

Tightening torque list

⚠ CAUTION

If nuts, bolts, or other parts are not tightened to the specified torque, it will cause looseness or damage to the tightened parts, and this will cause failure of the machine or problems with operation.

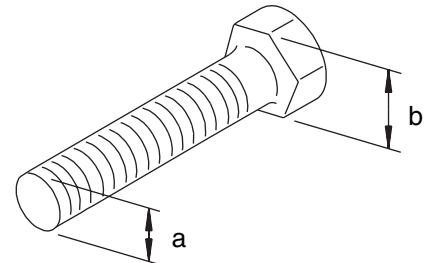
Pay careful attention when tightening parts.

Unless otherwise specified, tighten the metric nuts and bolts to the torque shown in the table below.

The tightening torque is determined by the width across the flats of the nut and bolt.

If it is necessary to replace any nut or bolt, use a KOMATSU genuine part of the same size as the part that was replaced.

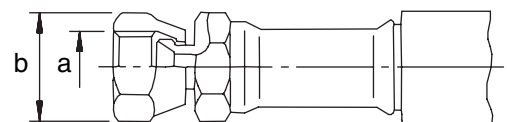
Thread diameter a (mm)	Width across flat b (mm)	Tightening torque			
		Target value		Service limit	
		Nm	kgfm	Nm	kgfm
6	10	13.2	1.35	11.8 - 14.7	1.2 - 1.5
8	13	31	3.2	27 - 34	2.8 - 3.5
10	17	66	6.7	59 - 74	6.0 - 7.5
12	19	11	11.5	98 - 123	10.0 - 12.5
14	22	177	18	157 - 196	16.0 - 20.0
16	24	279	28.5	245 - 309	25.0 - 31.5
18	27	382	39	343 - 425	35.0 - 43.5
20	30	549	56	490 - 608	50.0 - 62.0
22	32	745	76	662 - 829	67.5 - 84.5
24	36	927	94.5	824 - 1030	84.0 - 105.0
27	41	1320	135.0	1180 - 1470	120.0 - 150.0
30	46	1720	175.0	1520 - 1910	155.0 - 195.0
33	50	2210	225.0	1960 - 2450	200.0 - 250.0
36	55	2750	280.0	2450 - 3040	250.0 - 310.0
39	60	3280	335.0	2890 - 3630	295.0 - 370.0



GK018367

Apply the following table for Hydraulic Hose

Thread diameter a (mm)	Width across flat b (mm)	Tightening torque			
		Target value		Service limit	
		Nm	kgfm	Nm	kgfm
14	19	29.4	3.0	27.5 - 39.2	2.8 - 4.0
18	24	78.5	8.0	58.8 - 98.1	6.0 - 10.0
22	27	117.7	12.0	88.3 - 137.3	9.0 - 14.0
24	32	147.1	15.0	117.7 - 176.5	12.0 - 18.0
30	36	215.7	22.0	176.5 - 245.2	18.0 - 25.0
33	41	255.0	26.0	215.7 - 284.4	22.0 - 29.0



GK018368

4.7 Periodic replacement of safety critical parts

To ensure safety at all times when operating or driving the machine, the user of the machine must always carry out periodic maintenance. In addition, to further improve safety, the user should also carry out periodic replacement of the parts given in the table. These parts are particularly closely connected to safety and fire prevention.

With these parts, the materials easily wear or deteriorate. However, it is difficult to judge the condition of the parts simply by periodic maintenance, so they should always be replaced after a fixed time has passed, regardless of their condition. This is necessary to ensure that they always maintain their function completely.

However, if these parts show any abnormality before the replacement interval has passed, they should be repaired or replaced immediately.

If the hose clamps show any deterioration, such as deformation or cracking, replace the clamps at the same time as the hoses.

When replacing the hoses, always replace the O-rings, gaskets, and other such parts at the same time.

Ask your KOMATSU distributor to replace the safety critical parts.

Interval	Check items
Check before starting	Oil leakage from the connections or the clamps of fuel and hydraulic hose.
Monthly inspection	Oil leakage from the connections or the clamps of fuel and hydraulic hose. Damage (crack, wear and tear) of fuel and hydraulic hose.
Yearly inspection	Oil leakage from the connections or the clamps of fuel and hydraulic hose. Interference, deformation, deterioration and damage (crack, wear and tear) of fuel and hydraulic hose.

4.7.1 Safety critical parts

No.	Safety critical parts for periodic replacement	Q'ty	Replacement interval
1.	Fuel hose (Fuel tank - Water separator)	1	Every 2 years or 4000 hours, whichever comes sooner
2.	Fuel hose (Water separator - Fuel pump)	1	
3.	Fuel return hose (Fuel injection pump - Fuel tank)	1	
4.	Spill hose (Engine output connector - Fuel tank)	1	
5.	Pump outlet hose (Pump - Control valve)	2	
6.	Work equipment hose (Boom cylinder inlet)	4	
7.	Work equipment hose (Bucket cylinder line - Boom foot section)	2	
8.	Work equipment hose (Bucket cylinder inlet)	2	
9.	Work equipment hose (Arm cylinder line - Boom foot section)	2	
10.	Work equipment hose (Arm cylinder inlet)	2	
11.	Additional attachment line hose (Boom foot section)	2	
12.	Additional attachment line hose (Boom top section)	2	
13.	Swing line hose (Swing motor inlet)	2	
14.	Main suction hose	1	
15.	Heater hose	2	
16.	Travel line hose (Control valve - Swivel joint)	4	
17.	Travel line hose (Swivel joint - Travel motor)	4	
18.	Seat belt	1	Every 3 years

4.8 Maintenance schedule chart

Service procedure		see page
4.11.1	Initial 50 hours maintenance (only after the first 50 hours)	
	Check and tighten wheel nuts	4-31
4.11.2	Initial 250 hours maintenance (only after the first 250 hours)	
	Replace fuel pre-filter cartridge	4-31
	Change oil in transmission, hubs and axles	4-31
4.11.3	Initial 500 hours maintenance (only after the first 500 hours)	
	Replace fuel main filter cartridge	4-32
4.11.4	When required	
	Check, clean and replace air cleaner element	4-33
	Clean inside of cooling system	4-39
	Clean inside of cooling system	4-40
	Checking coolant level	4-43
	Check the fan	4-46
	Check and tighten wheel nuts	4-46
	Check electrical intake air heater	4-47
	Check alternator	4-47
	Check start motor	4-48
	Replace bucket side cutters	4-48
	Replace bucket teeth	4-49
	Adjust bucket clearance	4-53
	Check window washer fluid level, add fluid	4-54
	Check and adjust air conditioner	4-55
	Drain engine breather oil catcher	4-56
4.11.5	Check before starting	
	Check coolant level, add water	4-57
	Check oil level in engine oil pan, add oil	4-57
	Check fuel level, add fuel	4-58
	Check oil level in hydraulic tank, add oil	4-59
	Check air cleaner for clogging	4-60
	Check electric wiring	4-60
	Check for water and sediment in sedimentor. drain water and sediment	4-60
4.11.6	Every 50 hours service	
	Drain water and sediment from fuel tank	4-61

Service procedure	see page
4.11.7 Every 100 hours service	
Lubricating	4-62
• Arm bucket coupling pin (1 point).	4-63
• Arm link coupling pin (1 point).	4-63
• Boom arm coupling pin (1point).	4-63
• Bucket cylinder foot pin (1 point).	4-63
• Arm cylinder rod end (1 point).	4-63
• Arm cylinder foot pin (1 point).	4-63
• Boom cylinder rod end (2 points).	4-63
• 1st to 2nd boom pin (3 point).	4-63
• Boom foot pin (2 points).	4-63
• Boom adjust cylinder foot pin (1 point).	4-63
• Boom cylinder foot pin (2 points).	4-63
• Lubricate swing circle (2 points).	4-63
• Link coupling pin (2 point).	4-64
• Bucket cylinder rod end (1 point).	4-64
• Bucket-Link coupling pin (2 points).	4-64
• Outrigger cylinder foot pin (2 or 4 points).	4-64
• Outrigger cylinder rod end (2 or 4 points).	4-64
• Outrigger leg pivot (2 or 4 points).	4-64
• Outrigger foot pivot (2 or 4 points).	4-64
• Propshaft (3 points).	4-64
• Axle pivot (2 point) (with outriggers attached)	4-64
• Axle pivot (2 point) (without outriggers)	4-65
• Hub pivot (4 points)	4-65
• Steer links (4 points)	4-65
• Axle pads (if noise heard grease as necessary) (2 points)	4-65
• Cylinder mount (2 points)	4-66
• Top link blade pivot pin (2 points)	4-66
• Lower link blade pivot (2 points)	4-66
• Dozer blade cylinder rod end (2 points)	4-66
• Lower link pivot pin (2 points)	4-66
• Top link pivot pin (2 points)	4-66
• Cylinder guard pin (remove and apply coating of grease)	4-66
Cleaning fresh air filter	4-67

Service procedure	see page
4.11.8 Every 250 hours service	
Check oil level in swing machinery case, add oil	4-68
Check oil level in wheel hubs, add oil (front axle)	4-69
Check oil level in wheel hubs, add oil (rear axle)	4-69
Check oil level in axles, add oil	4-70
Check oil level in transmission, add oil	4-70
Check level of battery electrolyte	4-71
Belts, general	4-72
Check fan belt tension, adjust tension	4-73
Check, adjust tension of air conditioner compressor belt	4-74
4.11.9 Every 500 hours service	
Replace fuel pre-filter cartridge	4-75
Check swing pinion grease level, add grease	4-78
Change oil in engine oil pan, replace engine oil filter cartridge	4-78
Clean and inspect radiator fins, oil cooler fins and condenser fins	4-80
Clean internal and external air filters of air conditioner system	4-81
Cleaning recirculated air filter	4-81
Replace hydraulic tank breather element	4-82
Check condition of main valve rubber mounts	4-82
4.11.10 Every 1000 hours service	
Replace hydraulic filter element	4-83
Change oil in swing machinery case	4-85
Replace fuel main filter cartridge	4-86
Check all tightening points of engine exhaust pipe clamps	4-87
Check oil level in damper case, add oil	4-88
Check all tightening parts of turbocharger.	4-89
Check play of turbocharger rotor.	4-89
Check and adjust valve clearance	4-89
Check fan belt tensioner bearing belt and fan hub	4-89
Check fan belt tension and replace fan belt	4-89
Change oil in axles	4-90
Change oil in hubs	4-91
Change oil in transmission assembly	4-92
Change oil in damper	4-92

Service procedure	see page
4.11.11 Every 2000 hours service	
Clean hydraulic tank strainer	4-93
Cleaning the strainer of the brake filter	4-94
Checking charge pressure of nitrogen gas in accumulator (for control circuit)	4-95
Checking function of accumulator	4-96
Method of releasing pressure in hydraulic circuit	4-97
Clean, check turbocharger	4-98
Check alternator, starting motor	4-98
Change antifreeze	4-98
Check and adjust valve clearance	4-98
4.11.12 Every 4000 hours service	
Check water pump	4-99
Check vibration damper	4-99
Replace accumulator (for control circuit)	4-100
Check for looseness of high-pressure piping clamp, hardening of rubber	4-101
Check for missing fuel spray prevention cap, hardening of rubber	4-101
Check operating condition of compressor	4-102
4.11.13 Every 5000 hours service	
Change oil in hydraulic tank and replace steer/brake circuit strainer	4-103

NOTE

The oil change interval is reduced when bio oil is used, see "Change oil in hydraulic tank and replace steer/brake circuit strainer (4-103)".

The oil change interval is reduced when a breaker is used, see "When using breaker (6-19)".

4.9 Key to lubrication points

1.	Engine oil	check level change oil
2.	Hydraulic oil	check level change oil
3.	Boom cylinder foot pin	grease
3.	Boom foot pin	grease
3.	Boom cylinder rod end	grease
3.	Arm cylinder foot pin	grease
3.	Adjust cylinder foot pin	grease
3.	Adjust cylinder rod end	grease
3.	1st boom - 2nd boom coupling pin	grease
3.	Swing circle	grease
4.	Boom arm coupling pin	grease
4.	Arm cylinder rod end	grease
4.	Bucket cylinder foot pin	grease
4.	Arm-bucket coupling pin	grease
4.	Arm-link coupling pin	grease
5.	Bucket cylinder rod end	grease
6.	Link coupling pin	grease
7.	Bucket-link coupling pin	grease
8.	Swing machinery oil	grease
9.	Steer links	grease
10.	Axle pads	grease
11.	King pin (top and bottom)	grease

12.	Propshaft	grease
13.	Top link pins	grease
14.	Cylinder mounts	grease
15.	Lower link pins	grease
16.	Outrigger foot pivot	grease
17.	Outrigger cylinder foot pin	grease
18.	Outrigger cylinder rod end	grease
19.	Outrigger leg pivot	grease
20.	Transmission oil	check level change oil
21.	Wheel hubs (front)	check level change oil
22.	Wheel hubs (rear)	check level change oil
23.	Front axle	check level change oil
24.	Rear axle	check level change oil
25.	Axle pivot	grease
26.	Swing pinion	grease change oil
27.	Engine oil filter	change filter
28.	Fuel filters	change filter
29.	Hydraulic oil	change filter
30.	Hydraulic filter element	change filter
31.	Damper case	check level change oil
32.	Steer/brake in line hydraulic filter	change filter
33.	Steer/brake hydraulic tank strainer	change strainer

KOMATSU PW180-7

10h	1		✓	
	2		✓	

100h	3	●		
	4	●		
	5	●		
	6	●		
	7	●		

250h	8		●	
	9	●		
	10	●		
	11	●		
	12	●		
	13	●		
	14	●		
	15	●		
	16	●		
	17	●		
	18	●		
	19	●		
	20		●	
	21		●	
	22		●	
	23		●	
	24		●	
	25	●		

500h	1		●	
	26	●		●
	27			●
	28			●
	29			●

1000h	8		✓	
	20		✓	
	21		✓	
	22		✓	
	23		✓	
	24		✓	
	30		✓	
	31		✓	●

2000h	32			●
-------	----	--	--	---

5000h	2		●	
	33			●

20J-S95-11370

GK018369

4.10 Maintenance interval for hydraulic breaker

For machine equipped with a hydraulic breaker, the hydraulic oil deteriorates faster than for normal bucket digging operations, so set the maintenance intervals as follows.

- Replace hydraulic filter element

On a new machine, replace the element after the first 100 to 150 hours, then carry out further replacement of the element according to the table on the right.

- Change oil in hydraulic tank

Change the oil according to the table on the right.

- Replacing additional filter element for breaker (option)

Use a guideline of 250 hours for the breaker (operating ratio for the breaker: 50% or more), and replace the element according to the table on the right.

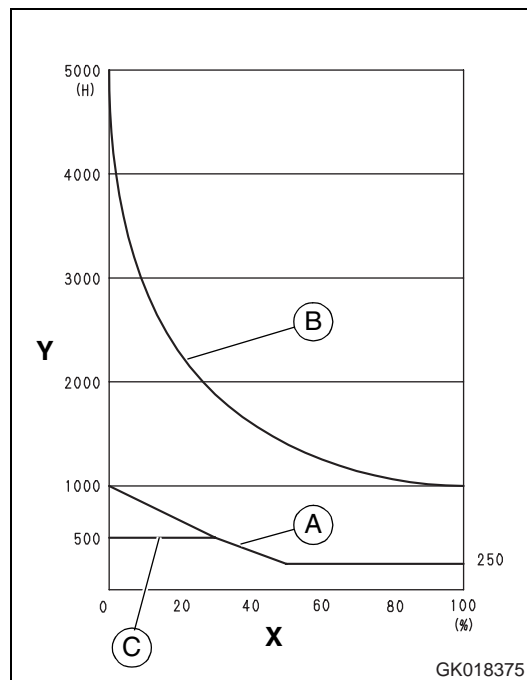
X: Breaker operating ratio (%)

Y: Replacement interval (H)

(A): Hydraulic filter element

(B): Hydraulic oil

(C): Additional filter element



REMARK

Breaker operating ratio 100% means that only the breaker is used.

Breaker operating ratio 0% means that the breaker is not used.

4.11 Maintenance procedure

4.11.1 Initial 50 hours maintenance (only after the first 50 hours)

Check and tighten wheel nuts

Order for tightening

Tighten the bolts in the order shown in the diagram.

Torque to 80 kgm.



4.11.2 Initial 250 hours maintenance (only after the first 250 hours)

Carry out the following maintenance only after the first 250 hours of operation on new machines.

Replace fuel pre-filter cartridge

For details of the method of replacing or maintaining, see "Replace fuel pre-filter cartridge (4-31)".

Change oil in transmission, hubs and axles

For details of the method for changing the oil in transmission see "Check oil level in wheel hubs, add oil (rear axle) (4-69)", or see "Check oil level in wheel hubs, add oil (front axle) (4-69)".

For details of the method for changing the oil in transmission see "Check oil level in axles, add oil (4-70)".

For details of the method for changing the oil in transmission see "Check oil level in transmission, add oil (4-70)".

4.11.3 Initial 500 hours maintenance (only after the first 500 hours)

Carry out the following maintenance only after the first 500 hours of operation on new machines.

Replace fuel main filter cartridge

For details of the method of replacing or maintaining, see "Replace fuel pre-filter cartridge (4-31)".

Special tools are needed for the inspection and maintenance, so please contact your KOMATSU distributor to have this work carried out.

4.11.4 When required

Check, clean and replace air cleaner element



WARNING

- If inspection, cleaning, or maintenance is carried out with the engine running, dirt will enter the engine and cause damage to the engine. Stop the engine before carrying out these operations.
- When using compressed air, there is danger of dirt flying and causing personal injury. Wear protective glasses, dust mask, or other protective equipment.
- When removing the outer element from the air cleaner body, it is dangerous to pull it out by force. When working at high places or where the foothold is poor, be careful not to fall because of the reaction when pulling out the outer element.

Checking

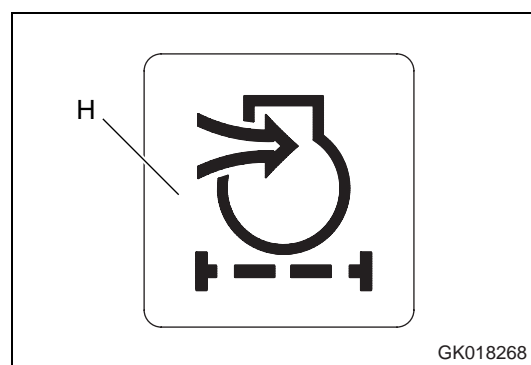
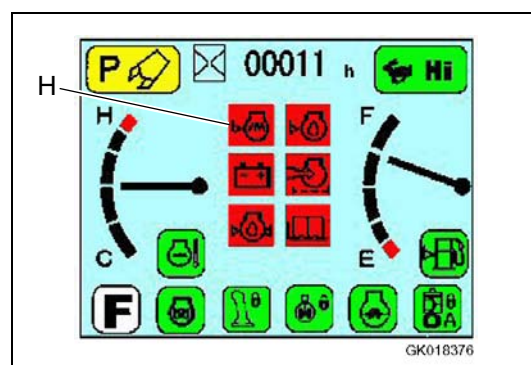
If air cleaner clogging monitor (H) on the monitor panel lights up, clean the air cleaner element.

Replacing

- Replacing element, O-ring
If one year has passed since installing the element or if air cleaner clogging monitor (H) on the monitor panel flashes immediately after the element is cleaned, replace the outer element (5), inner element (6), and O-ring (8).
- Replacing evacuator valve
Replace it if it is damaged or the rubber is markedly deformed.

NOTE

Do not clean the air cleaner element until the air cleaner clogging symbol on the monitor panel flashes. If the element is cleaned frequently before the clogging monitor flashes, the air cleaner will not be able to display its performance fully, and the cleaning efficiency will also go down. In addition, during the cleaning operation, more dirt stuck to the element will fall inside the inner element.



Outer Element – Clean

1. Open the door at the left side of the machine, remove 3 hooks (2), then remove cover (6).

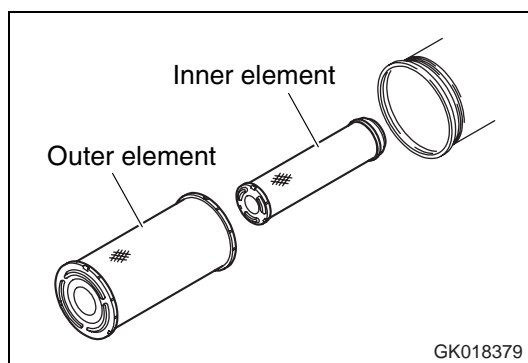
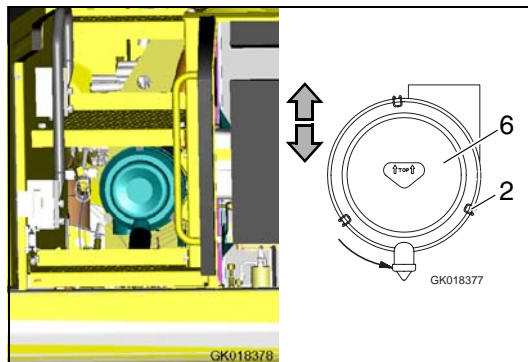
NOTE

Before and after cleaning the element, do not leave or keep it in direct sunlight.

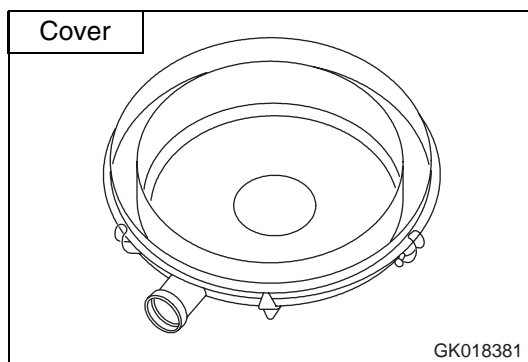
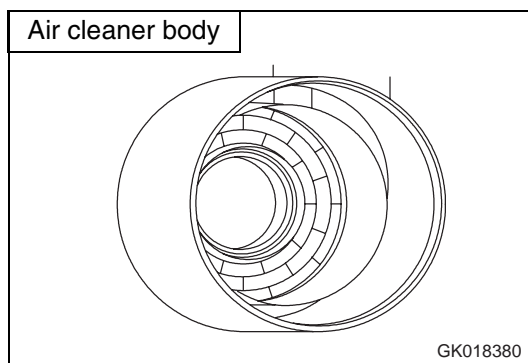
2. Hold the outer element, rock it lightly up and down and to the left and right, and rotate the element to the left and right to pull it out.

NOTE

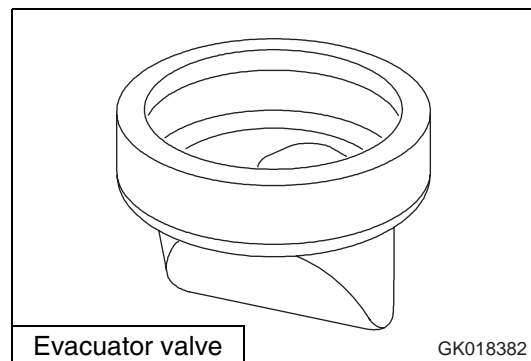
- Never remove the inner element. It will allow dirt to enter and cause failure of the engine.
- Do not use a screwdriver or other tool.



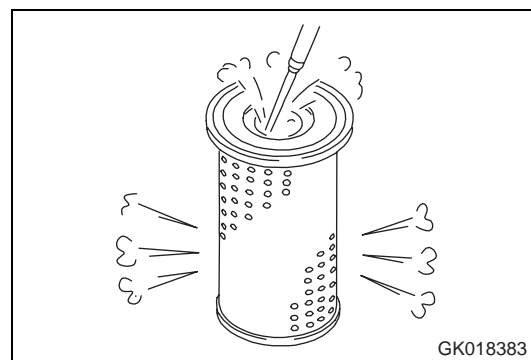
3. After removing the outer element, cover the air connector inside the air cleaner body with a clean cloth or tape to prevent dirt or dust from entering.
4. Wipe off or brush off the dirt stuck to cover (6) and the inside of the air cleaner body.



5. Remove any dirt or dust that is accumulated in the evacuator valve installed to cover.

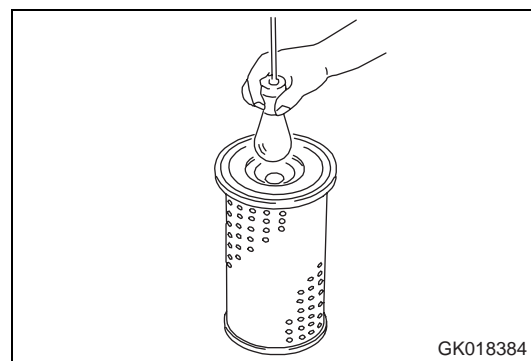


6. Direct dry compressed air (less than 0.69 MPa (7 kgf/cm²)) to the outer element from inside along its folds, then direct it from outside along its folds and again from inside.
 - Remove one seal from the element whenever the element has been cleaned.
 - Replace the outer element which has been cleaned 5 times repeatedly or used throughout a year. Replace the inner element at the same time.
 - Replace both inner and outer elements when the monitor lamp (H) lights up soon after installing the cleaned outer element even though it has not been cleaned 5 times.
 - When replacing the element, new stick-on-seal (A) is packed in the same box as the element. Stick the seal in the position.
7. Remove the cloth or tape cover installed in Step 3.
8. If small holes or thin cracks are found on the element when it is checked by shining a light through it after cleaning, replace the element.



NOTE

- *When cleaning the element, do not hit or beat it against anything.*
- *Do not use an element whose folds or gasket or seal are damaged.*



Air Cleaner Element – Install

NOTE

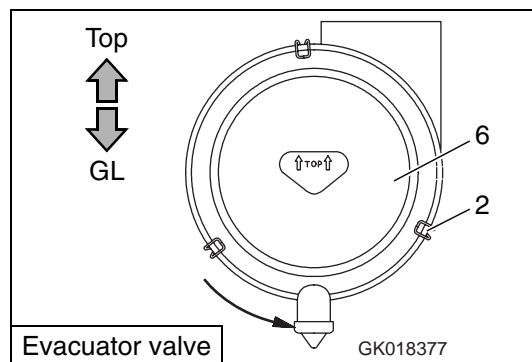
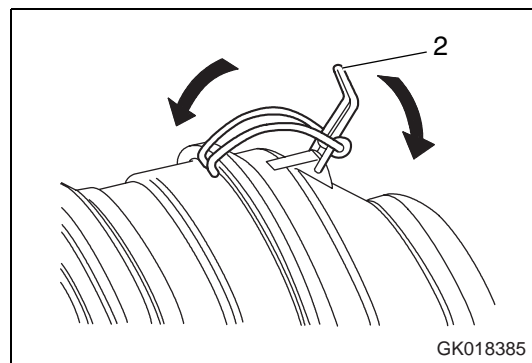
- *Do not use any damaged gasket or seal or element with damaged pleats.*
 - *Cleaning the element or O-ring after one year has passed and using them again will cause problems. Replace them with new parts.*
 - *The seal portion on imitation parts lacks precision, and allows the entry of dust, which leads to damage of the engine. Do not use such imitation parts.*
 - *Do not run the engine with the inner element removed. It will cause damage to the engine.*
1. Check that there is no dirt or oil stuck to the seal portion of the new element or cleaned element. Wipe off any dirt or oil.
 2. When the outer element has been removed, check that the inner element has not come out of position and is not at an angle. If at an angle, insert your hand and push it in straight.
 3. Push the outer element in straight with your hand when installing it to the air cleaner body.
If the element is held and rocked lightly up and down and to the left and right while pushing it in, the element can be inserted easily.

NOTE

When inserting the element, if the rubber at the tip is swollen or the outer element is not pushed in straight, and cover (6) is assembled by force to hook (2), there is danger that the hook and air cleaner body may be damaged, so be careful when assembling.

4. Install cover (6) as follows.

- Align cover (6) with the element.
- Hook the tip of hook (2) to the protruding part of the air cleaner body and lock it in position.
- Install cover (6) so that the evacuator is facing the ground.
- When cover (6) is installed, check that the clearance between the air cleaner body and cover (6) is not too large.
If it is too large, install again.

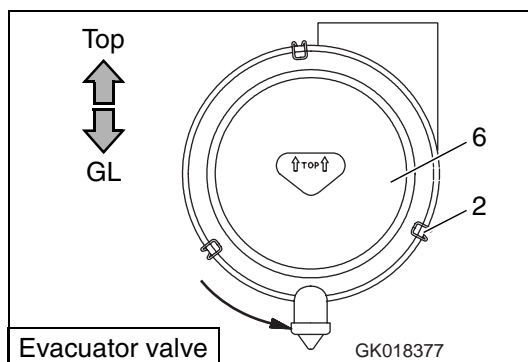
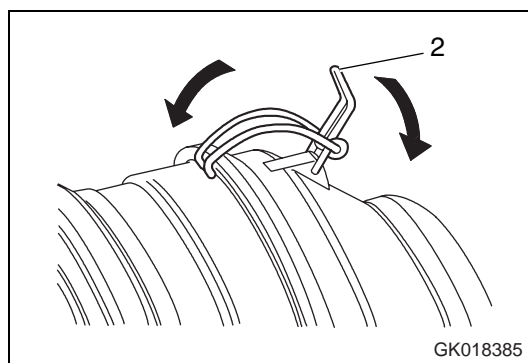
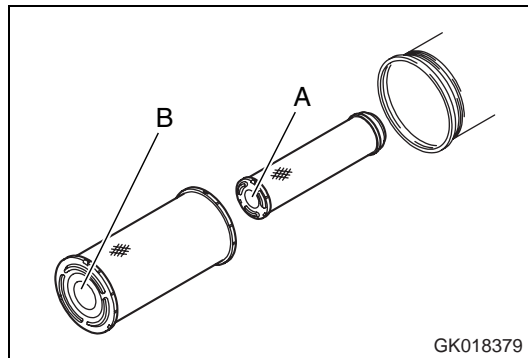


Air Cleaner Inner Element – Replace

1. First remove the outer element, and then remove the inner element.
2. Cover the air connector side (outlet side) with a clean cloth or tape.
3. Clean the air cleaner body interior, then remove the cover from the air intake port in step 2.
4. Install a new inner element to the connector, then tighten. Install the outer element.

NOTE

- Be sure to install the air cleaner element facing in the correct direction.
 - Install so that the bottom of the air cleaner element cylinder (face where no hole is drilled) A, B is at air cleaner cover (3) end. If the direction of installation is mistaken there is danger that it will cause breakage of the air cleaner element or serious damage to the engine.
 - The inner element must not be cleaned and used again. When replacing the outer element, replace the inner element at the same time.
5. Set the outer element in position, then lock cover (6) with hooks (2).



Clean inside of cooling system



WARNING

- Soon after the engine has been stopped, the coolant is hot and can cause personal injury. Allow the engine to cool before draining water.
- Since cleaning is performed while the engine is running, it is very dangerous to enter the rear side of the machine as the machine may suddenly start moving. If the under cover is left removed, it may interfere with the fan. While the engine is running, never enter the rearside of the machine.
- Never remove the radiator cap when the engine is at operating temperature. At operating temperature, the coolant is under pressure. Steam blowing up from the radiator could cause personal injury. Allow the engine to cool until the radiator filler cap is cool enough to touch with your hand. Remove the filler cap slowly to allow pressure to be relieved.
- Opening Engine Compartment Hood
Whenever access is required to the engine compartment via the hood, always ensure that the work equipment is tipped as far forward as possible.
This will ensure that the hoses mounted on the work equipment do not impede the engine hood when it is opened/closed.

General

The cooling system operates under pressure which is controlled by the pressure relief valve in the radiator cap.

The belt-driven water pump circulates the coolant through the engine block, cylinder heads, radiator and engine oil cooler. Circulation is controlled by the thermostat which by-passes coolant flow around the radiator until the engine reaches operating temperature.

Proper cooling is possible only when the system is sealed, the radiator cap gasket is in good condition, the pressure relief valve and thermostat are operating properly. The system is free of coolant and air flow restrictions and the system is filled to the proper level.

Selection and maintenance of the engine coolant is important to long engine life. The following information provides recommendations for selecting the engine coolant, maintaining the coolant inhibitors and servicing the cooling system.

The system operates successfully with a water/antifreeze mixture or inhibited/conditioned water as the coolant. Water alone allows rust, scale deposits, and corrosion to occur within the system.

Every 2000 hours, the cooling system should be drained, flushed, and refilled as described in this section.

Clean inside of cooling system



WARNING

- Immediately after the engine is stopped, the coolant is at a high temperature and the radiator is under high internal pressure.
If the cap is removed to drain the coolant in this condition, there is a hazard of burns. Wait for the temperature to go down, then turn the cap slowly to release the pressure before removing it.
- Cleaning is carried out with the engine running. When standing up or leaving the operator's seat, raise the safety lock lever to the LOCK position.
- For details of starting the engine, see "Check before starting engine (3-96)" and "Starting engine (3-112)" in the Operation section.
- There is danger of touching the fan if the undercover is left removed.
Never enter behind the machine when the engine is running.

Clean the inside of the cooling system, change the coolant and replace the corrosion resistor agent KI according to the table below.

Kind of coolant	Cleaning inside of cooling system and changing coolant	Adding corrosion resistor agent KI
Permanent type antifreeze (All season type)	Every year (autumn) or every 2000 hours whichever comes first	Every 1000 hours and when cleaning the inside of the cooling system and when changing coolant.
Non permanent type antifreeze containing ethylene glycol (winter, one season type)	Every 6 months (spring, autumn) (Drain antifreeze in spring, add antifreeze in autumn)	
When not using antifreeze	Every 6 months or every 1000 hours whichever comes first	

Stop the machine on level ground when cleaning or changing the coolant.

Use a permanent type of antifreeze.

If, for some reason, it is impossible to use permanent type antifreeze, use an antifreeze containing ethylene glycol.

Super Coolant (AF-ACL) has an anti-corrosion effect as well as an antifreeze effect.

The ratio of antifreeze to water depends on the ambient temperature, but to obtain the corrosion resistance effect, a minimum ratio of 30% by volume is necessary.

In areas where the water is hard, add KOMATSU genuine corrosion resistor agent KI. One packet of corrosion resistor agent contains 100g. The standard density of the mixture should be 7 g/litres.

When deciding the ratio of antifreeze to water, check the lowest temperature in the past, and decide from the mixing rate table given below. For details, see "Mixing rate of water and antifreeze (4-41)".

It is actually better to estimate a temperature about 10°C lower when deciding the mixing rate.

Mixing rate of water and antifreeze

Min. atmospheric temperature	°C	-5	-10	-15	-20	-25	-30	-35	-40
Amount of antifreeze	litres	4.0	5.3	6.3	7.2	8.1	8.8	9.5	10.2
Amount of water	litres	13.6	12.3	11.3	10.4	9.5	8.8	8.1	7.4
Volume ratio (%)		23	30	36	41	46	50	54	58



WARNING

Antifreeze is flammable, so keep it away from any flame.

- Use city water for the cooling water.
If river water, well water or other such water supply must be used, contact your KOMATSU distributor.
- We recommend use of an antifreeze density gauge to control the mixing proportions.



WARNING

When removing drain plug, avoid pouring coolant on your-self.

Removal



WARNING

- Hot, scalding coolant can spray out if the radiator cap is removed suddenly. Relieve system pressure by slowly turning the cap to the first notch or lifting the safety lever (option). Remove the cap only after the pressure is relieved.
- Use extreme caution when adding coolant to the radiator to avoid being burned. Wear gloves and goggles and keep face away from the filler neck.

To remove the cap, turn the cap to the left, or counterclockwise up to the safety stop until the cap is free to be removed.

Installation

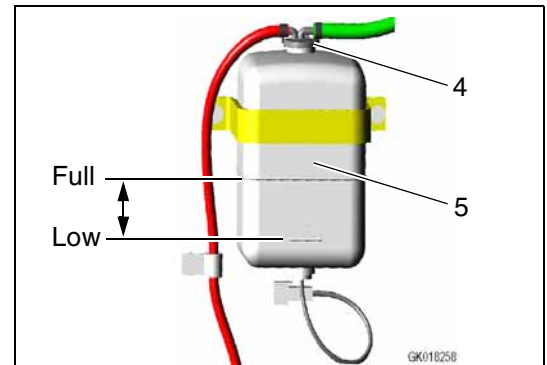
When installing the cap, the gasket and contacting surfaces must be clean. Turn the cap to the right, or clockwise until snug.

Checking coolant level

REMARK

Check the coolant level before starting the engine.

1. Check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank (5). The coolant level should be between the FULL and LOW markings on the tank.
2. If coolant must be added, remove the reserve tank cap (4) and add coolant until level is between the FULL and LOW markings on the tank.



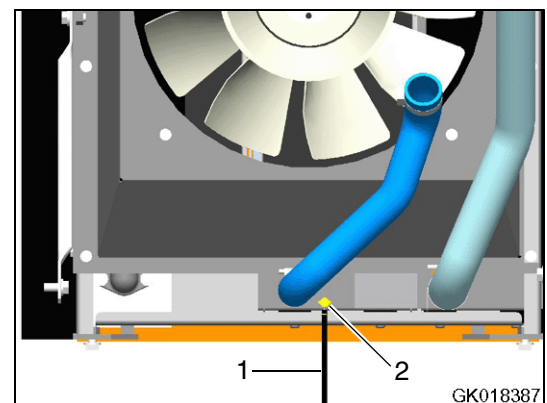
Draining the system



WARNING

- Before working on the engine or electrical system, disconnect the negative (ground) battery cable. Tag the cable and controls to warn against starting.
- Wear hand and eye protection when draining hot fluids.

1. Run the engine until it reaches operating temperature then stop the engine.
2. Remove the radiator cap as outlined in this section.
3. Remove the undercover. Place a container below drain hose (1).
4. Loosen the coolant drain plug located on the bottom of the radiator (2).
5. Allow the system to completely drain into the container.
6. Do not let drain outlets clog up during draining.
7. Tighten the radiator drain Plug (2).
8. Replace undercover.



Cleaning the system

At 2000 hours clean the cooling system as follows:

1. Drain the system into a suitable container.
Refer to "Draining the system (4-43)".
2. Drain and clean the reserve tank.
3. Close the radiator plug.
4. Fill the system with clean water, refer to "Filling the system (4-44)" and add a flushing compound that is compatible with aluminium. Flush the system in accordance with the instructions furnished with the compound.
5. After flushing, rinsing and completely draining the system. Refill with clean coolant.
Refer to "Filling the system (4-44)".

Filling the system

REMARK

Be sure to fill the heater and heater supply lines with fresh coolant, even if the heater is not in use (warm weather). Leaving the heater core empty causes corrosion in the heater.

1. Be sure the radiator drain is closed and tightened.
2. Fill the cooling system to maximum capacity. Fill with anti-freeze.

For details, see "Coolant (4-9)".

For details, see "Precautions when filling radiator (4-4)".
3. Start engine and run until normal operating temperature is reached. Add coolant when needed to keep proper level in reserve tank.
4. After all air is removed and level remains fixed, install the radiator cap.
5. Fill the radiator reserve tank with coolant until level is between the FULL and LOW markings on the tank.

Refilling an overheated system

Do not add coolant to the radiator of an overheated engine unless absolutely necessary. However, if necessary:

1. Remove the radiator cap.

Refer to "Precautions when handling at high temperatures (2-6)".

2. Be sure the drain plug is closed.

WARNING

Use extreme caution when adding coolant to a hot radiator to avoid being burned. Wear gloves and goggles and keep away from the filler neck.

3. Add coolant to the radiator slowly until full.

For details, see "Precautions when filling radiator (4-4)".

4. Remove the reserve tank cap.
5. Add coolant to the reserve tank until the level is between FULL and LOW marking on the tank.
6. When coolant level remains fixed between the FULL and LOW on the reserve tank, install the reserve tank cap.
7. Run the engine.
8. Stop the engine.
9. Check for leaks and coolant level in the reserve tank.

Cleaning the radiator

Minor internal sludge accumulations will be removed when flushing the cooling system.

When internal accumulations are found that cannot be removed by normal flushing methods, consult your distributor.

Remove all bugs and dirt from the radiator core, using air or water under pressure. Direct the flow through the core, opposite to the normal direction of air flow.

Thermostat

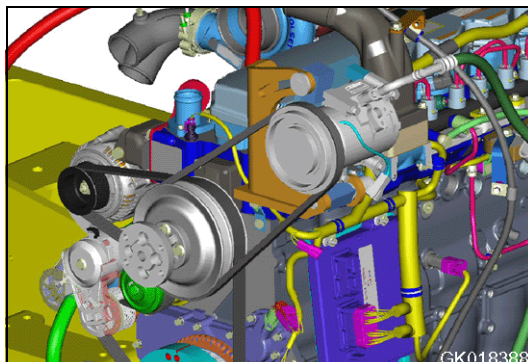
Removal

1. Drain the cooling system.
Refer to "Draining the system (4-43)" in this section.
2. Remove the components and housing to access the thermostat.
3. Remove the thermostat and clean all gasket material from either mating surfaces.

Installation

1. Install new thermostat with new gasket.
2. Re-install thermostat housing and all component parts.
3. Fill the cooling system.

Refer to "Filling the system (4-44)" in this section.



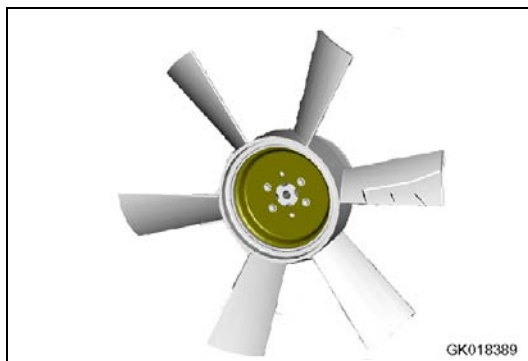
Check the fan



WARNING

Personal injury can result from a fan blade failure. Never pull or pry on the fan. This can damage the fan blade(s) and cause fan failure.

Check the fan for cracks, loose rivets (for metal fans) and bent or loose blades. Make sure it is securely mounted. Tighten the cap screws if loose. Replace damaged fans.



Check and tighten wheel nuts

Order for tightening

Tighten the bolts in the order shown in the diagram.

Torque to 80 kgm.



Check electrical intake air heater

Before the start of the cold season (once a year), contact your KOMATSU distributor to have the electrical intake air heater repaired or checked for dirt or disconnections.

Check alternator

General

The alternator requires no lubrication since its bearings are factory lubricated for life and require attention only at the time of major overhaul.

The alternator is equipped with an integral, transistorized voltage regulator. If the alternator fails to operate properly, consult your distributor.

Precautions

REMARK

The unit electrical system is negative ground. Be CERTAIN the ground polarity is correct when:

- *Installing a new battery.*
- *Connecting a battery charger.*
- *Using a booster.*

Failure to observe proper polarity will result in damage to the alternator.

NEVER use a fast charger as a booster to start the engine.

NEVER unhook a battery terminal while the engine is running.

NEVER disconnect the alternator cable while the engine is running.

REMARK

Do not short across or ground any terminals of the alternator. Do not connect any cable to the "R" terminal on the alternator. This will result in severe damage to the harness and radiator.

Check start motor

Under normal operating conditions, no maintenance is required between engine overhaul periods. At the time of engine overhaul, the motor should be disassembled, inspected, cleaned and tested. Contact your distributor for detailed information.

Replace bucket side cutters



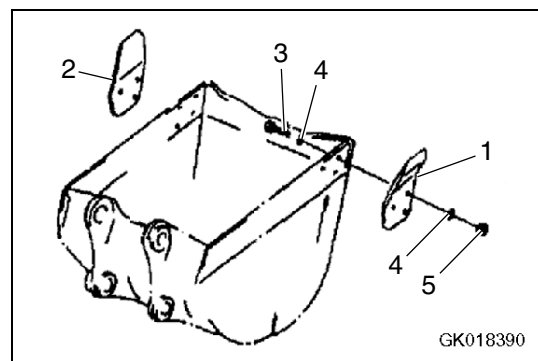
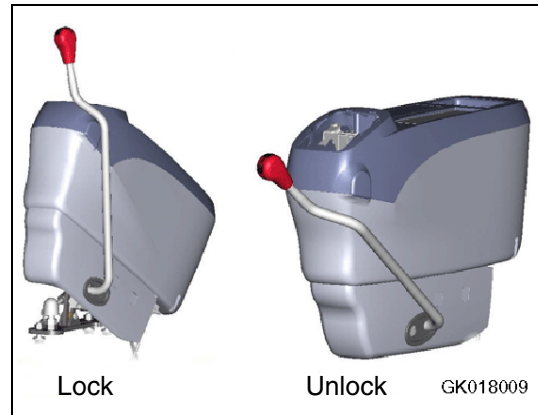
WARNING

- It is dangerous if the work equipment moves by mistake when the teeth are being replaced. Set the work equipment in a stable condition, then stop the engine and apply the control lever pad safety lock.
- In certain conditions it may be possible for the safety lock lever to contact the left hand arm rest on the operator seat. To avoid this, always ensure that the left hand arm rest is stowed in the fully up position before operating the safety lock lever.

1. Loosen nuts (5) and bolts (3) and remove side cutters (1) and (2).
2. Clean cutter mounting face on bucket side plate.
3. Check nuts and bolts and replace if damaged.
4. Fit new side cutters.
5. Tighten bolts to 110 ± 10 kgm.

REMARK

When side cutters are not being used shrouds should be fitted to prevent wear of the bucket side plate.



Replace bucket teeth

Replace bucket teeth (vertical pin type)

Replace the point before the adapter starts to wear.



WARNING

- It is dangerous if the work equipment moves by mistake when the teeth are being replaced. Set the work equipment in a stable position, then stop the engine and apply the locks securely to the levers.
- If the locking pin is knocked out with excessive force, there is a hazard that the pin may fly out. Check that there is no one in the surrounding area.
- Pieces will often fly during the replacement operation, so wear safety glasses, gloves, and other protective equipment.

1. To make it possible to knock out the pin of tooth (1), set the bottom surface of the bucket on a block, check that the work equipment is in a stable condition, raise the safety lock lever to the LOCK position.

Set so that the bottom face of the bucket is horizontal.

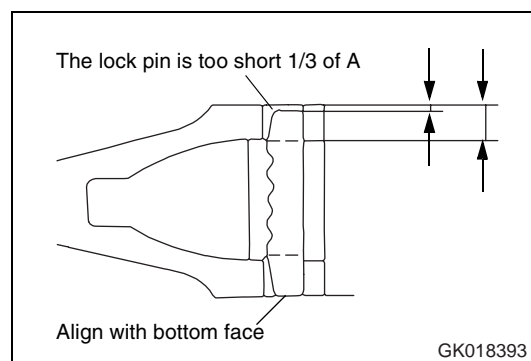
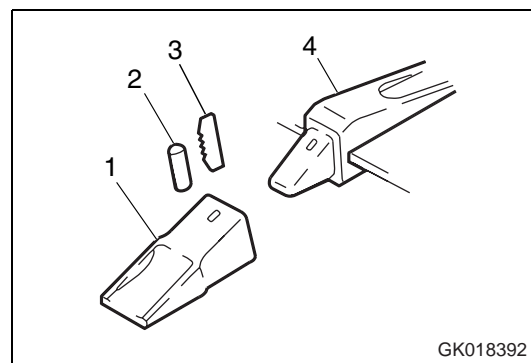
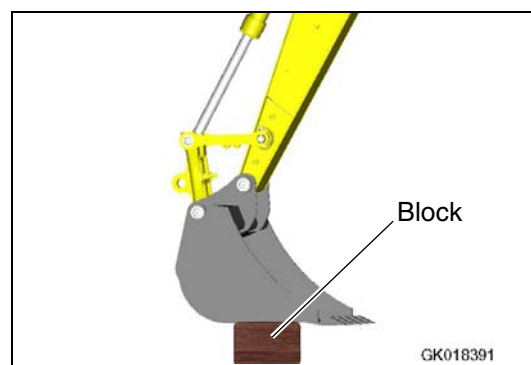
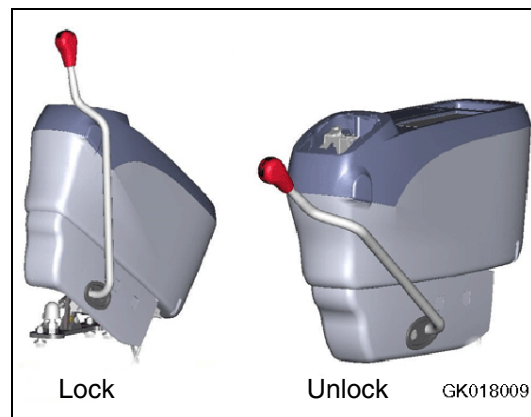
2. Use a hammer and drift to knock out lock pin (2). (If the drift is set against rubber pin lock (3) when it is hit, the rubber pin lock may break. Set it against the back of the pin.)

3. After removing lock pin (2) and rubber pin lock (3), check them.

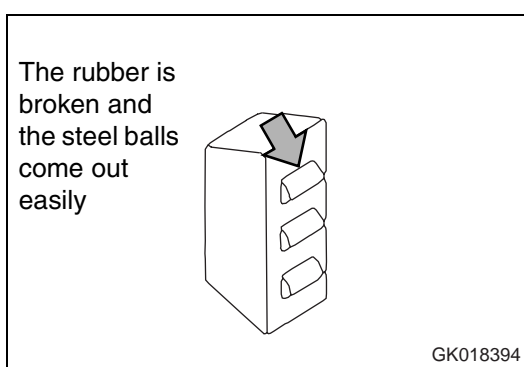
REMARK

If lock pins and rubber pin locks with the following defects are used, the teeth may come off the bucket. Replace them with new ones.

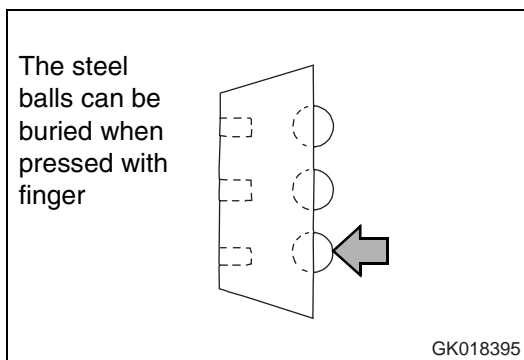
The lock pin is too short.



The rubber of the rubber pin lock is torn, and the steel balls may come out.



The steel balls are buried when they are pressed by hand.

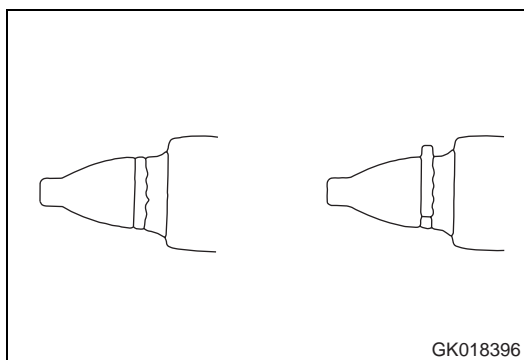


4. Clean the surface of adapter (4) and remove the soil with a knife.

5. Use your hand or a hammer to push rubber pin lock (3) into the hole of the adapter.

When doing this, be careful that the rubber pin lock does not fly out from the adapter surface.

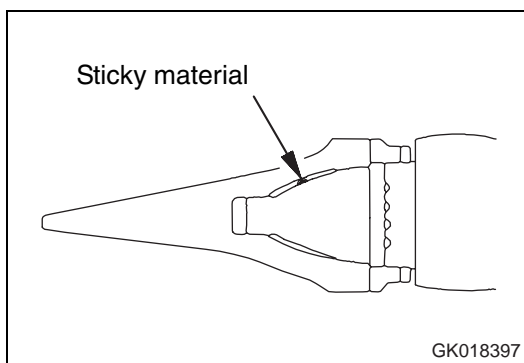
6. Clean the inside of teeth (1), then install it to adapter (4). If there is mud affixed to it or if there are other protrusions, the teeth will not enter the adapter properly, and there will not be proper contact at the mating portion.



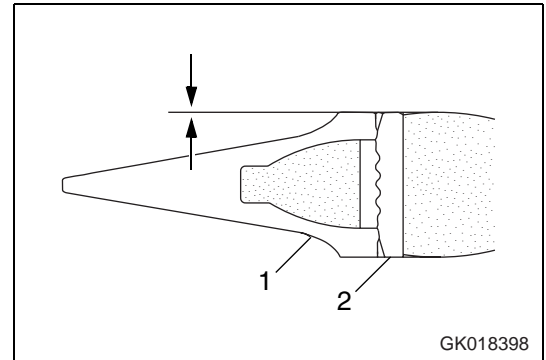
7. Fit tooth (1) to adapter (4), and confirm that when the tooth is pressed strongly, the rear face of the hole for the pin of the tooth (1) is at the same level as the rear face of the hole for the pin of the adapter.

If the rear face of the hole for the pin of tooth (1) is protruding to the front from the rear face of the pin hole for adapter (4), do not try to knock the pin in.

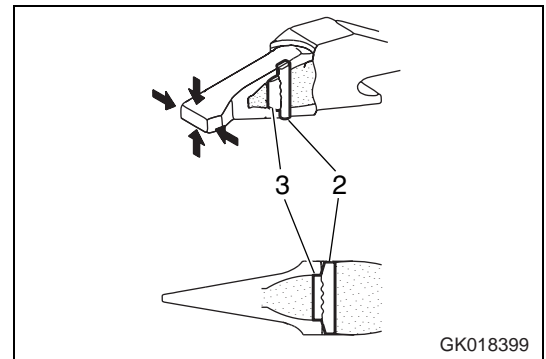
There is something preventing tooth (1) from entering adapter (4) fully, so remove the obstruction. When tooth (1) enters adapter (4) fully, knock in lock pin (2).



8. Insert lock pin (2) in the hole of the tooth and hit it until its top is the same level as the surface of tooth (1).



9. After replacing a bucket tooth, check the following.
- After the lock pin has been knocked in completely, check that it is secured by the point and surface.
 - Lightly hit lock pin (2) in the reverse direction from which it was hit in.
 - Lightly hit the tip of the point from above and below, and hit its sides from right and left.
 - Confirm that rubber pin lock (3) and lock pin (2) are set as shown in the figure.



The life of the teeth can be lengthened and the frequency of their replacement can be reduced by turning them upside down so that they will wear evenly.

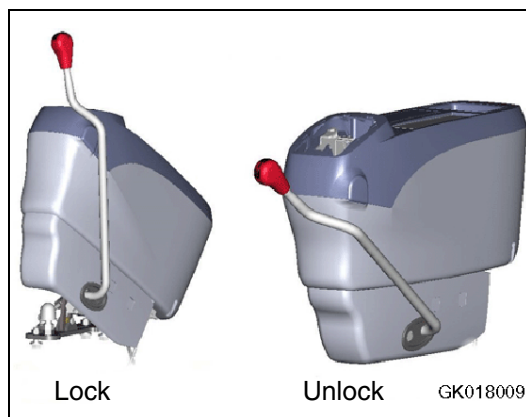
Replace the rubber pin lock and locking pin at the same time as replacing the teeth. This makes it possible to prevent the teeth from falling out.

Replace bucket teeth (Horizontal pin type)

Replace the point before the wear reaches the adapter.

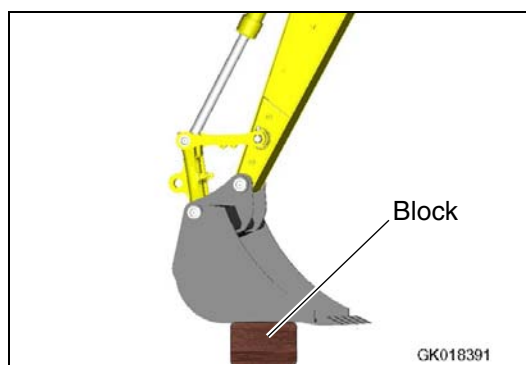
**WARNING**

- It is dangerous if the work equipment moves by mistake when the teeth are being replaced. Set the work equipment in a stable position, then stop the engine and raise the safety lock lever to the LOCK position.
- If the locking pin is knocked out with excessive force, there is a hazard that the pin may fly out. Check that there is no one in the surrounding area.
- Pieces will often fly during the replacement operation, so wear safety glasses, gloves, and other protective equipment.

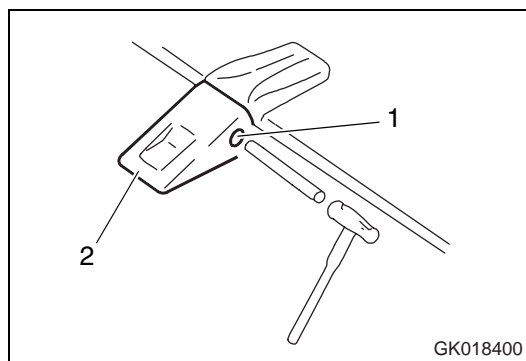


1. Set the bottom of the bucket on a block to make it possible to remove pin (1), check that the work equipment is stable, then raise the safety lock lever to the LOCK position.

Set so that the bottom of the bucket is horizontal.

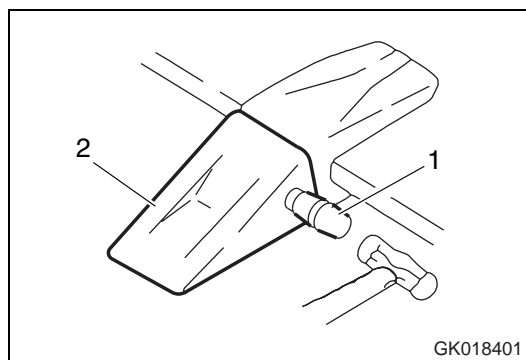


2. Place a bar on the pin head and strike the bar with a hammer to knock out pin (1). Remove tooth (2).

**REMARK**

Use a round bar with a smaller diameter than that of the pin.

3. Clean the mounting face. Fit a new tooth (2) in the adapter, push in pin (1) partially by hand, then lock it with a hammer to install the tooth to the bucket.

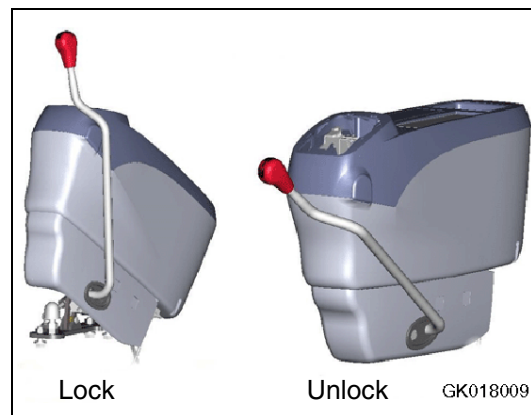


Adjust bucket clearance



WARNING

- It is dangerous if the work equipment moves by mistake when the clearance is being adjusted.
- Set the work equipment in a stable position, then stop the engine and raise the safety lock lever to the LOCK position.
- In certain conditions it may be possible for the safety lock lever to contact the left hand arm rest on the operator seat. to avoid this, always ensure that the left hand arm rest is stowed in the fully up position before operating the safety lock lever.



1. Set the work equipment to the position shown in the diagram at right, stop the engine and raise the safety lock lever to the LOCK position.

2. Shift O-ring (1) of the linkage and measure the amount of play "a".

Measurement is easier if you move the bucket to one side or the other so all the play can be measured in one place.
(In the diagram this is on the left-hand side)

Use a gap (clearance) gauge for easy and accurate measurement.

3. Loosen the four plate fixing bolts (2) and loosen plate (3).

Because it uses split shims, you can carry out the operation without removing the bolts entirely.

4. Remove shim (4) corresponding to the amount of play "a" measured above.

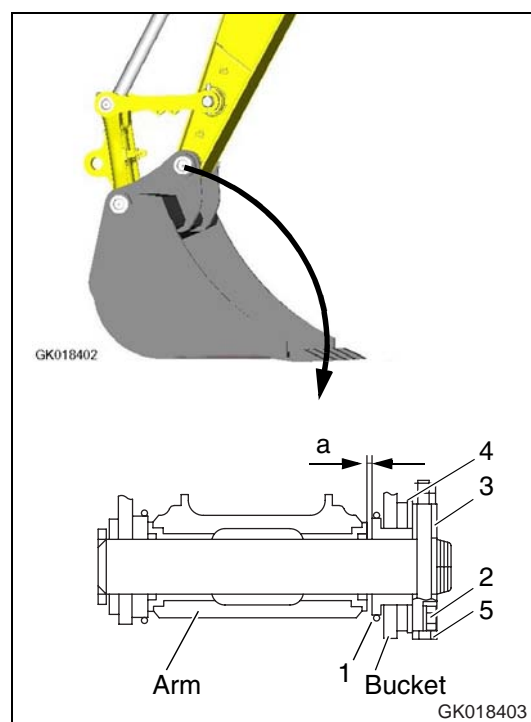
Example:

In the case of play of 3 mm, remove two 1.0 mm shims and one 0.5 mm shim. Play becomes 0.5 mm. For shim (4), two types of 1.0 mm and 0.5 mm are used.

When play a is smaller than one shim, do not carry out any maintenance.

5. Tighten the four bolts (2).

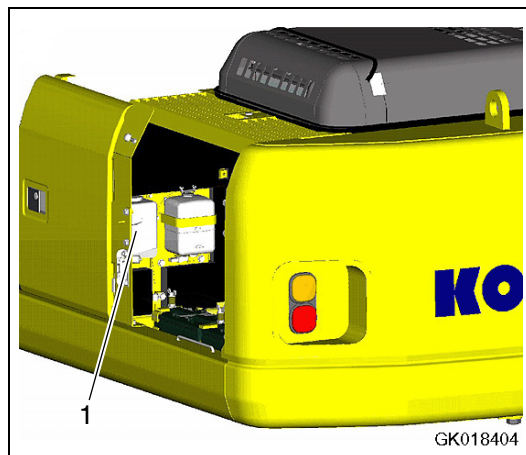
If the bolts (2) are too stiff to tighten, pull out pin stopper bolt (5) for easier tightening.



Check window washer fluid level, add fluid

If there is air in the window washer fluid, check the level of the fluid in window washer tank (1). Add automobile window washer fluid if necessary.

When adding fluid, be careful not to let any dust get in.



Mixture ratio of pure washer fluid and water

Since the ratio should be varied depending on atmospheric temperature, replenish washer fluid at the following mixture ratio, taking temperature into account.

Operation area and season	Mixture ratio	Freezing temperature
Normal	Pure washer fluid 1/3: water 2/3	- 10°C
Winter in cold region	Pure washer fluid 1/2: water 1/2	- 20°C
Winter in extremely cold region	Pure washer fluid	- 30°C

Pure washer fluid comes in two types: for -10°C (for general use) and for -30°C (cold regions).

Use pure washer fluid according to operation area and season.

Check and adjust air conditioner

Check level of refrigerant (Gas)

WARNING

If the refrigerant used in the cooler gets into your eyes or on your hands, it may cause loss of sight or frostbite. Do not touch the refrigerant. Never loosen any part of the refrigerant circuit. Do not bring any flame close to any point where the refrigerant gas is leaking.

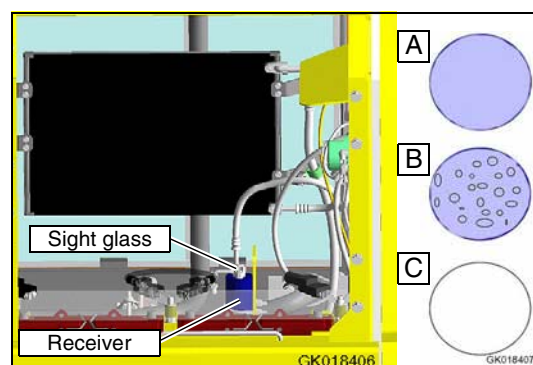
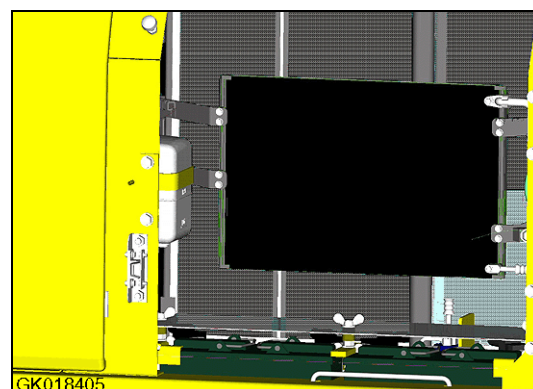
If there is a lack of refrigerant (Freon 134a), the cooling performance will be poor.

When operating the cooler at high speed, there should be no bubbles in the sight glass (inspection window) mounted on the condenser unit receiver.

- A. No bubbles in refrigerant flow: Correct
- B. Bubbles in refrigerant flow (bubbles continuously pass through): Refrigerant level low
- C. Colorless, transparent: No refrigerant

REMARK

When there are bubbles, the refrigerant gas level is low, so contact your refrigerant dealer to have refrigerant added. If the air conditioner is run with the refrigerant gas level low, it will cause damage to the compressor.



Check in off-season

When not being used for a long period, operate the cooler for 3 to 5 minutes once a month to supply lubricant to each component of the compressor.

Inspection and maintenance items list for cooler

Inspection and maintenance items	Contents	Maintenance interval
Refrigerant (gas)	Filling quantity	Twice a year; spring and autumn
Condenser	Clogging of fin	Every 500 hours
Compressor	Function	Every 4000 hours
V belt	Damage and tension	Every 250 hours
Blower motor and fan	Function (check for abnormal sound)	When required
Control mechanism	Function (check for normal function)	When required
Piping for connection	Installation condition looseness of tightening connection portions gas leakage, damage	When required

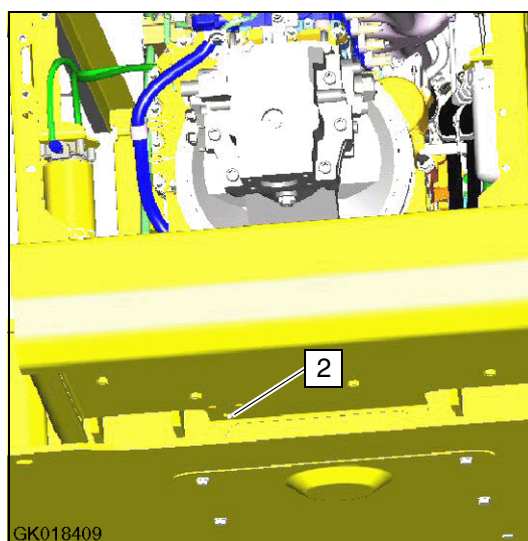
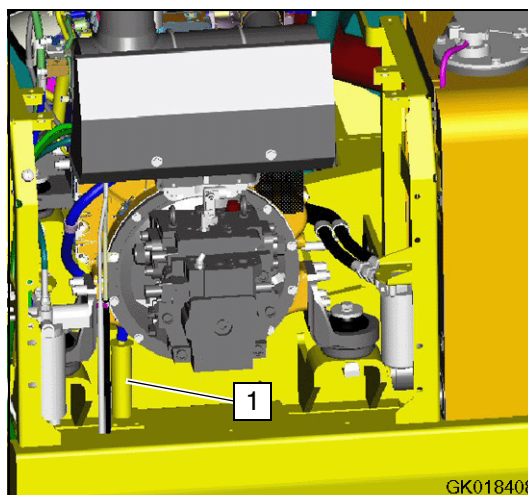
Drain engine breather oil catcher

Periodically drain oil from the engine breather catcher (1).

1. Remove plug (2).
2. When drained, replace plug (2).

REMARK

Drain oil at every 500 hour service.



4.11.5 Check before starting

Check coolant level, add water



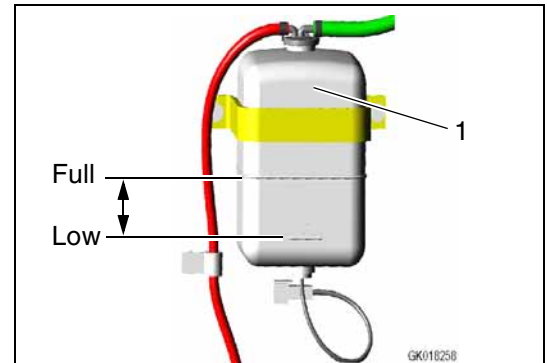
WARNING

Do not open the radiator cap unless necessary. When checking the coolant, always check the radiator reserve tank when the engine is cold.

1. Open the rear door on the left side of the machine and check that the cooling water level is between the FULL and LOW marks on radiator reserve tank (1) (shown in the diagram on the right).

If the water level is low, add water through the water filler of reserve tank (1) to the FULL level.

2. After adding water, tighten the cap securely.
3. If the reserve becomes empty, first inspect for water leaks and then fill the radiator and the reserve tank with water/anti-freeze mixture.



Check oil level in engine oil pan, add oil

1. Open the engine hood.

REMARK

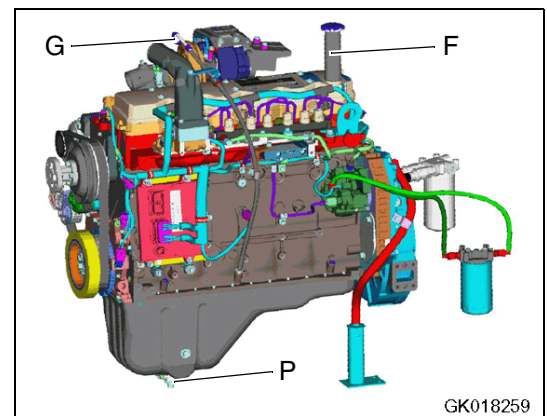
Opening engine compartment hood.

Whenever access is required to the engine compartment via the hood, always ensure that the work equipment is tipped as far forward as possible.

This will ensure that the hoses mounted on the work equipment do not impede the engine hood when it is opened/closed.

2. Remove dipstick (G) and wipe the oil off with a cloth.
3. Insert dipstick (G) fully in the oil gauge pipe, then take it out again.
4. The oil level should be between the H and L marks on dipstick (K). If the oil level is below the L mark, add engine oil through oil filler (F).

For details of the oil to use, refer to "Use fuel, coolant and lubricants according to ambient temperature (4-16)".



4.11 Maintenance procedure

Check before starting

Maintenance

5. If the oil is above the H mark, drain the excess engine oil from drain plug (P), and check the oil level again.
6. If the oil level is correct, tighten the oil filler cap securely and close the engine hood.

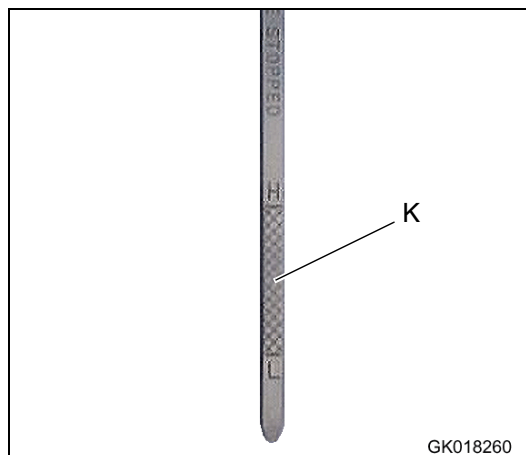
REMARK

Ensure that the machine is level when checking oil level.



WARNING

Allow the engine to cool before checking the oil level to avoid burns by touching hot engine parts.



Check fuel level, add fuel



WARNING

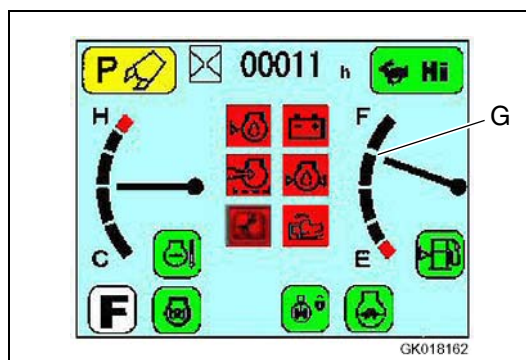
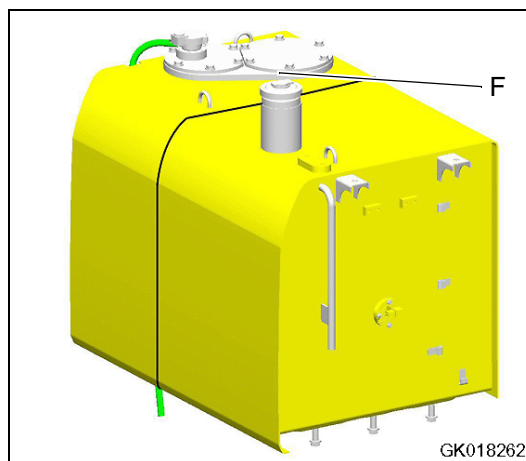
When adding fuel, never let the fuel overflow. This may cause a fire. If fuel is spilled, thoroughly clean up any spillage.

1. Use fuel gauge (G) on the monitor panel to check that the tank is full.
2. If the fuel level is below the E mark on the fuel gauge, add fuel through filler port (F) while watching the float in the filler port.

Fuel capacity: 325 litres

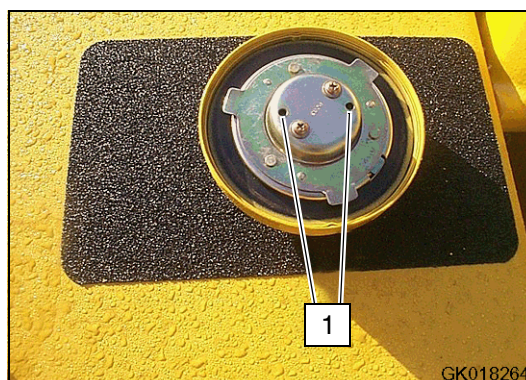
For details of the fuel to use, see "Use fuel, coolant and lubricants according to ambient temperature (4-16)".

After adding fuel, tighten the cap securely.



REMARK

*If breather hole (1) on the cap is clogged, the pressure in the tank will drop and fuel will not flow.
Clean the holes from time to time.*



Check oil level in hydraulic tank, add oil



WARNING

- When removing the oil filler cap, oil may spurt out, so turn the cap slowly to release the internal pressure before removing the cap.
- If oil has been added to above the H mark, stop the engine and wait for the hydraulic oil to cool down, then drain the excess oil from drain plug (P).

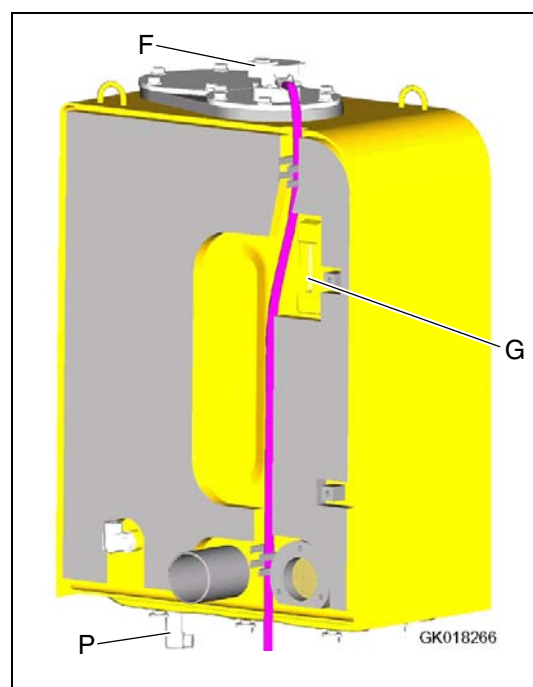
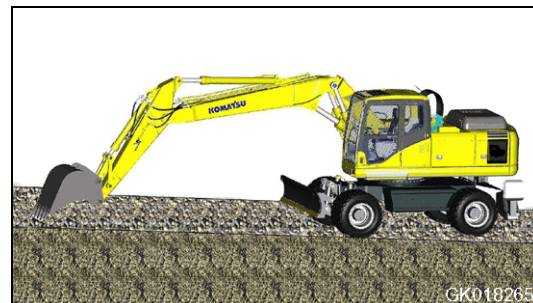
1. If the work equipment is not in the condition shown in the diagram on the right, start the engine run the engine at low speed, retract the arm and bucket cylinders, then lower the boom, set the bucket teeth in contact with the ground, and stop the engine.
2. Check sight gauge (G). The oil level is normal if between the H and L marks.

REMARK

Do not add oil if the level is above the H line. This will damage the hydraulic equipment and cause the oil to spurt out.

3. If the level is below the L mark, remove cap (F) from the hydraulic tank and add oil.

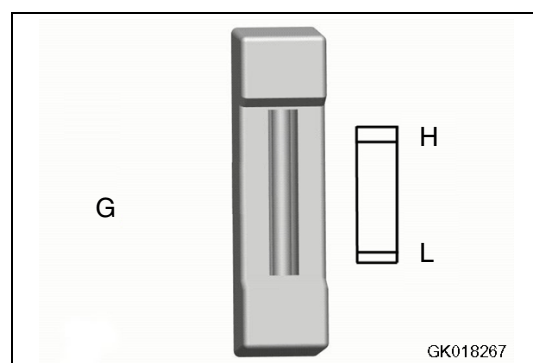
For details of the oil to use, see "Use fuel, coolant and lubricants according to ambient temperature (4-16)".



REMARK

The oil level will vary depending upon the oil temperature. Accordingly, use the following as a guide:

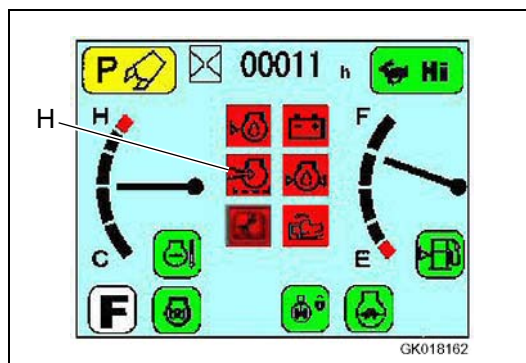
- Before operation: midway between H and L level (Oil temperature 10 to 30°C)
- Normal operation: around H level (Oil temperature 50 to 80°C).



Check air cleaner for clogging

1. Confirm that the air cleaner clogging monitor does not light up (H).
2. If it lights up, immediately clean or replace the element.

For details of the method of cleaning the element, see "Use fuel, coolant and lubricants according to ambient temperature (4-16)".



Check electric wiring



WARNING

If the fuse blows frequently, or there are traces of short-circuiting in the electric wiring, always locate and repair the cause.

Check for damage of the fuse and any sign of disconnection or short circuit in the electric wiring. Check also for loose terminals and tighten any loose parts. Check the following points carefully.

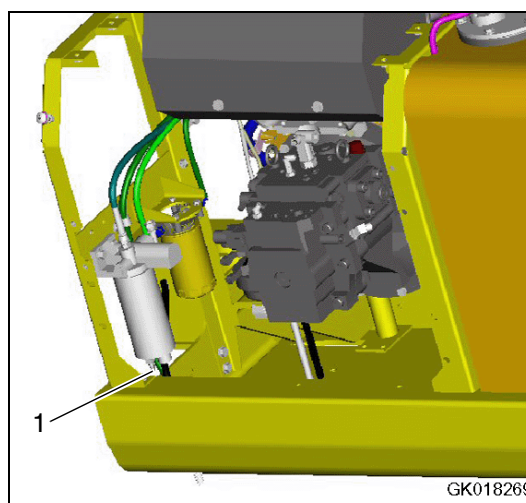
- Battery
- Starting motor
- Alternator

Please contact your KOMATSU distributor for investigation and correction of the cause.

Check for water and sediment in sedimentor. drain water and sediment

A fuel sedimentor is mounting in the pump compartment and is accessed by the door on the right hand side of the machine. Entrapped sediment and water can be seen through the glass bowl.

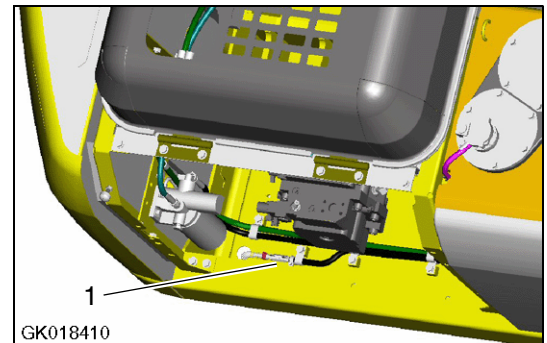
1. Loosen drain plug (1) and drain water and sediment until none is visible in bowl.
2. Tighten drain plug.



4.11.6 Every 50 hours service

Drain water and sediment from fuel tank

1. Carry out this procedure before operating the machine.
2. Open cover at the rear right of the machine.
3. Prepare a container to catch the fuel that is drained.
4. Open valve (1) and drain the sediment and water that has accumulated at the bottom together with fuel. When doing this, be careful not to get fuel on yourself.
5. When only clean fuel comes out, close drain valve (1).

**REMARK**

Never use trichlene for washing the inside of the tank.

4.11.7 Every 100 hours service

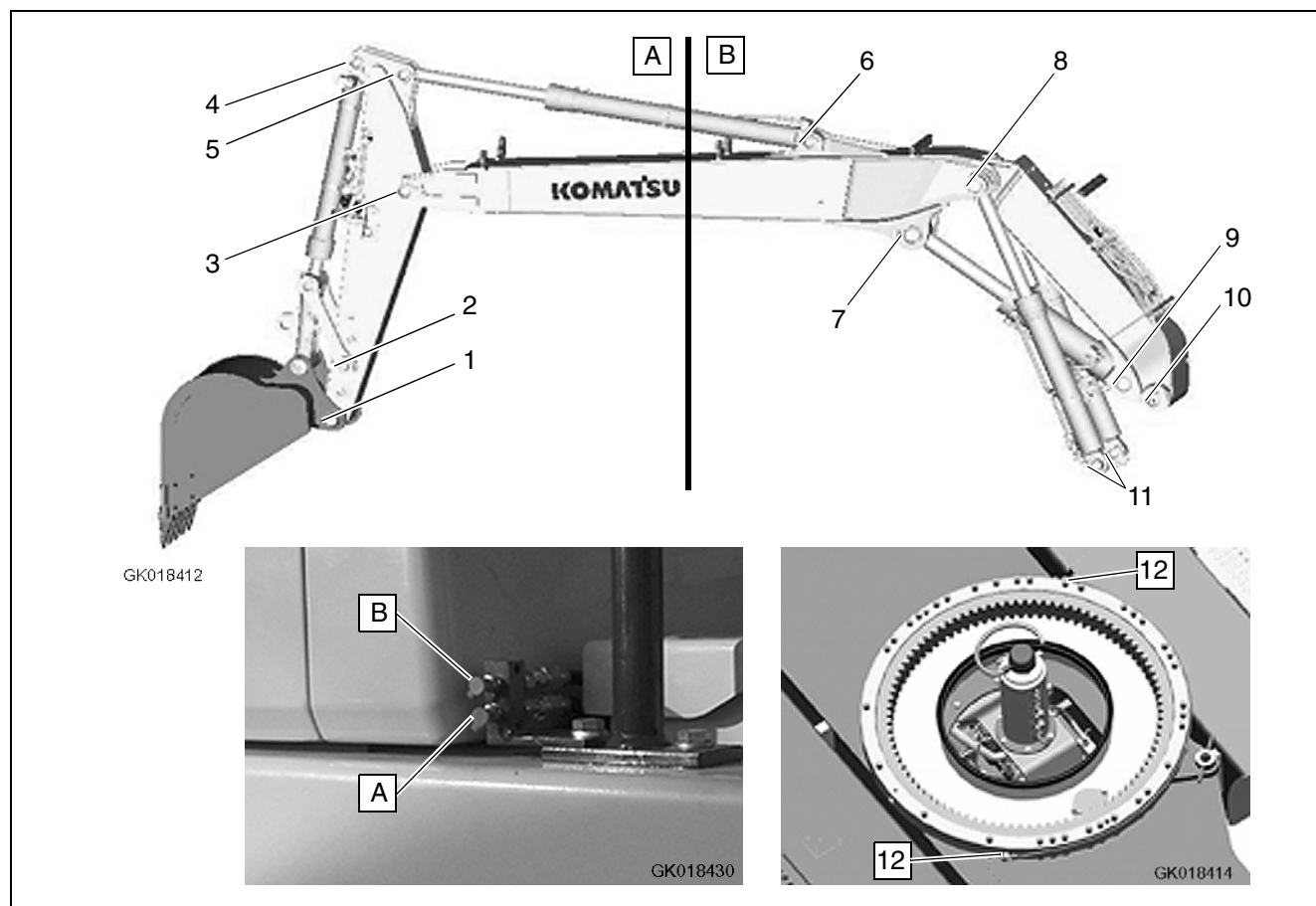
Maintenance every 50 hours should be carried out at the same time.

Lubricating

The minimum greasing interval is 100 hours, however more frequent greasing will be required depending on conditions/environment.

1. Set the work equipment in the greasing posture below, then lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.
2. Using a grease pump, pump in grease through the grease fittings shown by arrows.
3. After greasing, wipe off any old grease that was pushed out.





The following lubrication points are lubricated by the central lubrication points A and B.

1. Arm bucket coupling pin (1 point).
2. Arm link coupling pin (1 point).
3. Boom arm coupling pin (1point).
4. Bucket cylinder foot pin (1 point).
5. Arm cylinder rod end (1 point).
6. Arm cylinder foot pin (1 point).
7. Boom cylinder rod end (2 points).
8. 1st to 2nd boom pin (3 point).
9. Boom foot pin (2 points).
10. Boom adjust cylinder foot pin (1 point).
11. Boom cylinder foot pin (2 points).
12. Lubricate swing circle (2 points).

4.11 Maintenance procedure

Every 100 hours service

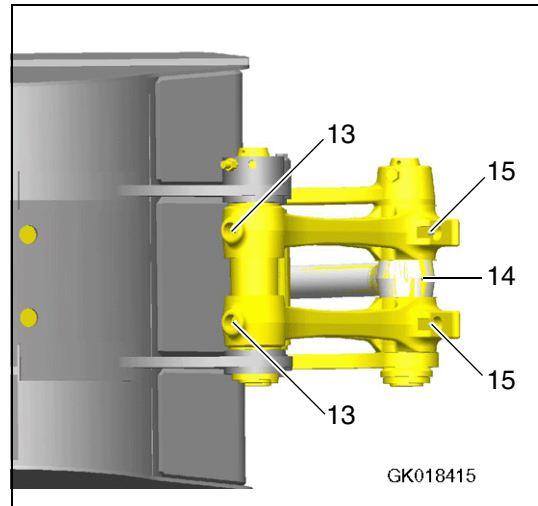
Maintenance

The following lubrication points are lubricated manually.

13. Link coupling pin (2 point).

14. Bucket cylinder rod end (1 point).

15. Bucket-Link coupling pin (2 points).

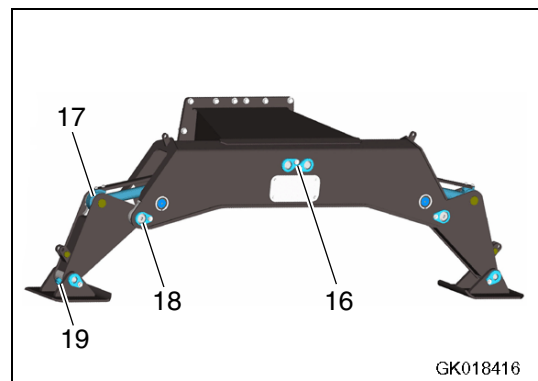


16. Outrigger cylinder foot pin (2 or 4 points).

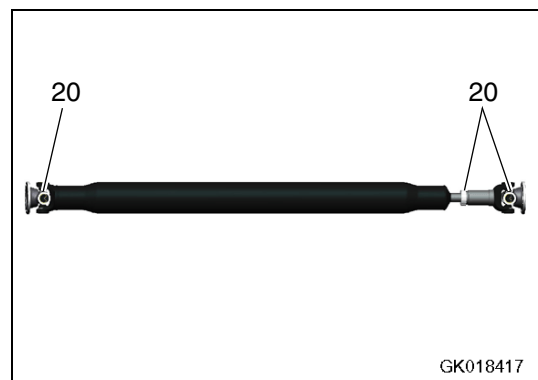
17. Outrigger cylinder rod end (2 or 4 points).

18. Outrigger leg pivot (2 or 4 points).

19. Outrigger foot pivot (2 or 4 points).

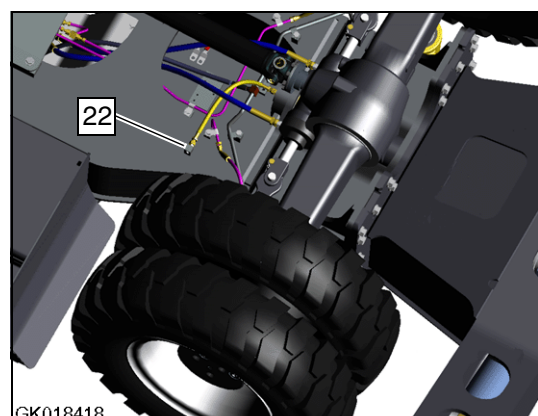


20. Propshaft (3 points).

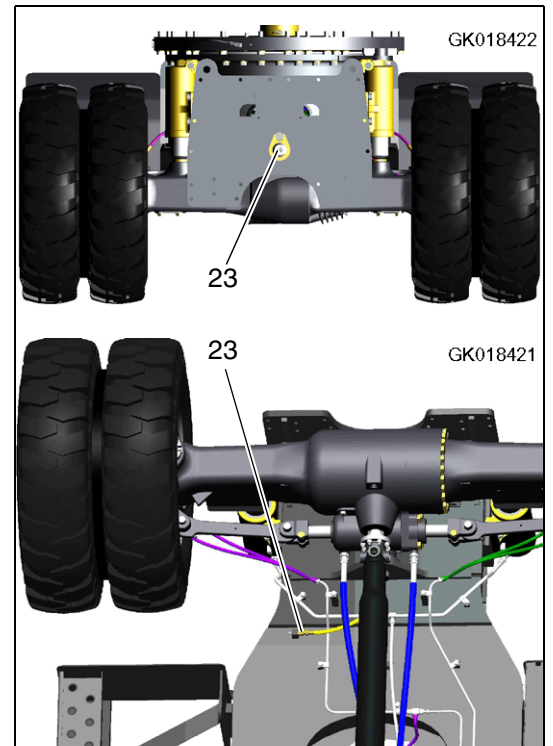


21. Not used

22. Axle pivot (2 point) (with outriggers attached)



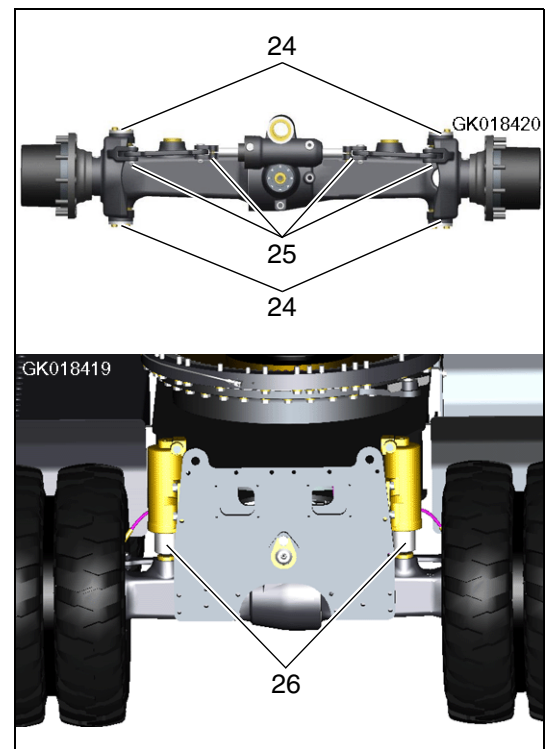
23. Axle pivot (2 point) (without outriggers)



24. Hub pivot (4 points)

25. Steer links (4 points)

26. Axle pads (if noise heard grease as necessary) (2 points)

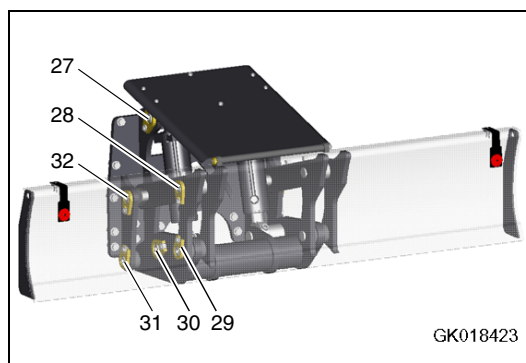


4.11 Maintenance procedure

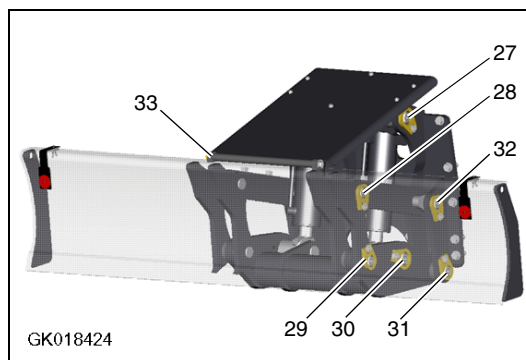
Every 100 hours service

Maintenance

- 27. Cylinder mount (2 points)
- 28. Top link blade pivot pin (2 points)
- 29. Lower link blade pivot (2 points)
- 30. Dozer blade cylinder rod end (2 points)



- 31. Lower link pivot pin (2 points)
- 32. Top link pivot pin (2 points)
- 33. Cylinder guard pin (remove and apply coating of grease)

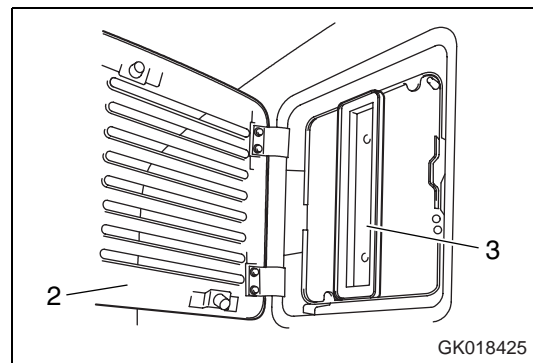


Cleaning fresh air filter

1. Use the starting key to open cover (2) at the rear left of the operator's cab, then open cover (2) by hand and remove filter (3) inside the cover.
2. Clean the filter with compressed air. If there is oil on the filter, or if the filter is extremely dirty, wash it in a neutral agent. After rinsing it in water, dry it thoroughly before using it again.

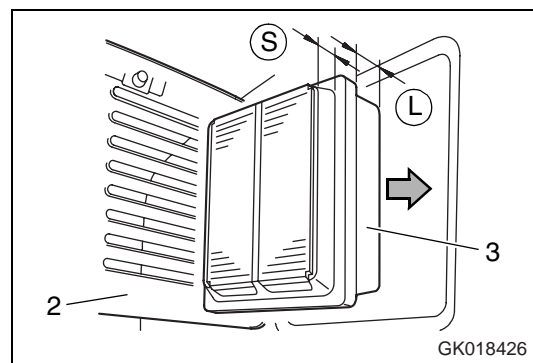
If the clogging of the filter cannot be removed by blowing with air or washing in water, replace the filter with a new part every year.

3. After cleaning, return filter (3) to its original position and close the cover. Use the starting key to lock the cover. Do not forget to remove the starting key.



REMARK

The FRESH filter must be installed facing in the correct direction. When installing, insert the long (L) end of filter (3) into the filter case first. If the short (S) end is installed first, cover (2) will not close.



4.11.8 Every 250 hours service

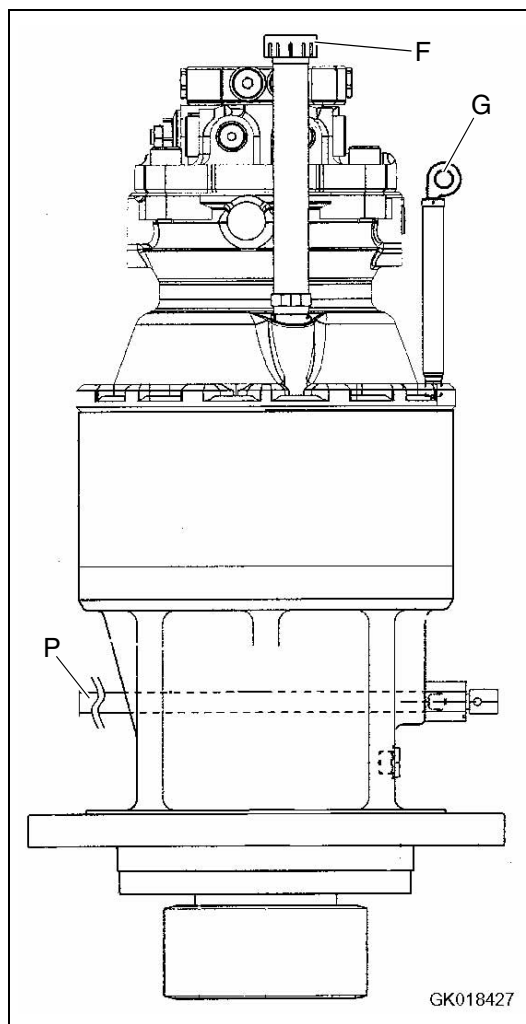
Check oil level in swing machinery case, add oil



WARNING

The parts and oil are at high temperature after the engine is stopped, and may cause serious burns. Wait for the temperature to go down before starting the operation.

1. Remove dipstick (G) and wipe the oil from the dipstick with a cloth.
2. Insert dipstick (G) fully in the guide.
3. When dipstick (G) is pulled out, if the oil level is between the H and L marks of the gauge, oil level is correct.
4. If the oil does not reach the L mark on dipstick (G), remove oil filler (F), and add engine oil.
5. If the oil level exceeds the H mark on the dipstick, loosen drain plug (P) to drain the excess oil.
6. After checking oil level or adding oil, insert the dipstick into the hole and install oil filler cap.

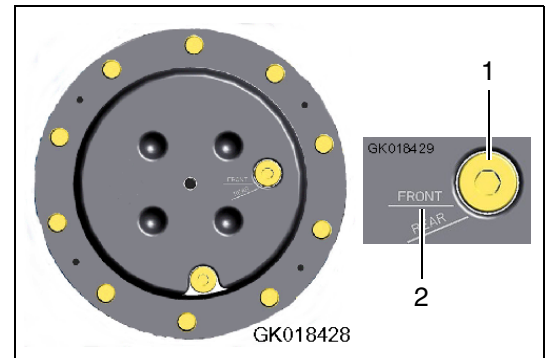


Check oil level in wheel hubs, add oil (front axle)**REMARK**

Prepare a hexagonal wrench

1. Rotate hub until the oil level line marked front is horizontal (2).
2. Remove plug (1).
3. If no oil emerges, add oil until there is an excess. Allow excess to drain off and re-install plug (1).

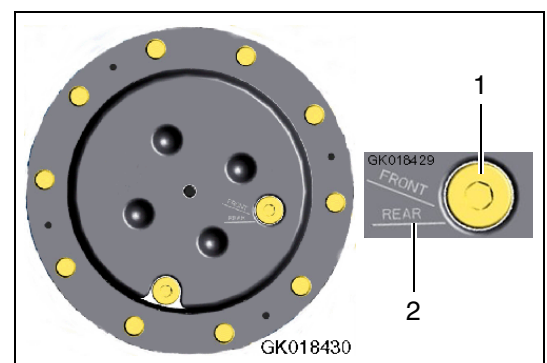
For details of the oil to use, see "Use fuel, coolant and lubricants according to ambient temperature (4-16)".

**Check oil level in wheel hubs, add oil (rear axle)****REMARK**

Prepare a hexagonal wrench

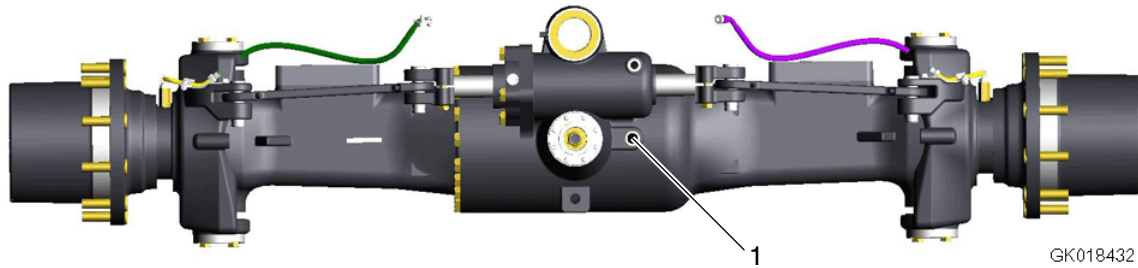
1. Rotate hub until the oil level line marked rear is horizontal (2).
2. Remove plug (1).
3. If no oil emerges, add oil until there is an excess. Allow excess to drain off and re-install plug (1).

For details of the oil to use, see "Use fuel, coolant and lubricants according to ambient temperature (4-16)".

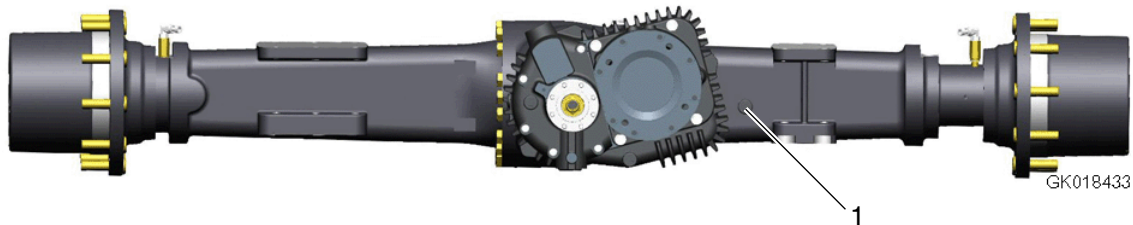


Check oil level in axles, add oil

Front axle



Rear axle



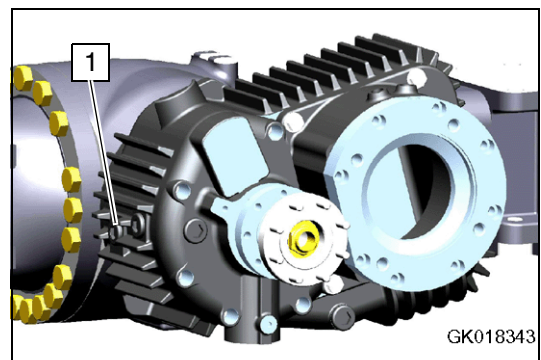
1. Ensure axle is horizontal and remove plug (1).
2. If no oil emerges attach tube and funnel and add oil until oil emerges from the hole after removing tube.
3. Replace plug (1).

For details of the oil to use, see "Use fuel, coolant and lubricants according to ambient temperature (4-16)".

Check oil level in transmission, add oil

1. Remove level plug (1).
2. If oil emerges replace plug (1)
3. If no oil emerges remove plug (1) and add oil until oil emerges from plug hole (1).
4. Replace plug (1).

For details of the oil to use, see "Use fuel, coolant and lubricants according to ambient temperature (4-16)".



Check level of battery electrolyte



WARNING

- To avoid gas explosions, do not bring fire or sparks near the battery.
- Battery electrolyte is dangerous. If it gets in your eyes or on your skin, wash it off with large amounts of water, and consult a doctor.

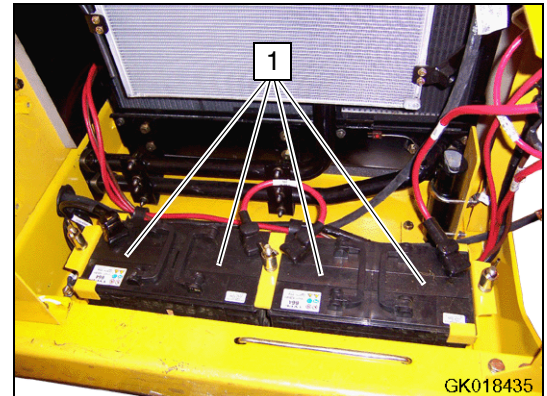
Carry out this check before operating the machine.

1. Open the battery box door at the back left side of the machine.
2. Remove cap (1), and check that the electrolyte is at the specified level (10 to 12 mm above the plate). If the electrolyte level is low, add distilled water to the specified level.

If the battery electrolyte is spilled, have dilute sulphuric acid added.

3. Clean the air hole in the battery cap, then tighten the cap securely.

When adding distilled water in cold weather, add it before starting operations in the morning to prevent the electrolyte from freezing.



Belts, general



WARNING

Before working on the engine or electrical system, disconnect the negative (ground) battery cable. Tag the cable and controls to warn against starting.

Replace badly worn, greasy or severely cracked belts immediately. These conditions prevent the belt from functioning correctly.

Prior to installing new belts, make sure all pulley grooves are clean and not worn. If a pulley is damaged or if the grooves are worn, it should be replaced.

All pulley support bearings, shafts and brackets must be in working order.

When replacing belts and pulleys, pulley alignment must be checked with belts tensioned and brackets securely clamped. A misalignment that can be detected by the naked eye is detrimental to belt performance.

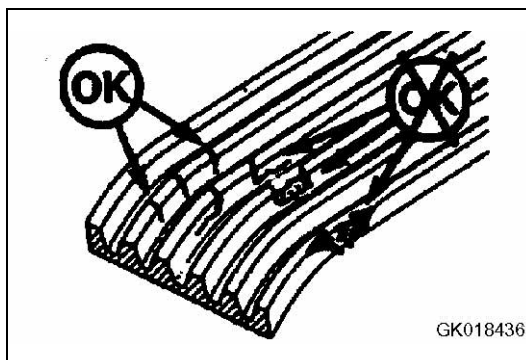
During belt installation, do not force the belts into the pulley grooves by prying with a screwdriver or pry bar. This will damage the belt side cords which will cause the belts to turn and result in complete destruction of the belts in operation.

Belts on new machines and replacement belts lose their tension as they seat into the pulley grooves. Check the tension of new belts at 20 hour intervals until tension is stabilized and thereafter, every 250 hours. If the tension falls below the required minimum, the belt slips, and damages the belts and pulley grooves.

REMARK

When operating in abrasive conditions, check tension every 100 hours.

Visually inspect the belts for intersecting cracks. Transverse (across the belt width) cracks are acceptable. Longitudinal (direction of belt length) cracks that intersect with transverse cracks are not acceptable. Replace the belt if it is frayed or has pieces of material missing.



Check fan belt tension, adjust tension

The engine is equipped with an automatic belt tensioner that maintains correct tension on the drive belt. To check belt tension a Gates type gauge must be used because of the wide drive belt. Proper tension should be 355 to 455 Nm gauge value.

If a Gates type gauge is not available, tension may be checked by belt deflection. Press the belt with your finger at the longest span and measure the deflection. Maximum deflection 9.5 to 12.7 mm.

Adjusting

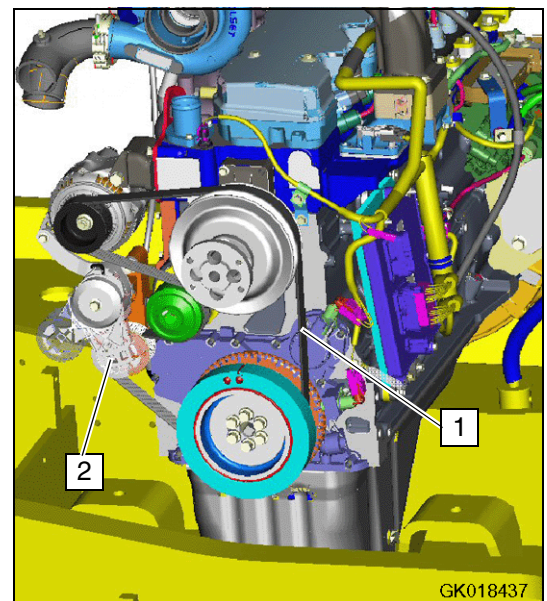
With the automatic belt tensioner, no adjustment is required.

Replacement

To replace the drive belt, place a 1/2 in. drive ratchet (2) in the 1/2 in. square drive hole in the belt tensioner. Push the ratchet "UP" to loosen the tensioner. Remove the old belt (1). Inspect belt tensioner. The tensioner pulley should spin freely with no rough spots detected under hand pressure. Install the new belt.

REMARK

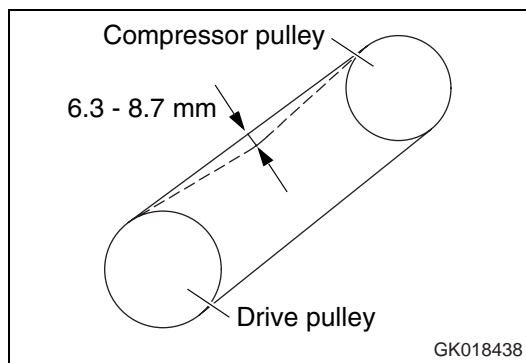
The belt tensioner is spring loaded and must be pivoted away from the belt. Pivoting in the wrong direction can result in damage to the belt tensioner.



Check, adjust tension of air conditioner compressor belt

Checking

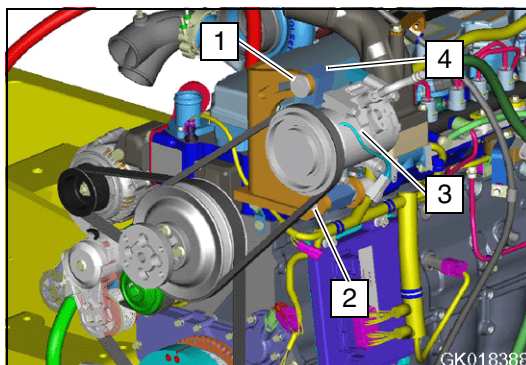
Press the belt at a point midway between the drive pulley and compressor pulley with a finger force of approx. 60 N (6 kgf) and check that the deflection is 6.3 - 8.7 mm.



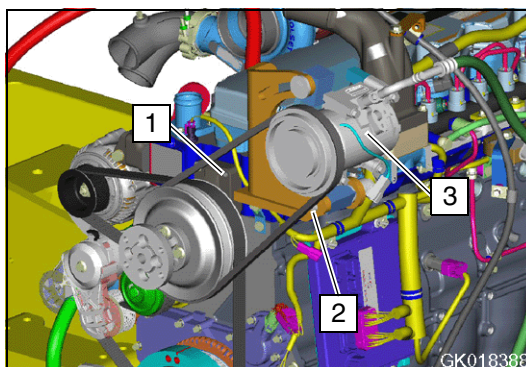
Adjusting

1. Loosen bolts (1) and (2).

Compressor (3) is installed to bracket (4), so when bolts (1) and (2) are loosened, it becomes possible to move bracket (4) with the mounting position of bolt (2) as the fulcrum.



2. Loosen bolt (1) and bolts (2), then move compressor (3) to adjust.
3. When the position of the compressor is determined, tighten bolts (1) and (2) to hold it in position.
4. Check for damage to the pulleys, and wear of the V-groove and V-belt. Be particularly careful to check that the V-belt is not in contact with the bottom of the V groove.
5. If the belt has elongated and there is no more allowance for adjustment, or if the belt is cut or cracked, replace the belt.
6. After replacing the V-belt, operate for one hour, then adjust again.



4.11.9 Every 500 hours service

Maintenance for every 50, 100 and 250 hours should be carried out at the same time.



WARNING

- Engine is at high temperature immediately after the machine has been operated. Wait for engine to cool down before replacing the filter.
- Keep naked flames - sparks away from fuel.
- When cranking the engine, ensure all safety procedures have been followed, as the engine may start.

Replace fuel pre-filter cartridge



WARNING

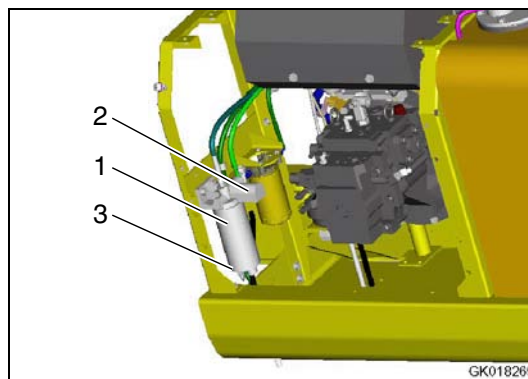
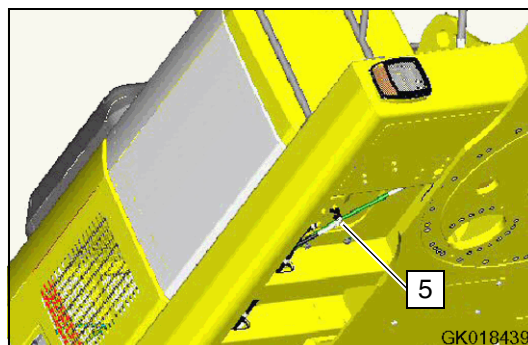
- After the engine has been operated, all parts are at high temperature, so do not replace the filter immediately. Wait for all parts to cool down before starting the operation.
- High pressure is generated in side the engine fuel piping system when the engine is running. When replacing the filter, wait for at least 30 seconds after stopping the engine to let the internal pressure go down before replacing the filter.
- Do not bring fire or flame close.

NOTE

- *Genuine KOMATSU fuel filter cartridges use a special filter that is highly efficient filtering ability. When replacing the filter cartridge, always use a genuine KOMATSU part.*
- *The common rail fuel injection system used on this machine consists of more precise parts than the conventional injection pump and nozzle. If any part other than a genuine KOMATSU filter cartridge is used, dust or dirt may get in and cause problems with the injection system. Always avoid using substitute parts.*
- *When carrying out inspection or maintenance of the fuel system, pay more attention than normal to the entry of dirt. If dirt is stuck to any part, use fuel to wash it off completely.*

Prepare a filter wrench and a container to catch the fuel.

1. Close valve (5) at the bottom of the fuel tank.
2. Set the container to catch the fuel under the filter cartridge.
3. Loosen drain valve (6), then drain all the water and sediment in the water separator and also the fuel accumulated in filter cartridge (1)
4. Disconnect electrical connector. To prevent water from getting on the connector, wrap it in a vinyl bag and keep it in a safe place until it is installed again.
5. Using a filter wrench, turn water separator (3) counterclockwise to remove it.
6. Using a filter wrench, turn filter cartridge (1) counterclockwise to remove it.
7. Install new filter cartridge (1) to water separator (3).



NOTE

When installing water separator (3), coat the packing surface thinly with oil, bring the packing surface into contact with the seal surface of filter cartridge (1), then tighten a further 1/4 - 1/2 turns.

NOTE

Always tighten the water separator (3) by the specified angle. If the water separator is tightened too far, the packing will be damaged and this will lead to leakage of fuel. If it is not tightened enough, fuel will leak through the gap at the packing.

8. Clean the filter holder, fill new filter cartridge (1) with clean fuel, coat the packing surface thinly with oil, then install the filter cartridge to the filter holder.

NOTE

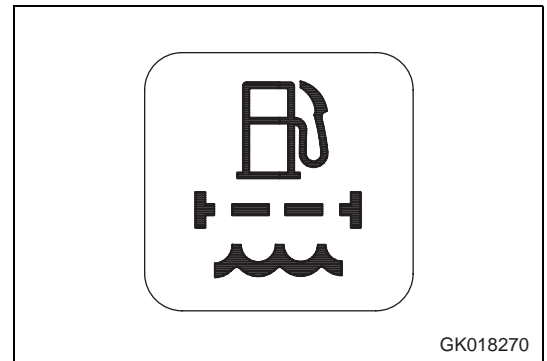
- *When installing filter cartridge (1), bring the packing surface into contact with the seal surface of filter holder (2), then tighten a further 3/4 turns.*
- *Always tighten filter cartridge (1) by the specified angle. If the filter cartridge is tightened too far, the packing will be damaged and this will lead to leakage of fuel. If it is not tightened enough, fuel will leak through the gap at the packing.*
- *Always use KOMATSU genuine cartridge for filter cartridge (1).*

9. After completing replacement of filter cartridge (1), attach connector, then bleed the air. When bleeding the air, carry out the procedure in steps 10 - 14.
10. Open valve (5) at the bottom of the fuel tank.
11. Fill the fuel tank with fuel (to position where the float is at the highest position).
12. Loosen the knob of feed pump (2), pull it out, then pump it in and out until the movement becomes heavy.

After the engine runs out of fuel, use the same procedure to operate feed pump (2) and bleed the air.
13. Push in the knob of feed pump (2) and tighten it.
14. After replacing filter cartridge (1), start the engine and check that there is no leakage of fuel from the filter seal surface.

REMARK

If water gets on the connector the sensor may malfunction and the water separator monitor may light up. When removing connector be extremely careful not to get any water on the connector. If water gets on the connector, dry it thoroughly before connecting it.



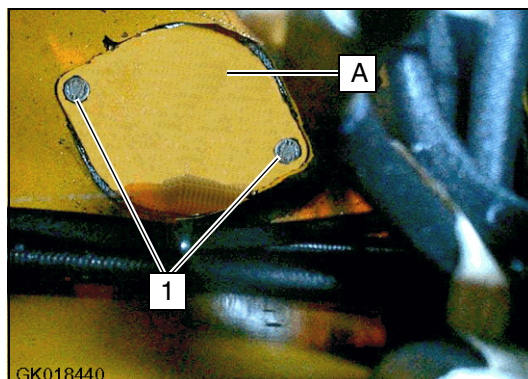
Check swing pinion grease level, add grease

Prepare a scale.

1. Remove bolts (1) (2 bolts) on the top of the revolving frame and remove cover (A). Be careful to retain the gasket.
2. Check the colour of the grease. If it is milky white, it is necessary to change the grease. Please contact your KOMATSU distributor.

The total amount of grease is 10.5 litres.

3. Insert a rule into the grease and check that the depth of the grease is at least 25 mm. Add more grease if necessary.
4. Replace gasket and cover (A) and fix with bolts (1) (2 bolts), Ensuring seal is maintained between cover and revo frame.



GK018440

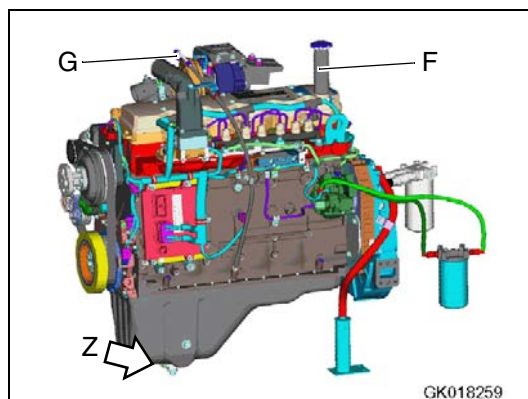
Change oil in engine oil pan, replace engine oil filter cartridge



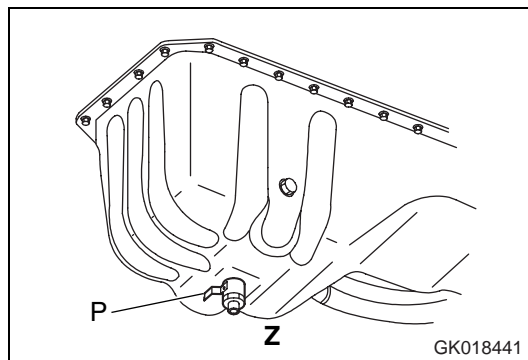
WARNING

The parts and oil are at high temperature immediately after the engine is stopped and may cause serious burns. Wait for the oil temperature to go down before performing this operation.

- Refill capacity of oil pan: 23.1 litres
 - Filter wrench
1. Remove the inspection cover of the undercover directly under drain plug (P) under the machine, then place a container to catch the oil.
 2. To prevent getting oil on yourself, open drain tap (P) carefully, drain the oil, then close the tap carefully.



GK018259



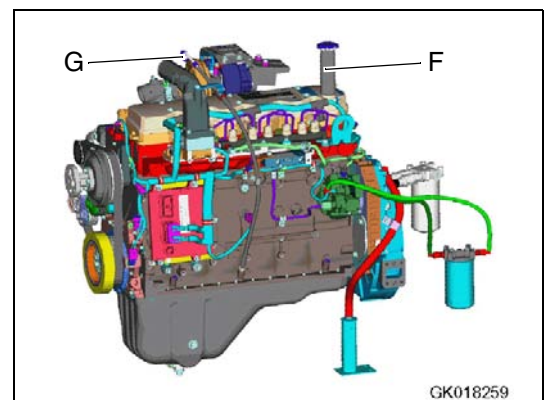
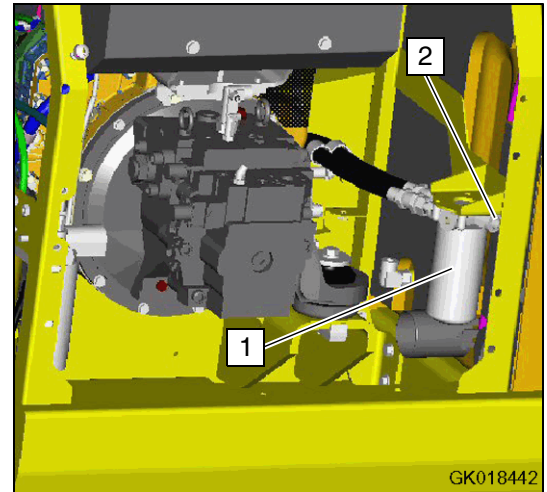
GK018441

3. Open the cover at the rear right, then use a filter wrench to turn filter cartridge (1) to the left to remove it.
4. Clean the filter holder (2), fill the new filter cartridge with clean engine oil, coat the thread and packing surface of the new filter cartridge with clean engine oil (or coat it thinly with grease), then install it to the filter holder.

REMARK

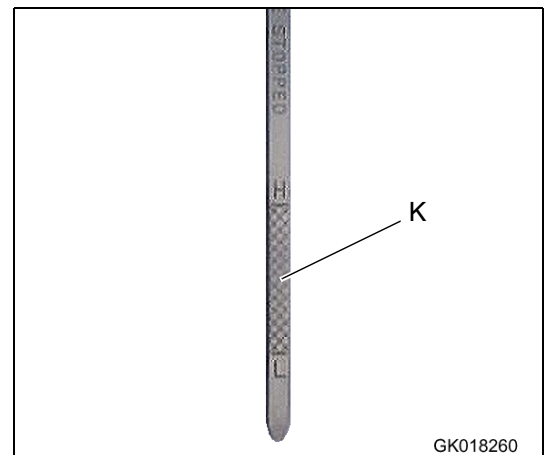
Check that there is no old packing stuck to the filter holder (2). If there is any old packing stuck to the filter, it will cause leakage of oil.

5. When installing, tighten until packing surface contacts the seal surface of filter holder (2), then tighten it a further 3/4 to 1 turn.
6. After replacing the filter cartridge, open the engine hood and add engine oil through oil filler (F) to between the H and L marks on dipstick (G).



7. Run the engine at idle for a short time, then stop the engine, and check that the oil level is between the H and L marks (K) on dipstick.

For details, see "Change oil in engine oil pan, replace engine oil filter cartridge (4-78)".



Clean and inspect radiator fins, oil cooler fins and condenser fins



WARNING

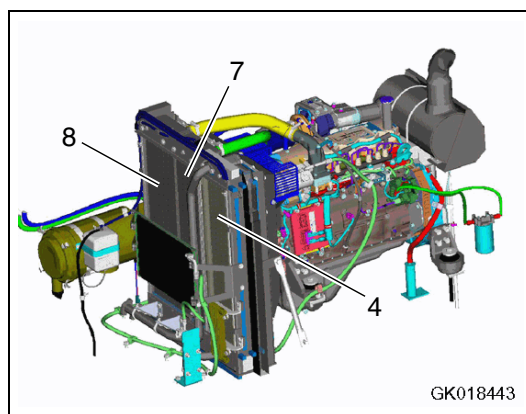
If compressed air, high-pressure water, or steam hit your body directly, or they cause dirt or dust to be blown up, there is a danger of serious injury. Use safety glasses, dust mask, or other protective equipment.

NOTE

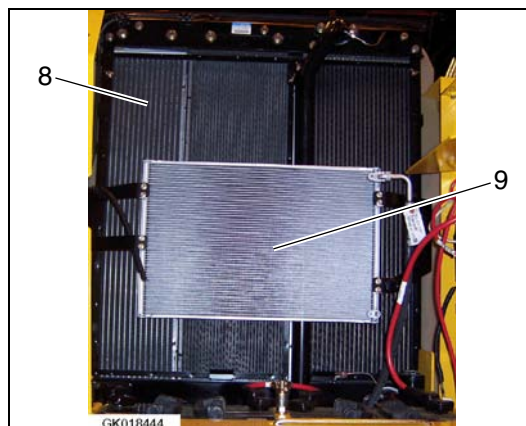
When using compressed air, if the nozzle is brought too near the fins, the fins may be damaged. Use compressed air from a reasonable distance to prevent damage to the fins.

Do not direct the jet directly at the core. If the fins are damaged, it will cause leakage of water and overheating. On dusty job sites, inspect fins every day, regardless of the maintenance interval.

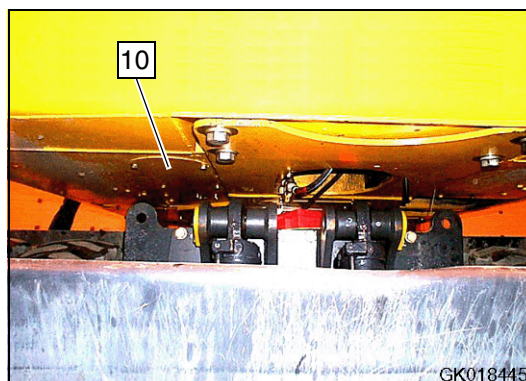
1. Open engine hood.



2. Inspect the front and rear of the oil cooler fins (4), radiator fins (7), after-cooler fins (8), and condenser fins (9) for dirt, dust, dry leaves, etc. Blow them away with compressed air. Steam or water may be used instead of compressed air.
3. Check the rubber hoses. Replace it with a new one, if the hose is found to have cracks or to be hardened by age. Also check the hose clamps for looseness.



4. Remove cover (10) from underneath and dispose of the dirt, dust, dry leaves, etc., which have fallen on it.



Clean internal and external air filters of air conditioner system



WARNING

If compressed air, high-pressure water, or steam hit your body directly, or they cause dirt or dust to be blown up, there is danger of serious injury. Use safety glasses, dust mask, or other protective equipment.

NOTE

The interval for cleaning the filter is 500 hours, but if the machine is used on an extremely dusty job site, reduce the maintenance interval and clean the filter more frequently.

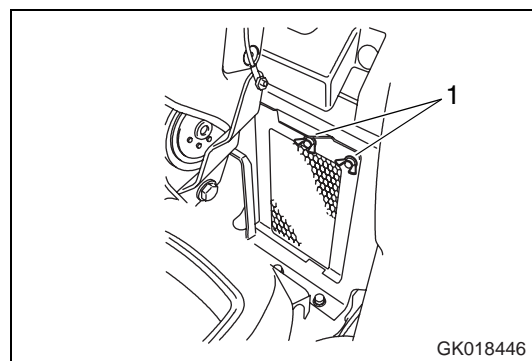
REMARK

If the filter is clogged, the air flow is reduced and a muffled sound can be heard from the air conditioner unit.

Cleaning recirculated air filter

1. Remove wing bolts (1) from the inspection window at the bottom rear left on the inside of the operator's cab, then take out the recirculated air filter.
2. Clean the filter with compressed air. If there is oil on the filter, or if the filter is extremely dirty, wash it in a neutral agent. After rinsing it in water, dry it thoroughly before using it again.

If the clogging of the filter cannot be removed by blowing with air or washing in water, replace the filter with a new part every year.



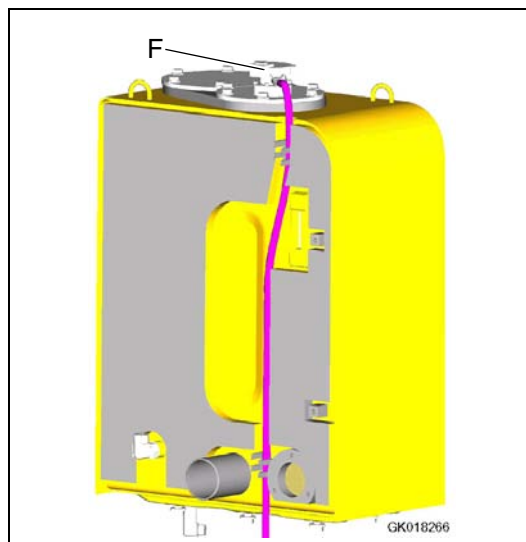
Replace hydraulic tank breather element



WARNING

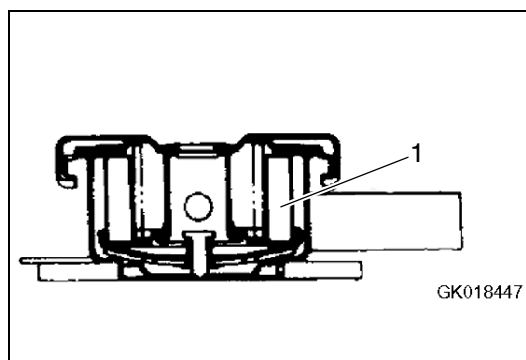
Wait for the oil to cool down before replacing the breather element. When removing the oil filler cap, turn it slowly to release the internal pressure, then remove it carefully.

1. Remove the cap of oil filter (F).



2. Replace element (1) inside the cap with a new one.

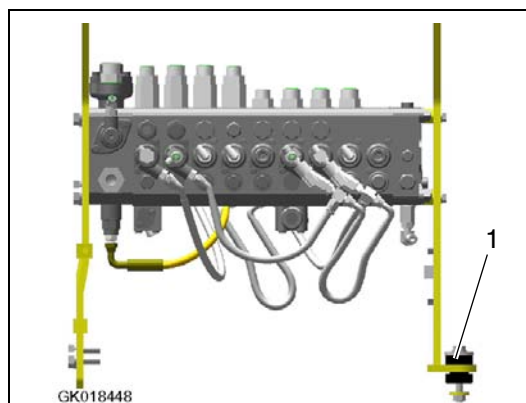
For component part numbers, see "Wear parts list (4-15)".



Check condition of main valve rubber mounts

If main valve bracket mounting rubbers (1) appear cracked or worn, replace them.

If unsure then contact your KOMATSU distributor for advice.



4.11.10 Every 1000 hours service

Maintenance for every 100, 250 and 500 hours should be carried out at the same time.

Replace hydraulic filter element



WARNING

- The parts and oil are at high temperature after the engine is stopped, and may cause serious burns. Wait for the temperature to go down before cleaning the hydraulic tank strainer.
- When the oil filler cap is removed, oil may spurt out, so turn the cap slowly to release the internal pressure, then remove it carefully.

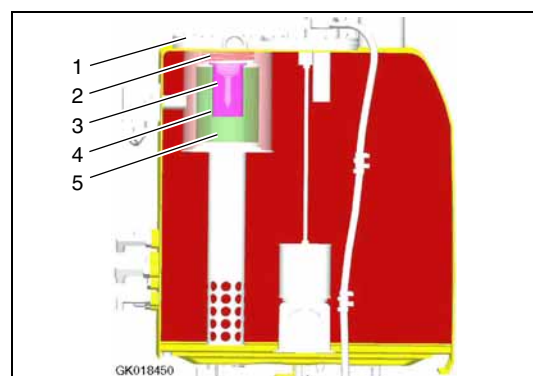
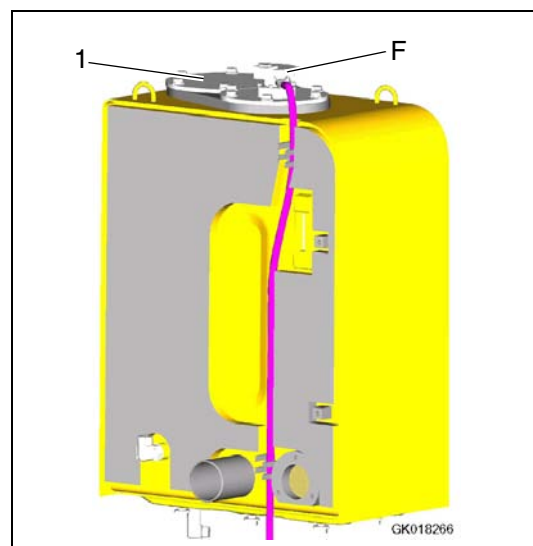
1. Set the work equipment on hard and flat ground in the maintenance posture as shown in the figure. Then lower it to the ground and stop the engine.



2. Remove the cap from oil filler (F), and release the internal pressure.
3. Loosen 6 bolts, then remove cover (1). When doing this, the cover may fly out under the force of spring (2), so hold the cover down when removing the bolts.
4. After removing spring (2), valve (3) and strainer (4), take out element (5).

Inspect the bottom of the filter case for dirt, and remove it, if any. Be very careful not to let dirt fall into the hydraulic tank.

5. Clean the removed parts in diesel oil.
6. Install the new element in the place where old element (5) was installed.
7. Set valve (3), strainer (4) and spring (2) on top of the element.
8. Set cover (1) in position, push it down by hand, and install the cover with the mounting bolts.



4.11 Maintenance procedure

Every 1000 hours service

Maintenance

9. Install the oil filler cap.
10. To bleed the air, start the engine according to "Starting engine (3-112)" and run the engine at low idle for 10 minutes.
11. Stop the engine.
12. Check for oil leakage and wipe off any spilled oil.

When the hydraulic breaker is installed, the hydraulic oil deteriorates earlier than in normal bucket digging work.

The first element replacement should be at 100 to 150 hours for new machines. Thereafter, replace the element, see "Wear parts list (4-15)".

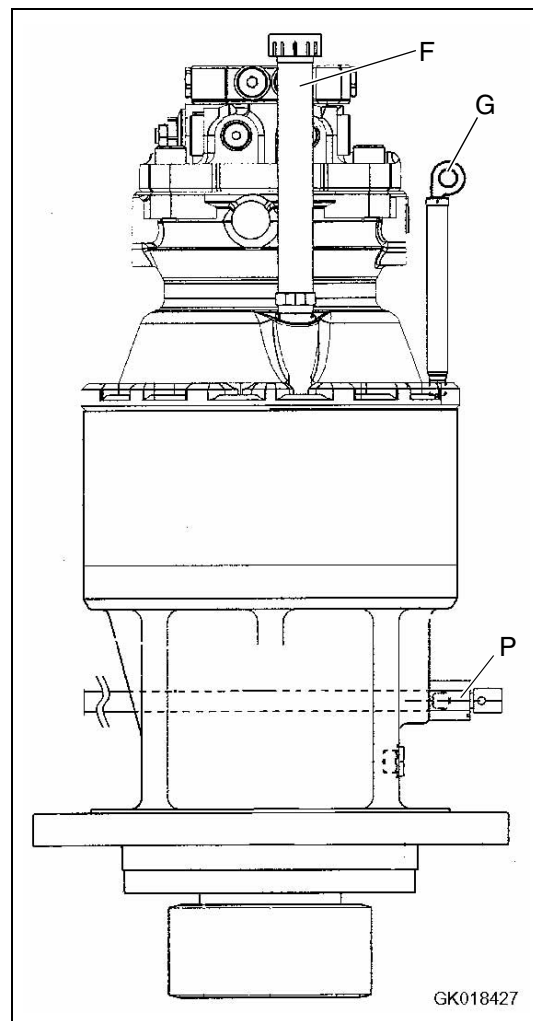
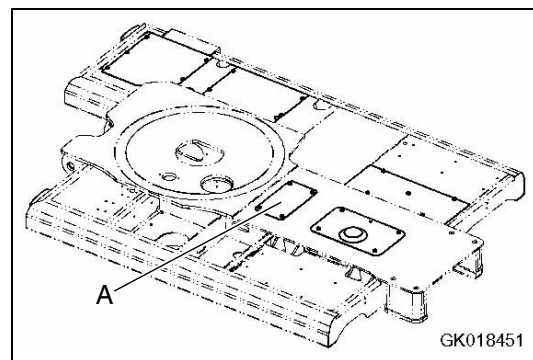
Change oil in swing machinery case



WARNING

The parts and oil are at high temperature after the engine is stopped, and may cause serious burns. Wait for the temperature to go down before starting the operation.

- Refill capacity: 5.3 litres
1. Remove cover (A) of the inspection hole.
 2. Set an oil container under the machine body and feed the drain hose from the drain valve (P) into the container.
 3. Loosen drain valve (P) and drain the oil. Then tighten the drain valve again.
 4. Remove the cap from oil filler (F) and add the specified amount of engine oil through oil filler (F).
 5. Pull out dipstick (G) and wipe the off oil from it with a clean cloth.
 6. Insert dipstick (G) into the gauge pipe as far as it will go and then pull out it again.
 7. If the oil level is between the H and L marks on dipstick (G), it is normal. If the oil does not reach the L mark, add more oil through oil filler (F).
 8. If the oil level exceeds the H mark, drain the excess oil from drain valve (P), and check the oil level again.
 9. Close the drain valve and allow excess oil to drain from the drain tube. Stow the hose and reinstall the undercover.



Replace fuel main filter cartridge



WARNING

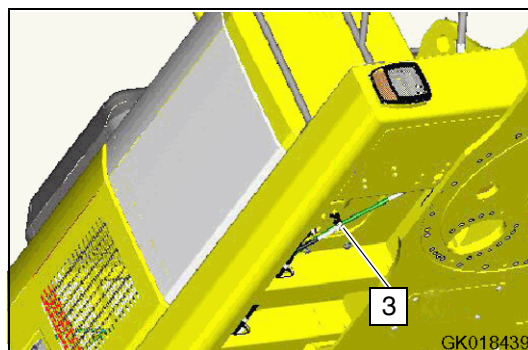
- After the engine has been operated, all parts are at high temperature, so do not replace the filter immediately. Wait for all parts to cool down before starting the operation.
- High pressure is generated inside the engine fuel piping system when the engine is running. When replacing the filter, wait for at least 30 seconds after stopping the engine to let the internal pressure go down before replacing the filter.
- Do not bring any fire or flame close.

NOTE

- *Genuine KOMATSU fuel filter cartridges use special filters that has a highly efficient filtering ability.*
- *The common rail fuel injection system used on this machine consists of more precise parts than the conventional injection pump and nozzle.*
If any part other than a genuine KOMATSU filter is used, dust or dirt may get in and cause problems with the injection system. Always avoid using substitute parts.
- *When carrying out inspection or maintenance of the fuel system pay more attention than normal to the entry of dirt. If dirt is stuck to any part use fuel to wash it off completely.*

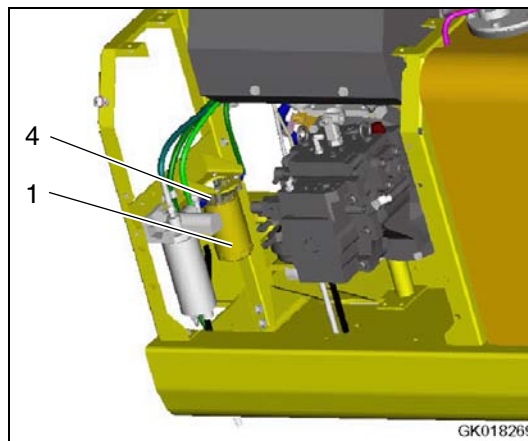
Prepare a filter wrench and a container to catch the fuel.

1. Close valve (3) at the bottom of the tank.
2. Set the container to catch the fuel under the filter cartridge.



3. Using a filter wrench, turn filter cartridge (1) counterclockwise to remove it.
4. Clean filter holder (4), coat the packing surface of the new filter cartridge thinly with oil, then install the filter cartridge to the filter holder.

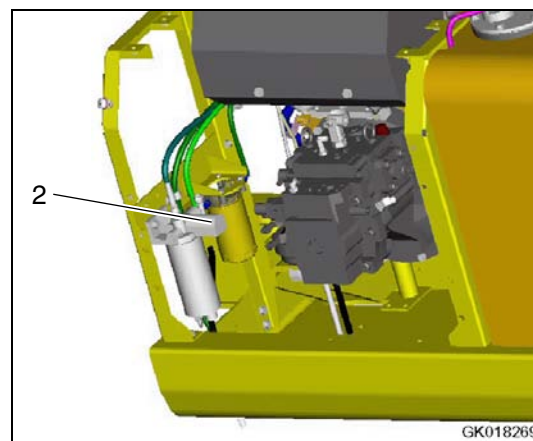
Do not fill the new filter cartridge with fuel.



NOTE

- *When installing filter cartridge (1), bring the packing surface into contact with the seal surface of filter holder (2), then tighten a further 3/4 turns.*
 - *Always tighten filter cartridge (1) by the specified angle. If the filter cartridge is tightened too far, the packing will be damaged and this will lead to leakage of fuel. If it is not tightened enough, fuel will leak through the gap in the packing.*
 - *Always use a KOMATSU genuine cartridge for filter cartridge (1).*
5. After completing replacement of filter cartridge (1), then bleed the air.
When bleeding the air, carry out the procedure in steps 6 - 9.
 6. Open valve (3) at the bottom of the fuel tank.
 7. Fill the fuel tank with fuel (to the position where the float is at the highest position).
 8. Loosen the knob of feed pump (2), pull it out, then pump it in and out until the movement becomes heavy.

After the engine runs out of fuel, use the same procedure to operate feed pump (2) and bleed air.
 9. Push in the knob of the feed pump (2) and tighten it.
 10. After replacing filter cartridge (1), start the engine and check that there is no leakage of fuel from the filter seal surface.

**Check all tightening points of engine exhaust pipe clamps**

Please ask your KOMATSU distributor to check the tightening of the clamps between the air cleaner – turbocharger – aftercooler – engine.

Check oil level in damper case, add oil



WARNING

Parts and oil are at high temperature immediately after the engine is stopped and may cause serious burns. Wait for the oil temperature to go down before performing this operation.

NOTE

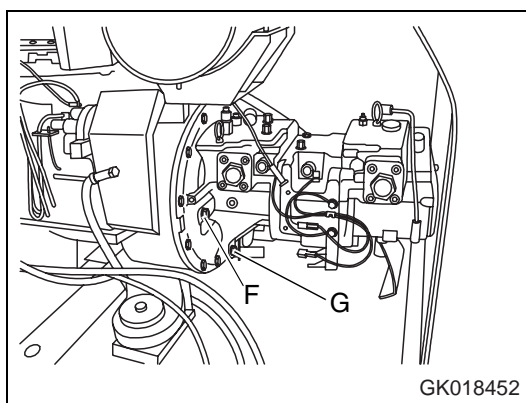
Park the machine on flat ground and stop the engine. After waiting for more than 30 minutes after stopping the engine, check the oil level.

1. Open the cover on the right side of the machine.
2. Remove plug (G) and check the oil level. If the oil level is near the bottom of the plug hole, the oil amount is at a proper level. If found short, remove plug (F) and replenish oil through plug (F) filler port up to the bottom of plug (G) hole.

NOTE

If excess oil is supplied, drain it to the specified amount to avoid overheating.

3. Install plugs (G) and (F).
4. Close the door.



Check all tightening parts of turbocharger.

Contact your KOMATSU distributor to have the tightening portions checked.

Check play of turbocharger rotor.

Ask KOMATSU distributor to check the play of the turbocharger rotor.

Check and adjust valve clearance

As a special tool is required for removing and adjusting the parts contact your KOMATSU distributor for service.

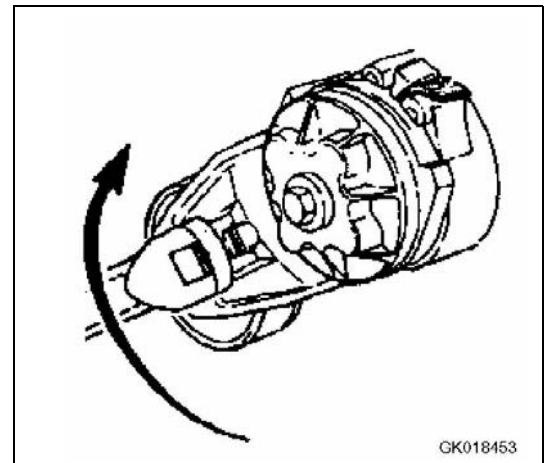
Check fan belt tensioner bearing belt and fan hub

- Check the tensioner bearing.
With the fan belt removed rotate fan hub.
The tensioned pulley should spin freely with no rough spots defected under hand pressure.
- Check the tensioner bearing.
- Replace bearing if damaged.
- Check fan hub. With the drive belt removed, rotate fan hub.

REMARK

The fan hub should spin freely without excessive end play.

- Check the fan hub bearing.
- Replace bearing if damaged.

**Check fan belt tension and replace fan belt**

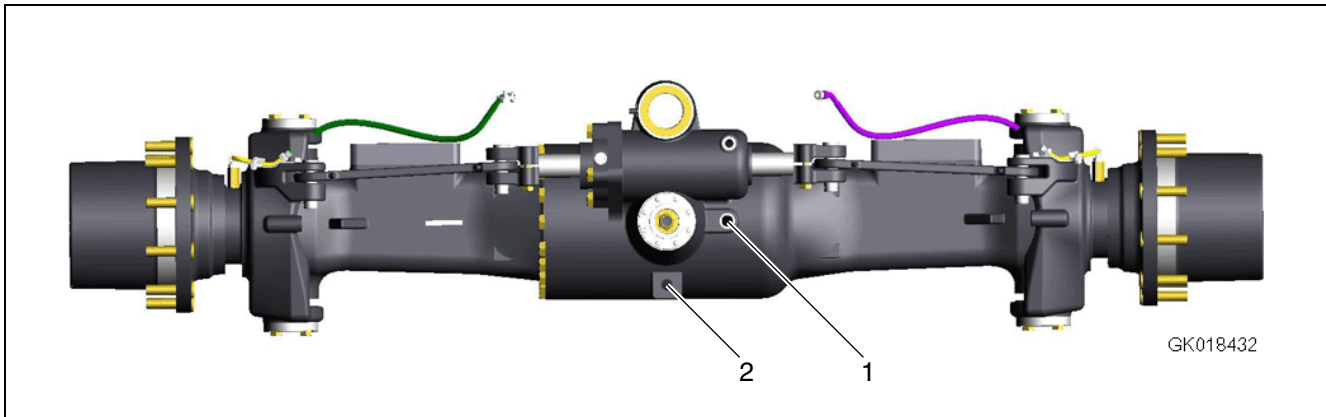
Special tools are required for inspection and replacement of the fan belt. Contact your KOMATSU distributors for inspection and replacement.

REMARK

An installed auto fan belt tension adjuster, "Auto Tensional Fan Belt", dispenses with the belt deflection adjustment.

Change oil in axles

Front Axle

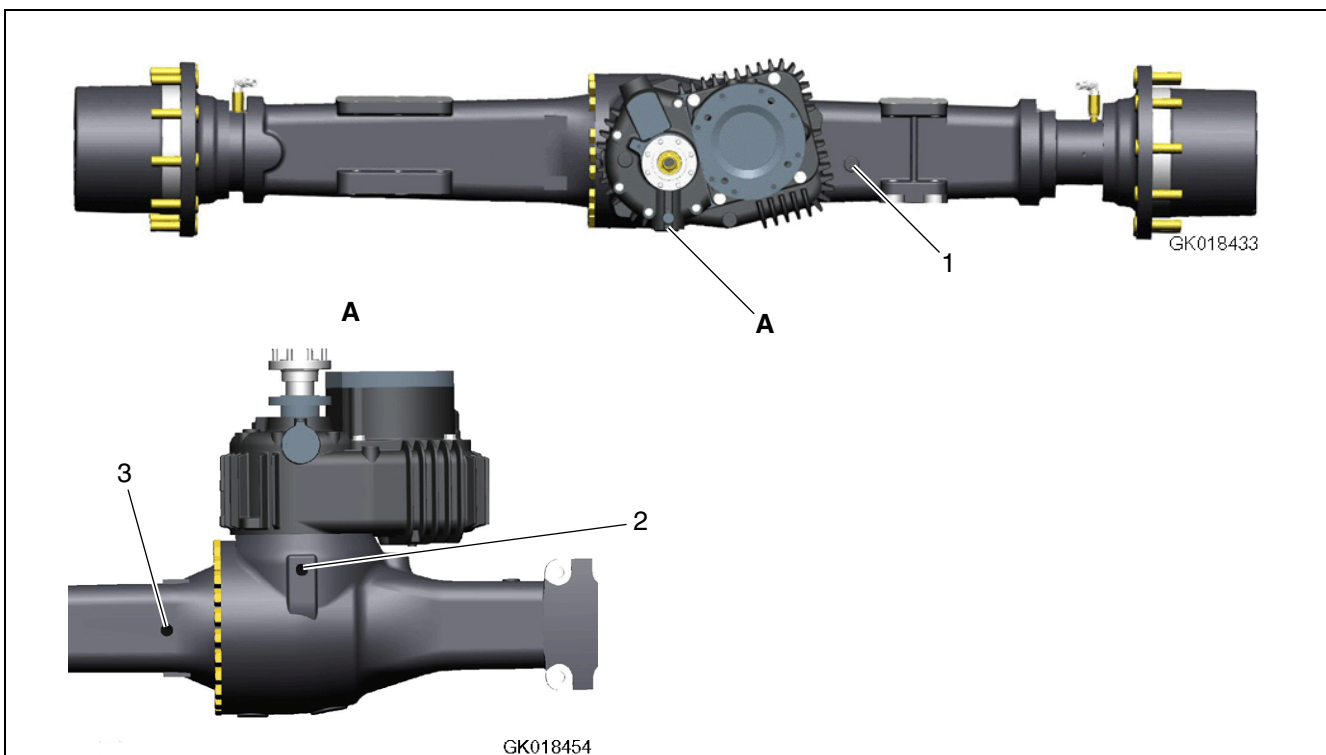


1. Remove plugs (1) and (2) to drain oil.
2. Replace plug (2).
3. Attach tube and funnel to plug (1) hole and add oil until oil emerges when tube is removed.
4. Replace plug (1).

REMARK

The oil must be replaced after first hundred hours then maintenance is thousand hours.

Rear Axle



1. Remove plugs (1), (2) and (3) to drain oil.
2. Replace plug (2) and (3).
3. Attach tube and funnel to plug (1) hole and add oil until oil emerges when tube is removed.
4. Replace plug (1).

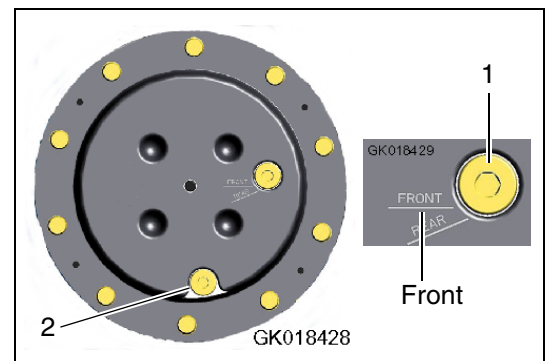
REMARK

The oil must be replaced after first hundred hours then maintenance is thousand hours.

Change oil in hubs

Front Axle

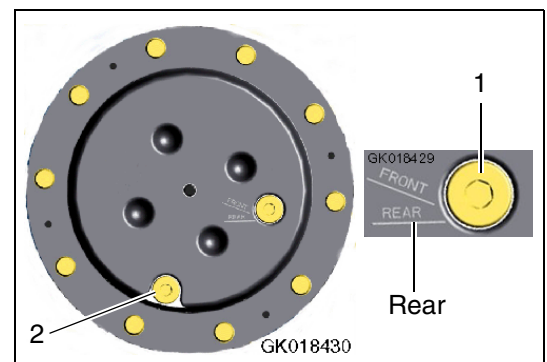
1. Position hub with plug (2) at bottom and remove plug (1) and (2).
2. When all oil has drained out, re-install plug (2).
3. Rotate hub until the oil level line marked Front is horizontal
4. Add oil (2.85 l each hub).
5. If oil emerges, allow excess to drain off and re-install plug (1).
6. If no oil emerges, add oil until there is an excess. Allow excess to drain off and re-install plug (1).

**REMARK**

The oil must be replaced after first hundred hours then maintenance is thousand hours.

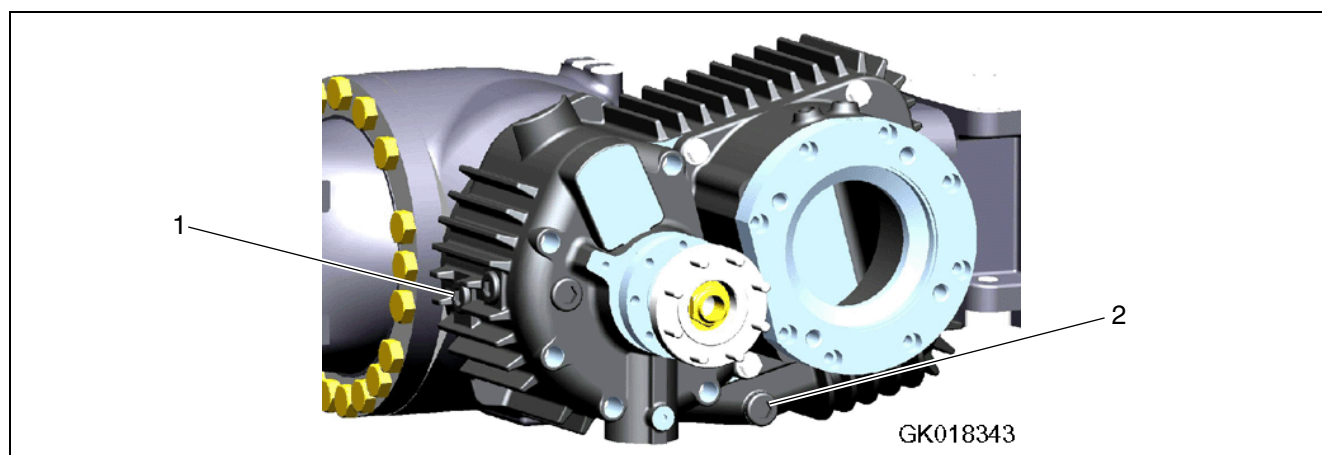
Rear Axle

1. Position hub with plug (2) at bottom and remove plug (1) and (2).
2. When all oil has drained out, re-install plug (2).
3. Rotate hub until the oil level line marked Rear is horizontal
4. Add oil (2.0 l each hub).
5. If oil emerges, allow excess to drain off and re-install plug (1).
6. If no oil emerges, add oil until there is an excess. Allow excess to drain off and re-install plug (1).

**REMARK**

The oil must be replaced after first hundred hours then maintenance is thousand hours.

Change oil in transmission assembly



Transmission

1. Remove plugs (1) and (2) and allow oil to drain out.
2. Replace plug (2).
3. Add oil (approx. 4.85 l) until oil emerges from plug (1) hole.
4. Replace plug (1).

REMARK

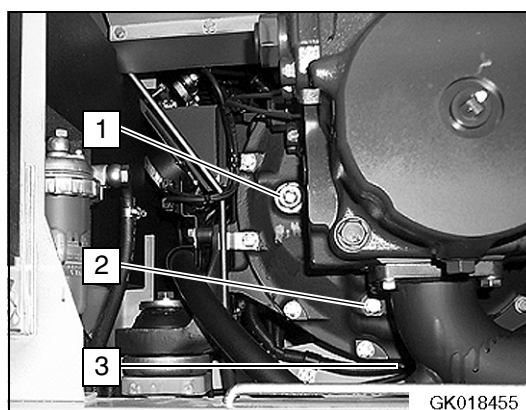
The oil must be replaced after first hundred hours then maintenance is thousand hours.

Change oil in damper

1. Remove plugs (1), (2), (3) and allow oil to drain out.
2. Replace plug (3).
3. Add oil (approx. 0.75 l) in position (1) until oil emerges from plug (2) hole.
4. Replace plug (1) and (2).

REMARK

The oil must be replaced after thousand hours.



4.11.11 Every 2000 hours service

Maintenance for every 100, 250, 500 and 1000 hours should be carried out at the same time.

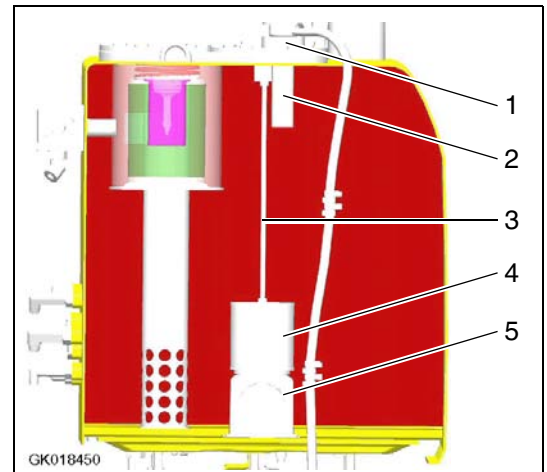
Clean hydraulic tank strainer



WARNING

- The parts and oil are at high temperature after the engine is stopped, and may cause serious burns. Wait for the temperature to go down before cleaning the hydraulic tank strainer.
- When the oil filler cap is removed, oil may spurt out, turn the cap slowly to release the internal pressure, then remove it carefully.

1. Loosen 6 bolts, then remove cover (1).
2. When doing this, the cover may fly out under the force of spring (2), so push the cover down when removing the bolts.
3. Pull up the top of rod (3), and remove spring (2) and strainer (4).
4. Remove the dirt stuck to strainer (4), then wash it in clean diesel oil or flushing oil.
5. If strainer (4) is damaged, replace it with a new one.
6. Refit strainer (4) by inserting it into the tank projecting part (5).
7. Assemble it so that the protruding part at the bottom of cover (1) holds spring (2), then tighten the cover with the bolts.



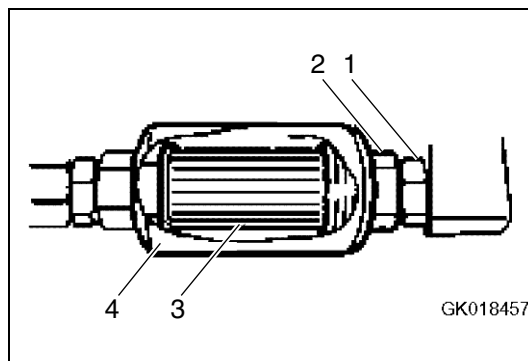
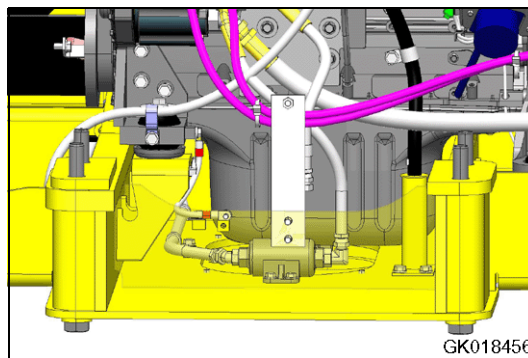
Cleaning the strainer of the brake filter



WARNING

- After the motor is switched off, the parts and oil is very hot and can cause serious burns. Let it cool down before you start working.
- Press the brake pedal approx. 15 times to reduce the pressure in the brake accumulators.

1. Press the brake pedal approx. 15 times to reduce the pressure in the brake accumulators.
2. Open the hydraulic tank slowly to reduce the inner pressure.
3. Remove the cover under the engine.
4. Place a container under the brake filter.
5. Unscrew the hydraulic hose (1) and flange (2).
6. Take strainer (3) into the housing (4) and clean it with clean diesel fuel.
7. Insert the strainer (3) into the housing (4). Make sure that the side with the O-ring faces forward.
8. Screw the flange (2) back on and tighten it.
9. Screw the hydraulic hose back on (1) and tighten it.
10. Wipe away any hydraulic oil that might have leaked out.
11. Start the motor and let it run until the brake accumulator is full. Switch off the motor.
12. Check the level of the hydraulic oil. Refill if required.
13. Bleed the hydraulic system and close the hydraulic tank.
14. Screw the cover back on.



Checking charge pressure of nitrogen gas in accumulator (for control circuit)



WARNING

The accumulator is charged with high-pressure nitrogen gas, so mistaken operation may cause an explosion, which will lead to serious injury or damage. When handling the accumulator, always do as follows.

The pressure in the hydraulic circuit cannot be completely removed. When removing the hydraulic equipment, do not stand in the direction that the oil spurts out when carrying out the operation. In addition, loosen the bolts slowly when carrying out the operation.

Do not disassemble the accumulator.

Do not bring it near flame or dispose of it in fire.

Do not make holes in it or weld it.

Do not hit it, roll it, or subject it to any impact.

When disposing of the accumulator, the gas must be released. Please contact your KOMATSU distributor to have this work carried out.

NOTE

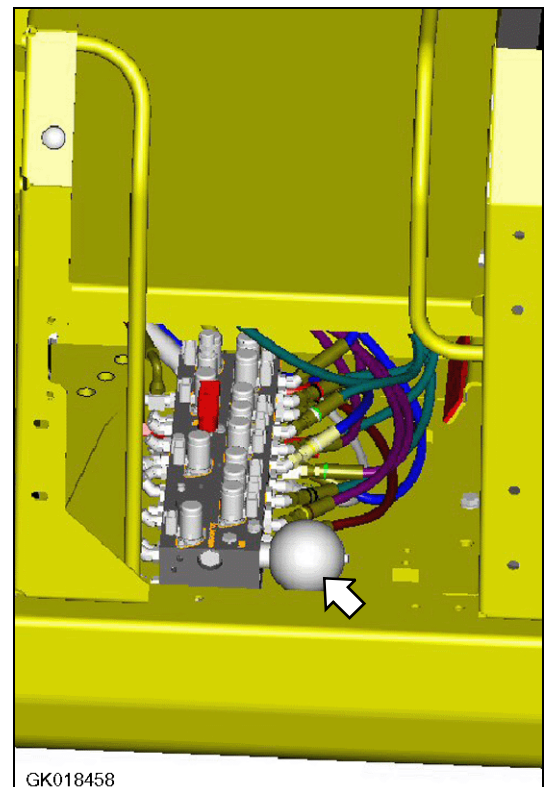
If the nitrogen gas charge pressure in the accumulator is low and operations are continued, it will become impossible to release the remaining pressure inside the hydraulic circuit if a failure occurs on the machine.

Function of accumulator

The accumulator stores the pressure in the control circuit. Even after the engine is stopped, the control circuit can be operated, so the following actions are possible.

- If the control lever is operated in the direction to lower the work equipment, it is possible for the work equipment to go down under its own weight.
- The pressure in the hydraulic circuit can be released.

The accumulator is installed to the position shown in the diagram on the right.



Checking function of accumulator



CAUTION

When carrying out the inspection, check first that there is no person or obstacle in the surrounding area.

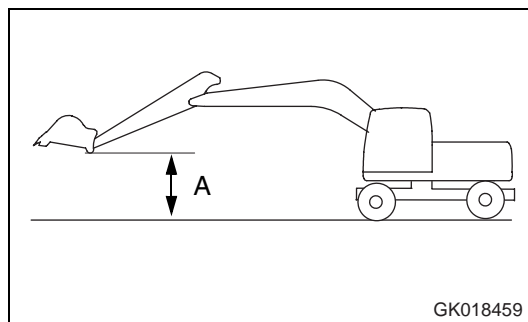
Check the nitrogen gas charge pressure as follows.

1. Stop the machine on firm, level ground.
2. Hold the work equipment in the maximum reach posture (arm fully out, bucket fully dumped) at a height (A) 1.5 m from the ground.

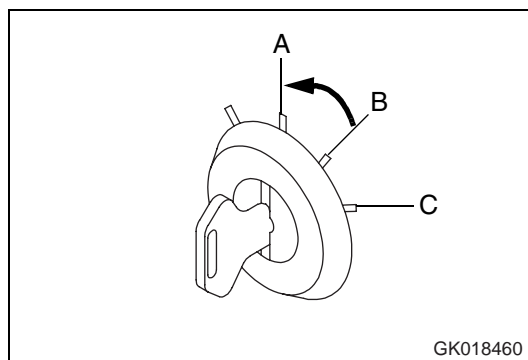
Carry out Steps 3 - 5 within 15 seconds.

When the engine is stopped, the pressure in the accumulator gradually goes down. For this reason, the check can only be carried out immediately after the engine is stopped.

3. Keep the work equipment at the maximum reach, turn the starting switch to the OFF position (A), and stop the engine.

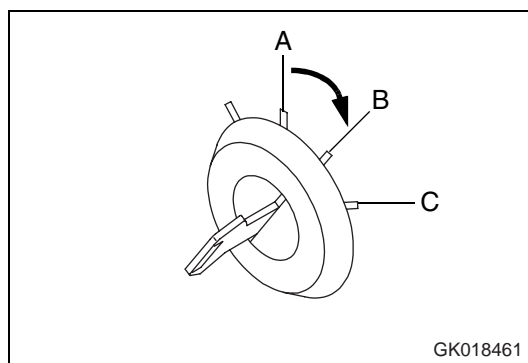


GK018459



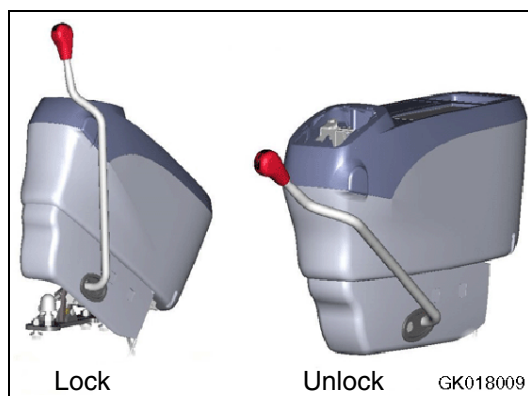
GK018460

4. Turn the starting switch to the ON position (B).



GK018461

5. With the lock lever at the UNLOCK position, operate the work equipment control levers fully in the LOWER direction and check that the work equipment is lowered to the ground.



Lock

Unlock

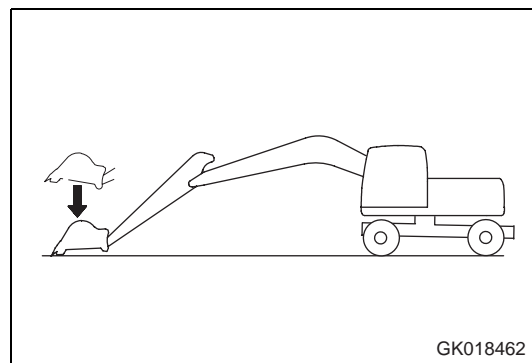
GK018009

6. If the work equipment goes down under its weight and contacts the ground, the accumulator is normal.

If the work equipment does not go down or stops in midway, the charged pressure of the gas in the accumulator for the hydraulic circuit has probably dropped.

Please contact your KOMATSU distributor for inspection.

7. This completes the inspection. After completion of the inspection, set the lock lever to the LOCK position and turn the starting switch to the OFF position.



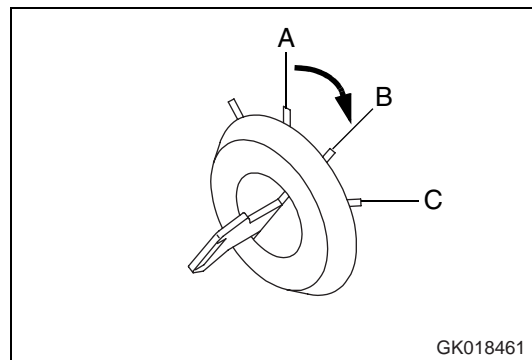
Method of releasing pressure in hydraulic circuit

1. Place the work equipment on the ground. Close the crusher attachment jaws, etc.
2. Operate the work equipment lock lever to the LOCK position.

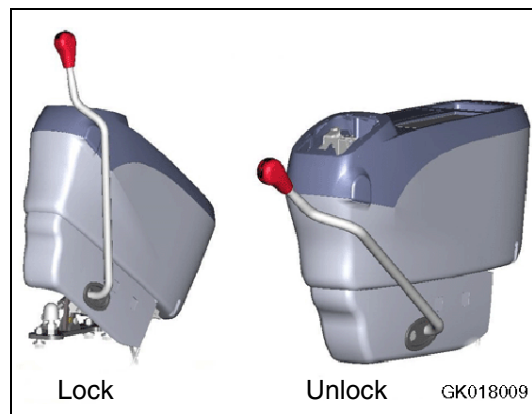
Carry out Steps 3 - 5 within 15 seconds.

When the engine is stopped, the pressure in the accumulator gradually goes down. For this reason, the check can only be carried out immediately after the engine is stopped.

3. Stop the engine.
4. Turn the starting switch to the ON position (B).



5. Set lock lever to UNLOCK position, then operate the work equipment control levers and the attachment control pedal (option) fully to the front, rear, left, and right to release the pressure in the control circuit.
6. Set the lock lever to the LOCK position, then turn the starting switch to the OFF position.



Clean, check turbocharger

Contact your KOMATSU distributor for cleaning or inspection.

Check alternator, starting motor

The brush may be worn, or the bearing may have run out of grease, so contact your KOMATSU distributor for inspection or repair. If the engine is started frequently, carry out inspection every 1000 hours.

Change antifreeze

Follow the procedure of "Clean inside of cooling system (4-39)" for draining and refilling the cooling system.

Check and adjust valve clearance

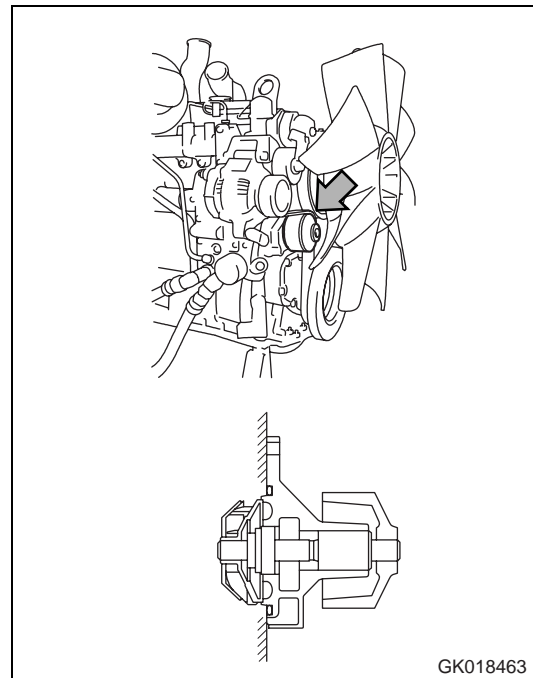
A special tool is required for removing and adjusting the parts, call your KOMATSU distributor for service.

4.11.12 Every 4000 hours service

Maintenance for every 250, 500, 1000 and 2000 hours service should be carried out at the same time.

Check water pump

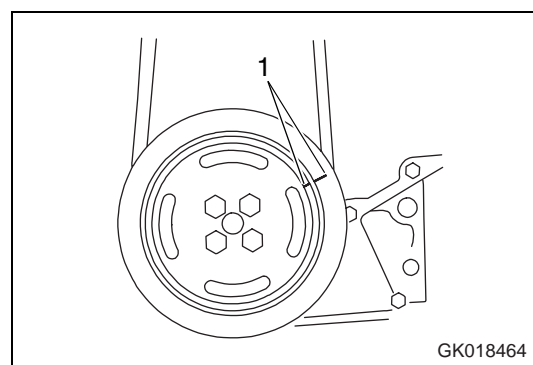
Check for leakage of oil around the water pump. If any problem is found, contact your KOMATSU distributor to have the parts disassembled, repaired, or replaced.



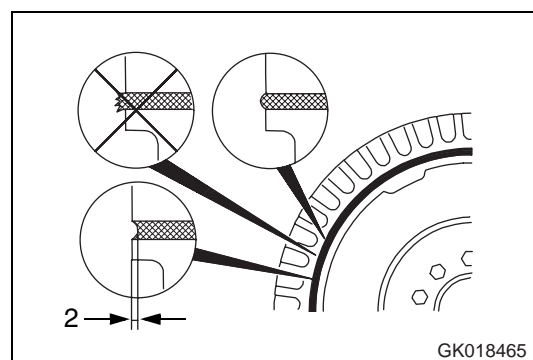
Check vibration damper

For the check and replacement of the vibration damper, special tools are required. Contact KOMATSU Ltd. or its distributor in the territory for the replacement. It has to be replaced with a new one in the following cases.

Mating mark (1) is notched both on the damper hub and on the inertia member of the vibration damper to show any misalignment between the two.



If this misalignment exceeds 1.6 mm, or if there is any dent found on the damper metal surface deeper than 3.2 mm, then (2) the vibration damper must be replaced.



Replace accumulator (for control circuit)

Replace the accumulator every 2 years or every 4000 hours, whichever comes sooner.



WARNING

The accumulator is charged with high-pressure nitrogen gas, so mistaken operation may cause an explosion, which will lead to serious injury or damage. When handling the accumulator, always do as follows.

The pressure in the hydraulic circuit cannot be completely removed. When removing the hydraulic equipment, do not stand in the direction that the oil spurts out when carrying out the operation. In addition, loosen the bolts slowly when carrying out the operation.

Do not disassemble the accumulator.

Do not bring it near flame or dispose of it in fire.

Do not make holes in it or weld it.

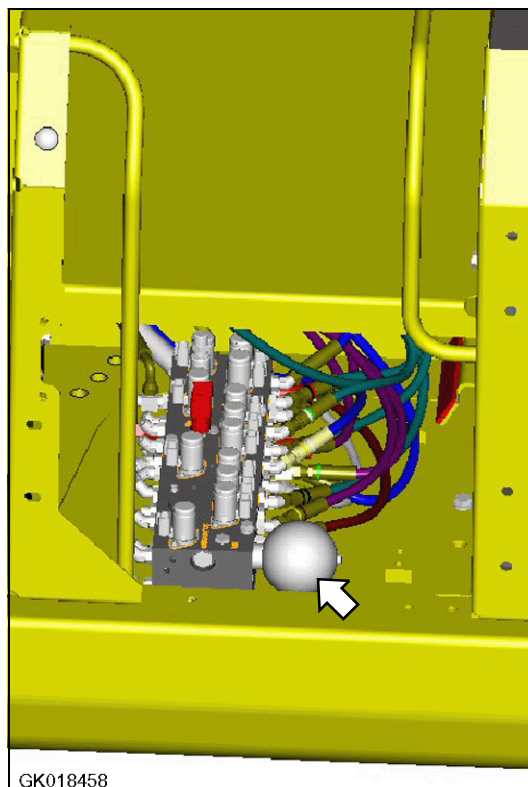
Do not hit it, roll it, or subject it to any impact.

When disposing of the accumulator, the gas must be released.

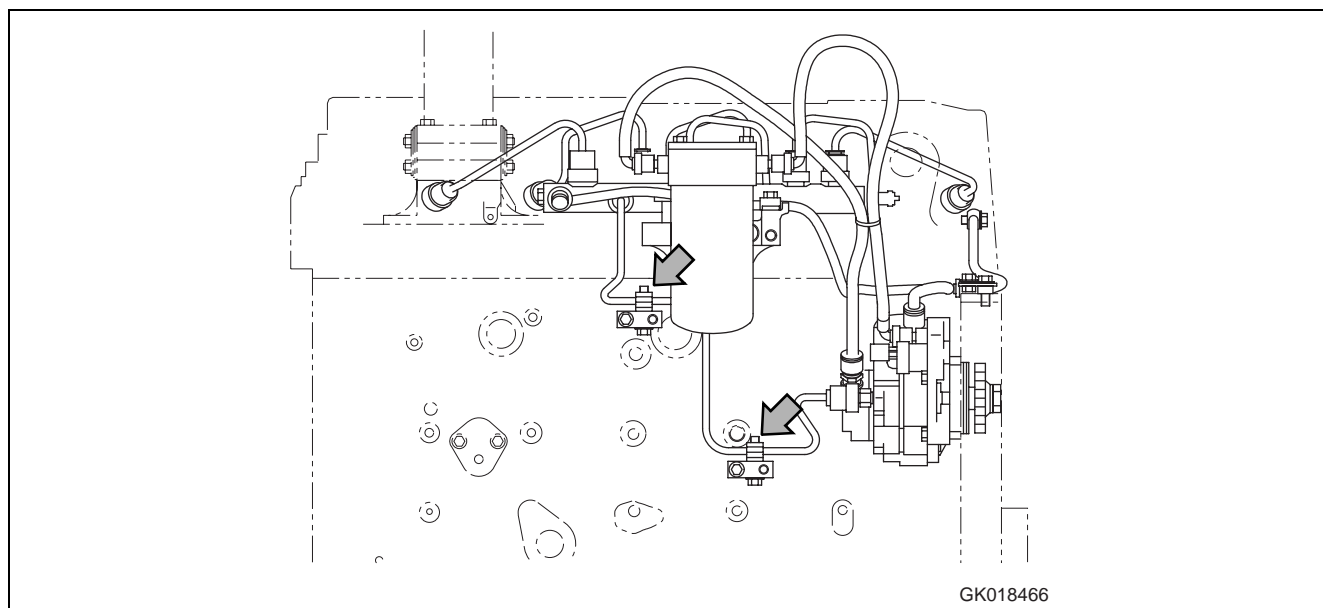
Please contact your KOMATSU distributor to have this work carried out.

If operations are continued after the performance of the accumulator has dropped, it will be impossible to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic circuit if there should be a failure on the machine. Please ask your KOMATSU distributor to replace the accumulator.

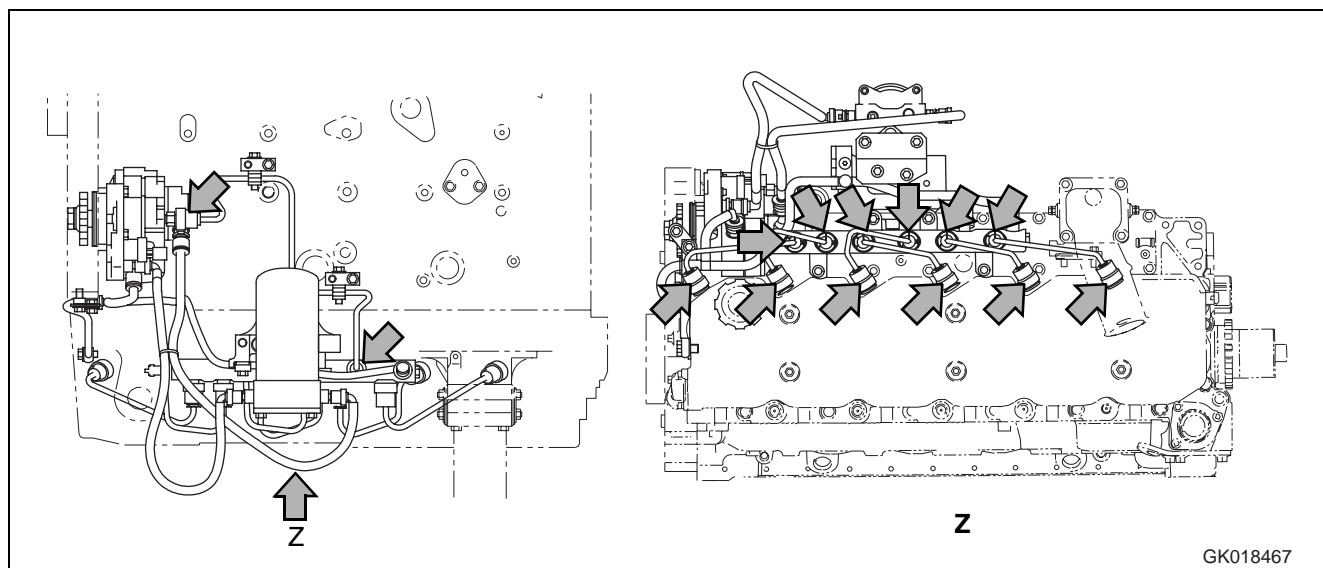
The accumulator is installed to the position shown in the diagram on the right.



GK018458

Check for looseness of high-pressure piping clamp, hardening of rubber

Check visually and touch by hand to check that there is no hardening of the rubber and no loose bolts of the mounting clamps (2 places) for the high-pressure piping between the supply pump and the common rail. If there are any problems, the parts must be replaced. In this case, please ask your KOMATSU distributor to carry out replacement.

Check for missing fuel spray prevention cap, hardening of rubber

The fuel spray prevention caps (14 places) on the fuel injection piping and both ends of the high-pressure piping act to prevent the fuel from coming into contact with high-temperature parts of the engine and causing a fire if the fuel should leak or spray out. Check visually and touch by hand to check that there are no missing caps, loose bolts or hardening of the rubber. If there are any problems, the parts must be replaced. In this case, please ask your KOMATSU distributor to carry out replacement.

Check operating condition of compressor

Check the following two items.

1. When the air conditioner switch is turned ON-OFF, do the compressor and magnet clutch also turn ON-OFF?
2. Is any abnormal noise generated by the clutch or compressor body?

If any problem is found, contact your KOMATSU distributor to have the parts disassembled, repaired, or replaced.

4.11.13 Every 5000 hours service

Maintenance for every 100, 250, 500 and 1000 hours should be carried out at the same time.

Change oil in hydraulic tank and replace steer/brake circuit strainer



WARNING

- The parts and oil are still at high temperature after the engine is stopped, and may cause serious burns. Wait for the temperature to go down before servicing the hydraulic tank.
- When the oil filler cap is removed, oil may spurt out, so turn the cap slowly to release the internal pressure, then remove it carefully.

Prepare the following:

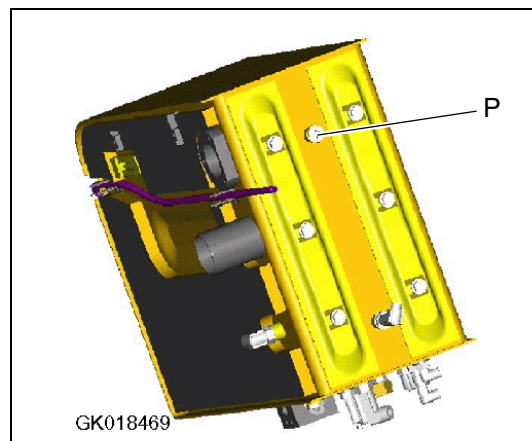
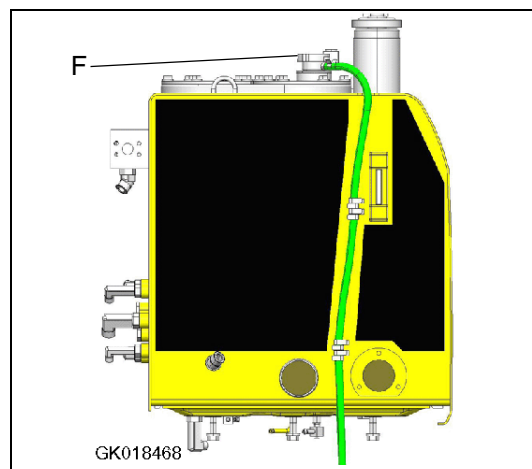
- Refill, capacity: 120 litres
 - Prepare a handle for the socket wrench set.
1. Retract the arm and bucket cylinders to the stroke end, then lower the boom and put the bucket teeth in contact with the ground.
 2. Lock the safety lock lever and stop the engine.
 3. After the tank has cooled, remove the cap from oil filler (F) on the hydraulic tank.
 4. Set an empty oil container under the drain plug under the machine. Remove drain plug (P) and drain the oil.

Check the O-ring installed on plug (P). If it is damaged, replace the O-ring. After draining the oil, tighten drain plug (P).

Tightening torque: 69 ± 10 Nm

NOTE

If the machine is equipped with bio oil the oil change interval is reduced to 2,500 hours. If in doubt about the performance of the brand used consult your KOMATSU dealer.



4.11 Maintenance procedure

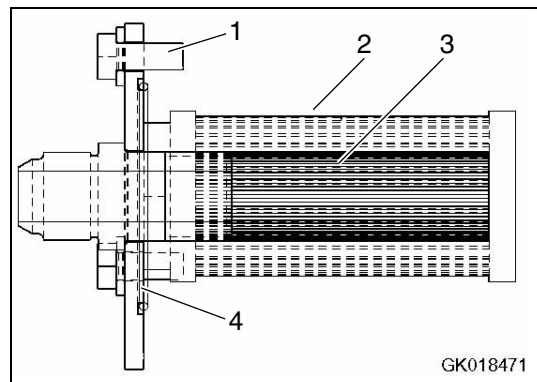
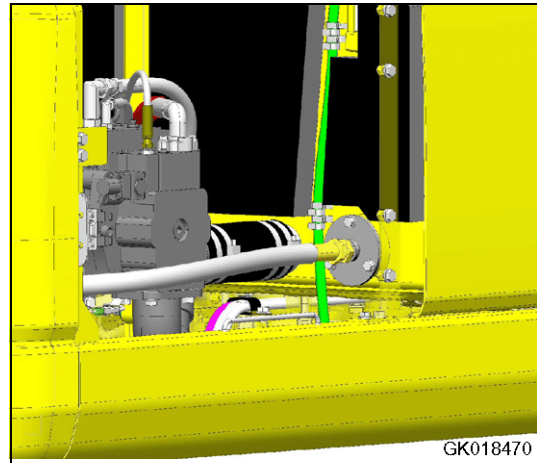
Every 5000 hours service

Maintenance

5. Remove 3 bolts (1) and remove strainer assembly (2).
6. Remove strainer (3) and replace.
Tightening torque: 5 - 7 Nm
7. Check condition of o-ring (4) replace if worn.
8. Lubricate o-ring with oil and install strainer assembly. Fasten with 3 bolts.
9. Add the specified amount of engine oil through oil filler port (F).

Check that the oil level is midway between H and L on the sight gauge.

For details of the method of bleeding the air, see "Check oil level in hydraulic tank, add oil (4-59)".



Procedure for bleeding air

Follow steps 1 and 2 to bleed the air.

1. Bleeding air from pump

1. Loosen air bleeder (1) installed to the drain port, and check that oil oozes out. (Completion of air bleeding)
2. Loosen bleeder plug (2) in the elbow (3) and check that oil oozes out.
3. After completing the air bleeding operation, tighten the air bleeder and the plug.

REMARK

If the pump is operated without filling the pump case with hydraulic oil, abnormal heat will be generated and this may lead to premature damage of the pump.

2. Starting engine

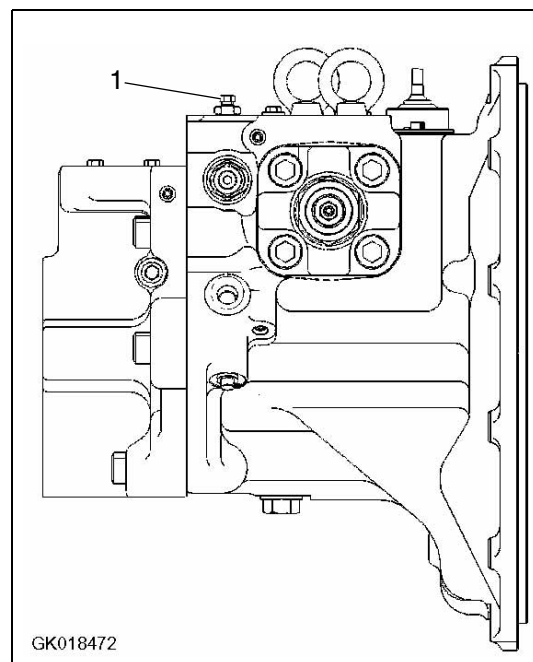
Start the engine according to "Starting engine (3-112)" keep running the engine at low idling for 10 minutes, and carry out the following procedure.

3. Bleeding air from cylinders

1. Run the engine at low idling, for 5 minutes after engine start. Extend and retract each cylinder 4 - 5 times without operating it to the end of its stroke. (Stop approx. 100 mm before the end of the stroke)
2. Next alter engine speed to Max., and operate again as step 1.
3. After this, operate each cylinder 4 - 5 times to the end of its stroke to completely bleed the air.

NOTE

If, at first, the engine is run at high speed or the cylinder is operated to the end of its stroke, the air inside the cylinder may cause damage to the piston packing or other parts.



5. Technical Data

5.1 Specifications

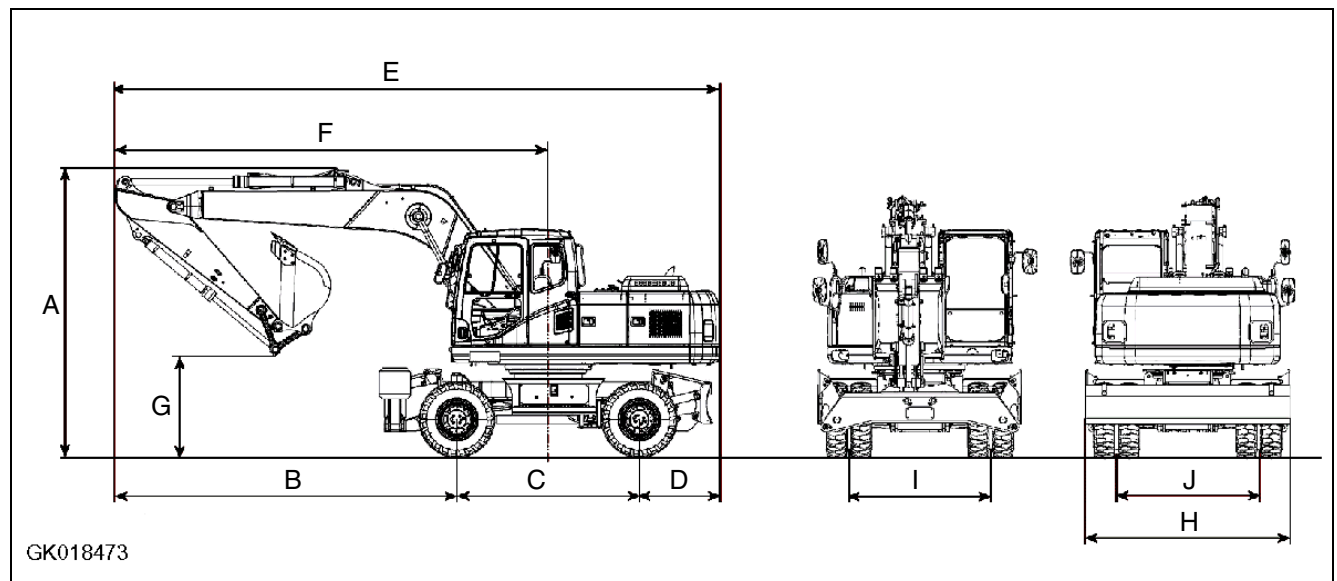
Weight	PW180-7E0
Operation weight (without operator)	* 17,160 kg

* Weight will vary depending on specification

Performance			PW180-7E0
Bucket capacity (standard bucket) SAE			0.8 m³
Travel speed	Creep speed		2.5 km/h
	Low speed		10 km/h
	High speed	Non German specification	35 km/h
		German specification	20 km/h
Swing speed			11.5 rpm

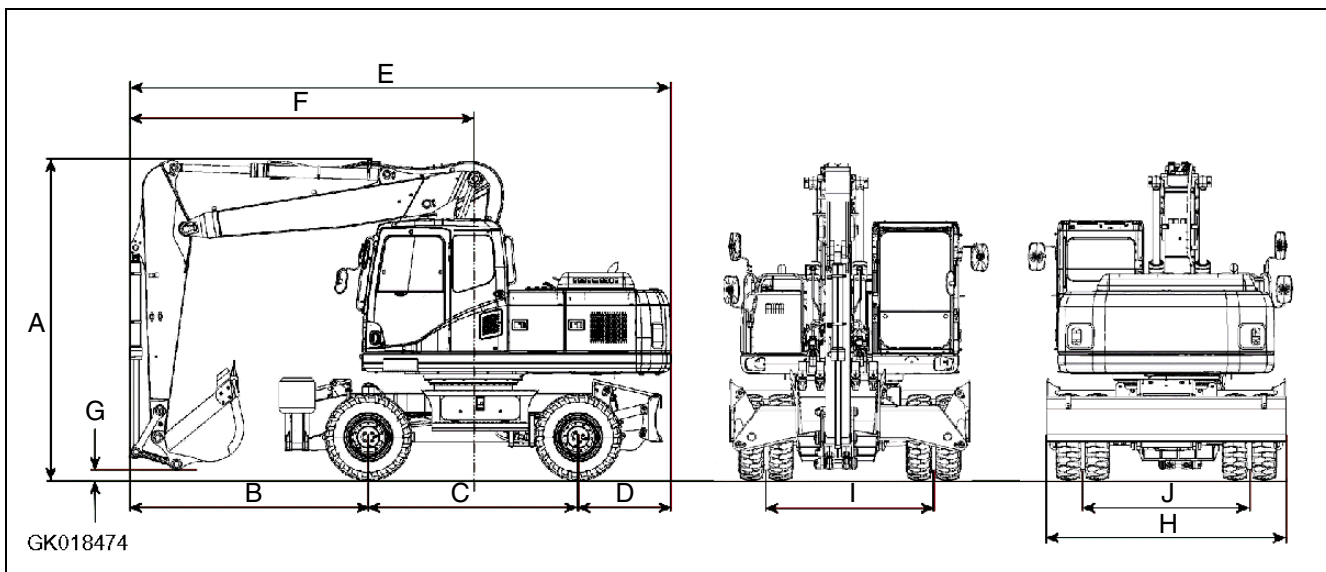
Engine	PW180-7E0
Model	Komatsu SAA6D107E-1 diesel engine
Flywheel horsepower (NET)	108.4 kW (145.4 HP/2000 rpm)
Starting motor	24 V 5.5 kW
Alternator	24 V 60 A
Battery	12 V 120 AH × 2

5.1.1 One piece boom



	Description		2.25 m	2.6 m	2.9 m
A	Overall height		3,720		
B	Front overhang		5,100		
C	Wheelbase		2,600		
D	Rear overhang		1,200		
E	Overall length		8,900		
F	Front swing radius		6,400		
G	Work equipment ground clearance		922	800	624
H	Overall width	2.5 m axle	2,550		
		2.75 m axle	2,750		
I	Front track	2.5 m axle	1,914		
		2.75 m axle	2,124		
J	Rear track	2.5 m axle	1,914		
		2.75 m axle	2,124		

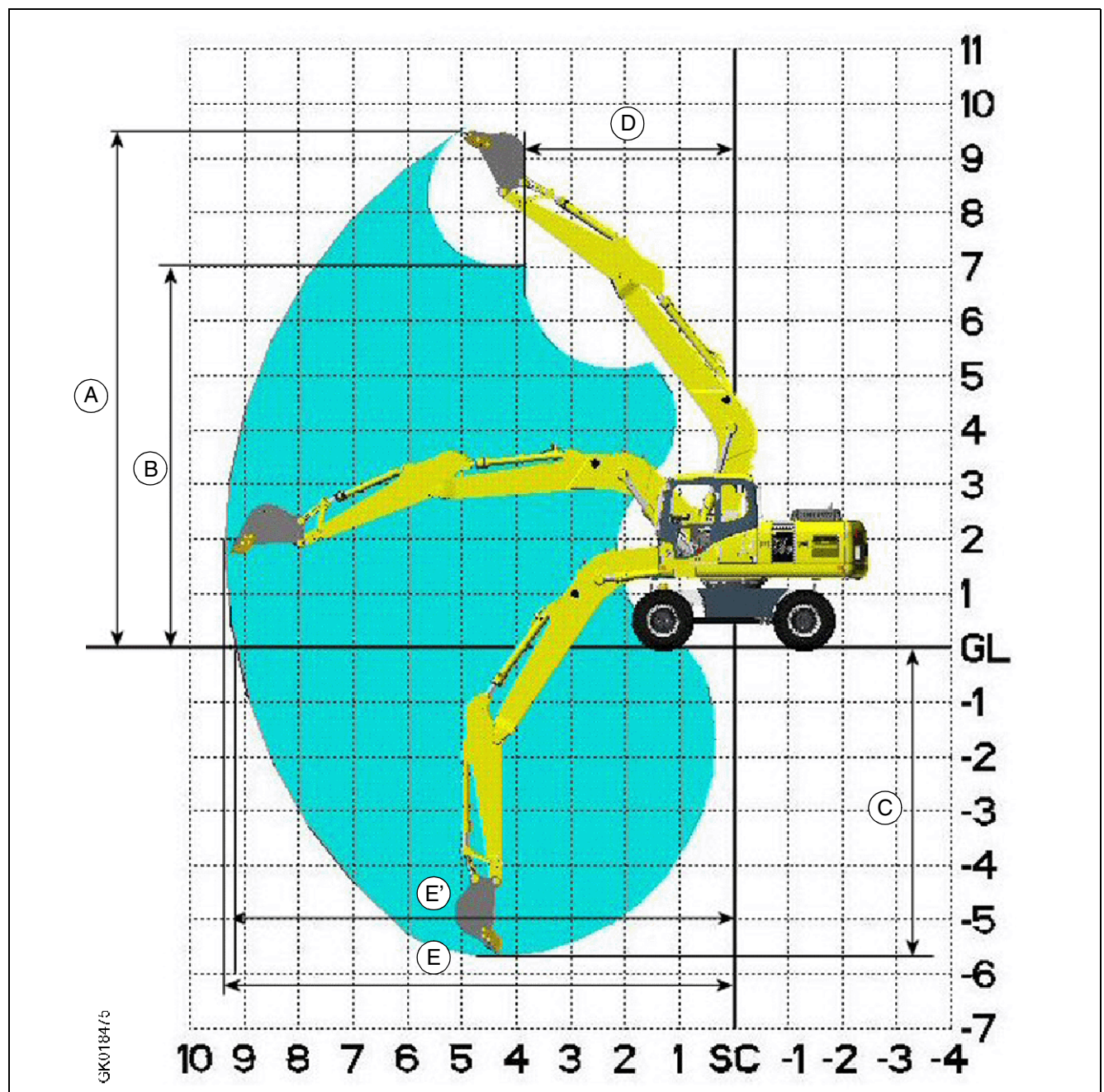
5.1.2 Two piece boom



	Description		2.25 m	2.6 m	2.9 m
A	Overall height		3,972		3,960
B	Front overhang		2,994	2,917	3,050
C	Wheelbase		2,600		
D	Rear overhang		1,200		
E	Overall length		6,794	6,717	6,850
F	Front swing radius		4,341		
G	Work equipment ground clearance		551	205	368
H	Overall width	2.5 m axle	2,550		
		2.75 m axle	2,750		
I	Front track	2.5 m axle	1,914		
		2.75 m axle	2,124		
J	Rear track	2.5 m axle	1,914		
		2.75 m axle	2,124		

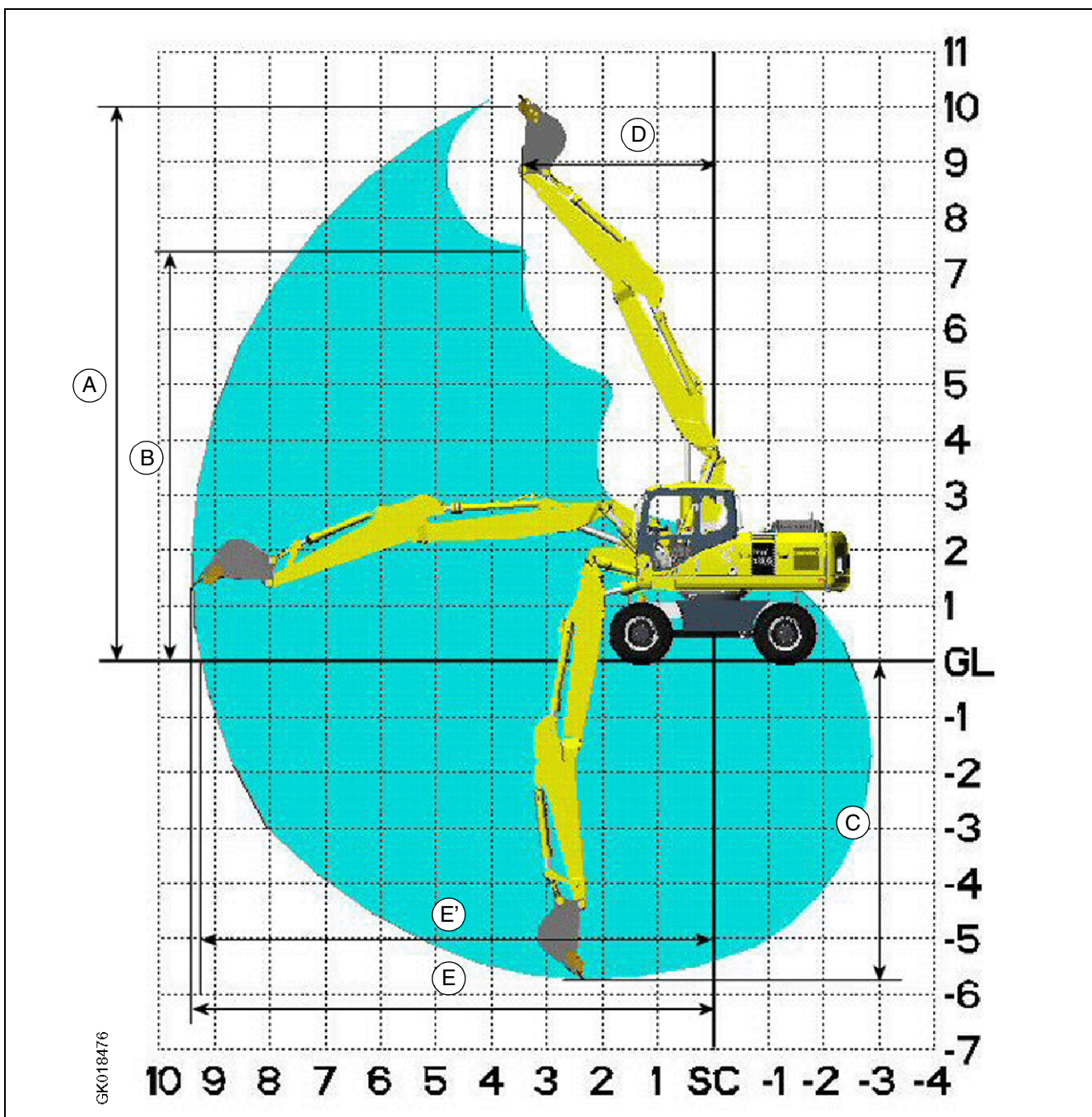
5.1.3 Working range – One piece boom

Arm length mm		2250	2600	2900
A	Max. digging height	9,948	9,562	9,756
B	Max. dumping height	6,915	7,064	7,236
C	Max. digging depth	5,321	5,676	5,966
D	Min. swing radius	3,543	3,829	4,057
E'	Max. digging reach GL	8,907	9,227	9,509
E	Max. digging reach	9,061	9,345	9,929



5.1.4 Working range – Two piece boom

Arm length mm		2250	2600	2900
A	Max. digging height	9,942	10,129	10,350
B	Max. dumping height	7,283	7,489	7,709
C	Max. digging depth	5,400	5,742	6,044
D	Min. swing radius	3,065	3,311	3,511
E'	Max. digging reach GL	8,907	9,227	9,509
E	Max. digging reach	9,080	9,401	9,683



6. Attachments, Options



WARNING

Please read and make sure that you understand the safety volume before reading this section.

6.1 General precautions

6.1.1 Precautions related to safety

If attachments or options other than those authorized by KOMATSU are installed, this will not only affect the life of the machine, but will also cause problems with safety.

When installing attachments not listed in this Operation and Maintenance Manual, please contact your KOMATSU distributor first.

If you do not contact KOMATSU, we cannot accept any responsibility for any accident or failure.



WARNING

- Precautions for removal and installation operations
When removing or installing attachments, obey the following precautions and take care to ensure safety during the operation.
- Carry out the removal and installation operations on a flat, firm ground surface.
- When the operation is carried out by two or more workers, determine signals and follow these during the operation.
- When carrying heavy objects (more than 25 kg), use a crane.
- When removing heavy parts, always support the part before removing it.
When lifting such heavy parts with a crane, always pay careful attention to the position of the centre of gravity.
- It is dangerous to carry out operations with the load kept suspended. Always set the load on a stand, and check that it is safe.
- When removing or installing attachments, make sure that they are in a stable condition and will not fall over.
- Never go under a load suspended from a crane.
Always stand in a position that is safe even if the load should fall.

NOTE

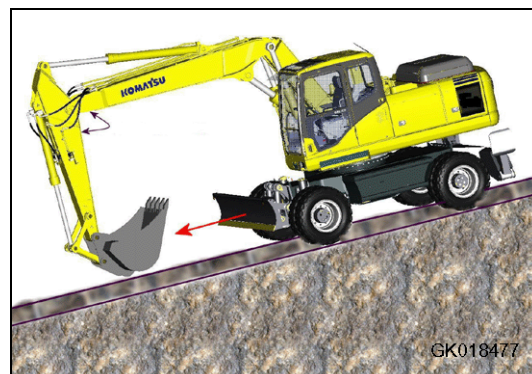
*Qualifications are required to operate a crane. Never allow the crane to be operated by unqualified person.
For details of the removal and installation operations, please contact your KOMATSU distributor.*

6.2 Precautions when installing attachments

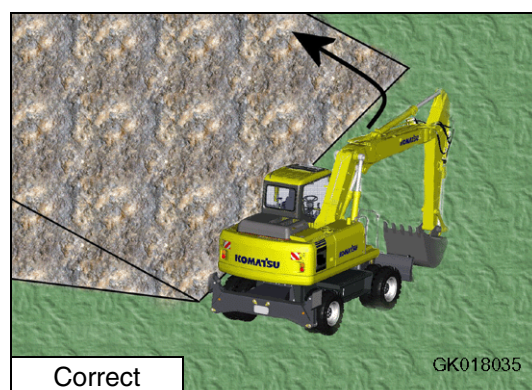
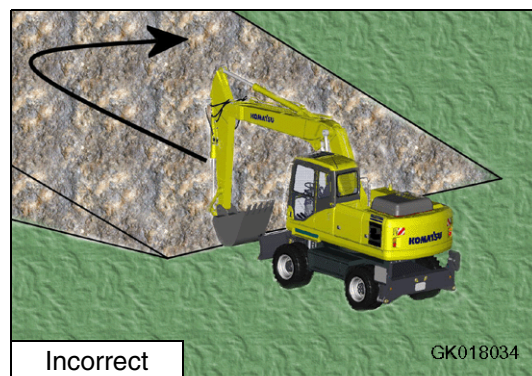
If options or attachments are modified or changed, the driving characteristics of the machine may change. Always read this section as a refresher every time attachments change.

WARNING

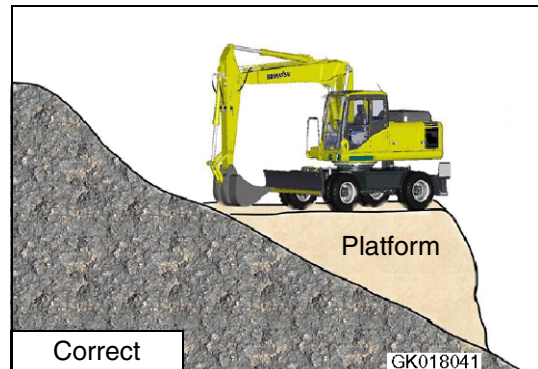
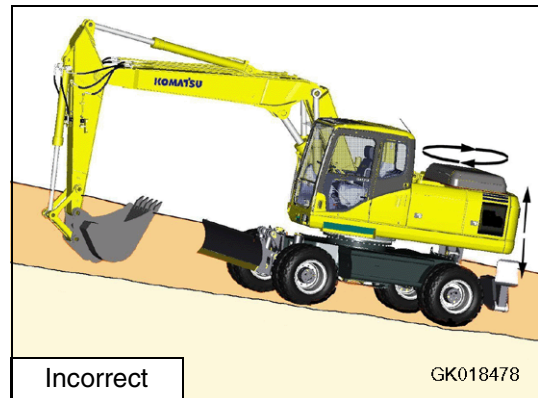
- Long work equipment reduces the stability of the chassis, so if the swing is operated on a slope, or when going down a steep hill, the machine may lose its balance and overturn. The following operations are particularly dangerous, so never operate the machine in these ways.
- Going downhill with the work equipment raised



- Traveling across slopes



- Swinging the upper structure on slopes
- If heavy work equipment is installed, the overrun of the swing becomes greater (the distance from the point where the operator operates the left control lever to stop the swing to the point where the upper structure stops completely), so there is danger of mistaking the distance and hitting something.
Always operate so that there is an ample margin to the stopping point.
Furthermore, the hydraulic drift also becomes larger when the work equipment is stopped in mid-air, it will gradually move down under its own weight).
- Always follow the correct procedure when installing the boom and arm. If the correct procedure is not followed, this may lead to serious damage or injury, so please consult your KOMATSU distributor before carrying out installation.
- If long work equipment is installed, the working range will suddenly become larger, so there is danger of mistaking the distance and hitting something.
Always operate the work equipment so that there is ample space from any obstacles in the area



6.3 Hydraulic quick coupler piping

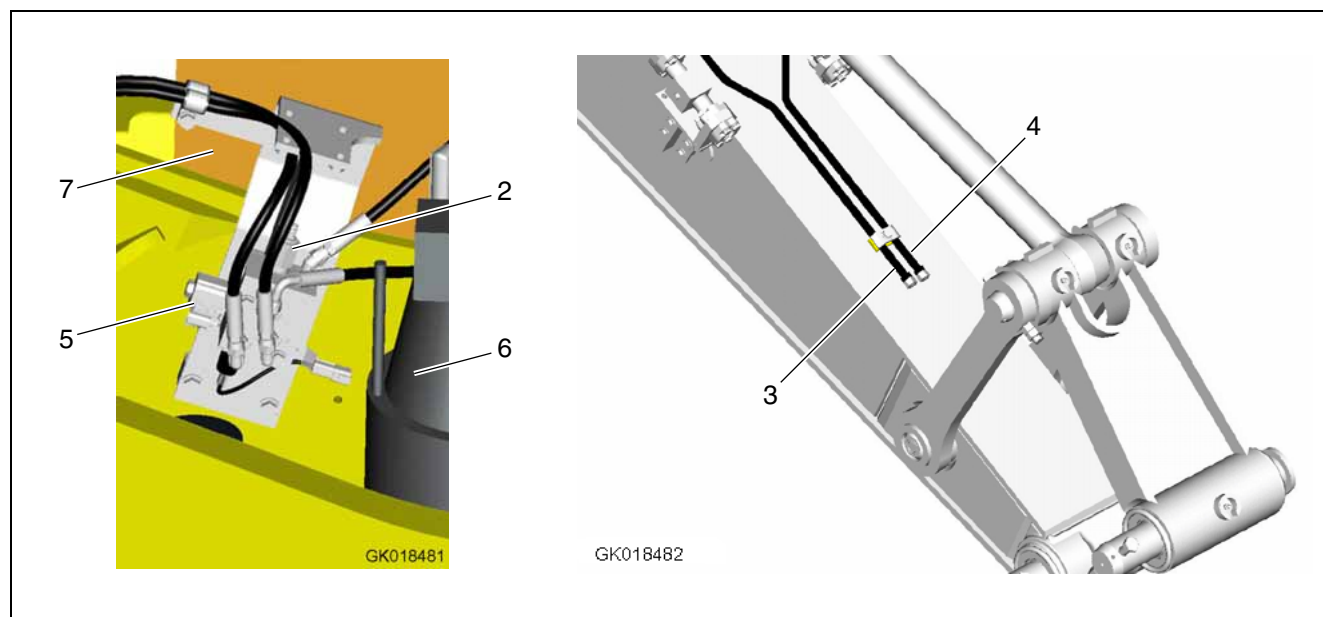


WARNING

Quick coupler operation can be dangerous. There is a risk of death to exposed persons. Follow these instructions strictly.

1. Use only quick couplers which comply with European standard EN474. In particular, it must be possible to confirm from the operator's position that the locking of the attachment or bucket has been completed.
2. Use only quick couplers which include a pilot operated check valve in the locking cylinder. This is to ensure that there is no risk of the bucket or attachment coming loose in the case of loss of hydraulic pressure. If in doubt consult the manufacturer of the quick coupler.
3. Read the instruction manual of the quick coupler carefully and follow the recommendations. If in doubt about the installation or operation consult your KOMATSU dealer.
4. The pressure regulation valve (2) allows the pressure at the quick coupler to be limited according to the quick coupler manufacturer's recommendation. Check the specification of the quick coupler and ensure that the valve is set appropriately.
5. Ensure that the quick coupler is installed by a suitably qualified technician. If in doubt contact your KOMATSU dealer.

6.3.1 Locations



1.	Switch (see following page)
2.	Adjustable pressure regulating valve
3.	Piping (quick coupler lock direction)
4.	Piping (quick coupler release direction)
5.	Solenoid
6.	Swing machinery
7.	Fuel tank

6.3.2 Operation

To release a bucket or attachment

1. If the bucket or attachment has any hydraulic connections to the machine these must be disconnected before proceeding.



WARNING

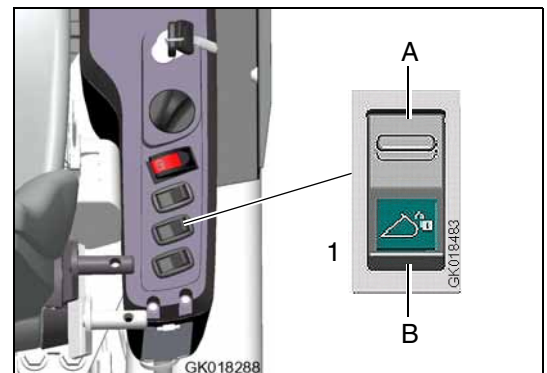
Pressure in the system can cause injury. Follow all instructions in "Precautions when installing attachments (6-3)".

2. Position the attachment on the ground safely where it is to be left. Take care that it will not roll or slide after release.
3. Operate the switch (1).

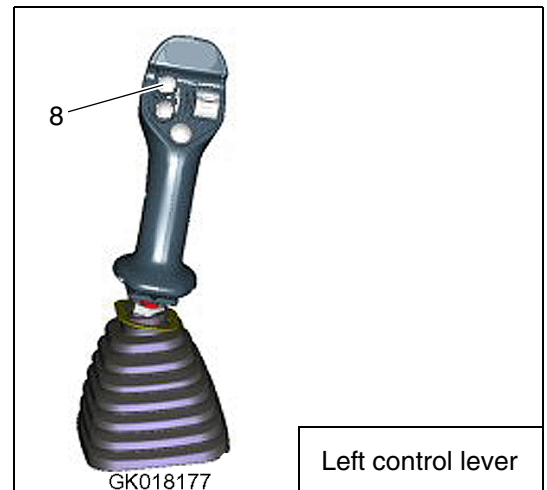
NOTE

The switch has a safety lock mechanism to prevent accidental operation. Slide the lock towards you then rock the switch. The lamp on the switch will come on and a warning buzzer will sound.

- A. When depressed at this point the quick coupler is set to LOCK
- B. When depressed at this point the quick coupler is set to RELEASE



4. Press switch (8) on the left hand lever.
5. Depending on the design of the quick coupler it may be necessary to operate one of the hydraulic functions of the machine (bucket, boom, arm, or swing) to raise the pressure in the hydraulic system. If using the swing function activate the Swing Lock first ("Swing lock switch (3-45)").
6. The quick coupler will now release the attachment/bucket.



To pick up a new bucket or attachment

1. Position the quick coupler over the new bucket or attachment.
2. Operate the switch (1).

NOTE

The switch has a safety lock mechanism to prevent accidental operation. Slide the lock towards you then rock the switch. The lamp on the switch will come on and a warning buzzer will sound.

3. Press switch (8) on the left hand lever.
4. Depending on the design of the quick coupler it may be necessary to operate one of the hydraulic functions of the machine (bucket, boom, arm or swing) to raise the pressure in the hydraulic system. If using the swing function activate the Swing Lock first ("Swing lock switch (3-45)"). The quick coupler will move to the 'released' position.
5. Position the quick coupler in the mating portion of the bucket or attachment, moving the bucket cylinder, arm and boom as necessary. Follow the quick coupler manufacturer's instructions.
6. Return switch (1) to the OFF position. The lamp will go off and the buzzer will stop. If necessary operate one of the machine control levers to raise the system pressure. The quick coupler will lock onto the bucket or attachment.



WARNING

European safety standards require that it is possible to check the locked position of the quick coupler from the operator's position. Failure to check could cause the death of exposed persons. Check carefully that the locking of the quick coupler is complete and secure. Follow the manufacturer's instructions carefully, including the installation of any safety device, if required.

7. If the bucket or attachment needs a connection to the hydraulic system of the machine follow all instructions in "Precautions when installing attachments (6-3)".

**WARNING**

Check daily that the hoses and fittings in the quick coupler piping system are in good condition. Pay particular attention to the hoses and fittings at the arm end as these can be damaged easily. In case of damage or leakage of oil stop work. Loss of oil could lead to the bucket or attachment falling and killing an exposed person. The damage or leakage must be repaired before continuing work.

**WARNING**

This machine has a system installed to give warning if there is a failure to maintain pressure in the quick coupler system. If the buzzer sounds in the cab make sure that the cause is clarified before continuing to work. In particular check for leaks in the system. If in doubt call your KOMATSU dealer.

6.4 Handling bucket with hook

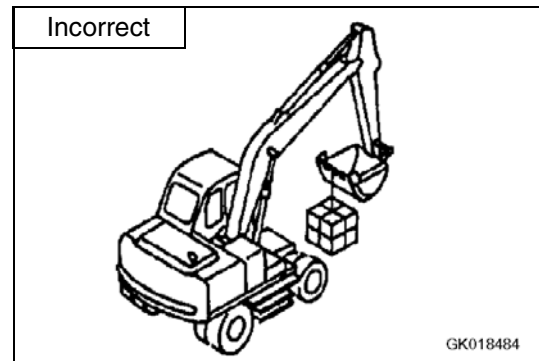
6.4.1 Checking for damage to bucket with hook

Check that there is no damage to the hook, stopper, or hook mount. If any abnormality is found, please contract your KOMATSU distributor.

6.4.2 Prohibited operations

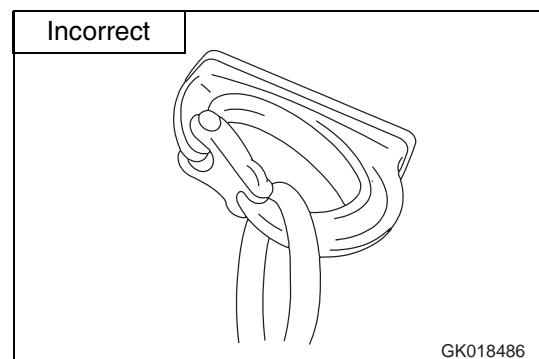
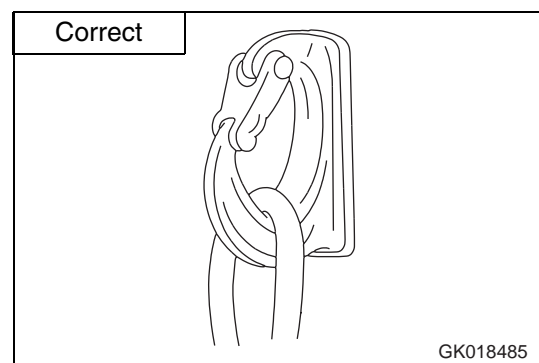
The standard work equipment must not be used for lifting loads. If this machine is to be used for lifting loads, it is necessary to install the special bucket with hook.

Never lift a load by passing slings or chains over the bucket or a tooth.



6.4.3 Precautions during operations

- When carrying out lifting operations, reduce the engine speed and use the lifting operation mode.
- Depending on the posture of the work equipment, there is danger that the wire or load may slip off the hook. Always be careful to maintain the correct hook angle to prevent this from happening.
- Never steer the machine while lifting a load.
- If the bucket with hook is turned and used for operations, it will hit the arm during dumping operations, so be careful when using it.
- The loads must never exceed those specified in the lifting capacity chart when carrying out lifting operations.
- If you wish to install a hook in the future, please contact your KOMATSU distributor.

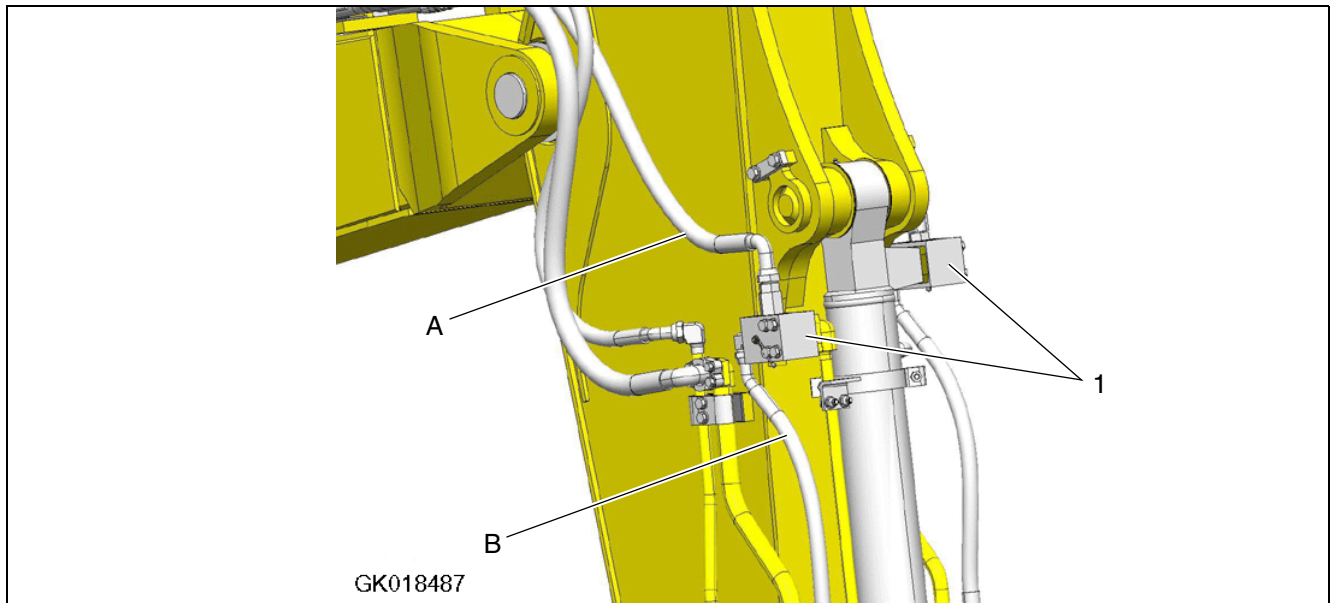


6.5 Machines ready for attachments

6.5.1 Clamshell operation selector valves

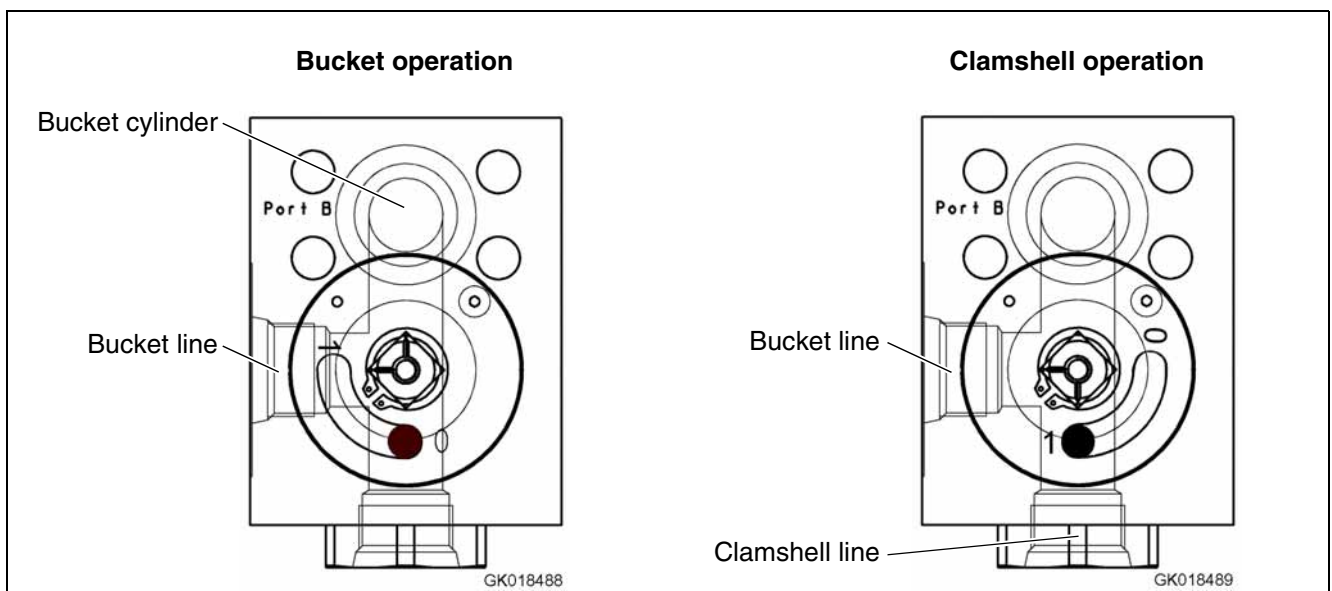
The selector valves (1) are used to set the function to either bucket cylinder operation or clamshell open/close operation.

Selector valve in normal position for bucket cylinder operation



- A. To/from main valve
- B. Clamshell feed

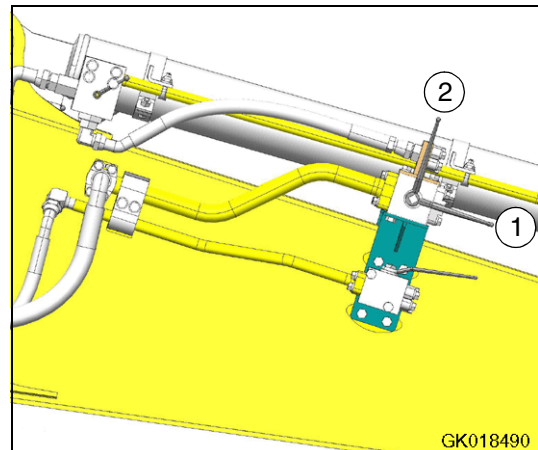
Selector valve turned to clamshell operation. Both valves (left and right) must be in same position.



1. Stop valve (1)

This valve stops the flow of the hydraulic oil to the attachment. There is one on each side of the arm.

- (1) Free: Hydraulic oil flows
- (2) Lock: Hydraulic oil stops



WARNING

- Before removing or installing any attachment be sure to release any pressure in the piping as follows:
- Run the engine for at least one minute. Keep the safety lock lever in the free position.
- Stop the engine and immediately return the key to the "ON" position.
- Operate the control for the attachment circuit in both directions. Example: If removing a clamshell bucket be sure to operate both left and right rotation using the buttons on the right lever, as shown in "Handling the clamshell bucket (6-13)". Also be sure to move the lever to the left and right to release pressure in the bucket open/close circuit.
- Note that this does not completely release the pressure, so when detaching hoses or hydraulic fittings loosen the connections slowly and do not stand in the direction in which the oil will spurt out.

When removing or installing attachments, set this valve to the LOCK position after releasing the pressure in the circuit.

2. Accumulator (for control circuit) (2)

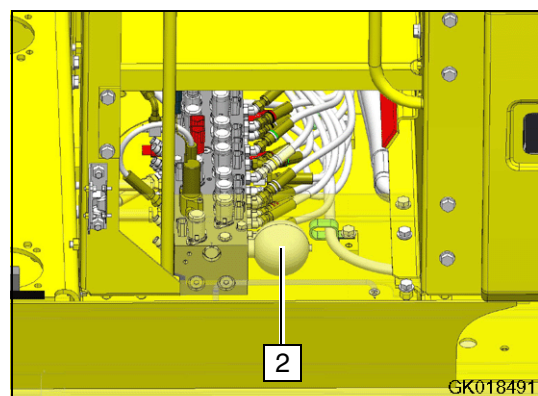


WARNING

The accumulator is charged with high-pressure nitrogen gas, and it is extremely dangerous if it is handled mistakenly.

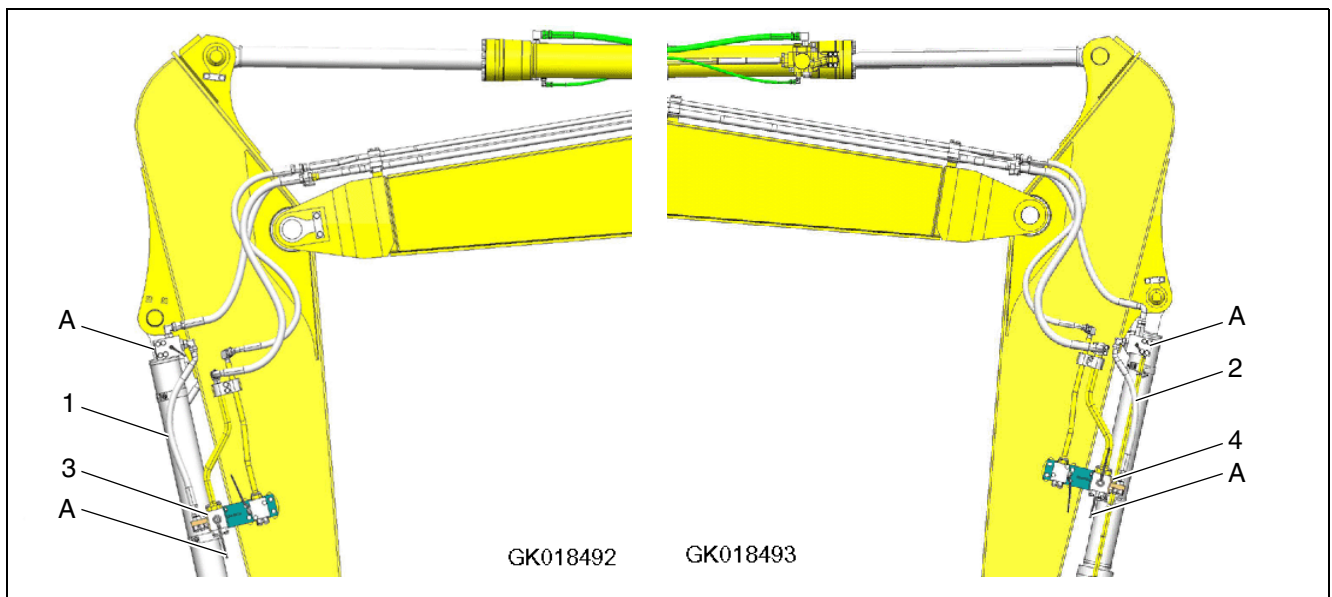
For details of handling, see "Handling accumulators (3-94)".

This is installed to release any remaining pressure in the attachment circuit after the engine is stopped. Normally, do not touch it.



6.5.2 Handling the clamshell bucket

This bucket is used for digging and loading in side-ditches or confined spaces.



How to install clamshell bucket

1. Clamshell cylinder head (feed)
2. Clamshell cylinder bottom (return)
3. Rotate left
4. Rotate right

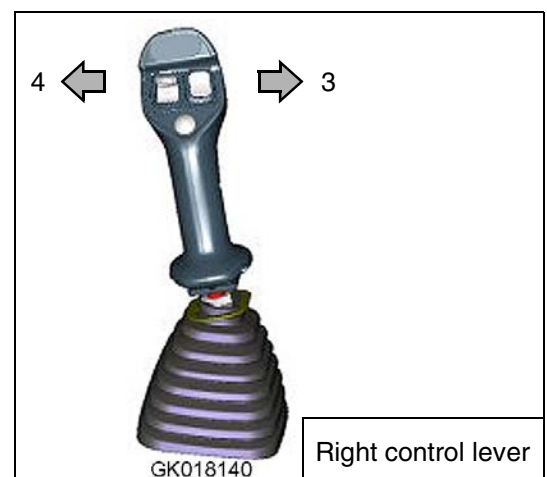
Ensure valves (A) are open on both sides. Ensure selector is in correct position.

How to operate

Open and close

Move the right control lever to operate clamshell

3. Open (move to right)
4. Close (move to left)

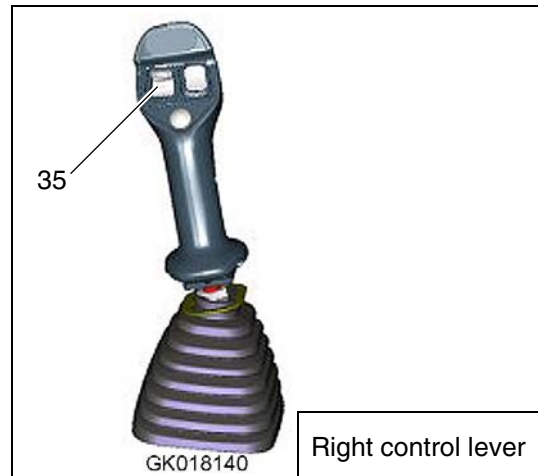


Rotate ("Clamshell rotation switch (3-50)")

Proportional roller switch (35) on right control lever.

Clamshell rotate left	Push roller down
Clamshell rotate right	Push roller up

- For safety, always avoid abrupt travelling, swing and stopping.
- When mounting a clamshell bucket, the bucket cylinder must be positioned at mid-stroke to allow access to quick release couplers.
Connect couplers and retract bucket cylinder

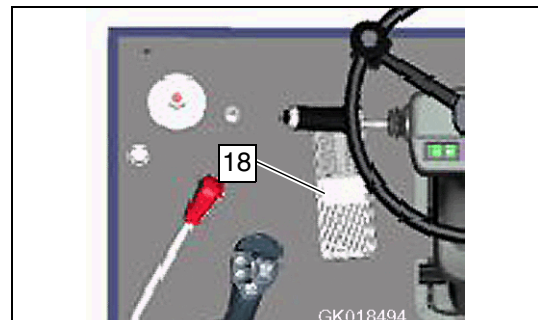
**REMARK**

Isolate cylinder using lock valve and secure bucket links.

- Do not swing the bucket to crush the rock or to cut through soil.
- Do not use the bucket for hammering or pulling out piles, etc.
- Before leaving the machine, open the bucket and lower it to the ground.

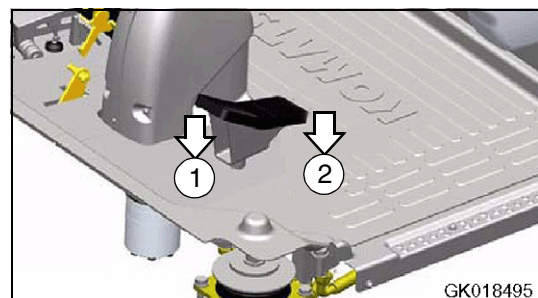
Two-Piece boom control pedal

This pedal (18) is used to operate the Two-Piece Boom.



Pressure on (1) raises 2nd boom.

Pressure on (2) lowers 2nd boom.



6.5.3 Hydraulic circuit

When a breaker is installed, use only B mode. Do not use any other mode.

The standard set pressure of the service valve safety valve depends on selector valve position selected when the machine is shipped from the factory.

If selector valve is in the position for using breaker: 20.6 MPa (210 kgf/cm²)

If selector valve is in position for general attachments such as crusher: 27.4 MPa (280 kgf/cm²)

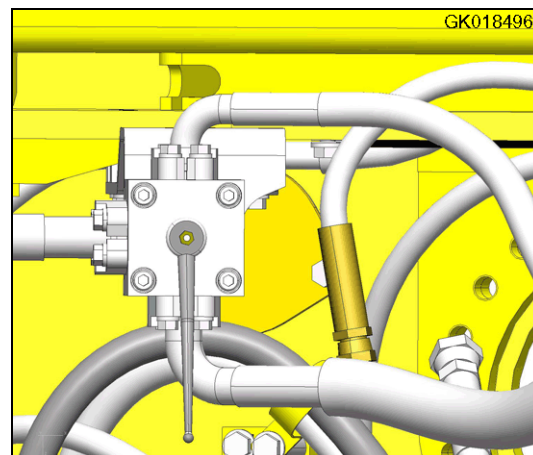
Adjustment may be needed depending on the attachment, so in such a case, please contact your KOMATSU distributor.

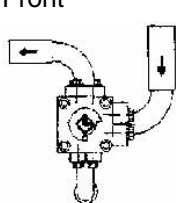
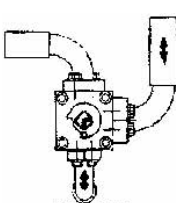
Switching hydraulic circuit

Contact dealer to set left hand boom piping relief pressure.

When using the breaker and the general attachment (crusher etc.), turn the rotor of the 3-way valve to change over according to the following illustration.

(The marks indicating the port direction are stamped on the 3-way valve)



Attachment	Right 3-way valve (1)	Working mode	Hydraulic circuit	Set pressure of service safety valve
1-way flow (Breaker)	Front  GK018479	B mode	Return circuit switched so that it does not pass through control valve	When shipped from factory: 20.6 MPa (210 kgf/cm ²)
2-way flow (Crusher/Clamshell)	Front  GK018480	A mode or E mode	Return circuit switched so that it passes through control valve	When shipped from factory: 27.4 MPa (280 kgf/cm ²)

NOTE

Perform work only after the engine is stopped and the work equipment and machine body are in stable posture on the ground.

6.5.4 Operation

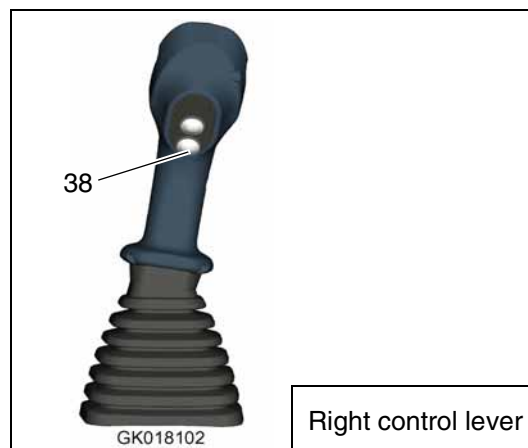


WARNING

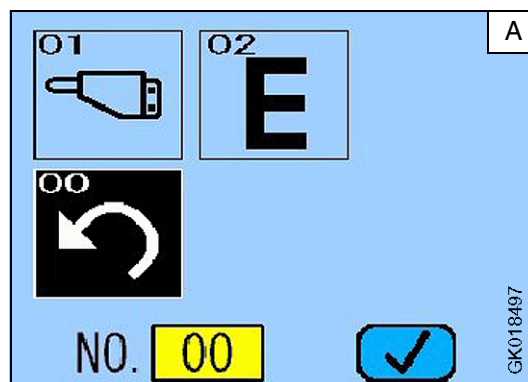
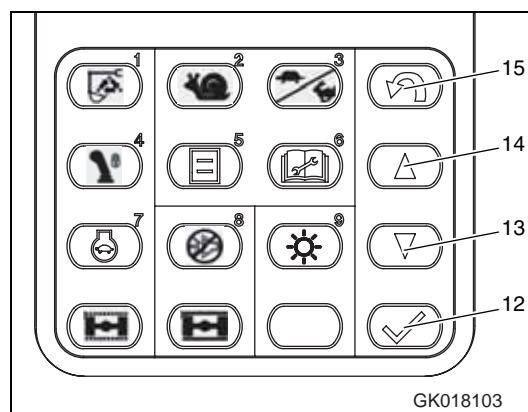
- Be careful when pressing the switch in the deceleration range. The engine speed will rise suddenly.
- Do not press the switch except when operating the attachment. If the switch is depressed by accident, the attachment may move suddenly and cause serious damage or injury.

The operation of the attachment is as follows.

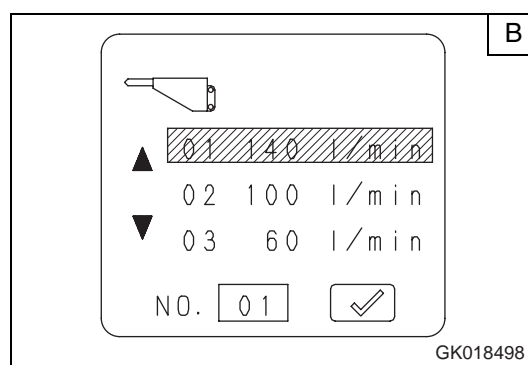
When the B mode control switch is ON if the button (38) is depressed, the breaker is actuated.



1. Set the working mode to B mode (Monitor switch 1).
2. When menu select switch (5) on the monitor is pressed, the screen changes to screen (A). Select 01 to get screen (B). Select a suitable oil flow for the breaker from among 140 litres/min, 100 litres/min, and 60 litres/min, then press input confirmation switch (12).
3. The monitor screen changes to screen (C), so if it is necessary to make fine adjustment, press up switch (14) or down switch (13) to move the bar graph showing the oil flow up or down, then press input confirmation switch (12).



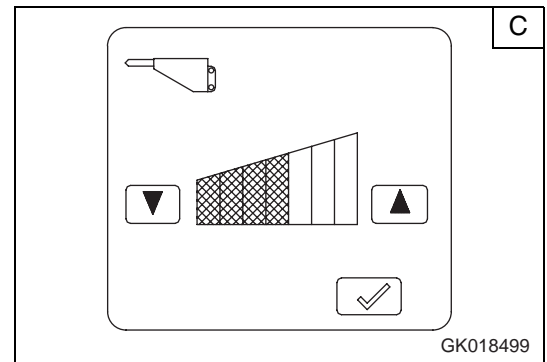
- It is possible to change the oil flow in segments of approx. 10 litres/min.
- If fine adjustment is not necessary, simply press input confirmation switch (12).
- The default setting is 140 litres/min.
- Even if the starting switch is turned OFF, the set oil flow when the engine is next started will be the value set by the above procedure.



Precautions when using

- Check that the stop valve is at the FREE position.
- Check that the selector valve is in the position for using the breaker and check that working mode is in B mode.
- When considering whether it is necessary to install an accumulator for the attachment circuit, contact the attachment manufacturer and then decide.
- For other precautions when handling the breaker, follow the instruction manual from the breaker manufacturer and use the breaker correctly.
- The deterioration of the hydraulic oil when using the breaker is much faster than for normal operations, so reduce the maintenance interval for the hydraulic oil and element.

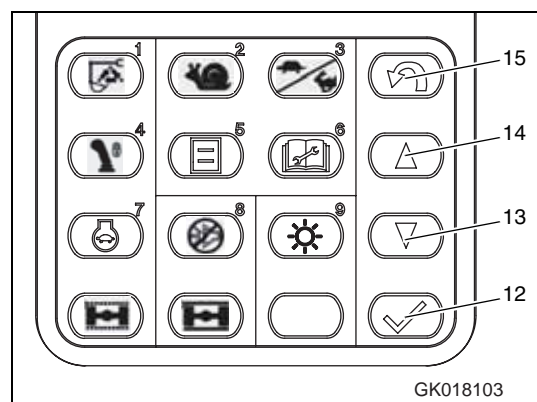
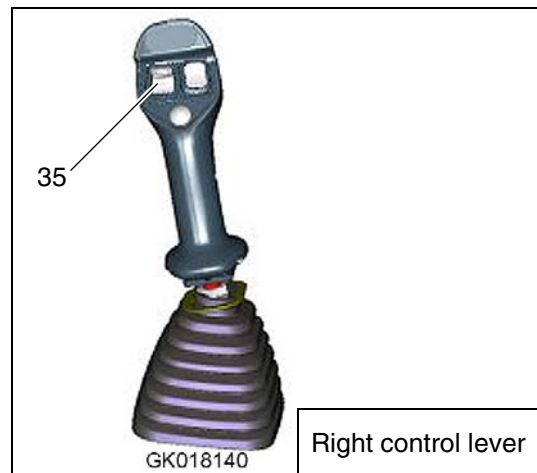
For details, see "Maintenance schedule chart (4-24)".



When using crusher or other general attachment

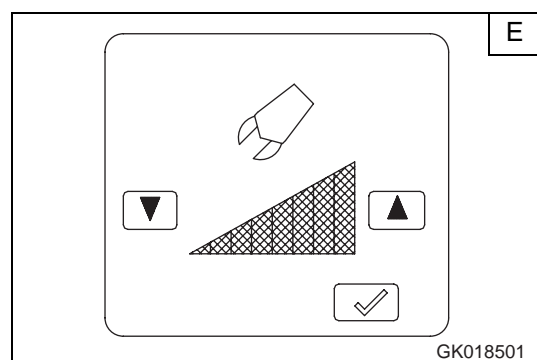
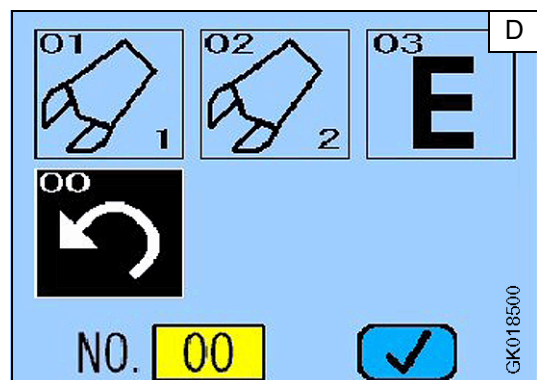
When the P mode or E mode control switch is ON if the roller switch (35) is pushed up/down, the attachment is actuated.

1. Set the working mode to P mode or E mode.
2. When menu select switch (5) on the monitor is pressed, the screen changes to screen (D), select 01 to get screen E, press up switch (14) or down switch (13) to move the bar graph showing the oil flow up or down, then press input confirmation switch (12).
 - The default setting is the full flow (approx. 320 litres/min).
 - Even if the starting switch is turned OFF, the set oil flow when the engine is next started will be the value set by the above procedure.



Precautions when using

- Check that the stop valve is at the FREE position.
- Check that the selector valve is in the position for general attachments such as crusher, check that working mode is P mode or E mode.
- For other precautions when handling the attachment, follow the instruction manual from the attachment manufacturer and use the attachment correctly.



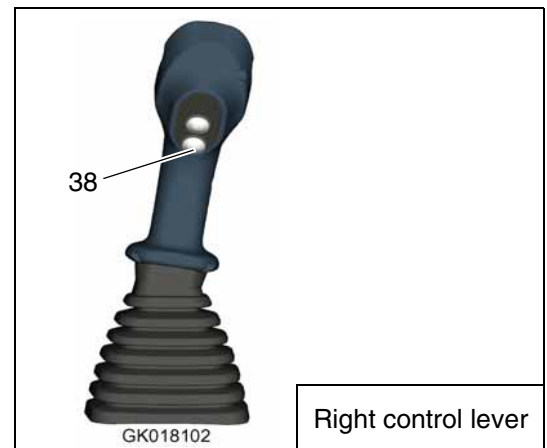
When using breaker

Set the working mode to the B (breaker mode) mode.

Depress the switch (38) of the right control lever to operate the breaker.

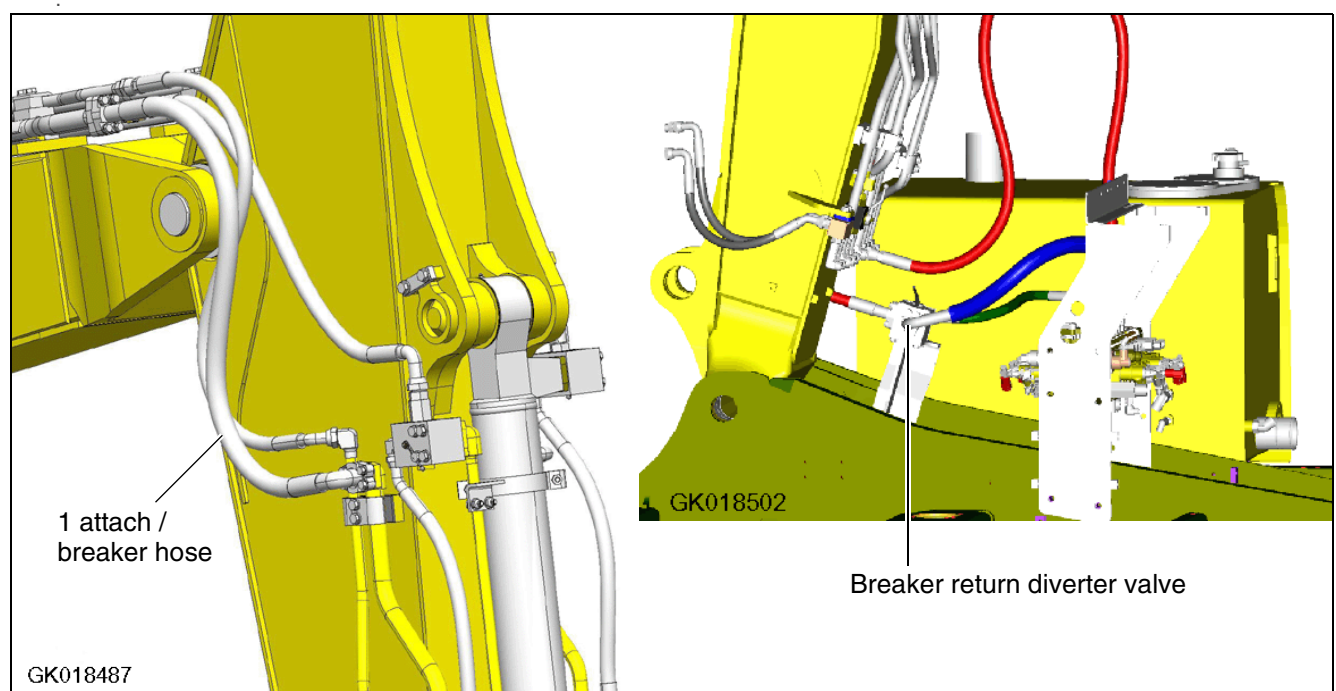
NOTE

Do not use the heavy-duty operation mode for breaker operations. If the breaker is used in the heavy-duty operation mode there is danger that the hydraulic equipment may be damaged.



Precautions when using

- Check that the stop valves are in the OPEN position.
- Consult with the attachment maker to decide whether it is necessary to install an accumulator for the attachment circuit.
- For details of other precautions when handling the breaker, read and use correctly the instruction manual provided by the breaker manufacturer.
- The deterioration of the hydraulic oil when using the breaker is much faster than normal operations, so reduce the maintenance interval for the hydraulic oil and element.
- For details see "Change oil in hydraulic tank and replace steer/brake circuit strainer (4-103)".



6.5.5 Method for releasing pressure in control circuit of machines equipped with accumulator

1. Lower the work equipment to the ground. Close any attachment such as the crusher.
2. Stop the engine.
3. Set the safety lock lever completely in the FREE position, operate the right control lever and attachment control pedal fully to the front, rear, left, and right, to release the pressure in the control circuit.
4. Set the safety lock lever completely in the LOCK position, then lock the control levers and attachment control pedal. Note that this does not completely release the pressure, so when removing the accumulator in the control circuit, loosen the connections slowly and do not stand in the direction where the oil spurts out.

6.5.6 Long-term storage

If the machine is not to be used for a long time, do as follows:

- Set the stop valve in the LOCK condition.
- Install a blind plug to the valve.
- Set the selector valve to the position for general attachments such as the crusher.

If there is no breaker or general attachment installed, operating the pedal may cause overheating.

6.5.7 Specifications

Hydraulic specifications

- Oil flow – Refer to clamshell and breaker manufacturers recommendations for oil flow for specific attachment.
- Main safety valve set pressure
When using breaker: 24.5 +/- 0.5 MPa (250 +/- 5 kg/cm²).

6.6 Introduction of attachments and extending machine service life

This section describes the necessary precautions to be observed when operating a hydraulic excavator equipped with an attachment.

NOTE

Select the attachment most suited to the machine body.

The machine models to which attachments can be mounted vary. For selection of attachment and machine model, consult your KOMATSU distributor.

6.6.1 Hydraulic breaker

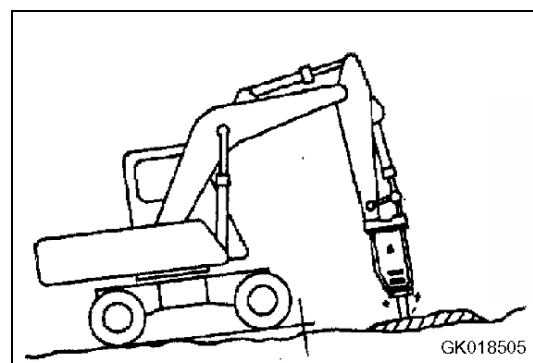
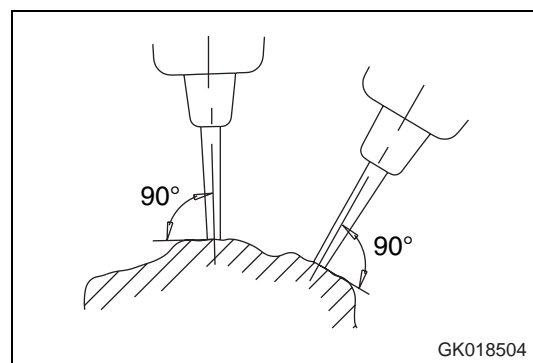
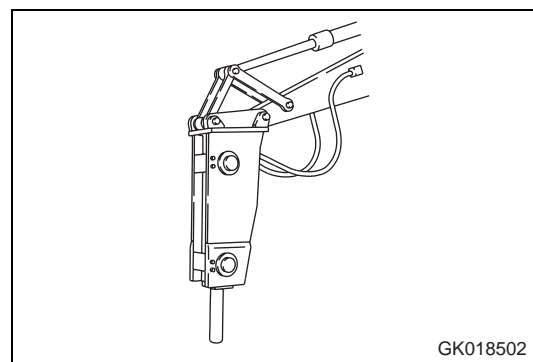
Main fields of application

- Crushed rock
- Demolition work
- Road construction

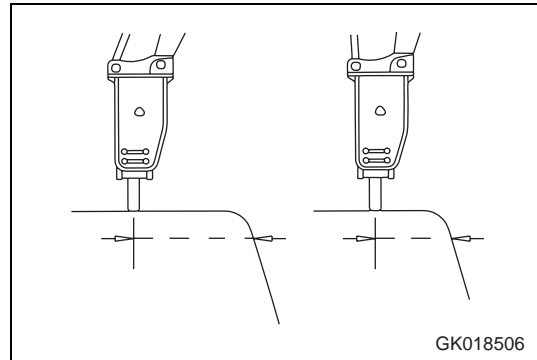
This attachment can be used for a wide range of work including demolition of buildings, breaking up of road surfaces, tunnel work, breaking up slag, rock crushing, and breaking operations in quarries.

Keep the chisel pushed perpendicularly against the impact surface when carrying out breaking operations.

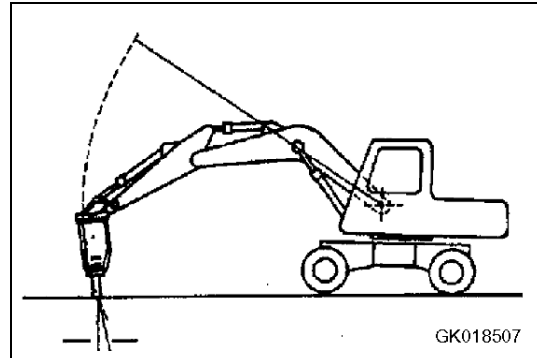
When applying impact, push the chisel against the impact surface and operate so that the chassis rises approx. 5 cm off the ground. Do not let the machine come further off the ground than necessary.



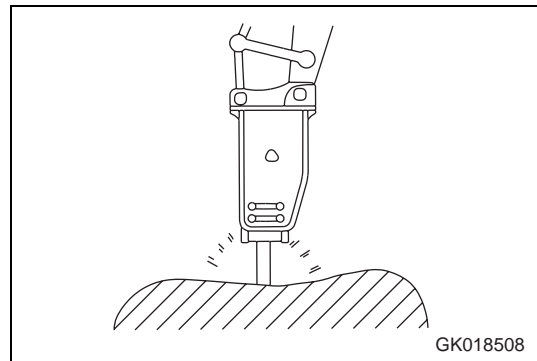
When applying continuous impact to the same impact surface, if the chisel does not penetrate or break the surface within 1 minute, change the point of impact and carry out breaking operations closer to the edge.



The direction of penetration of the chisel and the direction of the breaker body will gradually move out of line with each other, so always adjust the bucket and arm cylinders to keep them aligned.



Always keep the chisel pressed against the impact surface properly to prevent using the impact force when there is no resistance.

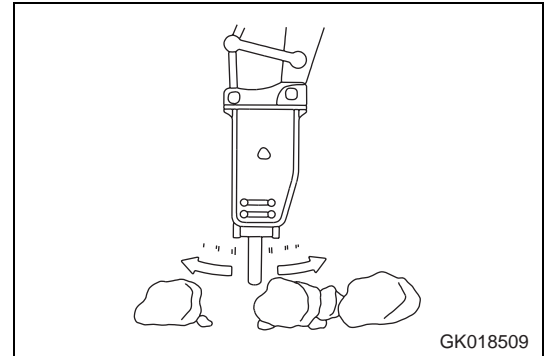


Mistaken methods of use

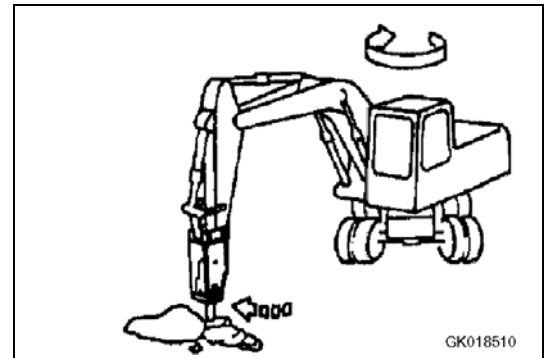
To ensure that the machine has a long life, and to ensure that operations are carried out in safety, do not operate the machine in any of the following ways.

Do not operate the cylinder to the end of its stroke.
Always leave approx. 5 cm to spare.

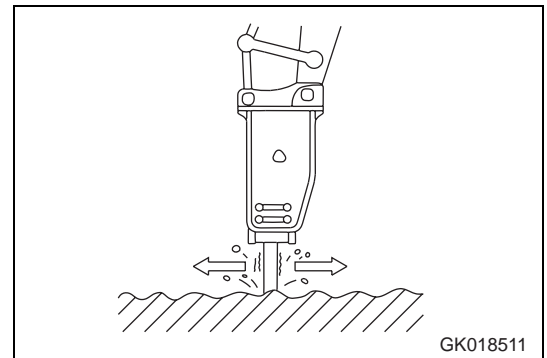
Using the mount to gather in pieces of rock



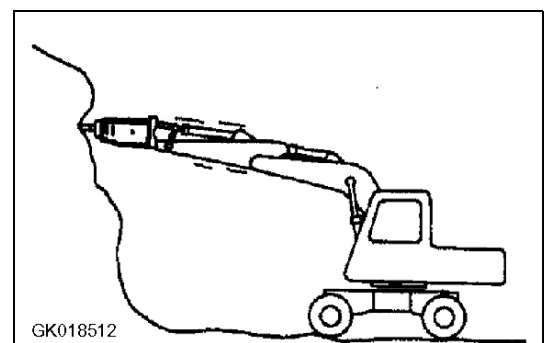
Operations using the swing force



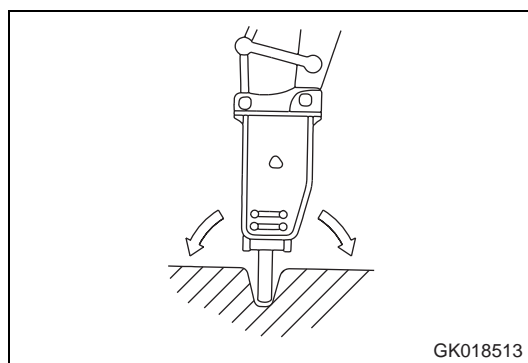
Moving the chisel while carrying out impacting operations



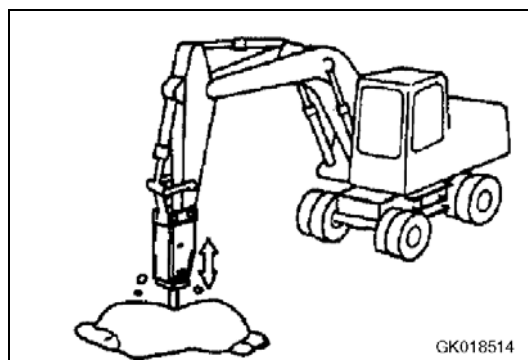
Holding the chisel horizontal or pointed up when carrying out impacting operations



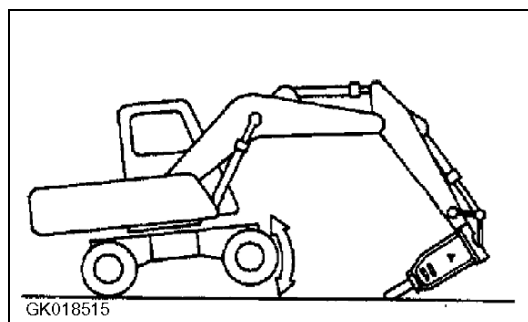
Twisting the chisel when it has penetrated the rock



Pecking operations



Extending the bucket cylinder fully and thrusting to raise the machine off the ground

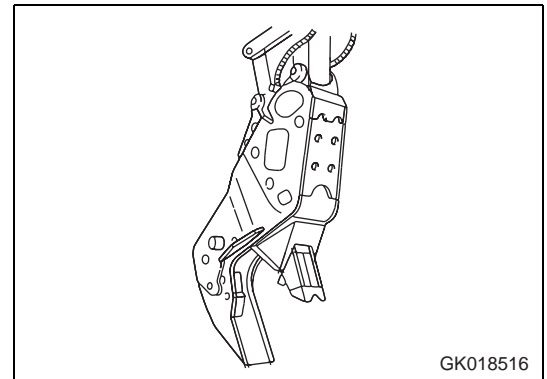


6.6.2 Power ripper

Main fields of applications

- Road repair work
- Demolition work

This attachment can be used for a wide range of work including peeling off and crushing pavement roads, demolishing wooden houses and buildings, and crushing foundation and roadbeds.

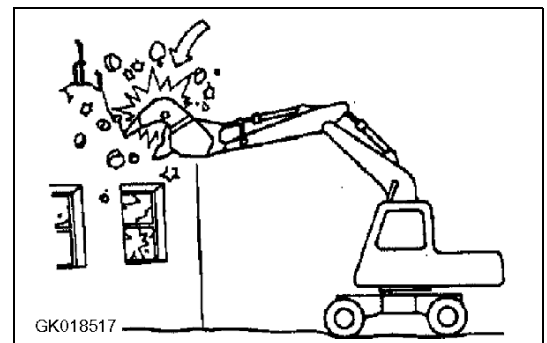


Mistaken methods of use

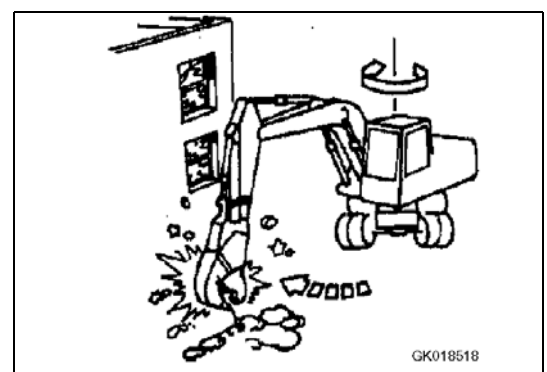
To ensure that the machine has a long life, and to ensure that operations are carried out in safety, do not operate the machine in any of the following ways.

Do not operate the cylinder to the end of its stroke.
Always leave approx. 5 cm to spare.

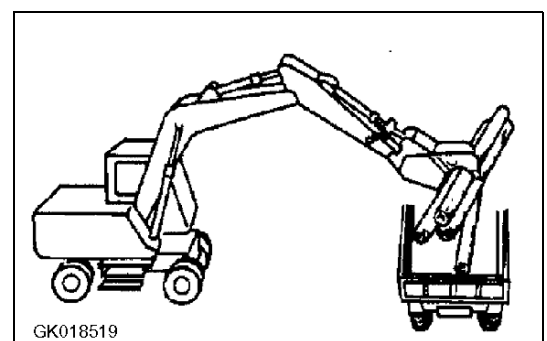
Impact operations using attachment



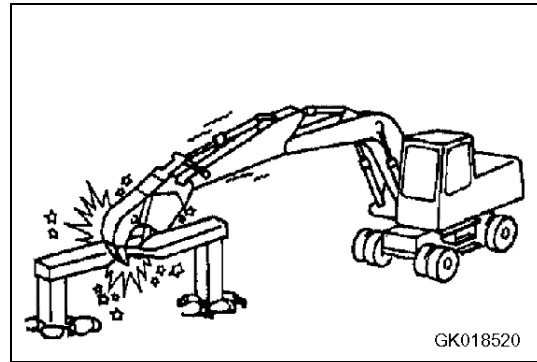
Impact operations using swing force



Overloading work equipment during lifting and loading operations



Operations using attachment to grip at an angle

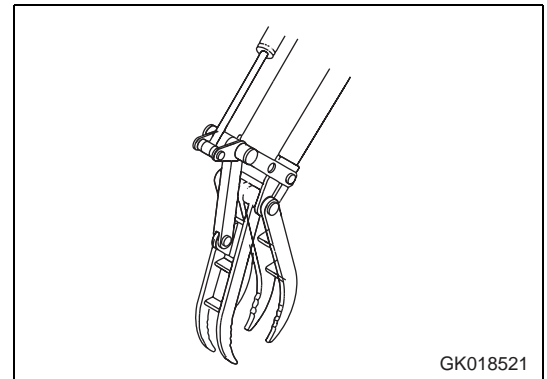


6.6.3 Fork grab

Main fields of application

- Disposing of industrial waste
- Disposing of demolition waste

This can be used for a wide range of work including collecting or loading demolition waste materials and debris, timber, grass.

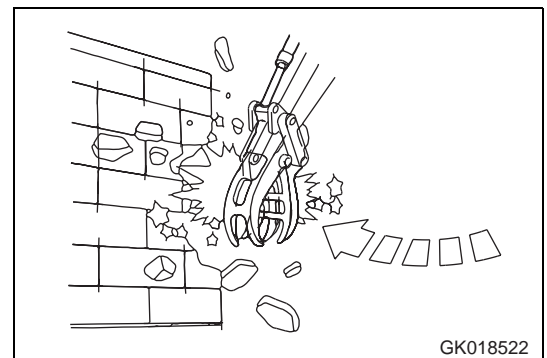


Mistaken methods of use

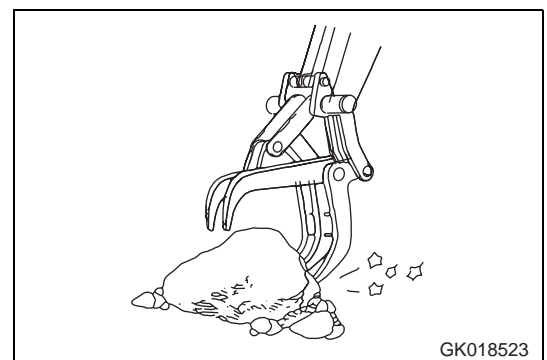
To ensure that the machine has a long life, and to ensure that operations are carried out in safety, do not operate the machine in any of the following ways.

Do not operate the cylinder to the end of its stroke.
Always leave approx. 5 cm to spare.

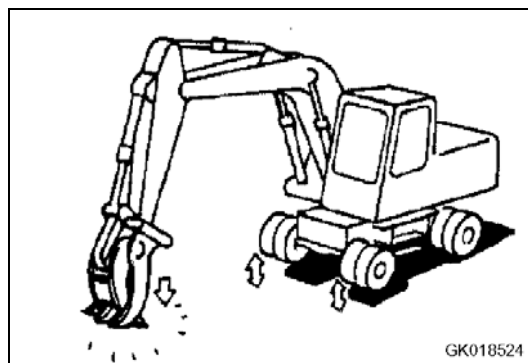
Operations using the swing force



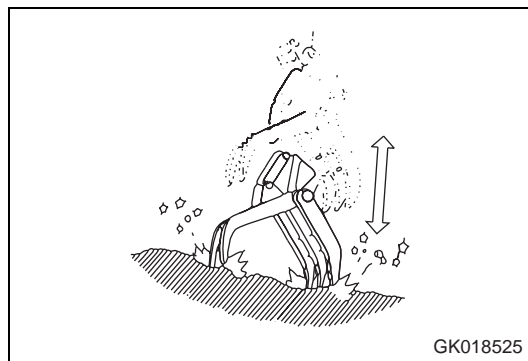
Operations using one side of work equipment



Pushing fork into ground surface to jack up and change direction of machine



Impact operation with no load



6.6.4 Grapple bucket

Main fields of application

- Demolition
- Disposing of industrial waste
- Forestry

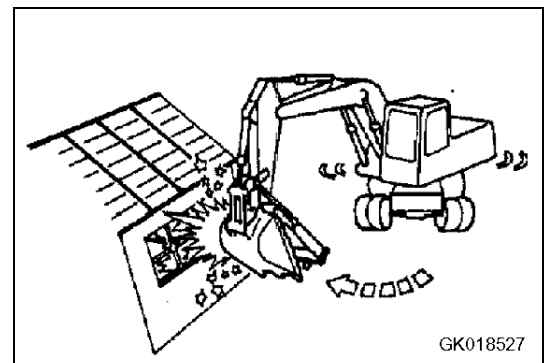
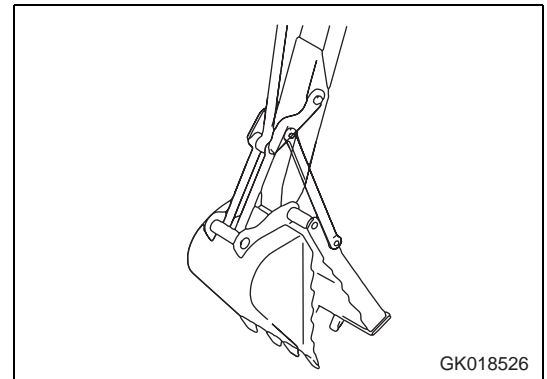
This bucket is widely used for demolition including breaking-up work, grading and digging, clean-up work after natural disasters, dumping industrial waste, and forestry work, etc.

Mistaken methods of use

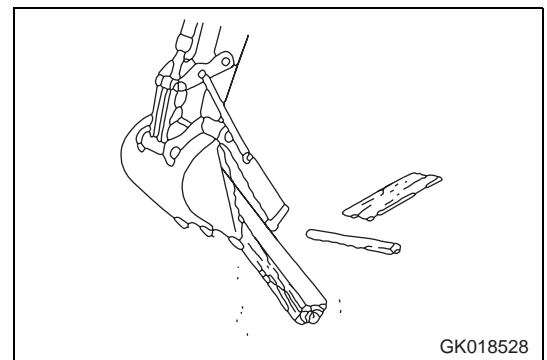
To ensure that the machine has a long life, and to ensure that operations are carried out in safety, do not operate the machine in any of the following ways.

Do not operate the cylinder to the end of its stroke.
Always leave approx. 5 cm to spare.

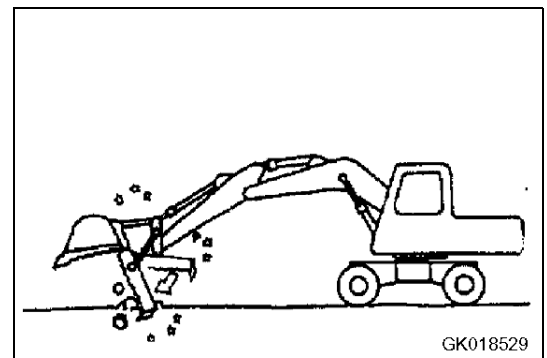
Operations using the swing force



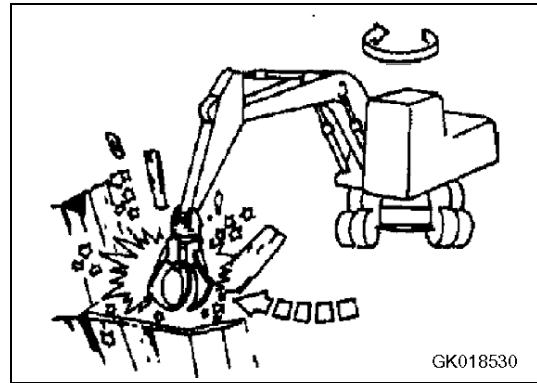
Grabbing a object using buckets on only one side



Closing the sub-bucket with the boom and arm fully extended.



Impact operation with no load

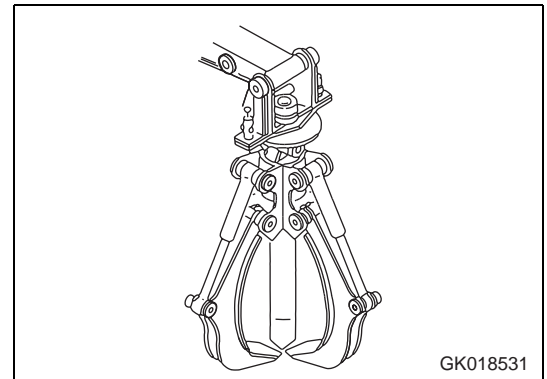


6.6.5 Scrap grapple

Main fields of application

- Disposal of rock or debris

This attachment is mounted to the arm end and used to grasp rock, debris etc. by opening and closing the claws (3 to 5) corresponding to the extension and retraction of the hydraulic cylinder.

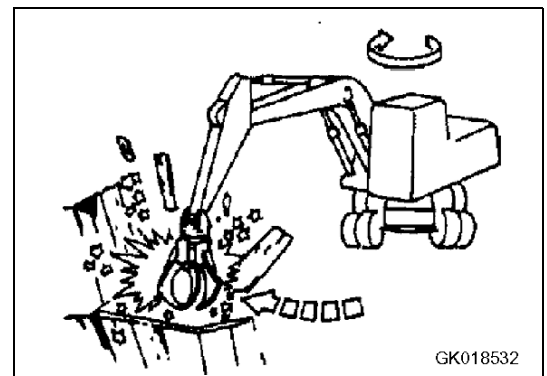


Mistaken methods of use

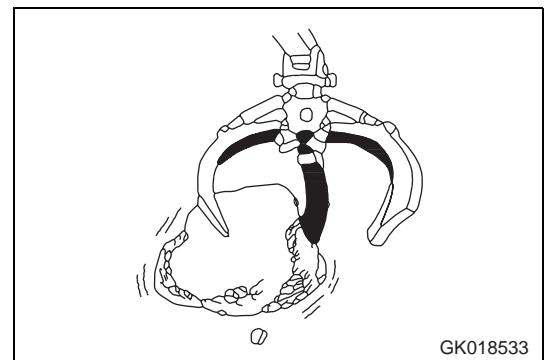
To ensure that the machine has a long life, and to ensure that operations are carried out in safety, do not operate the machine in any of the following ways.

Do not operate the cylinder to the end of its stroke.
Always leave approx. 5 cm to spare.

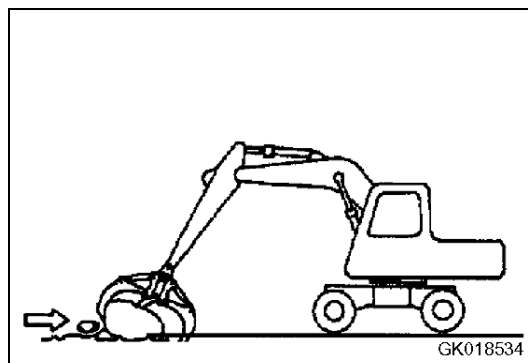
Operations using the swing force



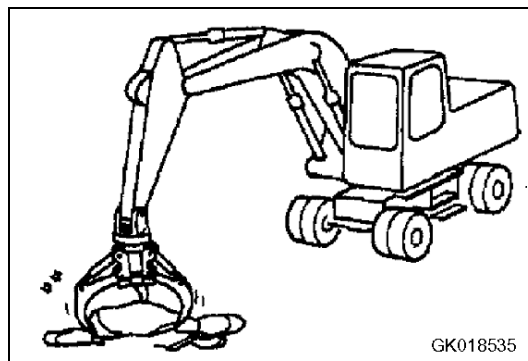
Operations using one side of work equipment



Catching and dragging with claw end



Gouging

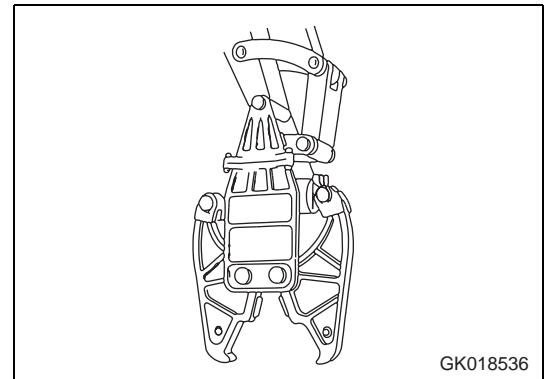


6.6.6 Crusher and smasher

Main fields of application

- Demolition
- Road repair work

This is the optimum attachment for demolition of steel frame reinforced structures, and for crushing of concrete blocks and rock, etc. The unique blade shape provides heavy crushing power.

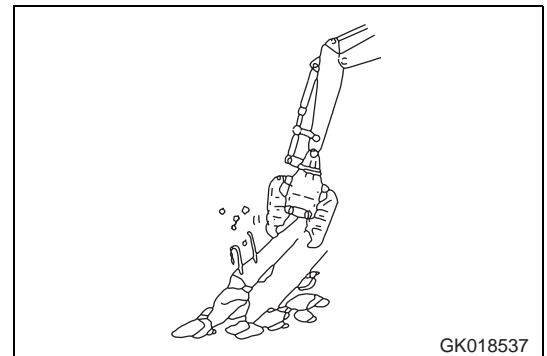


Mistaken methods of use

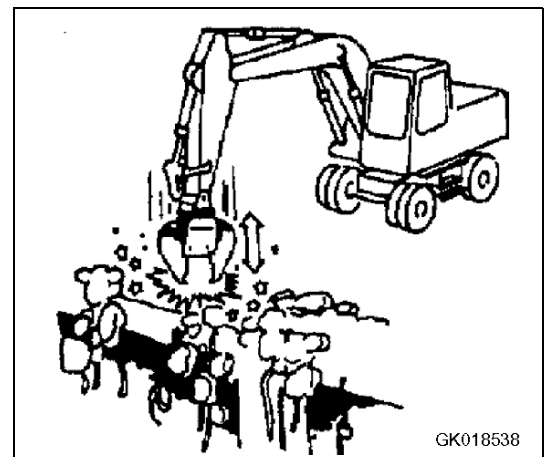
To ensure that the machine has a long life, and to ensure that operations are carried out in safety, do not operate the machine in any of the following ways.

Do not operate the cylinder to the end of its stroke.
Always leave approx. 5 cm to spare.

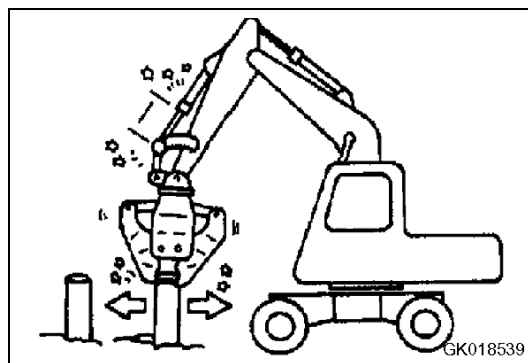
Operations using cutting tip on one side only



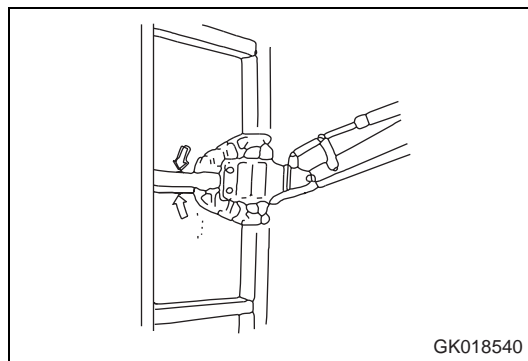
Impact operation with no load



Twisting operations at end of cylinder stroke



Sudden gripping and breaking operations

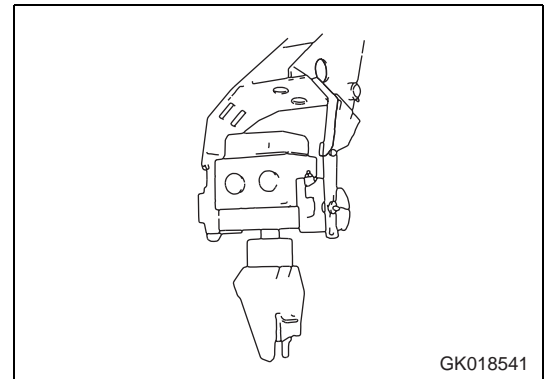


6.6.7 Hydraulic pile driver

Main fields of application

- Foundation work
- River work
- Water supply and sewerage

This is a piling machine employing the hydraulic power source of the excavator. The machine features a long arm and a chuck unit. This facilitates operations such as driving and movable by 360° corners, vertical driving and removing long piles, driving in piles at corners, vertical driving etc.

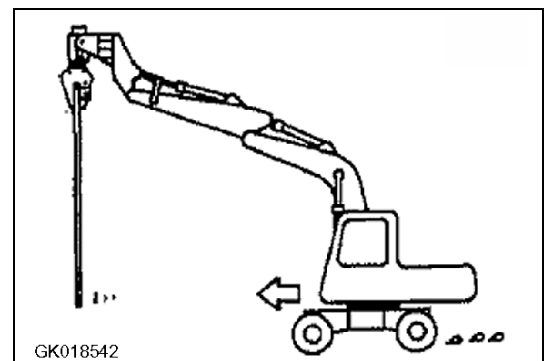


Mistaken methods of use

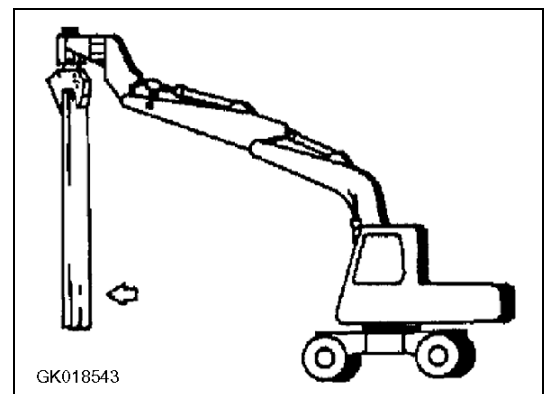
To ensure that the machine has a long life, and to ensure that operations are carried out in safety; do not operate the machine in any of the following ways.

Do not operate the cylinder to the end of its stroke.
Always leave approx. 5 cm to spare.

Forward or swing motion while grasping a pile

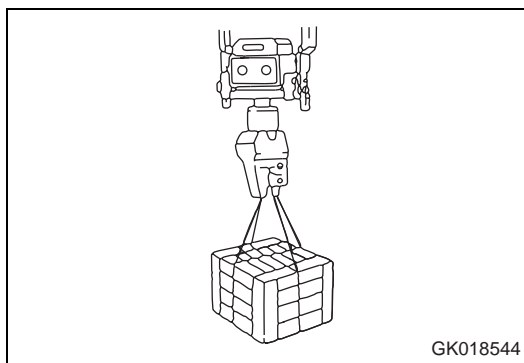


Lifting more than two piles at the same time



Work other than standard works

Lifting with a machine equipped with hydraulic pile driver

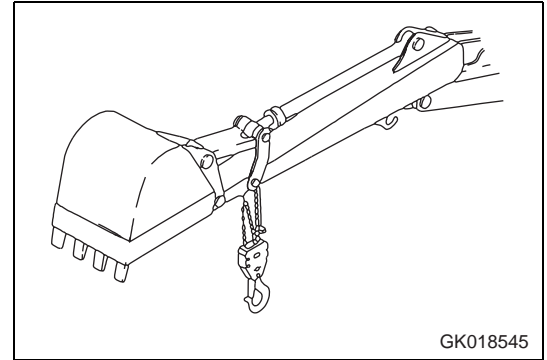


6.6.8 Hydraulic excavator with multipurpose crane

Main fields of application

- Site preparation
- Water supply and sewerage
- River work
- Agricultural, civil engineering work

Crane operation can be carried out without removing the bucket. This machine is used for laying U section gutters and hume pipes for water supply and sewerage as well as river and canal work, agricultural, civil engineering work and site preparation.

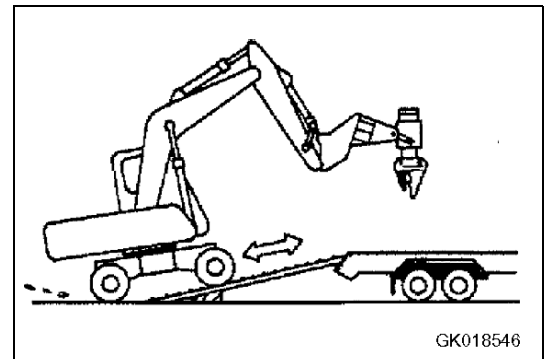


Mistaken methods of use

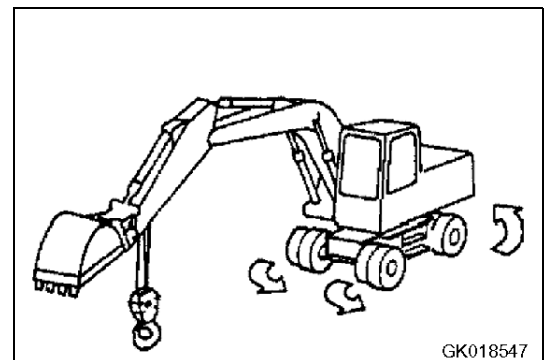
To ensure that the machine has a long life, and to ensure that operations are carried out in safety, do not operate the machine in any of the following ways.

Do not operate the cylinder to the end of its stroke.
Always leave approx. 5 cm to spare.

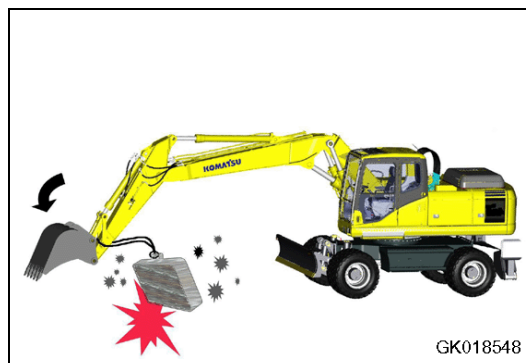
Abrupt lever operation



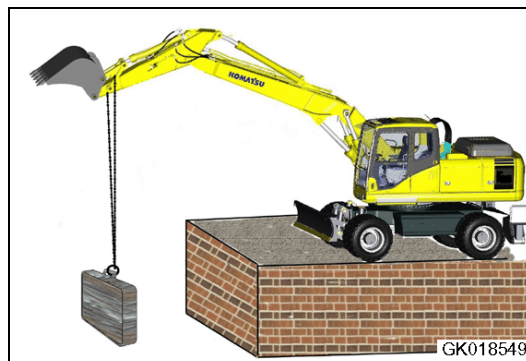
Traveling with a suspended load



Operating other work equipment during crane operation

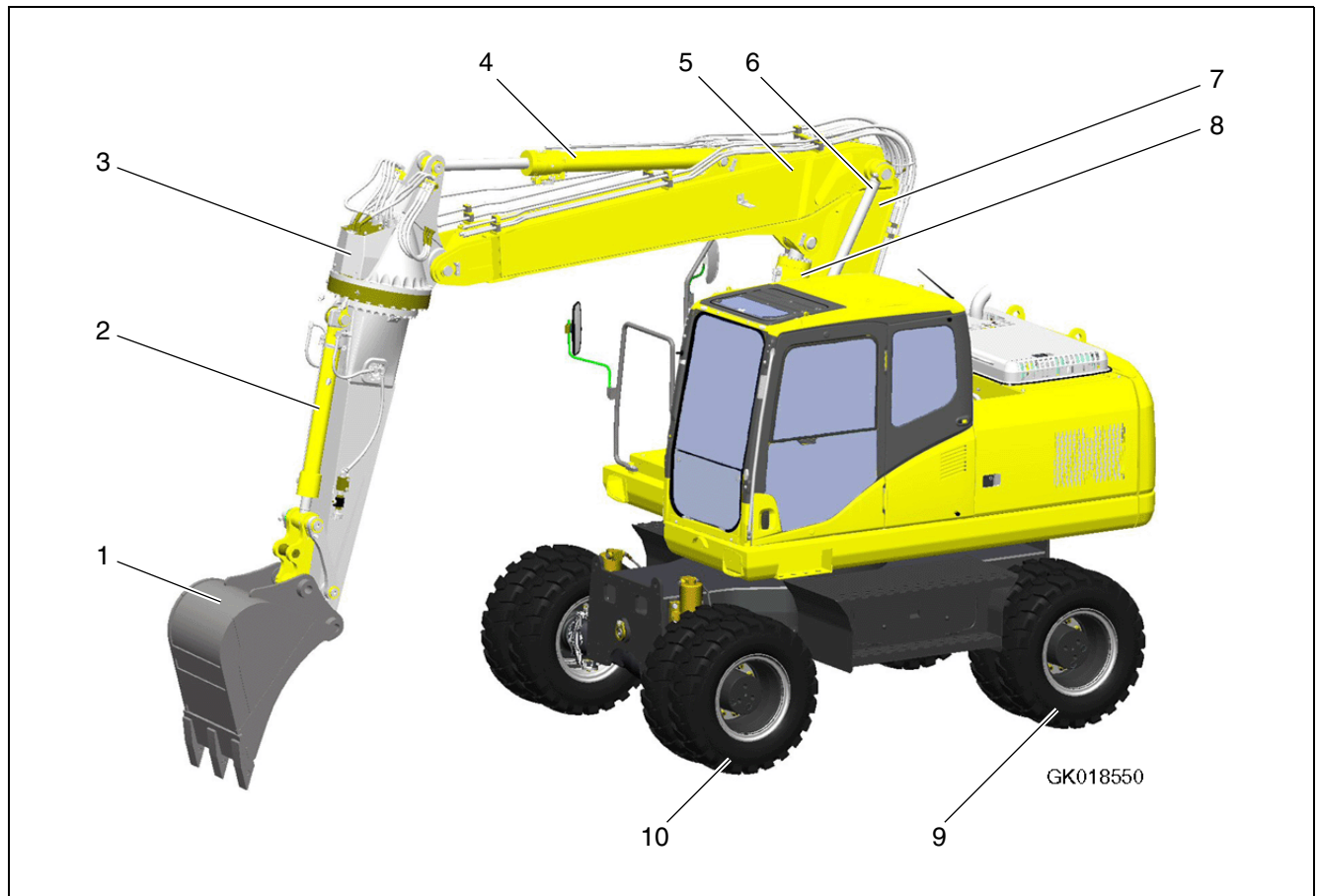


Excessive lengthening of wire rope



6.7 Rotating arm

6.7.1 General location and specifications.



1.	Bucket
2.	Bucket cylinder
3.	Rotating arm
4.	Arm cylinder
5.	Upper boom
6.	Boom lift cylinders
7.	Lower boom
8.	Boom adjusting cylinder
9.	Rear wheel
10.	Front wheel

6.7.2 Maintenance requirement

The following maintenance should be carried out in addition to that in the PW180-7EO Operation and Maintenance Manual.

No	Item	Service	See
Every 100 hours service			
1	Arm rotation machinery case	Check and supply	"Every 100 hours service (6-40)"
Every 250 hours service			
2	Arm rotation circle	Lubricate 1 point	"Every 250 hours service (6-41)"
Every 500 hours service			
3	Arm rotation machinery case	Check and supply	"Every 500 hours service (6-42)"
Every 1000 hours service			
4	Arm rotation machinery case	Change oil	"Every 1000 hours service (6-42)"

Every 100 hours service

1. Arm rotation machinery case

1. Set the arm horizontal.
2. Remove plug (1) and check whether final drive case is filled with oil to lower edge of plughole. If oil level is below this point, refill with SAE 90 gear oil through plug hole.
("Every 1000 hours service (6-42)")
 - Tightening torque: 56 kgm
 - The type of lubricant used depends on the ambient temperature.

REMARK

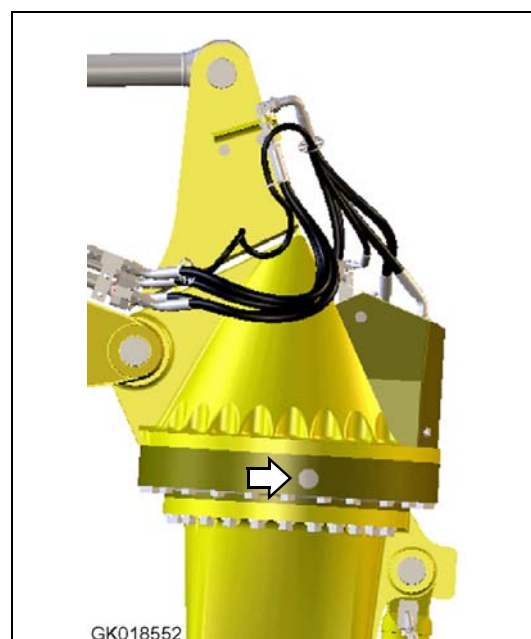
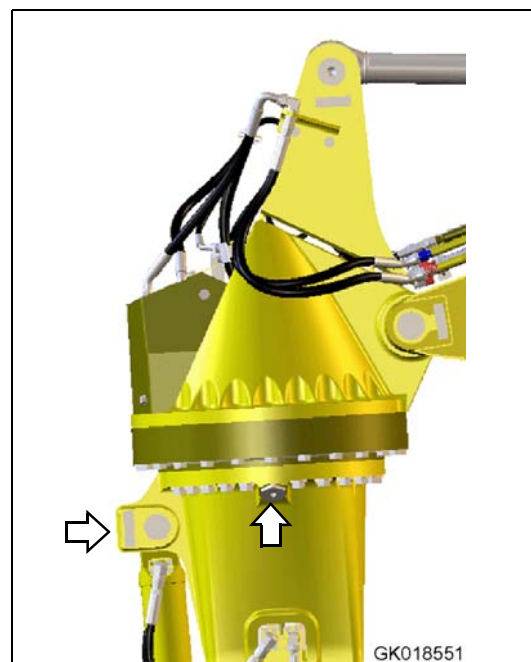
Select according to the table see "Use fuel, coolant and lubricants according to ambient temperature (4-16)".

Every 250 hours service

2. Arm rotation circle

Lubricating

Apply grease to the grease fittings shown by the arrows (3 points).

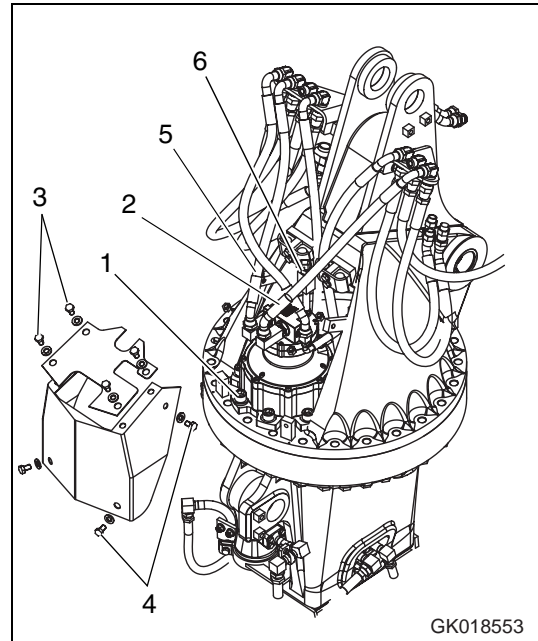


Every 500 hours service

Maintenance for every 100 and 250 hours service should be carried out at the same time.

3. Arm rotation machinery case

1. Disconnect hoses (2), (5) and (6) from the swing motor.
2. Plug the ends of the hoses and the ports in the motor.
3. Remove 16 bolts 4 x (3), 4 x (4) then remove 8 bolts (1) from the swing motor and lift off.
4. Refill the greasebath with grease.
5. Replace the swing motor an and tighten the 16 bolts (Apply liquid gasket LG-6 to the mating faces and bolt holes).
6. Reconnect the hoses (2), (5) and (6) to the swing motor.



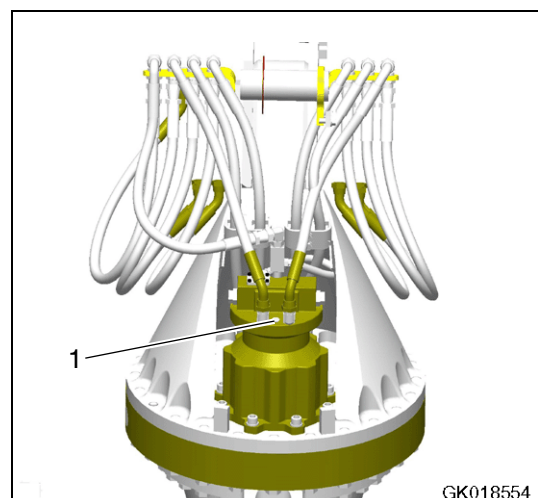
Every 1000 hours service

Maintenance for every 250 and 500 hours service should be carried out at the same time.

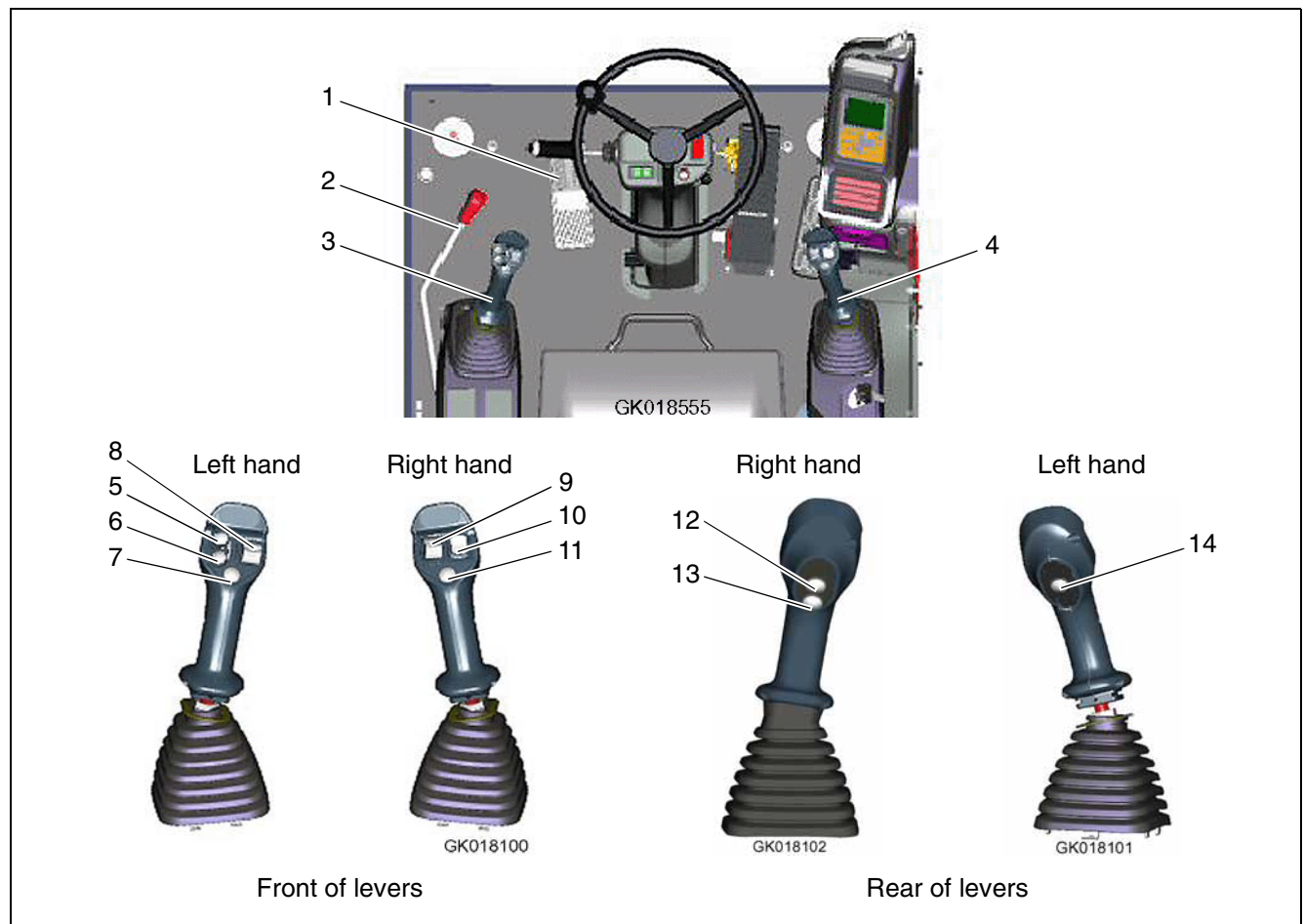
4. Arm rotation machinery case

1. Remove plug (1), drain the oil.
2. Add 1.6 liters of SAE 90 Gear Oil through the plug hole.
3. After adding the oil, check that it is at the specified level (See "Every 100 hours service (6-40)").
4. Replace the plug and retighten.

Tightening torque: 56 kgm



6.7.3 General view of controls



1.	Boom pedal (for 2 piece boom) (option)
2.	Safety lock lever
3.	Left work equipment control lever
4.	Right work equipment control lever
5.	Spare
6.	Rototilt bucket
7.	Horn button
8.	HCU switch (option)
9.	Clamshell rotation switch
10.	F/N/R switch
11.	Boom/undercarriage attachment switch
12.	Spare
13.	Breaker switch
14.	Power max button

Left control lever (with auto-deceleration device)



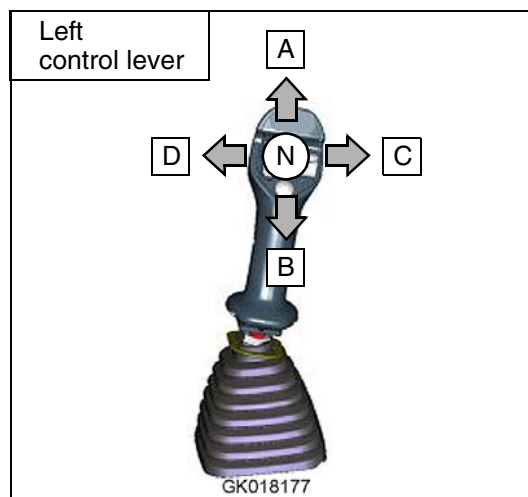
WARNING

If any lever is operated when in the deceleration range, the engine speed will suddenly increase, so be careful when operating the levers.

This lever is used to operate the arm and upper structure.

Arm operation	Swing operation
(A) Arm OUT	(C) Swing to right
(B) Arm IN	(D) Swing to left
N (Neutral)	

When the left control lever in this position, the upper structure and the arm will be retained in the position in which they stop.



Right control lever (with auto-deceleration device)



WARNING

If any lever is operated when in the deceleration range, the engine speed will suddenly increase, so be careful when operating the levers.

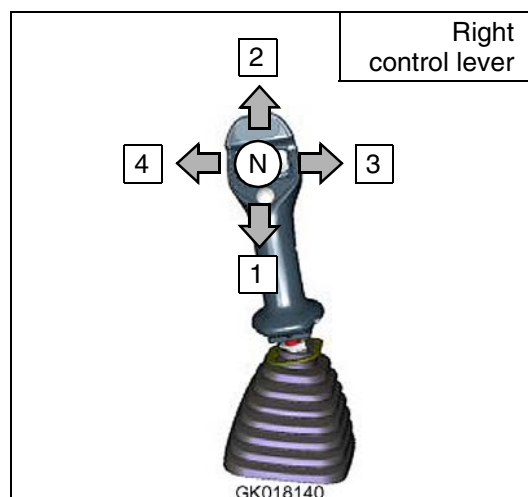
This lever is used to operate the boom and bucket.

Boom operation	Bucket operation
(1) Raise	(3) Dump
(2) Lower	(4) Curl
N (Neutral)	

When the right control lever in this position, the boom and the bucket will be retained in the position in which they stop.

For levers (3) and (4), the engine speed changes as follows because of the auto-deceleration mechanism.

- When the right control levers are at neutral, even if the fuel control dial is above the mid-range position, the engine speed will drop to a mid-range speed. If any of the levers are operated, the engine speed will rise to the speed set by the fuel control dial.
- If all control levers are set to neutral, the engine speed will drop by approx. 100 rpm, and after approx. 4 seconds, the engine speed will drop to the deceleration speed (approx. 1400 rpm).



Upper boom control pedal (two piece boom)

This is used to operate the upper boom.

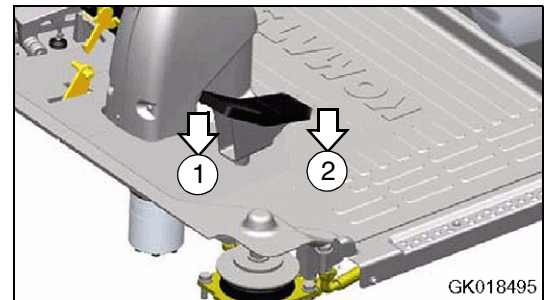
1. Raise: Pedal pushed forward
2. Lower: Pedal pushed back

NEUTRAL: The upper boom is stopped and held in the same position.



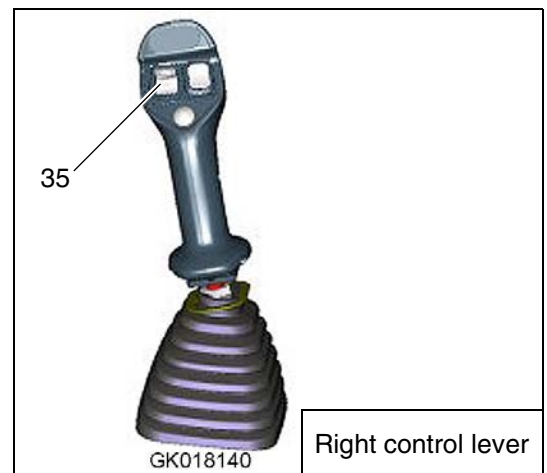
CAUTION

Do not rest your foot on the pedal unless using the pedal.



Rotating arm control

Switch (35) operates clockwise and anti-clockwise arm rotation (option). The switch (35) is a roller proportional control switch. Rolling the switch up produces clockwise rotation, rolling down produces anti-clockwise rotation. Slight movement of the roller will give slight movement of the rotating arm; full movement of the roller will give faster movement of the rotating arm.



6.7.4 Excavator's work

In addition to the following, it is possible to further increase the range of applications by using various attachments.

Back hoe work

A back hoe is suitable for excavation at a position lower than the machine. It is possible to effectively move the arm through 30° in the direction towards the machine and 45° in the direction away from the machine, making for efficient work.

Shovel work

A shovel is suitable for excavating at a position higher than the machine.

Loading work

About half of the time spent during excavating and loading work is taken up by swinging. Maximum work efficiency can be attained by carrying out work in such a way that the swinging angle is kept as small as possible in accordance with the terrain.

Special operations

The rotating arm and Two piece boom facilitate the following special operations.

Pit excavation for foundations of buildings

Shafts with vertical walls can be excavated in all directions and soil can be removed from around sheet piles.

Side ditching

The direction of the bucket teeth can be altered to facilitate the excavation of parallel sided ditches.

Operation on slopes

Vertical ditches can be dug on sloping surfaces.

Ditch digging

Combination of rotating arm and upper boom make possible the precise digging of offset ditch.

Stationary digging

The excavation of trenches for main and branch water supply and drainage pipes can be done without changing the machine's position.

Lifting spoil

The rotating arm enables working from all directions. Even if there is a structure between the excavator and the bucket the work can be done without hitting it.

Box digging

Perfect corners can be dug without having to change position of excavators.

Scraping

With bucket reversed the excavator can scrape faces upward.

6.7.5 Replacement of bucket

Stop the machine on a firm, flat surface. When performing work with another person, make clear signals to each other and work carefully for safety's sake.

1. Select a flat surface and stabilize the bucket.
2. After removing the stop bolt and nut for each pin, extract pins A and B.

After removing the pins, make sure that they do not become contaminated with sand or mud and that the seals of bushing on both sides do not become damaged.

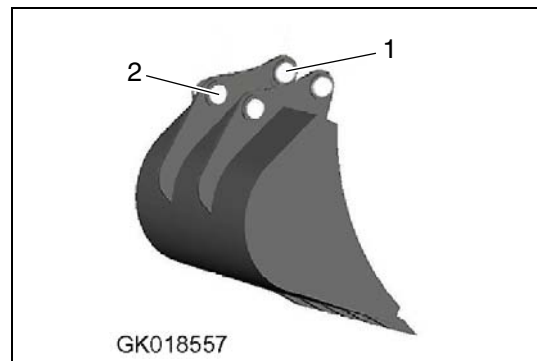
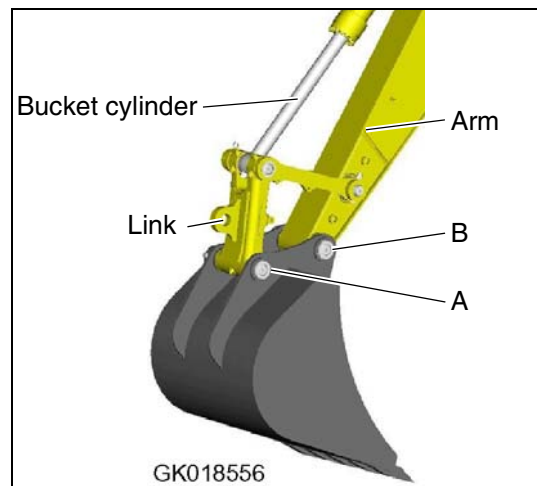


CAUTION

Bucket size and bucket weight

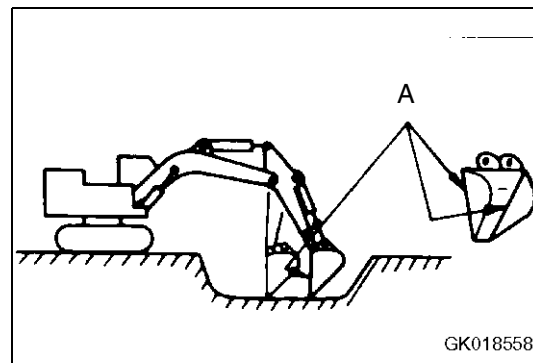
Do not fit a bucket larger than those listed overleaf. Fitting of larger bucket will cause machine to tip over.

3. Couple the arm to hole (1), then connect the link to hole (2)
4. After mounting the stop bolt and nut for each pin, apply grease to each pin.

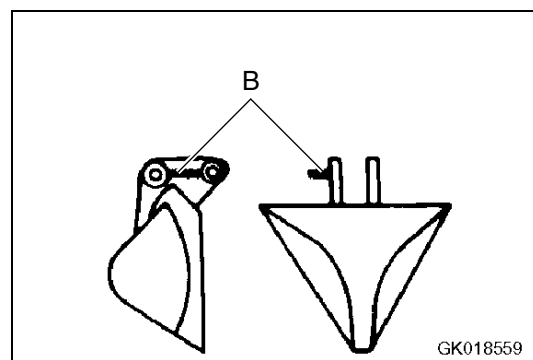


Handling the trapezoidal bucket (option)

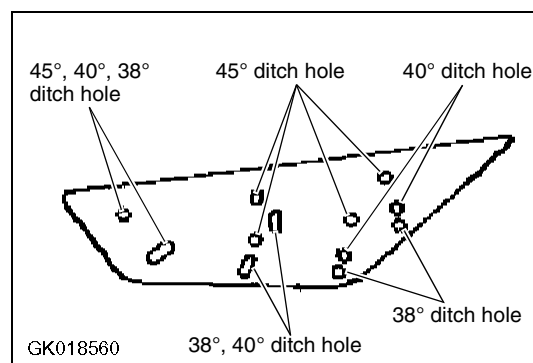
This bucket is used in sloped ditch digging work.



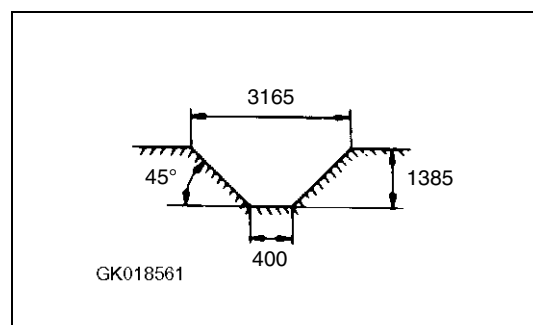
The three different ditch inclination can be obtained by changing the angle of the attached plate.



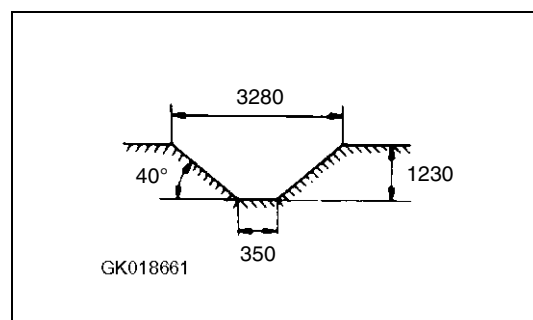
The angles available are 45°, 40° and 38°



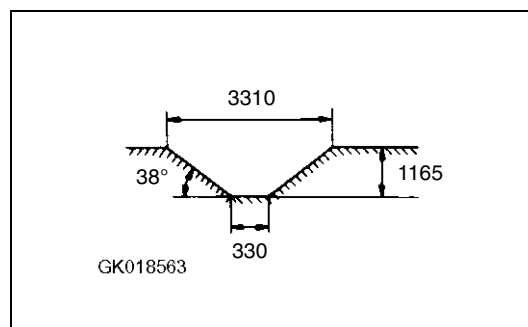
Shape of ditch by 45° bucket



Shape of ditch 40° bucket



Shape of ditch 38° bucket



How to perform excavation

Operate the boom, the arm and the bucket to make the line A of the side-plate of the bucket vertical.

To check this position guide plate B is installed beside the bucket pins.

Hold this plate horizontal when digging.

Bucket capacity (heaped)			Max. density (tonne/m ³)		
SAE m ³	Width (mm)	Weight (kg)	2250 mm	2600 mm	2900 mm
0.40	600	413	■	■	■
0.49	700	451	■	■	■
0.58	800	480	■	■	■
0.67	900	518	■	■	●
0.76	1000	547	●	●	□
0.95	1200	614	□	○	○
1.14	1400	680	○	○	○

■: Material weight up to 1.8 t/m³

●: Material weight up to 1.5 t/m³

□: Material weight up to 1.2 t/m³

○: Do not use

7. Index

7.1 Index

A

Accumulators	
Brake circuit accumulators	3-95
Clutch control accumulator	3-95
Control circuit accumulator	3-94
Handling	3-94
Replace for control circuit	4-100
Air conditioner	
Automatic operation	3-80
Cold air to face and warm air to feet	3-84
Control panel	3-75
Cool box	3-73
Defroster operation	3-85
Handling	3-75
Maintenance	3-88
Manual operation	3-82
Precautions	3-87
Self-diagnostic function	3-88
Switch set temperature display between °F and °C	3-89
Ashtray	3-72
Attachments	6-1
Attachments and options	
Bucket with hook, handling	6-10
Clamshell operation selector valves	6-11
Controls, general view	6-43
Controls, left control lever	6-44
Controls, right control lever	6-44
Controls, upper boom control pedal (two piece boom)	6-45
Crusher and smasher	6-33
Excavator's work	6-46
Fork grab	6-27
General precautions	6-2
Grapple bucket	6-29
Handling the clamshell bucket	6-13
Hydraulic breaker	6-21
Hydraulic circuit	6-15
Hydraulic excavator with multipurpose crane	6-37
Hydraulic pile driver	6-35
Hydraulic quick coupler piping	6-5
Operation of the attachment	6-16
Operation with breaker	6-19
Operation with crusher or other general attachment	6-18
Pick up a bucket or attachment	6-8
Power ripper	6-25
Precautions when installing	6-3
Release a bucket or attachment	6-7
Replacement of bucket	6-48
Rotating arm	6-39
Scrap grapple	6-31
Trapezoidal bucket (option), handling	6-49

B

Battery	2-22
Charges	3-172
Discharged battery	3-171
Removal and installation	3-172
Starting with booster cables	2-23, 3-173
Bucket	
Adjust bucket clearance	4-53
Bucket with hook, handling	6-10
Inversion	3-144
Pick up a bucket or attachment	6-8
Release a bucket or attachment	6-7
Replace bucket side cutters	4-48
Replace bucket teeth	4-49
Replacement	3-143, 6-48
Trapezoidal bucket (option), handling	6-49

C

Cap with lock	3-68
Opening and closing	3-68
Clamshell	
Clamshell operation selector valves	6-11
Handling the clamshell bucket	6-13
Installation	6-13
Operation	6-13
Control levers, pedals	3-54
Attachment controls	6-43
Attachment controls, left control lever	6-44
Attachment controls, right control lever	6-44
Attachment controls, upper boom control pedal (two piece boom)	6-45
Brake pedal	3-59
Control lever lock switch	3-58
Hydraulic adjust boom pedal	3-60
Left work equipment control lever	3-57
Right work equipment control lever	3-57
Safety lock lever	3-56
Steering wheel	3-59
Travel pedal	3-58
Controller for pump and governor	3-90
Cool box	3-73
Cover with lock	3-68
Opening and closing	3-69
Crusher and smasher	6-33
Cup holder	3-72

E

Emergency braking	1-7
Emergency exit from operator's cab	3-66
Emergency steering	1-7
Emergency stop	3-128
Engine	
Check after starting	3-114
Check after stopping	3-146
Check before starting	3-96, 3-110, 4-57
Discharged battery	3-171

Fluids	2-29, 4-7
Long-term storage	3-166
Serial plates	1-10
Starting	2-11
Starting after long-term storage	3-167
Starting engine with booster cables	3-173
Starting in cold weather	3-113
Stopping	3-145
Warning lamps	3-93
Excavator's work	6-46
Perform excavation	6-50

F

Fluids	2-29
Outline of oil, fuel, coolant, grease	4-7
Proper selection	4-17
Recommended other brands and quality	
for other products	4-19
Use	4-16
Fork grab	6-27
Front window	3-61
Closing	3-64
Opening	3-61
Removing front bottom window	3-65
Fuse	3-70
Fuse box 1	3-70
Fuse Box 2	3-71
Fusible link	3-90

G

General view	3-2
Attachment controls	6-43
Controls	3-4
Gauges	3-4
Machine	3-2
Grapple bucket	6-29

H

Heated	3-52
Hydraulic breaker	6-21
Maintenance interval	4-30
Hydraulic circuit	6-15
Switching	6-15
Hydraulic excavator with multipurpose crane	6-37
Hydraulic pile driver	6-35
Hydraulic quick coupler	
Locations of piping	6-6
Piping	6-5

I

Intended use	1-8
--------------	-----

K

KOWA (KOMATSU Oil Wear Analysis)	4-10
----------------------------------	------

L

Lifting	
Lifting capacity chart	2-44
One piece boom, 2.5 m undercarriage	2-44
One piece boom, 2.75 m undercarriage	2-50
Two piece boom, 2.5 m undercarriage	2-56
Two piece boom, 2.75 m undercarriage	2-62
Locking machine	3-146
Long-term storage	3-166, 6-20
After storage	3-167
Before storage	3-166
Discharged battery	3-171
During storage	3-166
Starting machine	3-167
Lubrication points	4-28, 4-62
Luggage tray	3-72

M

Machine	
Attachments and options	6-1
Excavator's work	6-46, 6-50
Lifting	3-157
Locking	3-146
Long-term storage	3-166
Lubrication points	4-28, 4-62
Moving machine off	3-122
Securing	3-154
Steering	3-125
Technical data	5-1
Transportation	3-151
Transportation, precautions	3-159
Troubleshooting, other trouble	3-176
Unloading	3-155
Machine monitor	3-6
Adjustment screens	3-39
Basic operation	3-7
Caution items	3-11
Check items	3-9
Emergency stop items	3-15
Explanation of components	3-6
Meter display portion	3-18
Meters	3-21
Monitor switches	3-25
Maintenance	
Filters	4-12
Fluids, proper selection	4-17
Fluids, use	4-16
Guides to maintenance	4-2
Hydraulic breaker, maintenance interval	4-30
Hydraulic system	4-14
KOWA (KOMATSU Oil Wear Analysis)	4-10
Long-term storage	3-166
Lubrication points	4-28, 4-62
Maintenance procedure	4-31
Maintenance schedule chart	4-24
Outline of oil, fuel, coolant, grease	4-7
Outline of service	4-6
Precautions	2-30
Safety critical parts, periodic replacement	4-22
Tightening torque specifications	4-21

Tightening torques for bolts and nuts	4-20
Wear parts list	4-15
Maintenance procedure	4-31
After the first 250 hours	4-31
After the first 50 hours	4-31
After the first 500 hours	4-32
Check before starting	4-57
Every 100 hours service	4-62
Every 1000 hours service	4-83
Every 2000 hours service	4-93
Every 250 hours service	4-68
Every 4000 hours service	4-99
Every 50 hours service	4-61
Every 500 hours service	4-75
Every 5000 hours service	4-103
Rotating arm, every 100 hours service	6-40
Rotating arm, every 1000 hours service	6-42
Rotating arm, every 250 hours service	6-41
Rotating arm, every 500 hours service	6-42
When required	4-33
Maintenance schedule chart	4-24

N

Noise emission levels	1-4
-----------------------	-----

O

Operation	3-96, 6-7
Backhoe work	3-141
Bucket, replacement and inversion	3-143, 6-48
Check after finishing work	3-145
Check after starting engine	3-114
Check after stopping engine	3-146
Check before starting	3-98
Check before starting engine	3-96, 3-110, 4-57
Cold weather operation	3-163
Ditching work	3-141
Excavator's work	6-46, 6-50
Levelling work	3-142
Loading work	3-142
Moving machine off	3-122
Mud, how to escape from	3-140
Operations before starting engine	3-110
Parking	3-127
Precautions	3-137
Prohibitions	3-135
Recommendations for travelling	3-138
Shovel work	3-141
Starting engine	3-112
Starting machine after long-term storage	3-167
Steering	3-125
Stopping	3-127
Stopping engine	3-145
Stopping machine (emergency)	3-128
Trapezoidal bucket (option), handling	6-49
Travelling on public highway	3-126
Travelling posture	3-161
Travelling up or down hills, precautions	3-139
Troubleshooting	3-168
Troubleshooting, other trouble	3-176
Warming up operation	3-115

Warming up operation (automatic)	3-118
Working mode selection	3-134
Operator's seat	
Adjustment	3-105
Adjustment (mechanical seat)	3-109
Seat belt	3-105, 3-108

P

Parking the machine	2-20
Particular jobsites, precautions	3-170
Power pick-up port, 12V	3-74
Power ripper	6-25

R

Radio	3-73
Rearview mirrors	3-107
Refuelling pump	3-91
Rotating arm	6-39
General location and specifications	6-39
Maintenance requirement	6-40
Maintenance, every 100 hours service	6-40
Maintenance, every 1000 hours service	6-42
Maintenance, every 250 hours service	6-41
Maintenance, every 500 hours service	6-42
Running in new machine	1-9

S

Safety	
Battery	2-22
Bucket	2-25
Emergency braking	1-7
Emergency exit	2-10
Emergency steering	1-7
Emergency stop	3-128
Fluids, handling	2-29
General precautions	2-2
Lifting	2-44
Lifting operation	2-28
Maintenance	2-30
Noise emission levels	1-4
Operating machine	2-13
Overload caution	2-68
Parking the machine	2-20, 3-127
Precautions for operation	3-137
Prohibitions for operation	3-135
Safety critical parts, periodic replacement	4-22
Safety labels	2-36
Securing machine	3-154
Starting engine	2-11
Starting with booster cables	2-23
Stopping engine	3-145
Towing	2-24, 3-169
Transportation	2-21, 3-151, 3-159
Travelling	2-15
Travelling on public highway	3-126
Travelling posture	3-161
Travelling up or down hills, precautions	3-139
Warning lamps	3-93
Safety critical parts	4-22

Safety labels	
Description	2-37
Position	2-36
Safety messages	1-3
Scrap grapple	6-31
Seat belt	3-108
Serial plates	1-11
Engine serial no. plate position	1-10
Locations of plates	1-10
Machine serial no. plate position	1-10
Starting engine	2-11, 3-112
Check before starting	4-57
Starting after long-term storage	3-167
Starting in cold weather	3-113
Starting with booster cables	2-23, 3-173
Steering	3-125
Stopping engine	3-145
Switches	3-42
12V Power supply	3-52
Air conditioner	3-75
Beacon light switch (option)	3-53
Boom/undercarriage attachment switch	3-49
Breaker	3-50
Cab lamp switch	3-46
Clamshell rotation	3-50
Direction indicator switch	3-51
Driving light switch	3-49
F/N/R override switch	3-48
F/N/R switch	3-49
Fuel control dial	3-44
Hazard warning switch	3-53, 3-93
HCU switch	3-50
Heated seat switch (option)	3-52
Horn button	3-46, 3-51
Lower wiper switch (option)	3-53
Main windscreen wiper switch	3-52
Park brake switch	3-48
Power max button	3-46, 3-134
Pump control override switch	3-47
Roadlights dip/Main beam/Flash switch	3-51
Starting switch	3-44
Swing lock override switch	3-47
Swing lock switch	3-45
Travel override switch	3-48
Windscreen wash switch	3-51
Work light switch	3-52

T

Technical data	
One piece boom	5-3
Specifications	5-2
Two piece boom	5-4
Working range, one piece boom	5-5
Working range, two piece boom	5-6
Tool box (chassis)	3-90
Towing	2-24, 3-169

Transportation	2-21, 3-151, 3-159
Lifting machine	3-157
Loading machine	3-151
Precautions	3-159
Securing machine	3-154
Travelling posture	3-161
Unloading machine	3-151, 3-155
Trapezoidal bucket (option), handling	6-49
Travelling	2-15
Mud, how to escape from	3-140
Parking	3-127
Precautions when travelling up or down hills	3-139
Recommendations for travelling	3-138
Stopping	3-127
Travelling on public highway	3-126
Travelling posture	3-161
Troubleshooting	3-168
Chassis	3-177
Electrical system	3-176
Electronic control system	3-180
Engine	3-178
Other trouble	3-176

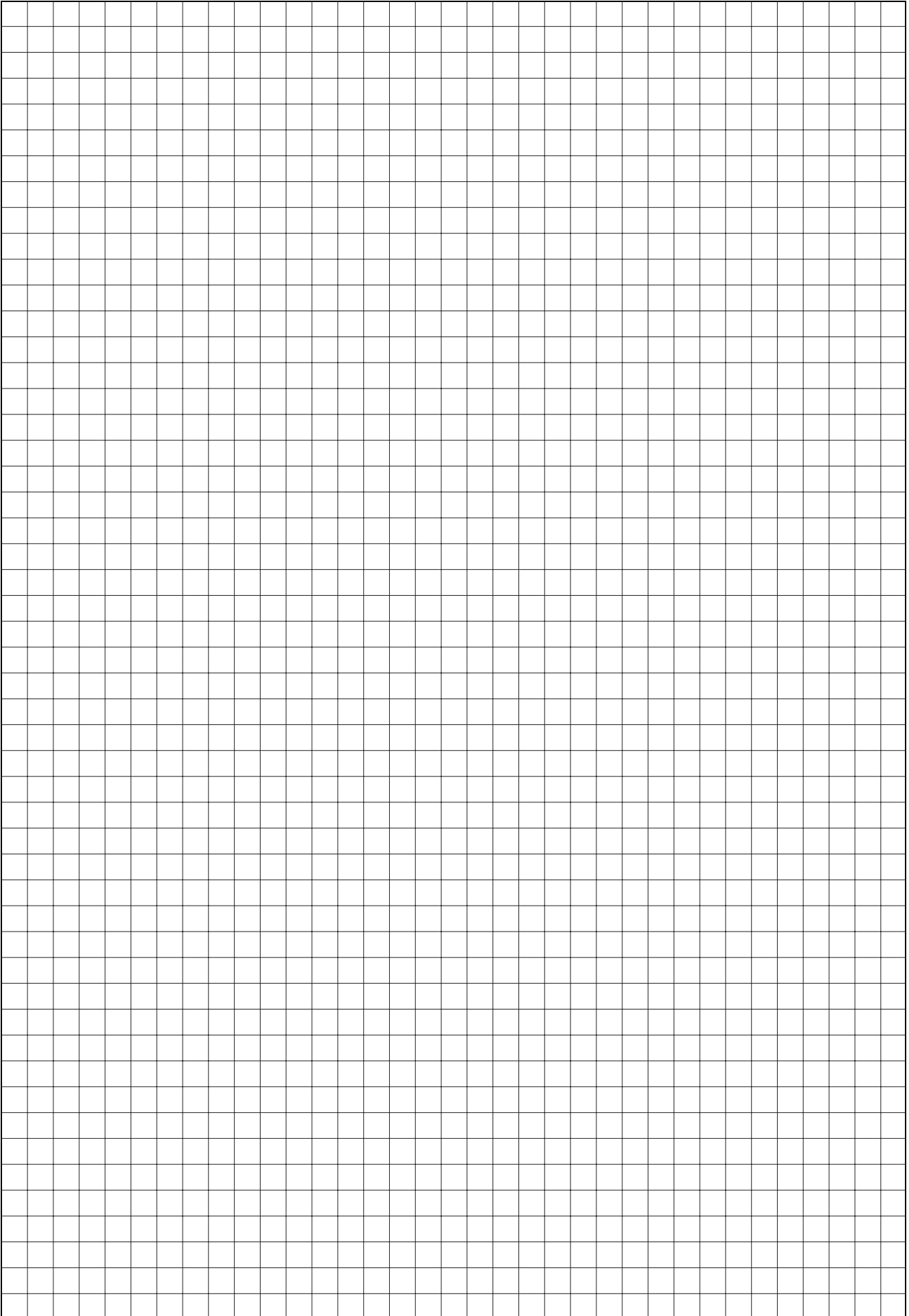
V

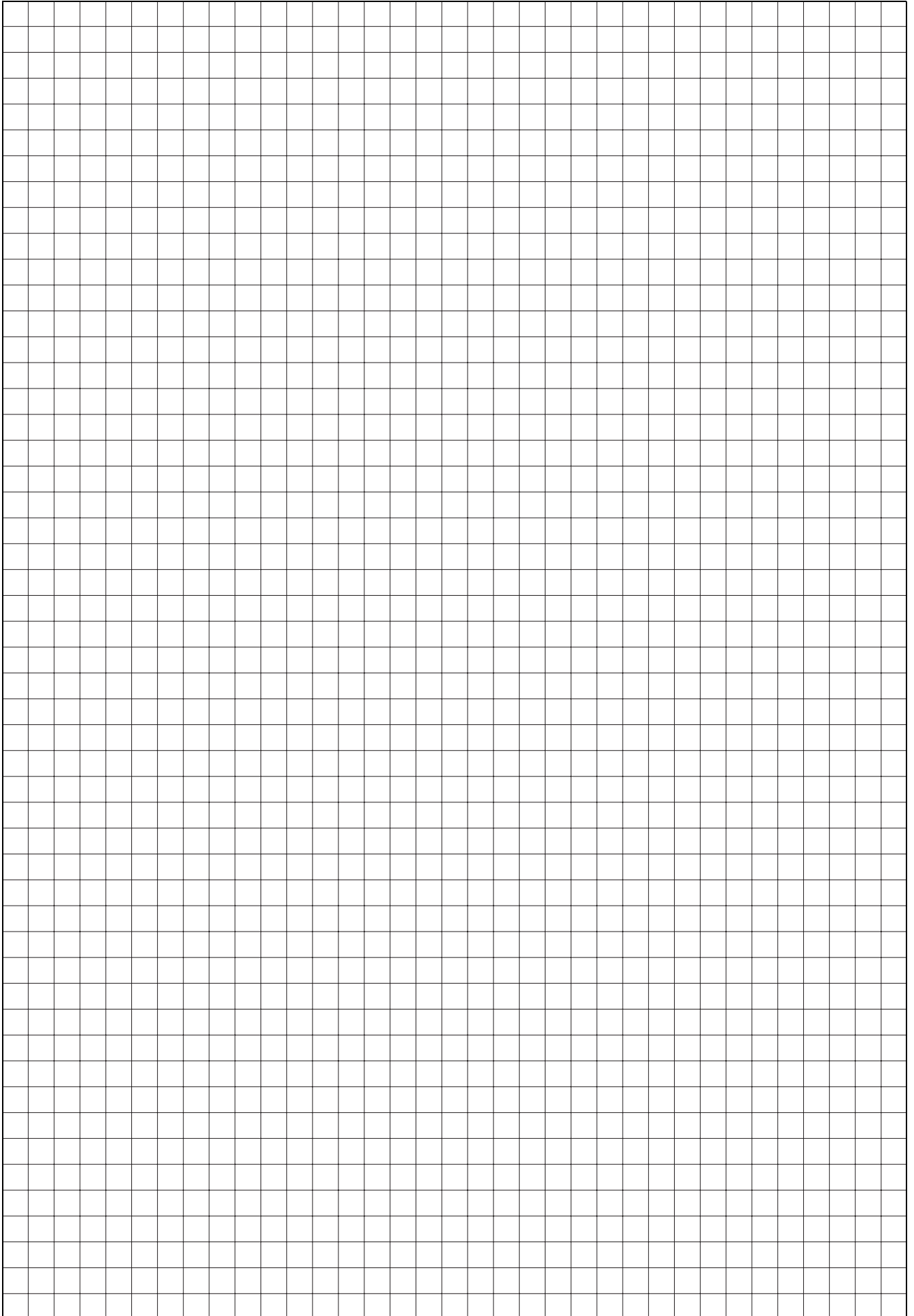
Vibration levels	1-5
------------------	-----

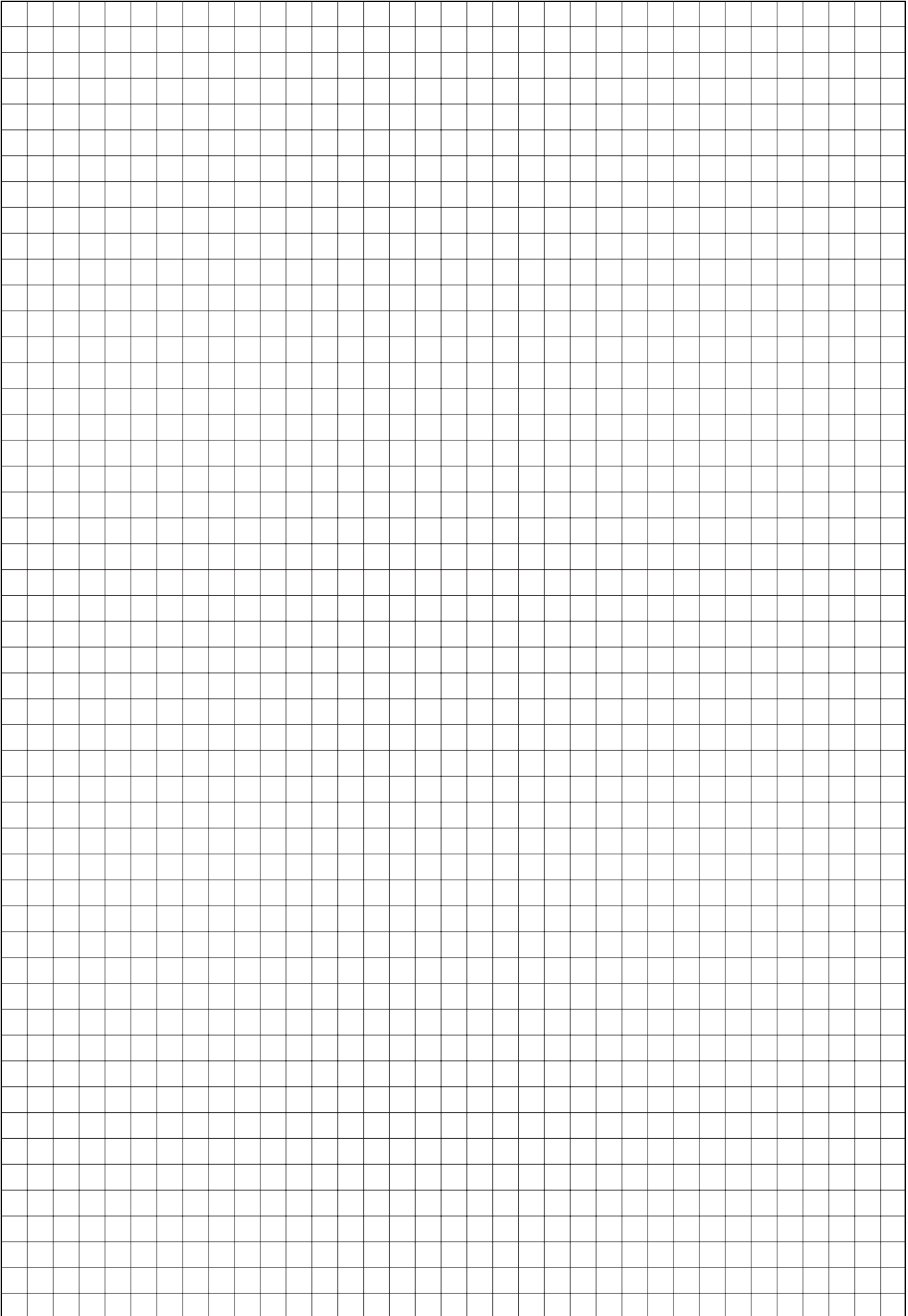
W

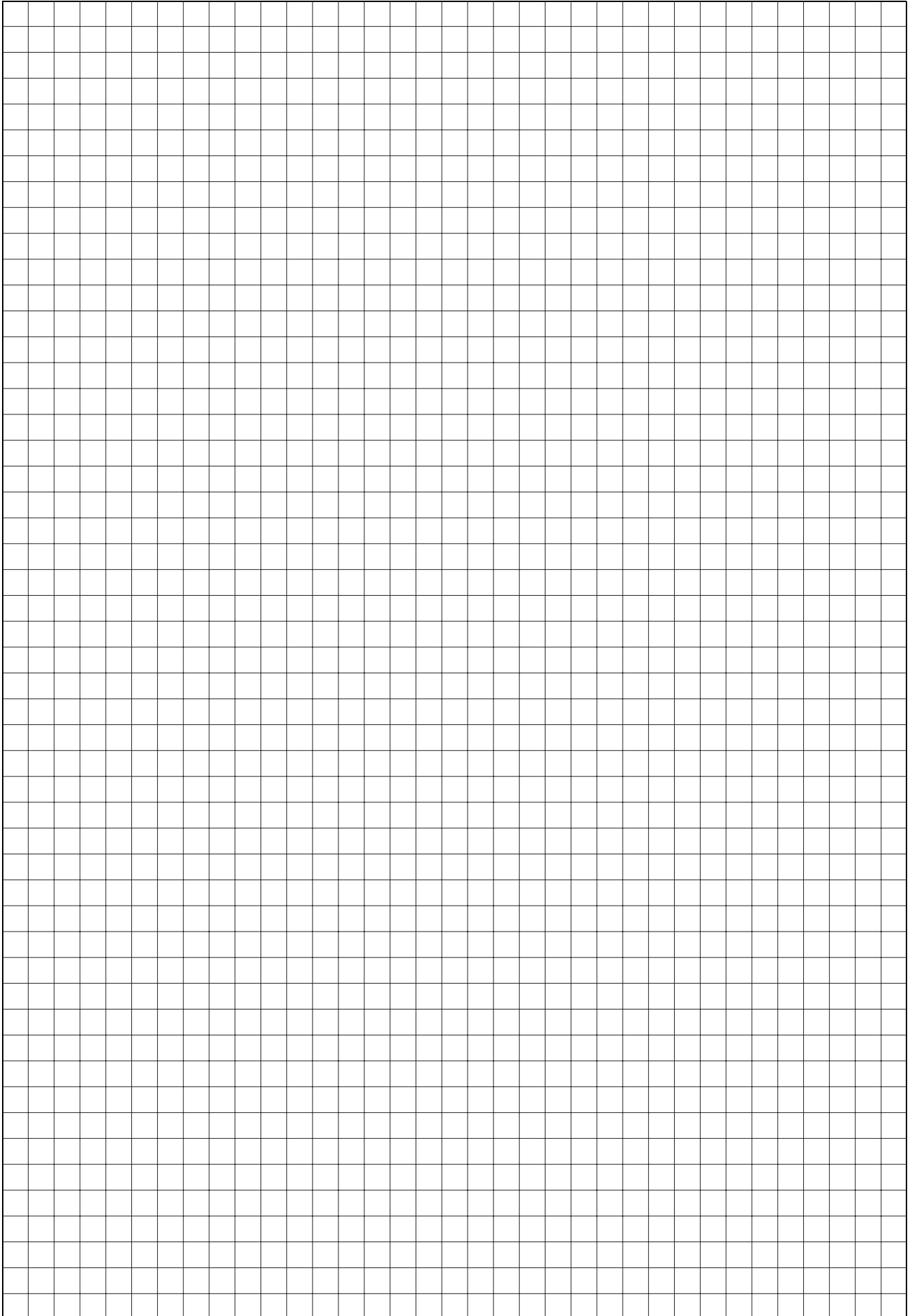
Warning lamps	3-93
Wear parts list	4-15
Wheels	
Handling	3-146
Maintenance	3-150
Recommended tyre pressures	3-147
Work equipment	
Troubleshooting	3-168
Working mode selection	3-134
Working mode selection	3-134

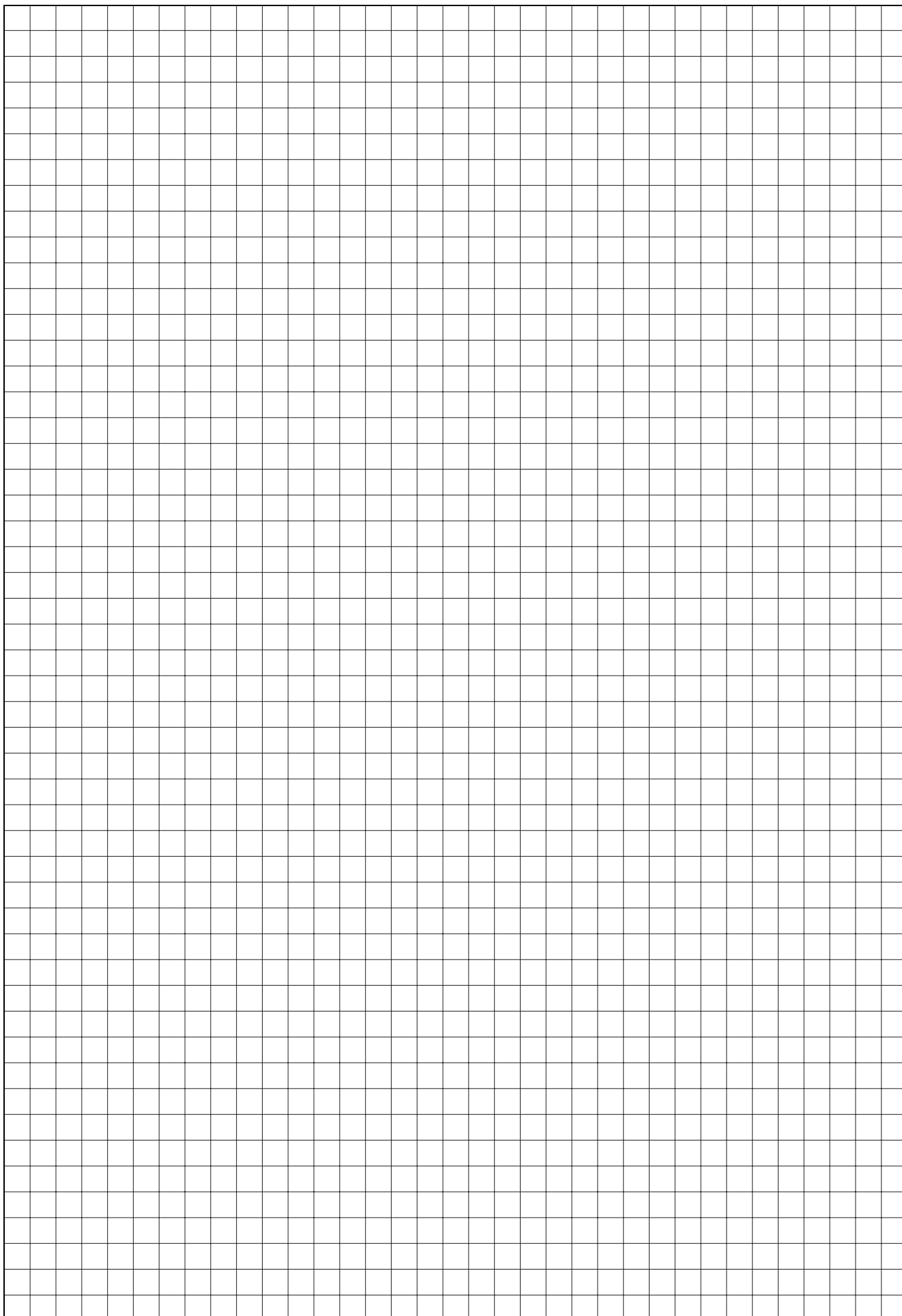
8. Notes











PW180-7E0 Wheeled Excavator

Form No. VEAM400102

©2007 KOMATSU
All Rights Reserved
Printed in Europe 2007-07